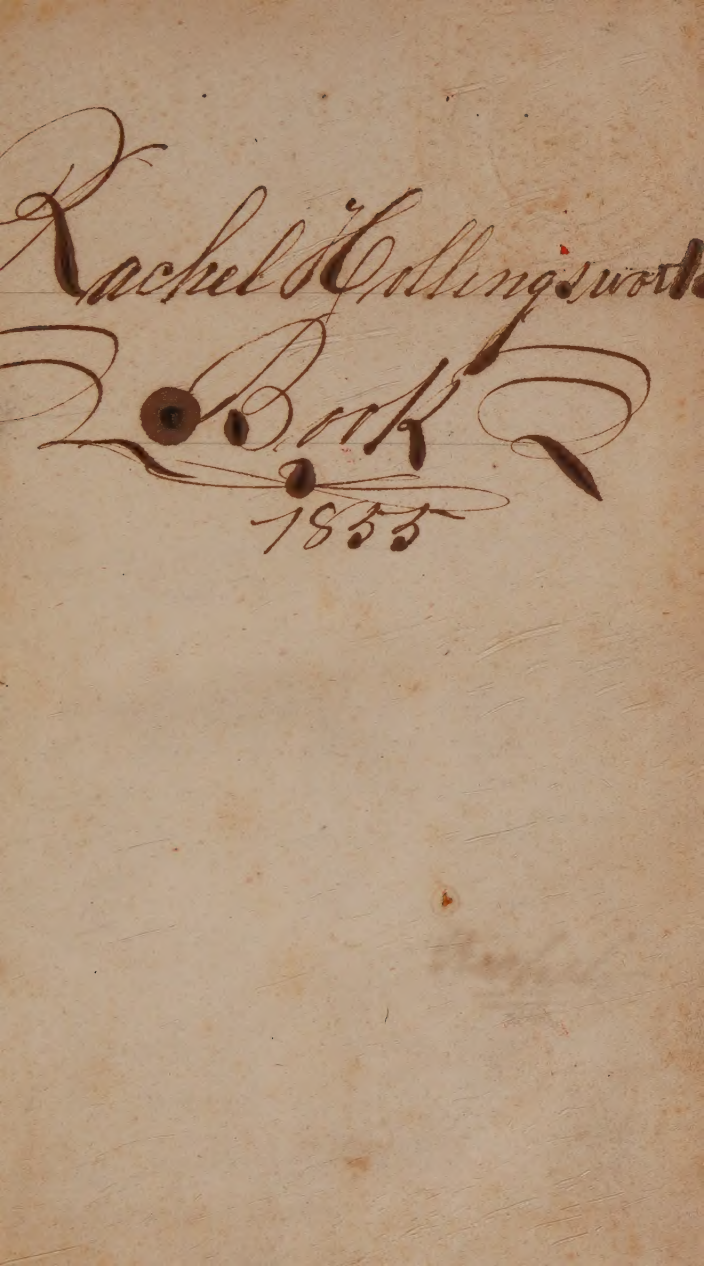
GANTS DE PARIS
EXPOSITION DE 1878


Rachel Collingsworth
Book
1855

Beauty consists not in the sparkling eye,
The damask cheek and ruby lip;
Not in the graceful form, or flowing hair,
Or in the melody of voice, or tone;
But in the soul, which from within
Basking forever in affection's rays,—
It dwelleth there in majesty supreme,
Scorning them mere toys, or seraph's dress.

Rachel.

Gone—Gone forever are the [illegible]
In which so long [illegible]
For Sorrow's Hand has taken [illegible]
To Time alone we owe [illegible]

Hagedorn

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS AT PLYMOUTH, DECEMBER 21st, 1620.

HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES,

FROM THE EARLIEST DISCOVERIES TO THE PRESENT TIME.

WITH ADDITIONS,

CONTAINING

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH AMERICAN PROVINCES,

HISTORY OF MEXICO,

AND THE

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES,

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

BY MARCIUS WILLSON,

AUTHOR OF "AMERICAN HISTORY," "OUTLINES OF GENERAL HISTORY," "PHILOSOPHY OF HISTORY," ETC.

NEW YORK:
IVISON & PHINNEY, 178 FULTON STREET;
(SUCCESSORS OF NEWMAN & IVISON, AND MARK H. NEWMAN & CO.)
CHICAGO: S. C. GRIGGS & CO., 111 LAKE STREET.
AUBURN: SEYMOUR & CO. DETROIT: A. M'FARREN.
CINCINNATI: MOORE, WILSTACH & KEYS.
1855.

EMBELLISHMENTS, MAPS, CHARTS, PLANS OF BATTLES, ETC.

EMBELLISHMENTS.

FRONTISPIECE—LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS, ... 2
POCAHONTAS SAVING THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN SMITH, ... 47
DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE, ... 173
BATTLE OF BUNKER'S HILL, ... 207
SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS, ... 267

MAPS, CHARTS, PLANS OF BATTLES, &c.

	Page
CHART OF AMERICAN HISTORY,	10, 11
Valley of Mexico,	19
Vicinity of Pensacola,	26
Vicinity of Montreal,	33
Port Royal Island and Vicinity,	35
Vicinity of St. Augustine,	36
Harbor of St. Augustine,	36
Roanoke Island and Vicinity,	38
Vicinity of Jamestown,	44
INDIAN TRIBES AND EARLY SETTLEMENTS,	46
Plymouth and Vicinity,	70
Vicinity of Boston,	74
Valley of the Conn. River, in Mass.,	87
Narragansett Fort and Swamp,	88
Vicinity of Pemaquid Fort,	91
Vicinity of Portland,	91
Louisburg and Vicinity in 1745,	98
Island of Cape Breton,	98
Vicinity of Portsmouth,	101
Vicinity of Hartford,	104
New Haven and Vicinity,	107
Vicinity of Providence,	112
New York and Vicinity,	117
Albany and Vicinity,	118
Northern part of Delaware,	121
Vicinity of Annapolis,	142
Philadelphia and Vicinity,	152
Vicinity of Wilmington, N. C.,	155
Charleston and Vicinity,	161
Savannah and Vicinity,	167
Vicinity of Frederica, Geo.,	168
Forts in New Brunswick,	179
Vicinity of Lake George,	181
Forts at Oswego,	183
Vicinity of Quebec, 1759,	189
Plan of the Siege of Boston,	210
Battle of Long Island,	222
Westchester County,	225
Forts Lee and Washington,	225
Seat of War in New Jersey,	226
Trenton in 1776,	228
Places West of Philadelphia,	237
Vicinity of Ticonderoga,	240
Fort Schuyler on the Mohawk,	242
Towns of Saratoga and Stillwater,	242
Camps of Gates and Burgoyne at Saratoga,	242
Forts on the Hudson,	244
Plan of Fort Mercer,	244
Battle of Monmouth,	248
Seat of War in S. Carolina,	261
Battle of Sanders' Creek,	262
Battle of Guilford Court House,	271
Battle of Hobkirk's Hill,	272
Siege of Yorktown,	276
New London and Vicinity,	277
MAP OF THE COUNTRY AT THE CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION,	284
Vicinity of New Orleans,	291
District of Columbia,	296
Vicinity of Detroit,	304
Niagara Frontier,	306
Seat of the Creek War,	313
Vicinity of Niagara Falls,	319
Vicinity of Baltimore,	323
Seat of Seminole War,	338
MAP OF MEXICO,	351
MAP OF CALIFORNIA,	367
MAP OF THE UNITED STATES IN 1850,	373

Entered, according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1853,

BY MARCIUS WILLSON,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

STEREOTYPED BY THOMAS B. SMITH,

216 WILLIAM STREET, N. Y.

CONTENTS, AND PLAN OF THE WORK.

PART I.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

CHAPTER I.

Pages.

VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES IN THE SOUTHERN PORTIONS OF NORTH AMERICA, ... 15—46

DIVISIONS.—I. Columbus.—II. De Leon.—III. De Ayllon.—IV. Conquest of Mexico.—V. De Narvaez.—VI. Ferdinand De Soto.

CHAPTER II.

NORTHERN AND EASTERN COASTS OF NORTH AMERICA, . . . 46—47

DIVISIONS.—I. John and Sebastian Cabot.—II. Cortereal.—III. Verrazani.—IV. Cartier.—V. Roberval.—VI. Ribault, Laudonniere, and Melendez.—VII. Gilbert, Raleigh, and Grenville.—VIII. De La Roche.—IX. Gosnold.—X. De Monts.—XI. North and South Virginia.

PART II.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND COLONIAL HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

VIRGINIA, ... 47—67

DIVISIONS.—I. Virginia under the first Charter.—II. Virginia under the second Charter.—III. Virginia under the third Charter.—IV. Virginia from the dissolution of the London Company in 1624, to the commencement of the French and Indian War in 1754.

CHAPTER II.

MASSACHUSETTS, ... 67—180

SECTION I.—Massachusetts from its earliest history to the union of the New England Colonies in 1643.

DIVISIONS.—I. Early History.—II. Plymouth Colony.—III. Massachusetts Bay Colony.—IV. Union of the New England Colonies.—V. Early Laws and Customs.

SECTION II.—Massachusetts from the Union of the New England Colonies in 1643, to the close of King William's War in 1697.

DIVISIONS.—I. Events from the Union to King Philip's War.—II. King Philip's War.—III. Controversies and Royal Tyranny.—IV. Massachusetts during King William's War.

SECTION III.—Massachusetts from the close of King William's War in 1697, to the commencement of the French and Indian War in 1754.

DIVISIONS.—I. Massachusetts during Queen Anne's War.—II. King George's War.

Pages

CHAPTER III.

NEW HAMPSHIRE, ... 100—10

CHAPTER IV.

CONNECTICUT, ... 93—111

Divisions.—I. Early Settlements.—II. Pequod War.—III. New Haven Colony.—IV. Connecticut under her own Constitution.—V. Connecticut under the Royal Charter.

CHAPTER V.

RHODE ISLAND . . . . . 111—116

CHAPTER VI.

NEW YORK, ... 116—126

Section I.—New Netherlands previous to the conquest by the English in 1664.

Section II.—New York from the conquest of New Netherlands in 1664, until the commencement of the French and Indian War in 1754. (Delaware included until 1682.)

CHAPTER VII.

NEW JERSEY, ... 136—140

CHAPTER VIII.

MARYLAND. . . . . 141—14

CHAPTER IX.

PENNSYLVANIA, ... 149—154

CHAPTER X.

NORTH CAROLINA, ... 154—160

CHAPTER XI.

SOUTH CAROLINA, ... 160—166

CHAPTER XII.

GEORGIA, ... 166—173

CHAPTER XIII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, ... 173—193

Divisions.—I. Causes of the War, and Events of 1754.—II. 1755: Expeditions of Monckton, Braddock, Shirley, and Winslow.—III. 1756: Delays; Loss of Oswego; Indian Incursions.—IV. 1757: Designs against Louisburg, and Loss of Fort Wm. Henry.—V. 1758: Reduction of Louisburg; Abercrombie's Defeat; The taking of Forts Frontenac and Du Quesne.—VI. 1759 to 1763: Ticonderoga and Crown Point Abandoned; Niagara Taken; Conquest of Quebec,—Of all Canada; War with the Cherokees; Peace of 1763.

CHAPTER XIV.

CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION, ... 93—201

PART III.

AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

CHAPTER I.

EVENTS OF 1775, ... 207—21

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS OF 1776, ... 216—234

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS OF 1777, ... 230—244

CHAPTER IV

Pages.

EVENTS OF 1778, ... 246—252

CHAPTER V.

EVENTS OF 1779, ... 253—260

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS OF 1780, ... 260—267

CHAPTER VII.

EVENTS OF 1781, ... 267—279

CHAPTER VIII.

CLOSE OF THE WAR, AND ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION, . . 279—285

PART IV.

THE UNITED STATES,

FROM THE ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION IN 1789, TO THE YEAR 1845.

CHAPTER I

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 285—293

CHAPTER II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 293—297

CHAPTER III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 297—302

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION. WAR WITH ENGLAND, . . . 302—328

SECTION I.—Principal Events of 1809, '10, '11.

SECTION II.—Principal Events of 1812.

DIVISIONS.—I. Declaration of War, and Events in the West.—II. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—III. Naval Events.

SECTION III.—Principal Events of 1813.

DIVISIONS.—I. Events in the West and South.—II. Events in the North.—III. Naval Events.

SECTION IV.—Principal Events of 1814.

DIVISIONS.—I. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—II. Events in the vicinity of Lake Champlain.—III. Events on the Atlantic Coast.—IV. Events in the South and close of the War.—War with Algiers.

CHAPTER V.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 328—332

CHAPTER VI.

J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 332—334

CHAPTER VII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 334—339

CHAPTER VIII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 339—344

CHAPTER IX.

Pages

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 343—344

CHAPTER X.

TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 344—346

CHAPTER XI.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 346—362
War with Mexico.

CHAPTER XII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 363—368

CHAPTER XIII.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION, ... 369—374

APPENDIX.

CHAPTER I.

1. History of Canada under the French.—II. History of Canada under the English, ... 376—388

CHAPTER II.

HISTORY OF MEXICO AND TEXAS, ... 388—405

I. Aboriginal Mexico.—II. Colonial History of Mexico.—III. Mexico during the First Revolution.—IV. Mexico from the close of the First Revolution to the adoption of the Federal Constitution of 1824.—V. Mexico from the adoption of the Federal Constitution of 1824 to the commencement of the Texan Revolution in 1835.—VI. Texan Revolution.—VII. Mexico from the close of the Texan Revolution in 1836 to the commencement of the War with the United States in 1846.

CHAPTER III.

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES AND QUESTIONS, ... 406—429

EXPLANATION OF THE CHART.

THE "MINIATURE CHART OF AMERICAN HISTORY," found on the following two pages, is a mere outline of a larger chart measuring about five feet by six and a half. The design of the small chart is, principally, to furnish, by its convenience for reference, additional aid to those pupils who may be studying the outlines of the history from the larger one; for as the small chart wants the coloring of the other, and many of its important features, it will be found, separately, of comparatively little importance. A brief explanation of the "Miniature Chart," however, may, in this place, be useful.

The two divisions of the chart should be considered as brought together, so as to present the whole united on one sheet. The chart is arranged in the "downward course of time," from top to bottom, embracing a period of nearly 350 years, extending from the discovery of America by the Cabots, in 1497, to the year 1845. The dark shading, extending entirely across the chart at the top, represents all North America as occupied by the Indian tribes at the time of the discovery;—and, following the chart downwards, the gradually increasing light portions represent the gradual increase of European settlements. The *darkest* shading represents the country as unexplored by the whites;—the lighter shading, as having been explored, but *not settled*. Thus, Vermont was the last settled of the New England States; Upper Canada was settled at a much later period, and some of the western United States still later.

On the right is a column of English History; then a column of dates, corresponding with which the events are arranged on the chart from top to bottom; then follows the history of the present British Provinces north of the United States; then the histories of the several United States as their names are given at the bottom of the chart: after the territories, at the left, and adjoining Oregon, appear Texas, Mexico, and Central America. The large chart, of which this is a very imperfect outline, gives the prominent features, in the histories of all the settled portions of North America.

The *utility* of well-arranged charts is very much the same as that of historical maps. Although maps give the *localities* of events, they cannot give their *sequences*, or order of succession; but as the eye glances over the *chart*, and follows it downwards in the stream of time, there is presented to the mind, instead of one local, fixed picture, a moving panorama of events. In the map, the associations are based upon the proximity of *locality;* in the chart, upon the *order of succession;* and the two combined, in connection with the written history, give the most favorable associations possible for the attainment and retention of historical knowledge. One prominent advantage of the chart, however, separately considered, is, that it presents at one view a *Comparative History* of which books alone can give only a very inadequate idea, and that only to a well-disciplined memory of arbitrary associations. A view of the chart makes upon the mind as lasting an impression of the outlines of a country's *history*, as does the map of its *topography*; when the plans of both are equally understood; and the prominent features in a country's history may be *recalled* to the mind, after a study of the chart, with the same facility that the geographical outlines may be recalled, after a study of the map; for the principles upon which the mind acquires the knowledge, through the medium of the eye, are in both cases the same. The chart, the map, and the written history should be used together; the chart, presenting at one view a comparative chronology of the events, being considered the framework of the structure; and the map, giving the localities, the basis upon which it stands.

MINIATURE CHART OF
EXPLORED
AND
SETTLED
TERRITORY
IN THE
UNITED
STATES
St. Augustine 1565
FLORIDA
In the possession of Spain
Explored by La Salle in 1682
LOUISIANA
In the possession of France
LOWER LOUISIANA
UPPER LOUISIANA
Ceded to Spain 1763. Ceded to England.
St. Genevieve 1763
Spanish
LOUISIANA
West of the Mississippi
Relinquished to the U.S. States
Marietta 1788
NORTH WESTERN TERRITORY
Ceded to France in 1800
Ceded to U. S. in 1803
Orleans Ter.
Louisiana Ter.
Missouri Territory
Indiana Ter.
Illinois Ter.
Michigan Ter.
Wisconsin Ter.
Ark. Post 1686
Detroit 1701
Vincennes 1702
Kaskaskia 1703
Mobile 1702
New Orleans 1718
Natchez 1716
Natchitoches 1714
Pensacola 1696
Florida
Tennessee
Kentucky
Indiana
Illinois
Ohio
Michigan
Wisconsin
Alabama
Mississippi
Louisiana
Arkansas
Missouri
Iowa
Missouri Territory
Indian Territory
Oregon Ter
Texas
Mexico
Central America
Cortes 1521
Conquest of Mexico
1525
1542
SPANISH
PROVINCES
Until 1821 Mexico remained a province of Spain, and was governed by Viceroys appointed by the mother country.
GUATEMALA
YUCATAN
Revolution 1824
MEXICO
Assumes title of Empire 1810
1836
Texas
Oregon Ter
Florida
Tennessee
Kentucky
Indiana
Illinois
Ohio
Michigan
Wisconsin
Alabama
Mississippi
Louisiana
Arkansas
Missouri
Iowa
Missouri Territory
Indian Territory
Central America
Mexico

Dates.	ENGLISH HISTORY.
1500	Henry VII.
10	
20	1509
30	Henry VIII.
40	
50	1547 Edward IV.
60	1553 Mary.
70	1558
80	Elizabeth.
90	
1600	1603
10	James I.
20	1625
30	Charles I.
40	(Beheaded.) 1649
50	Cromwell.
60	R. Cromwell. 1660
70	Charles II.
80	1685
90	James II. 1689
1700	William and Mary. 1702
10	Anne. 1714
20	George I. 1727
30	
40	George II.
50	1760
60	
70	
80	George III.
90	
1800	1811
10	Pr. Wales Regent. 1820
20	George IV. 1830
30	William IV. 1837
40	Victoria.

ENGLAND.

Newfoundland.
Pr. Edwards.
Nova Scotia.
New Brunswick.
Canada East.
Canada West.
Maine
Massachusetts.
New Hampshire.
Connecticut.
Rhode Island.
Vermont.
New York.
New Jersey.
Delaware.
Pennsylvania.
Maryland.
Dist. Columbia.
Virginia.
N. Carolina
S. Carolina.
Georgia.

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

SCHOOL EDITION OF THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

In offering the following History to the public, a few remarks appear necessary, in order to point out those particulars in which it is believed to possess peculiar merits. Of the adaptation of the style to the object intended, and of the moral and general influence of the work, the public alone must be the judges. Those who would compare its historical accuracy with other histories on the same subject, are referred to a Critical Review of American Histories, by the same author, first published in the Biblical Repository for July, 1845; which may give some idea of the labor and care bestowed upon the compilation of the following work. We would, however, here inform the reader that a *uniformity* in the system of *dates* has been preserved, the dates being given throughout in *New Style*. See this important subject examined in the before mentioned Review.

It will be observed that the marginal dates and references in the following work are numerous; carrying along a minute chronology with the history. This plan avoids the necessity of encumbering the text with dates, and at the same time furnishes, to the inquiring reader, a history far more minute and circumstantial than could otherwise be embraced in a volume much larger than the present.

The more prominent features in the PLAN of the work, in which it differs from any other History, are, the Arrangement of the Questions in the margin, and the introduction of numerous Maps, Charts, and Geographical Notes.

The QUESTIONS are arranged in the margin, each opposite that portion of the text to which it refers, and numbered to correspond with similar divisions of the text. In point of convenience and utility, it is believed that this plan of arrangement is far more desirable than that hitherto adopted, of placing the questions at the bottoms of the pages, or at the end of the volume. Moreover, the questions are designedly so constructed as to require from the pupil a knowledge of *the whole* text.—The supposed utility of the CHART, (pages 10 and 11,) may be learned from the description of the same on page 9.

The progressive series of the three LARGE MAPS, on pages 46, 284, and 375, show the state of the country at different periods. The *First* represents the country as occupied by the Indian Tribes, fifty years after the settlement of Jamestown, when only a few bright spots of civilization relieved the darkness of the picture. The *Second*, as it was at the close of the Revolution, when almost the entire region west of the Alleghanies was a wilderness,—showing how slowly settlements had advanced during the long period that the colonies were under the dominion of Great Britain. The *Third* represents the country as it now is, and as it has become under the influence of republican institutions. In place of the recent wilderness, we observe a confederacy of many states, each with its numerous cities, towns, and villages, denoting the existence of a great and happy people.

The GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL NOTES, and SMALL MAPS, at the bottoms of the pages, give the localities of all important places mentioned, and furnish that kind of geographical information respecting them, without which the history can be read with little interest or profit. Maps of important sections of the Union, the vicinities of our large towns, plans of battle grounds and sieges, &c., are here given on the same pages with the events referring to them, where they necessarily catch the eye of the pupil, so that they can hardly fail to arrest his attention, and increase the interest that he feels in the history.

On the whole, it is believed that the *plan* here adopted, considered apart from whatever other merits the work may possess, affords unusual facilities for the acquisition of historical knowledge.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.

Of what does Part I treat?

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, BY COLUMBUS, IN 1492; TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, VIRGINIA, IN 1607: EMBRACING A PERIOD OF 115 YEARS.

CHAPTER I.

Of what does Chapter I. treat?

EARLY SPANISH VOYAGES, CONQUESTS, AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE SOUTHERN PORTIONS OF NORTH AMERICA.

DIVISIONS.

What are the Divisions of Chapter I.?

I. Discovery of America by Columbus.—II. Juan Ponce de Leon in Florida.—III. De Ayllon in Carolina.—IV Conquest of Mexico.—V. Pamphilo de Narvaez.—VI. Ferdinand de Soto.

1. What is said of the Discovery of America by Columbus?

I. DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.—1. [1]The discovery[a] of America by Christopher Columbus, may be regarded as the most important event that has ever resulted from individual genius and enterprise. [2]Although other claims to the honor of discovering the Western hemisphere have been advanced, and with some appearance of probability, yet no clear historic evidence exists in their favor. [3]It has been asserted that an Iceland* bark, in the early part of the eleventh century, having been driven southwest from Greenland†

a. Oct. 12, 1492, Old Style; or, Oct. 21, New Style.

2. Of other claims to the Discovery?

3. Of the Icelandic claim?

---

*GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES.—1. *Iceland* is an island in the Northern Ocean, remarkable for its boiling springs (the Geysers), and its flaming volcano, Mount Hecla. It was discovered by a Norwegian pirate, in the year 861, and was soon after settled by the Norwegians; but it is supposed that the English and the Irish had previously made settlements there, which were abandoned before the time of the Norwegian discovery.

† *Greenland* is an extensive tract of barren country, in the northern frozen regions; separated from the western continent by Baffin's Bay and Davis's Strait. It was discovered by the Norwegians thirty years after the discovery of Iceland, and a thriving colony was planted there; but from 1406 until after the discovery by Columbus all correspondence with Greenland was cut off, and all knowledge of the country seemed to be buried in oblivion.

1492. by adverse winds, touched[a] upon the coast of Labrador;*—that subsequent voyages were made; and
a. 1001 that colonies were established in Nova Scotia,† or in Newfoundland.‡

1. What is said of the superior merit of the claims of Columbus?

2. [1]But even if it be admitted that such a discovery was made, it does not in the least detract from the honor so universally ascribed to Columbus. The Icelandic discovery, if real, resulted from chance,—was not even known to Europe,—was thought of little importance,—and was soon forgotten; and the curtain of darkness again fell between the Old world and the New. The discovery by Columbus, on the contrary, was the result of a theory matured by long reflection and experience; opposed to the learning and the bigotry of the age; and brought to a successful demonstration, after years of toil against opposing difficulties and discouragements.

2. What was long the prevalent error respecting the discovery by Columbus?

3. [2]The nature of the great discovery, however, was long unknown; and it remained for subsequent adventurers to dispel the prevalent error, that the voyage of Columbus had only opened a new route to the wealthy, but then scarcely known regions of Eastern Asia. [3]During several years,[b] the discoveries of Columbus were confined to the islands of the West Indies;§ and it was not until August,[c] 1498, six years after his first voyage, that he discovered the main land, near the mouth of the Orinoco;‖ and he was then ignorant that it was any thing more than an island.

3. What was the extent of his discoveries?

b. 1492 to 1498.

c. Aug. 10th.

4. What is said of the W. Indies?

4. [4]The principal islands of the West Indies,—Cuba,¶ St. Domingo,** and Porto Rico,†† were soon

* *Labrador*, or New Britain, is that part of the American coast between the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Hudson's Bay; a bleak and barren country, little known, and inhabited chiefly by Indians.

† *Nova Scotia* is a large peninsula, southeast from New Brunswick, separated from it by the Bay of Fundy, and connected with it by a narrow isthmus only nine miles across.

‡ *Newfoundland* is a hilly and mountainous island on the east side of the Gulf of St. Lawrence; nearly a thousand miles in circumference, deriving all its importance from its extensive fisheries.

§ The *West Indies* consist of a large number of islands between North and South America, the most important of which are Cuba, St. Domingo, Jamaica, and Porto Rico.

‖ The *Orinoco* is a river on the northeast coast of South America.

¶ *Cuba*, one of the richest islands in the world, is the largest of the West Indies, being 760 miles in length from southeast to northwest, and about 50 miles in breadth. Its northern coast is 150 miles south from Florida.

** *St. Domingo*, or Hayti, formerly called Hispaniola, is a large island, lying between Cuba and Porto Rico, and about equally distant from each.

†† *Porto Rico* is a fertile island of the West Indies, 60 miles southeast from St. Domingo. It is 140 miles long from east to west, and 36 broad.

colonized, and subjected to Spanish authority. [1]In 1506 the eastern coast of Yucatan* was discovered; and in 1510 the first colony on the continent was planted on the Isthmus of Darien.† [2]Soon after, Vasco Nunez de Balboa, governor of the colony, crossed the Isthmus, and from a mountain on the other side of the Continent discovered[a] an Ocean, which being seen in a southerly direction, at first received the name of the *South Sea*. **1506.**

1. *Of Yucatan, and of the first colony on the Continent?*

2. *Of the Discovery of the Pacific?*

a. 1513.

II. JUAN PONCE DE LEON IN FLORIDA.—1. [3]In 1512 Juan Ponce de Leon, an aged veteran, and former governor of Porto Rico, fitted out three ships, at his own expense, for a voyage of discovery. [4]A tradition prevailed among the natives of Porto Rico, that in a neighboring island of the Bahamas‡ was a fountain which possessed the remarkable properties of restoring the youth, and of perpetuating the life of any one who should bathe in its stream, and drink of its waters. [5]Nor was this fabulous tale credited by the uninstructed natives only. It was generally believed in Spain, and even by men distinguished for virtue and intelligence.

3. *What is said of De Leon?*

4. *What was the tradition of the Fountain of Life?*

5. *By whom was it credited?*

2. [6]In quest of this fountain of youth Ponce de Leon sailed[b] from Porto Rico in March, 1512; and, after cruising some time among the Bahamas, discovered[c] an unknown country, to which, from the abundance of flowers that adorned the forests, and from its being first seen on Easter§ Sunday, (which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida*,) he gave the name of Florida.‖

6. *Give an account of the discovery of Florida?*

b. March 13.

c. April 6.

7. *What was the extent of De Leon's discoveries?*

3. [7]After landing[d] some miles north of where St. Augustine¶ now stands, and taking formal possession

d. April 18.

---

* *Yucatan*, one of the States of Mexico, is an extensive peninsula, 150 miles S W from Cuba, and lying between the Bays of Honduras and Campeachy.

† The *Isthmus of Darien* is that narrow neck of land which connects North and South America. It is about 300 miles in length, and, in the narrowest part, is only about 30 miles across.

‡ The *Bahamas* are an extensive group of islands lying east and southeast from Florida. They have been estimated at about 600 in number, most of them mere cliffs and rocks, only 14 of them being of any considerable size.

§ *Easter* day, a church festival observed in commemoration of our Savior's resurrection, is the Sunday following the first full moon that happens after the 20th of March.

‖ *Florida*, the most southern portion of the United States, is a large peninsula about two thirds of the size of Yucatan. The surface is level, and is intersected by numerous ponds, lakes, rivers, and marshes.

¶ See note and map, p. 36.

1512. of the country, he explored its coasts; and doubling its southern cape, continued his search among the group of islands which he named the Tortugas:* but the chief object of the expedition was still unattained, and Ponce de Leon returned to Porto Rico, older than when he departed. [1]A few years later, having been appointed governor of the country which he had discovered, he made a second voyage to its shores, with the design of selecting a site for a colony; but, in a contest with the natives, many of his followers were killed, and Ponce de Leon himself was mortally wounded.

1. *What was the result of the second voyage?*

III. De Ayllon in Carolina.—1. [2]About the time of the defeat of Ponce de Leon in Florida, a company of seven wealthy men, of St. Domingo, at the head of whom was Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon,[a] judge of appeals of that island, despatched[b] two vessels to the Bahamas, in quest of laborers for their plantations and mines. [3]Being driven northward from the Bahamas, by adverse winds, to the coast of Carolina, they anchored at the mouth of the Cambahee† river, which they named the Jordan. The country they called Chicora.

2. *What is said of the enterprise of De Ayllon?*

a. Pronounced Ail-yon.

b. 1520.

3. *Of the discovery of Carolina?*

2. [4]Here the natives treated the strangers with great kindness and hospitality, and being induced by curiosity, freely visited the ships; but when a sufficient number was below the decks, the perfidious Spaniards closed the hatches and set sail for St. Domingo. [5]One of the returning ships was lost, and most of the Indian prisoners in the other, sullenly refusing food, died of famine and melancholy.

4. *Of the hospitality of the natives and the perfidy of the Spaniards?*

5. *What was the result of the enterprise?*

3. [6]Soon after this unprofitable enterprise, De Ayllon, having obtained the appointment of governor of Chicora, sailed with three vessels for the conquest of the country. Arriving in the river Cambahee, the principal vessel was stranded and lost. Proceeding thence a little farther north, and being received with apparent friendship at their landing, many of his men were induced to visit a village, a short distance in the

6. *Give an account of the second voyage and its result?*

* The *Tortugas*, or Tortoise Islands, are about 100 miles southwest from the southern cape of Florida.

† The *Cambahee* is a small river in the southern part of South Carolina, emptying into St. Helena Sound, 35 miles southwest from Charleston (See map, p. 35.)

interior, where they were all treacherously cut off by the natives, in revenge for the wrongs which the Spaniards had before committed. De Ayllon himself was surprised and attacked in the harbor;—the attempt to conquer the country was abandoned;—and the few survivors, in dismay, hastened back to St. Domingo. **1517.**

IV. CONQUEST OF MEXICO.*—1. [1]In 1517 Francisco Fernandez de Cordova, sailing from Cuba[a] with three small vessels, explored[b] the northern coast of Yucatan. [2]As the Spaniards approached the shore, they were surprised to find, instead of naked savages, a people decently clad in cotton garments; and, on landing, their wonder was increased by beholding several large edifices built of stone. [3]The natives were much more bold and warlike than those of the islands and the more southern coasts, and every where received the Spaniards with the most determined opposition.

1. *When and by whom was Yucatan explored?*

a. Note p. 14.

b. March, 1517.

2. *What surprised the Spaniards?*

3. *What was the character of the natives?*

2. [4]At one place fifty-seven of the Spaniards were killed, and Cordova himself received a wound, of which he died soon after his return to Cuba. [5]But, notwithstanding the disastrous result of the expedition, another was planned in the following year; and under the direction of Juan de Grijalva, a portion of the southern coast of Mexico was explored[c], and a large amount of treasure obtained by trafficking with the natives.

4. *The result of the expedition?*

5. *What is said of the Discovery of Mexico?*

c. May, June 1518.

3. [6]Velasquez, governor of Cuba, under whose auspices the voyage of Grijalva had been made, enriched by the result, and elated with a success far beyond his expectations, now determined to undertake the conquest of the wealthy countries that had been discovered, and hastily fitted out an armament for the purpose. [7]Not being able to accompany the expedition in person, he gave the command to Fernando Cortez, who sailed with eleven vessels, having on board six hundred and seventeen men. In March, 1519, Cortez landed in Tabasco,† a southern province

6. *By whom were designs of conquest formed, and why?*

7. *Give an account of the invasion of Mexico by Cortez.*

---

* *Mexico* is a large country southwest from the United States, bordering on the Gulf of Mexico on the east, and the Pacific Ocean on the west. It is about one fourth as large as the United States and their territories. The land on both coasts is low, but in the interior is a large tract of *table lands* 6 or 8000 feet above the level of the sea.

† *Tabasco*, one of the southern Mexican States, adjoins Yucatan on the southwest.

1519. of Mexico, where he had several encounters with the natives, whom he routed with great slaughter.

a. April 12.

4. [1]Proceeding thence farther westward, he landed[a] at San Juan de Ulloa*, where he was hospitably received, and where two officers of a monarch who was called Montezuma, came to inquire what his intentions were in visiting that coast, and to offer him what assistance he might need in order to continue his voyage. [2]Cortez respectfully assured them that he came with the most friendly sentiments, but that he was intrusted with affairs of such moment by the king, his sovereign, that he could impart them to no one but to the emperor Montezuma himself, and therefore requested them to conduct him into the presence of their master.

1. *How was Cortez received by the officers of Montezuma?*

2. *What did Cortez assure them, and what request did he make?*

3. *What did the Mexican ambassadors then do?*

5. [3]The ambassadors of the Mexican monarch, knowing how disagreeable such a request would be, endeavored to dissuade Cortez from his intention; at the same time making him some valuable presents, which only increased his avidity. Messengers were dispatched to Montezuma, giving him an account of every thing that had occurred since the arrival of the Spaniards. [4]Presents of great value and magnificence were returned by him, and repeated requests were made, and finally commands given, that the Spaniards should leave the country; but all to no purpose.

4. *What did Montezuma do?*

5. *What course did Cortez take?*

b. Aug. 26.

6. *What events occurred on the march of Cortez towards the Mexican capital?*

6. [5]Cortez, after destroying his vessels, that his soldiers should be left without any resources but their own valor, commenced[b] his march towards the Mexican capital. [6]On his way thither, several nations, that were tributary to Montezuma, gladly threw off their allegiance and joined the Spaniards. Montezuma himself, alarmed and irresolute continued to send messengers to Cortez, and, as his hopes or his fears alternately prevailed, on one day gave him permission to advance, and, on the next, commanded him to depart.

7. *What is said of the appearance of the plain of Mexico, and the city?*

7. [7]As the vast plain of Mexico opened to the view of the Spaniards, they beheld numerous villages and cultivated fields extending as far as the eye could reach,

* *San Juan de Ulloa* is a small island, opposite Vera Cruz, the principal eastern seaport of Mexico. It is 150 miles south of east from the Mexican capital, and contains a strong fortress, built of coral rocks taken from the bottom of the sea.

and in the middle of the plain, partly encompassing a large lake, and partly built on islands within it, stood the city* of Mexico, adorned with its numerous temples and turrets; the whole presenting to the Spaniards a spectacle so novel and wonderful that they could hardly persuade themselves it was any thing more than a dream. [1]Montezuma received[a] the Spaniards with great pomp and magnificence, admitted them within the city, assigned them a spacious and elegant edifice for their accommodation, supplied all their wants, and bestowed upon all, privates as well as officers, presents of great value. **1519.**

1. Of Montezuma's reception of the Spaniards?

a. Nov

8. [2]Cortez, nevertheless, soon began to feel solicitude for his situation. He was in the middle of a vast empire,—shut up in the centre of a hostile city,—and surrounded by multitudes sufficient to overwhelm him upon the least intimation of the will of their sovereign. [3]In this emergency, the wily Spaniard, with extraordinary daring, formed and executed[b] the plan of seizing the person of the Mexican monarch, and detained him as a hostage for the good conduct of his people. He next induced him, overawed and broken in spirit, to acknowledge himself a vassal of the Spanish crown, and to subject his dominions to the payment of an annual tribute.

2. Of the embarrassing situation of Cortez?

3. Of the seizure and treatment of Montezuma?

b. Dec.

1520.

4. Why was Cortez called from the capital, and why did the Mexicans rise in arms?

9. [4]But while Cortez was absent,[c] opposing a force that had been sent against him by the governor of Cuba, who had become jealous of his successes, the Mexicans, incited by the cruelties of the Spaniards who had been left to guard the capital and the Mexican king, flew to arms. [5]Cortez, with singular good for-

c. May.

5. What is said of the good fortune of Cortez?

* The *city of Mexico*, built by the Spaniards on the ruins of the ancient city, was long the largest town in America, but is now inferior to New York and Philadelphia. It is 170 miles from the Gulf of Mexico, and 200 from the Pacific Ocean, and is situated near the western bank of Lake Tezcuco, in the delightful Vale of Mexico, or, as it was formerly called, the Plain of Tenochtitlan, which is 230 miles in circumference, and elevated 7000 feet above the level of the ocean. The plain contains three lakes besides Tezcuco, and is surrounded by hills of moderate elevation, except on the south, where are two lofty volcanic mountains. Two of the lakes are above the level of the city, whose streets have been frequently inundated by them; but in 1689, a deep channel, 12 miles long, cut through the hills on the north, was completed, by which the superfluous waters are conveyed into the river Tula, and thence to the Panuco.

1520. tune, having subdued his enemies, and incorporated most of them with his own forces, returning, entered[a] the capital without molestation.

a. July 4

1. *How did he treat the Mexicans, and what followed?*

10. [1]Relying too much on his increased strength, he soon laid aside the mask of moderation which had hitherto concealed his designs, and treated the Mexicans like conquered subjects. They, finally convinced that they had nothing to hope but from the utter extermination of their invaders, resumed their attacks upon the Spanish quarters with additional fury. [2]In a sally which Cortez made, twelve of his soldiers were killed, and the Mexicans learned that their enemies were not invincible.

2. *What loss did the Spaniards suffer?*

3. *What is said of the interposition of Montezuma, and what occurred on his appearance?*

11. [3]Cortez, now fully sensible of his danger, tried what effect the interposition of Montezuma would have upon his irritated subjects. At sight of their king, whom they almost worshipped as a god, the weapons of the Mexicans dropped from their hands, and every head was bowed with reverence; but when, in obedience to the command of Cortez, the unhappy monarch attempted to mitigate their rage and to persuade them to lay down their arms, murmurs, threats, and reproaches ran through their ranks;—their rage broke forth with ungovernable fury, and, regardless of their monarch, they again poured in upon the Spaniards flights of arrows and volleys of stones. Two arrows wounded Montezuma before he could be removed, and a blow from a stone brought him to the ground.

4. *What then did the Mexicans do?*

12. [4]The Mexicans, on seeing their king fall by their own hands, were instantly struck with remorse, and fled with horror, as if the vengeance of heaven were pursuing them for the crime which they had committed.

5. *What is said of Montezuma's death?*

[5]Montezuma himself, scorning to survive this last humiliation, rejected with disdain the kind attentions of the Spaniards, and refusing to take any nourishment, soon terminated his wretched days.

6. *Give an account of the retreat of the Spaniards from Mexico.*

13. [6]Cortez, now despairing of an accommodation with the Mexicans, after several desperate encounters with them, began a retreat from the capital;—but innumerable hosts hemmed him in on every side, and his march was almost a continual battle. On the sixth day of the retreat, the almost exhausted Spaniards, now

reduced to a mere handful of men, encountered,[a] in a spacious valley, the whole Mexican force;—a countless multitude, extending as far as the eye could reach. [1]As no alternative remained but to conquer or die, Cortez, without giving his soldiers time for reflection, immediately led them to the charge. The Mexicans received them with unusual fortitude, yet their most numerous battalions gave way before Spanish discipline and Spanish arms. 1520.

a. July 17.

1. *Describe the great battle with the Mexicans?*

14. The very multitude of their enemies, however, pressing upon them from every side, seemed sufficient to overwhelm the Spaniards, who, seeing no end of their toil, nor any hope of victory, were on the point of yielding to despair. At this moment Cortez, observing the great Mexican standard advancing, and recollecting to have heard that on its fate depended the event of every battle, assembled a few of his bravest officers, and, at their head, cut his way through the opposing ranks, struck down the Mexican general, and secured the standard. The moment their general fell and the standard disappeared, the Mexicans, panic struck, threw away their weapons, and fled with precipitation to the mountains, making no farther opposition to the retreat of the Spaniards.

15. [2]Notwithstanding the sad reverses which he had experienced, Cortez still looked forward with confidence to the conquest of the whole Mexican empire, and, after receiving supplies and reenforcements, in December, 1520, he again departed for the interior, with a force of five hundred Spaniards and ten thousand friendly natives. After various successes and reverses, and a siege of the capital which lasted seventy-five days,—the king Guatemozin having fallen into his hands,—in August, 1521, the city yielded;[b] the fate of the empire was decided; and Mexico became a province of Spain.

2. *Give an account of the final conquest of Mexico?*

1521.

b. Aug. 28.

16. [3]Another important event in the list of Spanish discoveries, and one which is intimately connected with American history, being the final demonstration of the theory of Columbus, requires in this place a passing notice.

3. *What other important event requires a notice here?*

17. [4]Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese by birth,

4. *Who was Magellan, and what was his plan of a new route to the Indies?*

1520. who had served his country with distinguished valor in the East Indies,* believing that those fertile regions might be reached by a westerly route from Portugal, proposed the scheme to his sovereign,[a] and requested aid to carry it into execution. [1]Unsuccessful in his application, and having been coldly dismissed by his sovereign without receiving any reward for his services, he indignantly renounced his allegiance and repaired to Spain.[b]

a. Emanuel.

1. *What is said of his first application for aid?*

b. 1517.

c. Charles V.

2. *Under whose patronage did he sail and when?*

d. Aug. 20. 1519.

3. *Give an account of the voyage embracing the first circumnavigation of the Globe.*

18. [2]The Spanish emperor,[c] engaging readily in the scheme which the Portuguese monarch had rejected, a squadron of five ships was soon equipped at the public charge, and Magellan set sail[d] from Seville† in August, 1519. [3]After touching at the Canaries,‡ he stood south, crossed the equinoctial line, and spent several months in exploring the coast of South America, searching for a passage which should lead to the Indies. After spending the winter on the coast, in the spring he continued his voyage towards the south,—passed through the strait§ which bears his name, and, after sailing three months and twenty one-days through an unknown ocean, during which time his crew suffered greatly from the want of water and provisions, he discovered[e] a cluster of fertile islands, which he called the Ladrones.‖

e. March 16. 1520.

19. The fair weather and favorable winds which he had experienced induced him to bestow on the ocean through which he had passed the name of *Pacific*, which it still retains. Proceeding from the Ladrones,

---

* *East Indies* is the name given to the islands of the Indian Ocean south of Asia together with that portion of the main land which is between Persia and China.

† *Seville* is a large city beautifully situated on the left bank of the Guadalquiver in the southwestern part of Spain. It was once the chief market for the commerce of America and the Indies.

‡ The *Canaries* are a group of 14 islands belonging to Spain. The Peak of Teneriffe, on one of the more distant islands, is about 250 miles from the northwest coast of Africa, and 800 miles southwest from the Straits of Gibraltar.

§ The *Strait of Magellan* is at the southern extremity of the American continent, separating the islands of Terra del Fuego from the main land. It is a dangerous passage, more than 300 miles in length, and in some places not more than a mile across.

‖ The *Ladrones*, or the Islands of Thieves, thus named from the thievish disposition of the natives, are a cluster of islands in the Pacific Ocean about 1600 miles south east from the coast of China. When first discovered, the natives were ignorant of any country but their own, and imagined that the ancestor of their race was formed from a piece of the rock of one of their islands. They were utterly unacquainted with fire, and when Magellan, provoked by repeated thefts, burned one of their villages they thought that the fire was a beast which fed upon their dwellings.

ne soon discovered the islands now known as the **1520.**
*Phillippines.** Here, in a contest with the natives, Magellan was killed,[a] and the expedition was prosecuted under other commanders. After arriving at the Moluccas,† and taking in a cargo of spices, the only vessel of the squadron, then fit for a long voyage, sailed for Europe by way of the Cape of Good Hope,‡ and arrived[b] in Spain in September, 1522, thus accomplishing the first *circumnavigation of the globe*, and having performed the voyage in the space of three years and twenty-eight days.

a. May 6.

1522.

b. 17th Sept.

V. PAMPHILO DE NARVAEZ.—1. [1]In 1526, Pamphilo de Narvaez, the same who had been sent[c] by the governor of Cuba to arrest the career of Cortez in Mexico, solicited and obtained from the Spanish emperor, Charles V., the appointment of governor of Florida,[d] with permission to conquer the country. [2]The territory thus placed at his disposal extended, with indefinite limits, from the southern cape of the present Florida to the river of Palms,(now Panuco,§) in Mexico. [3]Having made extensive preparations, in April, 1528, Narvaez landed[e] in Florida with a force of three hundred men, of whom eighty were mounted, and erecting the royal standard, took possession of the country for the crown of Spain.

1526.

c. See p. 17.

1. *What is said of De Narvaez and his scheme of conquest?*

d. Note p. 15.

2. *What territory was placed at his disposal?*

1528.

e. April 22.

3. *What is said of his landing in Florida?*

2. [4]Striking into the interior with the hope of finding some wealthy empire like Mexico or Peru,‖ during two months the Spaniards wandered about through swamps and forests, often attacked by hordes of lurking savages, but cheered onward by the assurances of their captive guides, who, pointing to the north, were sup-

4. *The route and wanderings of the Spaniards?*

* The *Phillippines*, thus named in honor of Philip II. of Spain, who subjected them 40 years after the voyage of Magellan, are a group of more than a thousand islands, the largest of which is Luzon, about 400 miles southeast from the coast of China.

† The *Moluccas*, or Spice Islands, are a group of small islands north from New Holland, discovered by the Portuguese in 1511. They are distinguished chiefly for the production of spices, particularly nutmegs and cloves.

‡ The *Cape of Good Hope* is the most important cape of South Africa, although Cape Lagullas is farther south.

§ The *Panuco* is a small river which empties into the Gulf of Mexico 210 miles north from the Mexican capital, and about 30 miles north from Tampico.

‖ *Peru* is a country of South America, bordering on the Pacific Ocean, celebrated for its mines of gold and silver, the annual produce of which, during a great number of years, was more than four millions of dollars. Peru, when discovered by the Spaniards, was a powerful and wealthy kingdom, considerably advanced in civilization. Its conquest was completed by Pizarro in 1532.

1528. posed to describe a territory which abounded in gold.

a. June. [1]At length they arrived[a] in the fertile province of the Apallachians, in the north of Florida, but their hopes of finding gold were sadly disappointed, and the residence of the chieftain, instead of being a second Mexico, which they had pictured to themselves, proved to be a mere village of two hundred wigwams.

Their disappointed hopes?

2. What was the result of the expedition?

3. [2]They now directed their course southward, and finally came upon the sea, probably in the region of the Bay of Apallachee,* near St. Marks. Having already lost a third of their number, and despairing of being able to retrace their steps, they constructed five

b. Oct. frail boats in which they embarked,[b] but being driven out into the gulf by a storm, Narvaez and nearly all his companions perished. Four of the crew, after wandering several years through Louisiana,† Texas,‡ and Northern Mexico, and passing from tribe to tribe,

c. 1536. often as slaves, finally reached[c] a Spanish settlement.

3. What was still the prevalent belief with regard to the riches of Florida?

VI. FERDINAND DE SOTO.—1. [3]Notwithstanding the melancholy result of the expedition of Narvaez, it was still believed that in the interior of *Florida*, a name which the Spaniards applied to all North America then known, regions might yet be discovered which would vie in opulence with Mexico and Peru.

4. Who was Ferdinand de Soto, and what is said of his design of conquering Florida?

[4]Ferdinand de Soto, a Spanish cavalier of noble birth, who had acquired distinction and wealth as the lieutenant of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru, and desirous of signalizing himself still farther by some great enterprise, formed the design of conquering Florida, a

1538. country of whose riches he had formed the most extravagant ideas.

5. What did he solicit and obtain from the king of Spain?

2. [5]He therefore applied to the Spanish emperor, and requested permission to undertake the conquest of Florida at his own risk and expense. The emperor indulging high expectations from so noted a cavalier not only granted his request, but also appointed him

---

* *Apallachee* is a large open bay on the coast of Florida, south of the western part of Georgia. *St. Marks* is a town at the head of the bay.

† *Louisiana* is a name originally applied to the whole valley of the Mississippi and the country westward as far as Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. The present Louisiana is one of the United States, at the southwestern extremity of the Union.

‡ *Texas*, embracing a territory as extensive as the six New England States together with New York and New Jersey, adjoins Louisiana on the west

governor-general of Florida for life, and also of the island of Cuba[a]. [1]De Soto soon found himself surrounded by adventurers of all classes, and in April, 1538, sailed for Cuba with a fleet of seven large and three small vessels. **1538.**

a. Note p. 14.

1. *When and with what armament did he sail?*

3. [2]In Cuba the new governor was received with great rejoicings;—new accessions were made to his forces; and after completing his preparations, and leaving his wife to govern the island, he embarked for Florida, and early in June, 1539, his fleet anchored[b] in the Bay of Espiritu Santo,* or Tampa Bay. [3]His forces consisted of six hundred men, more than two hundred of whom were mounted, both infantry and cavalry being clad in complete armor. [4]Besides ample stores of food, a drove of three hundred swine was landed, with which De Soto intended to stock the country where he should settle; and these were driven with the expedition throughout most of the route.

2. *What is said of his reception in Cuba, and of his landing in Florida?*

1539.

b. June 10.

3. *Of his forces?*

4. *Of the supplies for his army?*

4. [5]After establishing a small garrison in the vicinity of Espiritu Santo, and sending most of his vessels back to Havanna,† he commenced his march into the interior, taking with him, as interpreter, a Spaniard found among the natives, who had remained in captivity since the time of Narvaez. After wandering five months through unexplored and mostly uncultivated regions, exposed to hardships and dangers and an almost continued warfare with the natives, during which several lives were lost, the party arrived,[c] in the month of November, in the more fertile country of the Apallachians, east of the Flint river,‡ and a few leagues north of the Bay of Apallachee, where it was determined to pass the winter.

5. *Give an account of the wanderings of the Spaniards in the interior?*

c. Nov. 6.

5. [6]From this place an exploring party discovered the ocean in the very place where the unfortunate Narvaez had embarked. De Soto likewise despatched thirty horsemen to Espiritu Santo, with orders for the

6. *What discovery is mentioned, and what events followed?*

* *Espiritu Santo*, now called *Tampa Bay*, is on the western coast of Florida, 200 miles southeast from St. Marks. There is no place of anchorage between the two places.

† *Havanna* the capital of Cuba, a wealthy and populous city, is on the north side of the island. It has the finest harbor in the world, capable of containing a thousand ships. The entrance is so narrow that but one vessel can pass at a time.

‡ The *Flint* river is in the western part of Georgia. It joins the Chattahoochee at the nothern boundary of Florida, and the two united form the Apalachicola.

1539. garrison to rejoin the army in their present winter quarters. The horsemen arrived with the loss of but two of their number, and the garrison rejoined De Soto, although with some loss, as, during their march, they had several desperate encounters with the natives. Two small vessels that had been retained at Espiritu Santo reached the Bay of Apallachee, and by the aid of these the coast was farther explored during the winter,[a] and the harbor of Pensacola* discovered.

a. 1539-40.

1. *In what manner did the Spaniards pass their first winter?*

6. [1]The Spaniards remained five months in winter quarters at Apallachee, supplying themselves with provisions by pillaging the surrounding country; but they were kept in constant alarm by the never-ceasing stratagems and assaults of the natives. [2]At length, in the month of March, they broke up their camp and set out[b] for a remote country, of which they had heard, to the northeast, governed, it was said, by a woman, and abounding in gold and silver. [3]De Soto had previously despatched his ships to Cuba, with orders to rendezvous in the following October at Pensacola, where he proposed to meet them, having, in the mean time, explored the country in the interior.

1540.

b. March 13.

2. *What course did the Spaniards take in the spring?*

3. *What instructions had De Soto given to his ships?*

4. *What disappointment did De Soto meet with?*

7. [4]Changing his course now to the northeast, De Soto crossed several streams which flow into the Atlantic, and probably penetrated near to the Savannah,† where he indeed found the territory of the princess, of whose wealth he had formed so high expectations; but, to his great disappointment, the fancied gold proved to be copper, and the supposed silver only thin plates of mica.

5. *Describe the route of De Soto through Georgia.*

8. [5]His direction was now towards the north, to the head waters of the Savannah and the Chattahoochee,‡ whence he crossed a branch of

PENSACOLA AND VICINITY.

* *Pensacola* is a town on the northwest side of Pensacola Bay, near the western extremity of Florida. The bay is a fine sheet of water upwards of 20 miles in length from N.E. to S.W. (See Map.)

† The *Savannah* river forms the boundary line between South Carolina and Georgia.

‡ The *Chattahoochee* river rises in the north eastern part of Georgia, near the sources of the Savannah, and, after crossing the State southwest, forms the boundary between Georgia and Alabama.

the Apalachian* chain which runs through the northern part of Georgia, and came upon the southern limits of the territory of the Cherokees[a]. [1]Hearing that there was gold in a region farther north, he despatched two horsemen, with Indian guides, to visit the country. These, after an absence of ten days, having crossed rugged and precipitous mountains, returned to the camp, bringing with them a few specimens of fine copper or brass, but none of gold or silver. **1540.**

a. Map. p. 45

1. *Why was the country of the Cherokees visited and what was the result?*

9. [2]During several months the Spaniards wandered through the valleys of Alabama, obliging the chieftains, through whose territories they passed, to march with them as hostages for the good conduct of their subjects. [3]In October they arrived[b] at Mauville,† a fortified Indian town near the junction of the Alabama‡ and the Tombeckbee. Here was fought[b] one of the most bloody battles known in Indian warfare. [4]During a contest of nine hours several thousand Indians were slain and their village laid in ashes.

2. *What is said of the wanderings of the Spaniards in Alabama?*

b. Oct. 28.

3. *What is said of Mauville, and what occurred there?*

4. *Give an account of great battle near Mobile*

10. The loss of the Spaniards was also great. Many fell in battle, others died of their wounds,—they lost many of their horses, and all their baggage was consumed in the flames. [5]The situation of the Spaniards after the battle was truly deplorable, for nearly all were wounded, and, with their baggage, they had lost their supplies of food and medicine; but, fortunately for them, the Indian power had been so completely broken that their enemies were unable to offer them any farther molestation.

5. *What was the situation of the Spaniards after the battle?*

11. [6]While at Mauville, De Soto learned from the natives that the ships he had ordered had arrived at Pensacola.[c] But, fearing that his disheartened soldiers would desert him as soon as they had an opportunity of leaving the country, and mortified at his losses, he determined to send no tidings of himself

6. *What information did De Soto receive here, and what were his next movements?*

c. Note p. 26.

* The *Apaluchian* or *Alleghany Mountains* extend from the northern part of Georgia to the State of New York, at a distance of about 250 miles from the coast, and nearly parallel to it. They divide the waters which flow into the Atlantic from those which flow into the Mississippi.

† Pronounced *Mo-veel*, whence Mobile derives its name.

‡ The *Alabama* river rises in the N.W. part of Georgia, and through most of its course is called the *Coosa*. The *Tombeckbee* rises in the N.E. part of Mississippi. The two unite 35 miles north from Mobile, in the State of Alabama, and through several channels empty into Mobile Bay

1540. until he had crowned his enterprise with success by discovering new regions of wealth. He therefore
a. Nov. 28. turned from the coast and again advanced[a] into the interior. His followers, accustomed to implicit obedience, obeyed the command of their leader without remonstrance.

b. 1540—41. 12. [1]The following winter[b] he passed in the country of the Chickasaws, probably on the western bank of the Yazoo,* occupying an Indian village which had been deserted on his approach. Here the Indians attacked him at night, in the dead of winter, and burned the village; yet they were finally repulsed, but not till several Spaniards had fallen. In the burning of the village the Spaniards lost many of their horses, most of their swine, and the few remaining clothes which they had saved from the fires of Mauville. During the remainder of the winter they suffered much from the cold, and were almost constantly harassed by the savages.

1541.

1. *What was the situation of the Spaniards during their second winter, and what losses did they suffer?*

2. *When and where did they cross the Mississippi?*

c. May 5. 13. [2]At the opening of spring the Spaniards resumed[c] their march, continuing their course to the northwest until they came to the Mississippi,† which they crossed, probably at the lowest Chickasaw bluff, one of the ancient crossing places, between the thirty fourth and the thirty-fifth parallel of latitude. [3]Thence, after reaching the St. Francis,‡ they continued north until they arrived in the vicinity of New Madrid, in the southern part of the State of Missouri.

3. *What course did they then take?*

4. *How did they spend the summer and where did they pass their third winter?*

d. 1541-2. 14. [4]After traversing the country, during the summer, to the distance of two or three hundred miles west of the Mississippi, they passed the winter[d] on the banks of the Wachita.§ [5]In the spring they passed

1542.

* The *Yazoo* river rises in the northern part of the State of Mississippi, and running southwest, enters the Mississippi river 65 miles north from Natchez.

† The *Mississippi* river, which, in the Indian language, signifies the *Father of Waters*, rises 160 miles west from Lake Superior. Its source is Itasca Lake, in Iowa Territory. After a winding course of more than 3000 miles, in a southerly direction, it discharges its vast flood of turbid waters into the Gulf of Mexico. It is navigable for steam-boats to the Falls of St. Anthony, more than 2000 miles from its mouth by the river's course. The Mississippi and its tributary streams drain a vast valley, extending from the Alleghanies to the Rocky Mountains, containing more than a million of square miles of the richest country in the world;—a territory six times greater than the whole kingdom of France.

‡ The *St. Francis* river rises in Missouri, and running south, enters the Mississippi 90 miles north from the mouth of the Arkansas.

§ The *Wachita* river rises in the western part of the State of Arkansas, and run-

down that river to the Mississippi, where De Soto was taken sick and died.[a] To conceal his death from the natives, his body, wrapped in a mantle, and placed in a rustic coffin, in the stillness of midnight, and in the presence of a few faithful followers, was silently sunk in the middle of the stream. **1542**

5. *What is said of the death of De Soto?*

a. May 31

15. [1]De Soto had appointed his successor, under whom the remnant of the party now attempted to penetrate by land to Mexico. They wandered several months through the wilderness, traversing the western prairies, the hunting grounds of roving and warlike tribes, but hearing no tidings of white people, and finding their way obstructed by rugged mountains, they were constrained to retrace their steps. [2]In December they came upon the Mississippi a short distance above the mouth of the Red* river, and here they passed the winter,[b] during which time they constructed seven large boats, or brigantines. [3]In these they embarked on the twelfth of July, in the following year, and in seventeen days reached the Gulf of Mexico. Fearing to trust themselves far from land in their frail barks, they continued along the coast, and on the twentieth of September, 1543, the remnant of the party, half naked and famishing with hunger, arrived safely at a Spanish settlement near the mouth of the river Panuco[c] in Mexico.

1. *Of the attempt of the Spaniards to reach Mexico by land?*

2. *Where and in what manner did they pass their fourth winter?*

b. 1542-3.

1543.

3. *What was their subsequent course and in what manner did the remnant of the party reach Mexico?*

c. Note p. 23.

ning S.E. receives many tributaries, and enters the Red river 30 miles from the junction of the latter with the Mississippi.

* The *Red* river rises on the confines of Texas, forms its northern boundary, and enters the Mississippi 60 miles N.W from New Orleans.

1497.

CHAPTER II.

1. *Of what does Chapter II. treat?*

[1]NORTHERN AND EASTERN COASTS OF NORTH AMERICA FROM THE DISCOVERY OF THE CONTINENT BY THE CABOTS, IN 1497, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, IN VIRGINIA, IN 1607. 110 YEARS.

(Pronounced a. Car-te-âre b. Re-bo. c. Lo-don-e-âre. d. Roash.)

DIVISIONS.

2. *What are the Divisions of Chapter II.?*

I. [2]John and Sebastian Cabot.—II. Gaspar Cortereal.—III. Verrazani.—IV. James Cartier.[a]—V. Roberval.—VI. Ribault,[b] Laudonniere,[c] and Melendez.—VII. Gilbert, Raleigh, Grenville, &c.—VIII. Marquis de la Roche.[d]—IX. Bartholomew Gosnold.—X. De Monts.—XI. North and South Virginia.

3. *Give an account of the voyage and discovery made by the Cabots.*

I. JOHN AND SEBASTIAN CABOT.—1. [3]Shortly after the return of Columbus from his first voyage, John Cabot, a Venetian by birth, but then residing in England, believing that new lands might be discovered in the northwest, applied to Henry VII. for a commission of discovery. Under this commission[e] Cabot, taking with him his son Sebastian, then a young man, sailed from the port of Bristol* in the spring of 1497.

e. Dated March 5th, (O. S.) 1496.

1497.

2. On the 3d of July following he discovered land, which he called Prima Vista, or first seen, and which until recently was supposed to be the island of Newfoundland,[f] but which is now believed to have been the coast of Labrador.[f] After sailing south a short distance, and probably discovering the coast of Newfoundland, anxious to announce his success, Cabot returned to England without making any farther discovery.

f. Note, p. 14.

1498.

4. *Of the second voyage by Sebastian Cabot?*

3. [4]In 1498 Sebastian Cabot, with a company of three hundred men, made a second voyage, with the hope of finding a northwest passage to India. He explored the continent from Labrador to Virginia, and perhaps to the coast of Florida;[g] when want of provisions compelled him to return to England.

g. Note, p. 15.

* *Bristol*, a commercial city of England, next in importance to London and Liverpool, is on the river Avon, four miles distant from its entrance into the river Severn, where commences the Bristol Channel. It is 115 miles west from London and 140 south from Liverpool.

4. [1]He made several subsequent voyages to the American coast, and, in 1517, entered one of the straits which leads into Hudson's Bay. In 1526, having entered the service of Spain, he explored the River La Plata, and part of the coast of South America. Returning to England during the reign of Edward VI., he was made Grand Pilot of the kingdom, and received a pension for his services. **1500.**

1. *Of the subsequent voyages of Cabot?*

II. GASPAR CORTEREAL.—1. [2]Soon after the successful voyage of the Cabots, which resulted in the discovery of North America, the king of Portugal, in the year 1500, despatched Gaspar Cortereal to the coasts of America, on a voyage of discovery. After exploring the coast of Labrador[a] several hundred miles, in the vain hope of finding a passage to India,[b] Cortereal freighted his ships with more than fifty of the natives, whom, on his return,[c] he sold into slavery.

2. *Give an account of the voyage of Cortereal?*

1500.

1501.

a. Note p. 14.

b. Note p. 22.

c. Aug.

2. [3]Cortereal sailed on a second voyage, with a determination to pursue his discovery, and bring back a cargo of slaves. Not returning as soon as was expected, his brother sailed in search of him, but no accounts of either ever again reached Portugal.

3. *What is said of the second voyage?*

III. VERRAZANI.—1. [4]At an early period the fisheries of Newfoundland began to be visited by the French and the English, but the former attempted no discoveries in America until 1523. [5]In the latter part of this year Francis I. fitted out a squadron of four ships, the command of which he gave to John Verrazani, a Florentine navigator of great skill and celebrity. Soon after the vessels had sailed, three of them became so damaged in a storm that they were compelled to return; but Verrazani proceeded in a single vessel, with a determination to make new discoveries. Sailing[e] from Madeira,* in a westerly direction, after having encountered a terrible tempest, he reached[f] the coast of America, probably in the latitude of Wilmington.†

1504

4. *What is said of the Newfoundland fisheries?*

5. *Give an account of the voyage of Verrazani.*

1524.

e. Jan. 27.

f. March.

* The *Madeiras* are a cluster of islands, north of the Canaries, 400 miles west from the coast of Morocco, and nearly 700 southwest from the Straits of Gibraltar. *Madeira*, the principal island, celebrated for its wines, is 54 miles long, and consists of a collection of lofty mountains, on the lower slopes of which vines are cultivated.

† *Wilmington.* (See Note and Map, p. 155.)

1524. 2. [1]After exploring the coast some distance north and south, without being able to find a harbor, he was obliged to send a boat on shore to open an intercourse with the natives. The savages at first fled, but soon recovering their confidence, they entered into an amicable traffic with the strangers.

1. *What is said of the first landing, and intercourse with the natives?*

2. *What occurred on the coast of New Jersey?*

3. [2]Proceeding north along the open coast of New Jersey, and no convenient landing-place being discovered, a sailor attempted to swim ashore through the surf; but, frightened by the numbers of the natives who thronged the beach, he endeavored to return, when a wave threw him terrified and exhausted upon the shore. He was, however, treated with great kindness; his clothes were dried by the natives; and, when recovered from his fright and exhaustion, he was permitted to swim back to the vessel.

3. *Near New York?*

4. [3]Landing again farther north, probably near the city of New York,* the voyagers, prompted by curiosity, kidnapped and carried away an Indian child.

a. May 1.

4. *What was the character of the natives in the vicinity of Newport?*

[4]It is supposed that Verrazani entered[a] the haven of Newport,† where he remained fifteen days. Here the natives were liberal, friendly, and confiding; and the country was the richest that had yet been seen.

5. *Farther north?*

b. Note p. 14.

5. [5]Verrazani still proceeded north, and explored the coast as far as Newfoundland.[b] The natives of the northern regions were hostile and jealous, and would traffick only for weapons of iron or steel.

6. *What is said of the name New France?*

[6]Verrazani gave to the whole region which he had discovered the name of NEW FRANCE; an appellation which was afterwards confined to Canada, and by which that country was known while it remained in the possession of the French.

1534. IV. JAMES CARTIER.—1. [7]After an interval of ten years, another expedition was planned by the French; and James Cartier, a distinguished mariner of St. Malo,‡ was selected to conduct a voyage to Newfoundland.

7. *Give an account of the first voyage of Cartier?*

---

* *New York.* (See Note and Map, p. 117.)

† *Newport.* (See Note p. 114. and Map, p. 112.)

‡ *St. Malo* is a small seaport town in the N.W. part of France, in the ancient province of Brittany, or Bretagne, 200 miles west from Paris. The town is on a rocky elevation, called St. Aaron, surrounded by the sea at high water, but connected with the mainland by a causeway. The inhabitants were early and extensively engaged in the Newfoundland cod fishery.

After having minutely surveyed[a] the northern coast of that island, he passed through the Straits of Belleisle, into the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and entered the mouth of the river of the same name; but the weather becoming boisterous, and the season being far advanced, after erecting a cross,[b]—taking possession of the country in the name of the king of France,—and inducing two of the natives to accompany him, he set sail[c] on his return, and, in less than thirty days, entered[d] the harbor of St. Malo in safety. **1534.**

a. June.

b. At the Bay of Gaspee.

c. Aug. 15.

d. Sept. 15.

2. [1]In 1535 Cartier sailed[e] with three vessels, on a second voyage to Newfoundland, and entering the gulf on the day of St. Lawrence, he gave it the name of that martyr. Being informed by the two natives who had returned with him, that far up the stream which he had discovered to the westward, was a large town, the capital of the whole country, he sailed onwards, entered the river St. Lawrence, and, by means of his interpreters, opened a friendly communication with the natives. 1535.

e. May 29.

1. *Of the second voyage?*

f In Quebec harbor. See map, p. 189.

3. [2]Leaving his ship safely moored,[f] Cartier proceeded[g] with the pinnace and two boats up the river, as far as the principal Indian settlement of Hochelaga, on the site of the present city of Montreal,* where he was received[h] in a friendly manner. Rejoining his ships, he passed the winter[i] where they were anchored; during which time twenty-five of his crew died of the scurvy, a malady until then unknown to Europeans. 1536.

g. Sept. 29.

2. *How far did he explore the St. Lawrence, and what happened during the winter?*

h. Oct. 13.

i. 1535—6.

4. [3]At the approach of spring, after having taken formal possession[j] of the country in the name of his sovereign, Cartier prepared to return. An act of treachery, at his departure,[k] justly destroyed the confidence which the natives had hitherto reposed in their guests. The Indian king, whose kind treatment of the French merited a more generous return, was decoyed on board one of the vessels and carried to France.

j. May 13.

3. *What act of treachery is mentioned?*

k. May 16

MONTREAL AND VIC.

* *Montreal*, the largest town in Canada, is situated on the S.E. side of a fertile island of the same name about 30 miles long and 10 broad, inclosed by the divided channel of the St. Lawrence. The city is about 140 miles S.W. from Quebec, but farther by the course of the river.

1540. V. ROBERVAL.—1. [1]Notwithstanding the advantages likely to result from founding colonies in America, the French government, adopting the then prevalent notion that no new countries were valuable except such as produced gold and silver, made no immediate attempts at colonization.

1. What was the prevalent opinion with regard to the value of new countries?

2. [2]At length a wealthy nobleman, the Lord of Roberval, requested permission to pursue the discovery and form a settlement. This the king readily granted, and Roberval received[a] the empty titles of Lord, Lieutenant-general, and Viceroy, of all the islands and countries hitherto discovered either by the French or the English.

2. What is said of the designs and titles of Roberval?

1540. a. Jan.

3. [3]While Roberval was delayed in making extensive preparations for his intended settlement, Cartier, whose services could not be dispensed with, received a subordinate command, and, in 1541, sailed[b] with five ships already prepared. The Indian king had in the mean while died in France; and on the arrival of Cartier in the St. Lawrence, he was received by the natives with jealousy and distrust, which soon broke out into open hostilities. [4]The French then built for their defence, near the present site of Quebec,* a fort which they named Charlesbourg, where they passed the winter.

3. Give an account of the third voyage of Cartier?

1541. b. June 2.

4. What Fort was erected?

1542. 4. [5]Roberval arrived at Newfoundland in June of the following year, with three ships, and emigrants for founding a colony; but a misunderstanding having arisen between him and Cartier, the latter secretly set sail for France. Roberval proceeded up the St. Lawrence to the place which Cartier had abandoned, where he erected two forts and passed a tedious winter.[c] After some unsuccessful attempts to discover a passage to the East Indies,[d] he brought his colony back to France, and the design of forming a settlement was abandoned. In 1549 Roberval again sailed on a voyage of discovery, but he was never again heard of.

5. What is said of the arrival of Roberval, and the failure of his schemes?

c. 1542–3.

d. Note p. 22.

1549.

* *Quebec*, a strongly fortified city of Canada, is situated on the N.W. side of the St. Lawrence, on a promontory formed by that river and the St. Charles. The city consists of the Upper and the Lower Town,—the latter on a narrow strip of land near the water's edge; and the former on a plain difficult of access, more than 200 feet higher. Cape Diamond, the most elevated point of the Upper Town, is 345 feet above the level of the river, and commands a grand view of an extensive tract of country. (See Map p. 189.)

VI. RIBAULT, LAUDONNIERE, AND MELENDEZ.—1. [1]Coligni, admiral of France, having long desired to establish in America a refuge for French Protestants, at length obtained a commission from the king for that purpose, and, in 1562, despatched[a] a squadron to Florida,[b] under the command of John Ribault. [2]Arriving on the coast in May, he discovered the St. Johns River, which he named the river of May; but the squadron continued north until it arrived at Port Royal* entrance, near the southern boundary of Carolina, where it was determined to establish the colony. **1562.**

1. *What is said of the attempts of Coligni to form a settlement in America?*

1562.

a. Feb. 28.

b. Note p. 15.

2. *What discoveries were made?*

2. [3]Here a fort was erected, and named Fort Charles, and twenty-six men were left to keep possession of the country, while Ribault returned[c] to France for farther emigrants and supplies. [4]The promised reenforcement not arriving, the colony began to despair of assistance; and, in the following spring, having constructed a rude brigantine, they embarked for home, but had nearly perished by famine, at sea, when they fell in with and were taken on board of an English vessel.

3. *What Fort was erected in Carolina, and where?*

c. July.

4. *Why was the settlement abandoned?*

1563.

3. [5]In 1564, through the influence of Coligni, another expedition was planned, and in July a colony was established on the river St. Johns,† and left under the command of Laudonniere. [6]Many of the emigrants, however, being dissolute and improvident, the supplies of food were wasted; and a party, under the pretence of desiring to escape from famine, were permitted to embark[d] for France; but no sooner had they departed than they commenced a career of piracy against the Spanish. The remnant were on the point of embarking for France, when Ribault arrived and assumed the command, bringing supplies, and additional emigrants with their families.

1564.

5. *When and where was the second colony established?*

6. *What were the character and conduct of the colonists?*

d. Dec.

1565.

VICINITY OF PORT ROYAL.

* *Port Royal* is an island 12 miles in length, on the coast of South Carolina, on the east side of which is situated the town of Beaufort, 50 miles S.W. from Charleston. Between the island and the mainland is an excellent harbor.

† The *St. Johns*, the principal river of Florida, rises in the eastern part of the territory, about 25 miles from the coast, and runs north, expanding into frequent lakes, until within 20 miles of its mouth, when it turns to the east, and falls into the Atlantic, 35 miles north from St. Augustine (See Map next page.)

1565. 4. [1]Meanwhile news arrived in Spain that a company of French Protestants had settled in Florida, within the Spanish territory, and Melendez, who had obtained the appointment of governor of the country upon the condition of completing its conquest within three years, departed on his expedition, with the determination of speedily extirpating the heretics.

a. Note p. 15. 1. *What occurred when the Spaniards heard of the settlement?*

5. [2]Early in September,[b] 1565, he came in sight of Florida, and soon discovering a part of the French fleet, gave them chase, but was unable to overtake them. On the seventeenth of September Melendez entered a beautiful harbor, and the next day,[c] after taking formal possession of the country, and proclaiming the king of Spain monarch of all North America, laid the foundations of St. Augustine.*

b. Sept. 7. 2. *Give an account of the arrival of Melendez and the founding of St. Augustine.*

c. Sept. 18.

3. *What became of the French fleet?*

6. [3]Soon after, the French fleet having put to sea with the design of attacking the Spaniards in the harbor of St. Augustine, and being overtaken by a furious storm, every ship was wrecked on the coast, and the French settlement was left in a defenceless state. [4]The Spaniards now made their way through the forests, and, surprising[d] the French fort, put to death all its inmates, save a few who fled into the woods, and who subsequently escaped on board two French ships which had remained in the harbor. Over the mangled remains of the French was placed the inscription, "We do this not as unto Frenchmen, but as unto heretics." The helpless shipwrecked men being soon discovered, although invited to rely on the clemency of Melendez, were all massacred, except a few Catholics and a few mechanics, who were reserved as slaves.

4. *Give an account of the destruction of the French colony.*

d. Oct. 1.

VICINITY OF ST. AUGUSTINE, AND ST. JOHNS RIVER.

HARBOR OF ST. AUGUSTINE.

* *St. Augustine* is a town on the eastern coast of Florida, 350 miles north from the southern point of Florida, and 35 miles south from the mouth of the St Johns river. It is situated on the S. side of a peninsula, having on the east Matanzas Sound, which separates it from Anastatia island. The city is low, but healthy and pleasant.

7. [1]Although the French court heard of this outrage with apathy, it did not long remain unavenged. De Gourgues, a soldier of Gascony,* having fitted[a] out three ships at his own expense, surprised two of the Spanish forts on the St. Johns river, early in 1568, and hung their garrisons on the trees, placing over them the inscription, "I do this not as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as unto traitors, robbers, and murderers." De Gourgues not being strong enough to maintain his position, hastily retreated,[b] and the Spaniards retained possession of the country. **1566.**

a. 1567.

1. *In what manner were the French avenged?*

b. May

VII. GILBERT, RALEIGH, GRENVILLE, &c.—1. [2]In 1583 Sir Humphrey Gilbert, under a charter from Queen Elizabeth, sailed[c] with several vessels, with the design of forming a settlement in America; but a succession of disasters defeated the project, and, on the homeward voyage, the vessel in which Gilbert sailed was wrecked,[d] and all on board perished. **1583.**

2. *Give an account of the voyage of Gilbert.*

c. June.

d. Sept.

2. [3]His brother-in-law, Sir Walter Raleigh, not disheartened by the fate of his relative, soon after obtained[e] for himself an ample patent, vesting him with almost unlimited powers, as lord proprietor, over all the lands which he should discover between the 33d and 40th degrees of north latitude. [4]Under this patent, in 1584, he despatched, for the American coast, two vessels under the command of Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow. **1584.**

3. *Of the patent of Raleigh.*

e. April 4.

4. *Of the voyage of Amidas and Barlow*

3. Arriving on the coast of Carolina in the month of July, they visited the islands in Pamlico† and Albemarle‡ Sound, took possession of the country in the name of the queen of England, and, after spending several weeks in trafficking with the natives, returned without attempting a settlement. [5]The glowing de-

5. *What name was given to the country, and why?*

* *Gascony* was an ancient province in the southwest of France, lying chiefly between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. "The Gascons are a spirited and a fiery race, but their habit of exaggeration, in relating their exploits, has made the term *gasconade* proverbial."

† *Pamlico Sound* is a large bay on the coast of N. Carolina, nearly a hundred miles long from N.E. to S.W., and from 15 to 25 miles broad. It is separated from the ocean throughout its whole length by a beach of sand hardly a mile wide, near the middle of which is the dangerous Cape Hatteras. Ocracock Inlet, 35 miles S.W. from Cape Hatteras, is the only entrance which admits ships of large burden.

‡ *Albemarle Sound* is north of and connects with Pamlico Sound, and is likewise separated from the ocean by a narrow sand beach. It is about 60 miles long from east to west, and from 4 to 15 miles wide.

1584. scription which they gave of the beauty and fertility of the country, induced Elizabeth, who esteemed her reign signalized by the discovery of these regions, to bestow upon them the name of VIRGINIA, as a memorial that they had been discovered during the reign of a maiden queen.

1585. 4. [1]Encouraged by their report, Raleigh made active preparations to form a settlement; and, in the following year, 1585, despatched[a] a fleet of seven vessels under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, with Ralph Lane as governor of the intended colony. After some disasters on the coast, the fleet arrived at Roanoke,* an island in Albemarle Sound, whence, leaving the emigrants under Lane to establish the colony, Grenville returned[b] to England.

a. April 19.

1. *Give an account of the first attempt to form a settlement at Roanoke.*

b. Sept.

1586. 5. [2]The impatience of the colonists to acquire sudden wealth gave a wrong direction to their industry, and the cultivation of the earth was neglected, in the idle search after mines of gold and silver. Their treatment of the natives soon provoked hostilities;—their supplies of provisions, which they had hitherto received from the Indians, were withdrawn;—famine stared them in the face; and they were on the point of dispersing in quest of food, when Sir Francis Drake arrived[c] with a fleet from the West Indies.[d]

2. *What was the conduct of the colonists?*

c. June.

d. Note p. 14.

6. [3]He immediately devised measures for furnishing the colony with supplies; but a small vessel, laden with provisions, which was designed to be left for that purpose, being destroyed by a sudden storm, and the colonists becoming discouraged, he yielded to their unanimous request, and carried them back to England. Thus was the first English settlement abandoned[e] after an existence of little less than a year.

3. *Under what circumstances was the settlement abandoned?*

e. June 29.

7. [4]A few days after the departure of the fleet, a vessel, despatched by Raleigh, arrived[f] with a supply of stores for the colony, but finding the settlement deserted,

4. *What events happened soon after the departure of the colony?*

f. July.

ROANOKE I. AND VICINITY

* *Roanoke* is an island on the coast of North Carolina, between Pamlico and Albemarle sounds. The north point of the island is 5 miles west from the Old Roanoke Inlet, which is now closed. The English fort and colony were at the north end of the island. (See Map.)

immediately returned. Scarcely had this vessel departed, when Sir Richard Grenville arrived with three ships. After searching in vain for the colony which he had planted, he likewise returned, leaving fifteen men on the island of Roanoke to keep possession of the country. **1586.**

8. [1]Notwithstanding the ill success of the attempts of Raleigh to establish a colony in his new territory, neither his hopes nor his resources were yet exhausted. Determining to plant an agricultural state, early in the following year he sent out a company of emigrants with their wives and families,—granted a charter of incorporation for the settlement, and established a municipal government for his intended "city of Raleigh." 1587.

1. *Give an account of the second attempt to form a settlement.*

9. [2]On the arrival[a] of the emigrants at Roanoke, where they expected to find the men whom Grenville had left, they found the fort which had been built there in ruins; the houses were deserted; and the bones of their former occupants were scattered over the plain. At the same place, however, they determined to establish the colony; and here they laid the foundations for their "city."

a. Aug.

2. *What disappointment happened to the emigrants on their arrival?*

10. [3]Soon finding that they were destitute of many things which were essential to their comfort, their governor, Captain John White, sailed[b] for England, to obtain the necessary supplies. [4]On his arrival he found the nation absorbed by the threats of a Spanish invasion; and the patrons of the new settlement were too much engaged in public measures to attend to a less important and remote object. Raleigh, however, in the following year, 1588, despatched[c] White with supplies, in two vessels; but the latter, desirous of a gainful voyage, ran in search of Spanish prizes; until, at length, one of his vessels was overpowered, boarded, and rifled, and both ships were compelled to return to England.

3. *What is said of the return of Captain White?*

b. Sept. 6.

4. *Under what circumstances was the colony abandoned and finally lost?*

1588.

c. May 2.

11. Soon after, Raleigh assigned[d] his patent to a company of merchants in London; and it was not until 1590 that White was enabled to return[e] in search of the colony; and then the island of Roanoke was deserted. No traces of the emigrants could be found. The design of establishing a colony was abandoned, and the country was again left[f] to the undisturbed possession of the natives.

d. March 17 1589.

1590.

e. Aug.

f. Sept.

1598. VIII. MARQUIS DE LA ROCHE.—1. [1]In 1598, the Marquis de la Roche, a French nobleman, received from the king of France a commission for founding a French colony in America. Having equipped several vessels, he sailed with a considerable number of settlers, most of whom, however, he was obliged to draw from the prisons of Paris. On Sable* island, a barren spot near the coast of Nova Scotia, forty men were left to form a settlement.

1. What is said of the attempt of De la Roche to form a settlement?

2. What was the fate of the colony?

2. [2]La Roche dying soon after his return, the colonists were neglected; and when, after seven years, a vessel was sent to inquire after them, only twelve of them were living. The dungeons from which they had been liberated were preferable to the hardships which they had suffered. The emaciated exiles were carried back to France, where they were kindly received by the king, who pardoned their crimes, and made them a liberal donation.

1602. IX. BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD.—1. [3]In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold sailed[a] from Falmouth,† England, and abandoning the circuitous route by the Canaries[b] and the West Indies,[c] made a direct voyage across the Atlantic, and in seven weeks reached[d] the American continent, probably near the northern extremity of Massachusetts Bay.‡ [4]Not finding a good harbor, and sailing southward, he discovered and landed[e] upon a promontory which he called Cape Cod.§ Sailing thence, and pursuing his course along the coast, he discovered[f] several islands, one of which he named Elizabeth,‖ and another Martha's Vineyard.¶

3. Give an account of the voyage of Gosnold.

a. April 5.
b Note p. 22.
c Note p. 14.
d. May.

4. What discoveries did he make?

e. May 24.
f. June 1—4.

---

* *Sable* island is 90 miles S.E. from the eastern point of Nova Scotia.

† *Falmouth* is a seaport town at the entrance of the English Channel, near the southwestern extremity of England. It is 50 miles S.W. from Plymouth, has an excellent harbor, and a roadstead capable of receiving the largest fleets.

‡ *Massachusetts Bay* is a large bay on the eastern coast of Massachusetts, between the headlands of Cape Ann on the north, and Cape Cod on the south.

§ *Cape Cod*, thus named from the number of codfish taken there by its discoverer, is 50 miles S.E. from Boston.

‖ *Elizabeth Islands* are a group of 13 islands south of Buzzard's Bay, and from 20 to 30 miles E. and S.E. from Newport, Rhode Island. Nashawn, the largest, is 7 and a half miles long. Cattahunk, the one named by Gosnold Elizabeth Island, is two miles and a half long and three quarters of a mile broad.

¶ *Martha's Vineyard*, three or four miles S.E. from the Elizabeth Islands, is 19 miles in length from E. to W. and from 3 to 10 miles in width. The island called by Gosnold Martha's Vineyard is now called No Man's Land, a small island four or five miles south from Martha's Vineyard. When or why the name was changed is not known.

2. [1]Here it was determined to leave a portion of the crew for the purpose of forming a settlement, and a storehouse and fort were accordingly erected; but distrust of the Indians, who began to show hostile intentions, and the despair of obtaining seasonable supplies, defeated the design, and the whole party embarked[a] for England. [2]The return occupied but five weeks, and the entire voyage only four months. **1602.**

1. *What is said of the attempt to form a settlement?*

a. June 28.

2. *What was the length of the voyage?*

3. [3]Gosnold and his companions brought back so favorable reports of the regions visited, that, in the following year, a company of Bristol[b] merchants despatched[c] two small vessels, under the command of Martin Pring, for the purpose of exploring the country, and opening a traffic with the natives. Pring landed[d] on the coast of Maine,—discovered some of its principal rivers,—and examined the coast of Massachusetts as far as Martha's Vineyard. The whole voyage occupied but six months. In 1606, Pring repeated the voyage, and made a more accurate survey of Maine.

3. *Give an account of the voyages and discoveries of Martin Pring.*

1603.

b. Note p. 36.

c. April 20.

d. June.

X. De Monts.—1. [4]In 1603, the king of France granted[e] to De Monts, a gentleman of distinction, the sovereignty of the country from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude; that is, from one degree south of New York city,[f] to one north of Montreal.[g] [5]Sailing[h] with two vessels, in the spring of 1604, he arrived at Nova Scotia[i] in May, and spent the summer in trafficking with the natives, and examining the coasts preparatory to a settlement.

4. *What grant of land was made to De Monts?*

e. Nov. 8.

f. Note p. 117

g. Note p. 33.

1604.

h. March 7.

i. Note p. 14.

5. *Give an account of the voyage of De Monts.*

2. [6]Selecting an island near the mouth of the river St. Croix,* on the coast of New Brunswick, he there erected a fort and passed a rigorous winter,[j] his men suffering much from the want of suitable provisions. [7]In the following spring, 1605, De Monts removed to a place on the Bay of Fundy;† and here was formed

6. *Of his first winter?*

j. 1604—5.

1605.

7. *Of the settlement of Port Royal.*

* The *St. Croix* river, called by the Indians *Schoodic*, empties into Passamaquoddy Bay at the eastern extremity of Maine. It was the island of the same name, a few miles up the river, on which the French settled. By the treaty of 1783 the St. Croix was made the eastern boundary of the United States, but it was uncertain what river was the St. Croix until the remains of the French fort were discovered.

† The *Bay of Fundy*, remarkable for its high tides, lies between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. It is nearly 200 miles in length from S.W. to N.E. and 75 miles across at its entrance, gradually narrowing towards the head of the bay. At the entrance the tide is of the ordinary height, about eight feet, but at the head of the bay it rises 60 feet, and is so rapid as often to overtake and sweep off animals feeding on the shore

1605. the first permanent French settlement in America. The settlement was named Port Royal,* and the whole country, embracing the present New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the adjacent islands, was called ACADIA.

1608. 1. *What more is said of De Monts?*

3. [1]In 1608, De Monts, although deprived of his former commission, having obtained from the king of France the grant of the monopoly of the fur trade on the river St. Lawrence, fitted out two vessels for the purpose of forming a settlement; but not finding it convenient to command in person, he placed them under Samuel Champlain, who had previously visited those regions.

2. *Give an account of the voyage of Champlain, and the settlement of Quebec.*

a. April 13.
b. June 3.
c. July 3.
d. Note p. 34.

4. [2]The expedition sailed[a] in April, and in June arrived[b] at Tadoussac, a barren spot at the mouth of the Saguenay† river, hitherto the chief seat of the traffic in furs. Thence Champlain continued to ascend the river until he had passed the Isle of Orleans,‡ when he selected[c] a commodious place for a settlement, on the site of the present city of Quebec,[d] and near the place where Cartier had passed the winter, and erected a fort, in 1541. From this time is dated the first permanent settlement of the French in New France or Canada.

1606. 2. *What is said of North Virginia and South Virginia?*

XI. NORTH AND SOUTH VIRGINIA.—1. [2]In 1606 James the 1st, of England, claiming all that portion of North America which lies between the 34th and the 45th degrees of north latitude, embracing the country from Cape Fear§ to Halifax,‖ divided this territory into two nearly equal districts; the one, called NORTH VIRGINIA, extending from the 41st to the 45th degree;

---

* *Port Royal* (now Annapolis), once the capital of French Acadia, is situated on the east bank of the river and bay of Annapolis, in the western part of Nova Scotia, a short distance from the Bay of Fundy. It has an excellent harbor, in which a thousand vessels might anchor in security.

† The *Saguenay* river empties into the St. Lawrence from the north, 130 miles N.E from Quebec.

‡ The *Isle of Orleans* is a fertile island in the St. Lawrence, five miles below Quebec. It is about 25 miles long and 5 broad. (See Map, p. 189.)

§ *Cape Fear* is the southern point of Smith's island, at the mouth of Cape Fear river on the coast of N. Carolina, 150 miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map, p. 155.)

‖ *Halifax*, the capital of Nova Scotia, is situated on the S.W. side of the Bay of Chebucto, which is on the S.E. coast of Nova Scotia. The town is 10 miles from the sea, and has an excellent harbor of 10 square miles. It is about 450 miles N.E. from Boston.

and the other, called SOUTH VIRGINIA, from the 34th to the 38th. **1606.**

2. [1]The former he granted[a] to a company of "knights, gentlemen, and merchants," of the west of England, called the *Plymouth Company;* and the latter to a company of "noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants," mostly resident in London, and called the *London Company.* The intermediate district, from the 38th to the 41st degree, was open to both companies; but neither was to form a settlement within one hundred miles of the other.

a. April 20.
1. *To what companies were these districts granted?*

3. [2]The supreme government of each district was to be vested in a council residing in England, the members of which were to be appointed by the king, and to be removed at his pleasure. The local administration of the affairs of each colony was to be committed to a council residing within its limits, likewise to be appointed by the king, and to act conformably to his instructions. [3]The effects of these regulations were, that all executive and legislative powers were placed wholly in the hands of the king, that the colonists were deprived of the rights of self-government,—and the companies received nothing but a simple charter of incorporation for commercial purposes.

2. *How were the governments of these districts established?*

3. *What were the effects of these regulations?*

4. [4]Soon after the grant, the Plymouth Company despatched[b] a vessel to examine the country; but before the voyage was completed she was captured[c] by the Spaniards. Another vessel was soon after sent out for the same purpose, which returned with so favorable an account of the country, that, in the following year, the company sent out a colony of a hundred planters under the command of George Popham.

b. Aug. 22.
c. Nov. 22.
4. *Give an account of the attempts of the Plymouth Company to examine the country.*

1607.

5. [5]They landed[d] at the mouth of the Kennebec,* where they erected a few rude cabins, a store-house, and some slight fortifications; after which, the vessels sailed[e] for England, leaving forty-five emigrants in the plantation, which was named St. George. The winter was intensely cold, and the sufferings of the colony,

d. Aug. 21.
5. *Of the attempted settlement at Kennebec.*
e. Dec. 15

* The *Kennebec*, a river of Maine, west of the Penobscot, falls into the ocean 120 miles N.E. from Boston. The place where the *Sagadahoc colony* (as it is usually called) passed the winter, is in the present town of Phippsburg, which is composed of a long narrow peninsula at the mouth of the Kennebec river, having the river on the east. *Hills Point*, a mile above the S.E. corner of the peninsula, was the site of the colony.

1606. from famine and hardships, were extremely severe. They lost their store-house by fire, and their president by death; and, in the following year, abandoned the settlement and returned to England.

. Of the expedition sent out by the London Company?

6. [1]Under the charter of the London Company, which alone succeeded, three small vessels, under the command of Captain Christopher Newport, sailed[a] for the American coast in December, 1606, designing to land and form a settlement at Roanoke.[b] Pursuing the old route by the Canaries[c] and the West Indies,[d] Newport did not arrive until April; when a storm fortunately carried[e] him north of Roanoke into Chesapeake Bay.*

a. Dec. 30.

b. Note p. 38.

c. Note p. 22.

d. Note p. 14.

e. May 6.

2. Give an account of the settlement of Jamestown.

7. [2]Sailing along the southern shore, he soon entered a noble river which he named James River,† and, after passing about fifty miles above the mouth of the stream, through a delightful country, selected[f] a place for a settlement, which was named *Jamestown.*‡ Here was formed the first permanent settlement of the English in the New World,—one hundred and ten years after the discovery of the continent by Cabot, and forty-one years from the settlements[g] of St. Augustine in Florida.

f. May 23.

g. See p. 36.

* The *Chesapeake Bay*, partly in Virginia, and partly in Maryland, is from 7 to 20 miles in width, 180 miles in length from N. to S., and 12 miles wide at its entrance, between Cape Charles on the N. and Cape Henry on the S.

† The *James River* rises in the Alleghany Mountains, passes through the Blue Ridge, and falls into the southern part of Chesapeake Bay. Its entrance into the bay is called *Hampton Roads*, having *Point Comfort* on the north, and Willoughby Point on the south.

‡ *Jamestown* is on the north side of James river, 30 miles from its mouth, and 8 miles S.S.W. from Williamsburg. The village is entirely deserted, with the exception of one or two old buildings, and is not found on modern maps

NOTES ON THE INDIAN TRIBES.

(SEE MAP, NEXT PAGE.)

ALTHOUGH there is much connected with the history, customs, religion, traditions, &c., of the Indians of North America, that is highly interesting, yet in this place we can do little more than give the names, and point out the localities of the principal tribes east of the Mississippi, as they were first known to Europeans.

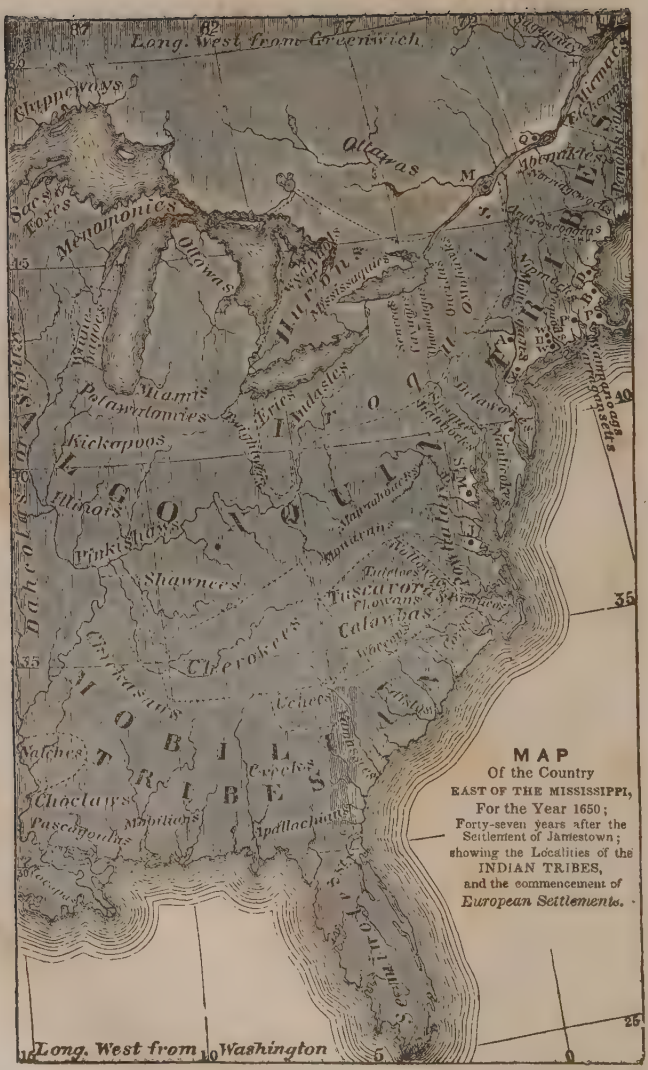
The discovery of a similarity in the primitive words of different Indian languages, is the principle that has governed the division of the different tribes into families or nations. The principal divisions within the limits of the present United States, east of the Mississippi, were the Algonquin, the Iroquois, the Cherokee, and the Mobilian Tribes.

Of the ALGONQUIN TRIBES, the *Etchemins* and the *Abenakes* occupied most of the present State of Maine. They were firmly attached to the French during the early history of the country, and were almost constantly in a state of hostilities with the British colonies. The principal tribes of the Abenakes were the Penobscots, the Norridgewocks, and the Androscoggins. Next south of the Abenakes were the *New England Indians*, extending from Maine to the eastern boundary of Connecticut. Their principal tribes were the Massachusetts, Pawtuckets, Nipmucks, Pokanokets, and Narragansetts. After the termination of King Philip's war, in 1675, most of these tribes joined the eastern Indians, or sought refuge in Canada, whence they continued to harass the frontiers of New England, until the final overthrow of the French, in 1760. The *Mohegans* embraced the Pequods, Manhattans, Wabingas, and other tribes, extending from Rhode Island to New Jersey. Next south and west of the Mohegans were the *Lenni-Lennapes*, consisting of two divisions, the Minsi and the Delawares, although both tribes are best known in history as the Delawares. They gradually removed west of the Alleghanies; they joined the French against the English during the French and Indian war; most of them took part with the British during the war of the Revolution, and they were at the head of the western confederacy of Indians which was dissolved by the victory of General Wayne in 1794. Only a few hundred of this once powerful tribe now remain, some in Canada, the rest west of the Mississippi.—On the eastern shore of Maryland were the *Nanticokes*, who removed west of the Alleghanies, and joined the British during the Revolution. The *Susquehannocks*, *Mannahoacks*, and *Monacans*, were tribes farther inland, on the head waters of the streams that enter Chesapeake Bay. Of their history little is known, and there are no remnants of their languages remaining. The *Powhatan nation* embraced a confederacy of more than twenty tribes, bordering on the southern shores of the Chesapeake. It is believed that not a single individual who speaks the Powhatan language now remains.—The *Shawnees* were a roving tribe, first found between the Ohio and Cumberland Rivers, whence they were driven by the Cherokees. They were among the most active allies of the French during the French and Indian war; they joined the British during the war of the Revolution; and part of the tribe, under Tecumseh, during the late war. They have since removed west of the Mississippi. The principal of the other western tribes belonging to the Algonquin family, were the *Miamis*, *Illinois*, *Kickapoos*, *Sacs and Foxes*, *Menomonies*, and *Potowatomies*, whose history is interesting, principally, as connected with the early settlements of the French in the western country.

The IROQUOIS TRIBES embraced the Hurons, north of Lakes Erie and Ontario; the Five Nations, in New York, and the Tuscaroras, of Carolina. The *Hurons* or *Wyandots*, when first known, were engaged in a deadly war with their kindred, the Five Nations, by whom they were finally driven from their country. Remnants of this tribe are now found in Canada, and west of the Mississippi. The *Five Nations*, found on the southern shore of Lake Ontario, embraced the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Senecas, and Cayugas. They were the most powerful of all the tribes east of the Mississippi, and were farther advanced in the few arts of Indian life than their Algonquin neighbors. They uniformly adhered to the British interests. In 1714 they were joined by the Tuscaroras, since which time the confederacy has been called the *Six Nations*.

The CHEROKEE NATION occupied the eastern and southern portions of Tennessee, and the highlands of Carolina, Georgia, and Alabama. They fought against the English during most of the French and Indian war, and joined the British during the Revolution; but, during the late war, assisted the Americans against the Creeks. In 1838, they removed west of the Mississippi. They are now the most civilized of all the Indian tribes, and their population has increased during the last fifty years.

The MOBILIAN TRIBES embraced the Creeks, Choctas, Chickasas, and the Seminoles, The latter once belonged to the Creek tribe. The *Creeks* and the *Chickasas* adhered to the British during the Revolution. The *Choctas* have ever been a peaceable people, and although they have had successively, for neighbors, the French, the Spanish, and the English, they have never been at war with any of them.



MAP
Of the Country
EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI,
For the Year 1650;
Forty-seven years after the Settlement of Jamestown; showing the Localities of the INDIAN TRIBES, and the commencement of *European Settlements.*

POCAHONTAS SAVING THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN SMITH. (See p. 50.)

1606.

PART II.

[1]EARLY SETTLEMENTS AND COLONIAL HISTORY;

1. *Of what does Part II. treat?*

EXTENDING FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, IN 1607, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION, IN 1775: EMBRACING A PERIOD OF 168 YEARS.

CHAPTER I.

[2]HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.*

2. *Of what does Chap. I. treat?*

DIVISIONS.

I. [3]*Virginia under the first charter.—II. Virginia under the second charter.—III. Virginia under the third charter.—IV. Virginia from the dissolution of the London Company to the commencement of the French and Indian War.*

3. *What are the divisions of Chap. I.?*

4. *To whom had the government of the Virginia colony been intrusted?*

I. VIRGINIA UNDER THE FIRST CHARTER.—1. [4]The administration of the government of the Virginia col-

* VIRGINIA, the most northern of the Southern States, and until 1845 the largest in the Union, often called the *Ancient Dominion*, from its early settlement, contains an area of nearly 70,000 square miles. The state has a great variety of surface and soil. From the coast to the head of tide water on the rivers, including a tract of generally more than 100 miles in width, the country is low, sandy, covered with pitch pine, and is unhealthy from August to October. Between the head of tide water and the

1607 ony had been intrusted to a council of seven persons whom the superior council in England had been permitted to name, with a president to be elected by the council from their number. [1]But the names and instructions of the council having been placed, by the folly of the king, in a sealed box, with directions that it should not be opened until the emigrants had arrived in America, dissensions arose during the voyage; and John Smith, their best and ablest man, was put in confinement, upon the absurd accusation of an intention to murder the council, usurp the government, and make himself king of Virginia.

1. *What was the cause of the early dissensions which arose, and why was Smith imprisoned?*

1607.

2. *What is said of Wingfield, and how was Smith treated on the arrival of the company?*

2. [2]Soon after their arrival, the council chose Edward Wingfield president,—an ambitious and unprincipled man,—and finding that Smith had been appointed one of their number, they excluded him from their body, as, by their instructions, they had power to do, but released him from confinement. As Smith demanded a trial upon the charges brought against him, which were known to be absurdly false, his accusers thought best, after a partial hearing of the case, to withdraw the accusation; and he was soon restored to his station as a member of the council.

3. *What is said of the character of the emigrants?*

3. [3]Of the one hundred and five persons on the list of emigrants, destined to remain, there were no men with families,—there were but twelve laborers, and very few mechanics. The rest were composed of gentlemen of fortune, and of persons of no occupation,—mostly of idle and dissolute habits—who had been tempted to join the expedition through curiosity or the hope of gain;—a company but poorly calculated to plant an agricultural state in a wilderness. [4]The English were kindly received by the natives in the immediate vicinity of Jamestown, who, when informed of the wish of the strangers to settle in the country, offered them as much land as they wanted.

4. *Their reception by the natives?*

a. Note p. 44.

5. *Of Powhatan and his subjects?*

4. [5]Soon after their arrival, Newport, and Smith, and twenty others, ascended the James[a] river, and

Blue Ridge, the soil is better, and the surface of the country becomes uneven and hilly. The interior of the State, traversed by successive ridges of the Alleghany, running N.E. and S.W. is a healthy region, and in the valleys are some of the best and most pleasant lands in the State. The country west of the mountains, towards the Ohio is rough and wild, with occasional fertile tracts, but rich as a mineral region.

visited the native chieftain, or king, Powhatan, at his principal residence near the present site of Richmond.* His subjects murmured at the intrusion of the strangers into the country; but Powhatan, disguising his jealousy and his fear, manifested a friendly disposition. **1607.**

5. [1]About the middle of June Newport sailed for England; and the colonists, whose hopes had been highly excited by the beauty and fertility of the country, beginning to feel the want of suitable provisions, and being now left to their own resources, soon awoke to the reality of their situation. [2]They were few in number, and without habits of industry;—the Indians began to manifest hostile intentions,—and before autumn, the diseases of a damp and sultry climate had swept away fifty of their number, and among them, Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the settlement, and one of the ablest men in the council.

1. *What occurred after the departure of Newport?*

2. *What is said of the sufferings of the colony?*

6. [3]To increase their misery, their avaricious president, Wingfield, was detected in a conspiracy to seize the public stores, abandon the colony, and escape in the company's bark to the West Indies. [4]He was therefore deposed, and was succeeded by Ratcliffe; but the latter possessing little capacity for government, and being subsequently detected in an attempt to abandon the colony, the management of affairs, by common consent, fell into the hands of Smith, who alone seemed capable of diffusing light amidst the general gloom.

3. *In what conspiracy was the President detected?*

4. *What is said of Ratcliffe, and into whose hands did the government fall?*

7. [5]Under the management of Smith, the condition of the colony rapidly improved. He quelled the spirit of anarchy and rebellion, restored order, inspired the natives with awe, and collected supplies of provisions, by expeditions into the interior. As autumn approached, wild fowl and game became abundant; the Indians, more friendly, from their abundant harvests made voluntary offerings; and peace and plenty again revived the drooping spirits of the colony.

5. *What is said of the management of Smith?*

Nov.

8. [6]The active spirit of Smith next prompted him to explore the surrounding country. After ascending the Chickahominy† as far as he could advance in boats,

6. *Under what circumstances was Smith taken prisoner by the Indians?*

* *Richmond*, the capital of Virginia, is on the north side of James river, 75 miles from its mouth. Immediately above the river are the falls, and directly opposite is the village of Manchester.

† The *Chickahominy* river rises northwest from Richmond, and, during most of

1607. with two Englishmen and two Indian guides he struck into the interior. The remainder of the party, disobeying his instructions, and wandering from the boat, were surprised by the Indians and put to death. Smith was pursued, the two Englishmen were killed, and he himself, after dispatching with his musket several of the most forward of his assailants, unfortunately sinking in a miry place, was forced to surrender.

1. In what manner did he save his life?

9. [1]His calmness and self-possession here saved his life. Showing a pocket compass, he explained its wonderful properties, and, as he himself relates, "by the globe-like figure of that jewel he instructed them concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the earth continually." In admiration of his superior genius the Indians retained him as their prisoner.

2. How did the Indians regard him and what did they do with him?

10. [2]Regarding him as a being of superior order, but uncertain whether he should be cherished as a friend, or dreaded as an enemy, they observed towards him the utmost respect as they conducted him in triumph from one village to another, and, at length, brought him to the residence of Opechancanough, where, for the space of three days, their priests or sorcerers practiced incantations and ceremonies, in order to learn from the invisible world the character and designs of their prisoner.

3. What is said of the decision of his fate?

11. [3]The decision of his fate was referred to Powhatan and his council, and to the village of that chieftain Smith was conducted, where he was received with great pomp and ceremony. Here it was decided that he should die. [4]He was led forth to execution, and his head was laid upon a stone to receive the fatal blow, when Pocahontas, the young and favorite daughter of the king, rushed in between the victim and the uplifted arm of the executioner, and with tears and entreaties besought her father to save his life. [5]The savage chieftain relented; Smith was set at liberty; and, soon after, with a guard of twelve men, was conducted in safety to Jamestown, after a captivity of seven weeks.

1608.

4. Under what circumstances was his life saved by Pocahontas?

5. What did Powhatan do with him?

---

ourse, runs nearly parallel to James river, which it enters five or six miles above Jamestown. See Map p. 44.)

12. [1]The captivity of Smith was, on the whole, beneficial to the colony; for he thereby learned much of the Indians,—their character, customs, and language; and was enabled to establish a peaceful intercourse between the English, and the Powhatan tribes. [2]But on his return to Jamestown he found disorder and misrule again prevailing; the number of the English was reduced to forty men; and most of these, anxious to leave a country where they had suffered so much, had determined to abandon the colony and escape with the pinnace. This was the third attempt at desertion. By persuasion and threats a majority were induced to relinquish the design; but the remainder, more resolute, embarked in spite of the threats of Smith, who instantly directed the guns of the fort upon them and compelled them to return. **1608.**

1. *What benefits were derived from his captivity?*

2. *What was the condition of the colony on his return?*

13. [3]Soon after, Newport arrived from England with supplies, and one hundred and twenty emigrants. The hopes of the colonists revived; but as the new emigrants were composed of gentlemen, refiners of gold, goldsmiths, jewellers, &c., and but few laborers, a wrong direction was given to the industry of the colony. [4]Believing that they had discovered grains of gold in a stream of water near Jamestown, the entire industry of the colony was directed to digging, washing, refining, and loading gold; and notwithstanding the remonstrances of Smith, a ship was actually freighted with the glittering earth and sent to England.

3. *What is said of the arrival of new emigrants?*

4. *Of the search for gold?*

14. [5]During the prevalence of this passion for gold, Smith, finding that he could not be useful in Jamestown, employed himself in exploring the Chesapeake Bay[a] and its tributary rivers. In two voyages, occupying about three months of the summer, with a few companions, in an open boat, he performed a navigation of nearly three thousand miles, passing far up the Susquehanna* and the Potomac;† nor did he

5. *What is said of the exploration of the country by Smith?*

a. Note p. 44.

* The *Susquehanna* is one of the largest rivers east of the Alleghanies. Its eastern branch rises in Otsego Lake, New York, and running S.W. receives the Tioga near the Pennsylvania boundary. It passes through Pennsylvania, receiving the West Branch in the interior of the State, and enters the head of Chesapeake Bay, near the N.E. corner of Maryland. The navigation of the last 50 miles of its course is obstructed by numerous rapids.

† The *Potomac* river rises in the Alleghany Mountains, makes a grand and magnificent passage through the Blue Ridge, at Harper's Ferry, and throughout its whole

1608. merely explore the numerous rivers and inlets, but penetrated the territories, and established friendly relations with the Indian tribes. The map which he prepared and sent to England is still extant, and delineates, with much accuracy, the general outlines of the country which he explored.

1. What occurred on his return?
a. Sept. 20.
2. What is said of his administration of the government and of the condition of the colony after an existence of two years?

15. [1]Soon after his return from this expedition, Smith was formally made president[a] of the council. [2]By his energetic administration order and industry again prevailed, and Jamestown assumed the appearance of a thriving village. Yet at the expiration of two years from the time of the first settlement, not more than forty acres of land had been cultivated; and the colonists, to prevent themselves from starving, were still obliged to obtain most of their food from the indolent Indians. Although about seventy new emigrants arrived, yet they were not suitable to the wants of the colony, and Smith was obliged to write earnestly to the council in England, that they should send more laborers, that the search for gold should be abandoned, and that "nothing should be expected except by labor."[1]

1609. II. VIRGINIA UNDER THE SECOND CHARTER.—1. [3]In 1609, a new charter was given[b] to the London Company, by which the limits of the colony were enlarged, and the constitution of Virginia radically changed. The territory of the colony was now extended by a grant of all the lands along the seacoast, within the limits of two hundred miles north, and two hundred south of Old Point Comfort;* that is, from the northern boundary of Maryland, to the southern limits of North Carolina, and extending westward from sea to sea.

b. June 2.
3. What is said of the second charter?

4. What changes were made in the government of the colony?

2. [4]The council in England, formerly appointed by the king, was now to have its vacancies filled by the votes of a majority of the corporation. This council was authorized to appoint a governor, who was to reside in Virginia, and whose powers enabled him to rule the colonists with almost despotic sway. The

course is the boundary line between Chesapeake Bay it is seven and a ha vessels to Washington City, 110 miles b lington the navigation is obstructed by m

rginia and Maryland. At its entrance into miles wide. It is navigable for the larges the river—70 in a direct line. Above Wash erous falls.

* *Point Comfort* is the northern point o the entrance of James river into Chesapeake Bay (See *James River*, Note, p. 44.)

council in England, it is true, could make laws for the colony, and give instructions to the governor; but the discretionary powers conferred upon the latter were so extensive, that the lives, liberty, and property of the colonists, were placed almost at his arbitrary disposal. **1609.**

3. [1]Under the new charter, the excellent Lord Delaware was appointed governor for life. Nine ships, under the command of Newport, were soon despatched[a] for Virginia, with more than five hundred emigrants. Sir Thomas Gates, the deputy of the governor, assisted by Newport and Sir George Somers, was appointed to administer the government until the arrival of Lord Delaware. [2]When the fleet had arrived near the West Indies, a terrible storm[b] dispersed it, and the vessel in which were Newport, Gates, and Somers, was stranded on the rocks of the Bermudas.* A small ketch perished, and only seven vessels arrived[c] in Virginia.

1. *What new arrangements were made?*
a. June 12.
2. *What happened to the fleet on its passage?*
b. Aug. 3.
c. Aug.

4. [3]On the arrival of the new emigrants, most of whom were profligate and disorderly persons, who had been sent off to escape a worse destiny at home, Smith found himself placed in an embarrassing situation. As the first charter had been abrogated, many thought the original form of government was abolished; and, as no legal authority existed for establishing any other, every thing tended to the wildest anarchy.

3. *What was the cause of the embarrassing situation of Smith?*

5. [4]In this confusion, Smith soon determined what course to pursue. Declaring that his powers as president were not suspended until the arrival of the persons appointed to supersede him, he resumed the reins of government, and resolutely maintained his authority. [5]At length, being disabled by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, and requiring surgical aid which the new settlement could not afford, he delegated his authority to George Percy, brother of the Earl of Northumberland, and embarked for England.

4. *How did he manage?*

5. *What is said of his return to England?*

* The *Bermudas* are a group of about 400 small islands, nearly all but five mere rocks, containing a surface of about 20 square miles, and situated in the Atlantic Ocean, 580 miles E. from Cape Hatteras, which is the nearest land to them. They were discovered in 1515, by a Spanish vessel commanded by Juan Bermudez, from whom they have derived their name. Soon after the shipwreck above mentioned, Somers formed a settlement there, and from him they were long known as the "Summer Islands," but the original name, Bermudas, has since prevailed. They are well fortified, belong to the English, and are valuable, principally, as a naval station.

1610. 6. [1]On the departure of Smith, subordination and industry ceased; the provisions of the colony were soon consumed; the Indians became hostile, and withheld their customary supplies; the horrors of famine ensued; and, in six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number of the colony from four hundred and ninety to sixty; and these were so feeble and dejected, that if relief had been delayed a few days longer, all must have perished. This period of suffering and gloom was long remembered with horror, and was distinguished by the name of the *starving time*.

1. *Describe the situation of the colony during the "starving time."*

7. [2]In the mean time Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the Bermudas, had reached the shore without loss of life,—had remained nine months on an uninhabited but fertile island,—and had found means to construct two vessels, in which they embarked[a] for Virginia, where they anticipated a happy welcome, and expected to find a prosperous colony.

2. *What had become of Sir Thomas Gates and his companions?*

a. May 20.

8. [3]On their arrival[b] at Jamestown, a far different scene presented itself; and the gloom was increased by the prospect of continued scarcity. Death by famine awaited them if they remained where they were; and, as the only means of safety, Gates resolved to sail for Newfoundland, and disperse the company among the ships of English fishermen. With this intention they embarked,[c] but just as they drew near the mouth of the river, Lord Delaware fortunately appeared with emigrants and supplies, and they were persuaded to return.[d]

b. June 2.

3. *Under what circumstances was the settlement abandoned, and what caused the return of the colony?*

c. June 17.

d. June 18.

9. [4]The return of the colony was celebrated by religious exercises, immediately after which the commission of Lord Delaware was read, and the government organized. Under the wise administration of this able and virtuous man, order and contentment were again restored; but the health of the governor soon failing he was obliged to return to England, having previously appointed Percy to administer the government until a successor should arrive. [5]Before the return of Lord Delaware was known, the company had dispatched Sir Thomas Dale with supplies. Arriving in May, he assumed the government of the colony

4. *Give an account of Lord Delaware.*

1611.

5. *Of Sir Thomas Dale.*

a. May 20.

which he administered with moderation, although upon the basis of martial law. **1611.**

10. [1]In May, Dale had written to the company, stating the small number and weakness of the colonists, and requesting new recruits; and early in September Sir Thomas Gates arrived with six ships and three hundred emigrants, and assumed the government of the colony, which then numbered seven hundred men. [2]New settlements were now formed, and several wise regulations adopted; among which was that of assigning to each man a few acres of ground for his orchard and garden.

1. *Of the arrival of Gates.*

2. *What new regulations were adopted?*

11. [3]Hitherto all the land had been worked in common, and the produce deposited in the public stores. The good effects of the new regulation were apparent in the increased industry of the colonists, and soon after, during the administration of Sir Thomas Dale, larger assignments of land were made, and finally, the plan of working in a common field, to fill the public stores, was entirely abandoned.

3. *Their effect, &c.*

III. VIRGINIA UNDER THE THIRD CHARTER.—1. [4]In 1612, the London Company obtained[a] from the king a new charter, making important changes in the powers of the corporation, but not essentially affecting the political rights of the colonists themselves. 1612.

4. *What is said of the third charter?*

a. March 22.

2. [5]Hitherto the principal powers possessed by the company had been vested in the superior council, which, under the first charter, was appointed by the king; and although, under the second, it had its vacancies filled by the majority of the corporation, yet the corporation itself could act only through this medium. The superior council was now abolished, and its powers were transferred to the whole company, which, meeting as a democratic assembly, had the sole power of electing the officers and establishing the laws of the colony.

5. *What changes in the government were effected by it?*

3. [6]In 1613 occurred the marriage of John Rolfe, a young Englishman, with Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan;—an event which exerted a happy influence upon the relations of the colonists and Indians. The marriage received the approval of the father and friends of the maiden, and was hailed with great joy 1613.

6. *Give an account of Pocahontas.*

1613. by the English. In 1616, the Indian wife accompanied her husband to England, and was received with much kindness and attention by the king and queen; but as she was preparing to return, at the age of twenty-two she fell a victim to the English climate. She left one son, from whom are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia.

a. In 1613. 1. *Of Argall's expeditions.*

4. [1]During the same year, Samuel Argall, a sea captain, sailing from Virginia in an armed vessel for the purpose of protecting the English fishermen off the coast of Maine, discovered that the French had just planted a colony near the Penobscot,* on Mount Desert Isle.† Considering this an encroachment upon the limits of North Virginia, he broke up the settlement, sending some of the colonists to France, and transporting others to Virginia.

b. Note p. 42.

5. Sailing again soon after, he easily reduced the feeble settlement of Port Royal,[b] and thus completed the conquest of Acadia. On his return to Virginia he

c. Note and Map p. 117.

entered the harbor of New York,[c] and compelled the Dutch trading establishment, lately planted there, to acknowledge the sovereignty of England.

1614. 2. *Of Sir Thomas Dale's administration.*

6. [2]Early in 1614, Sir Thomas Gates embarked for England, leaving the administration of the government in the hands of Sir Thomas Dale, who ruled with vigor and wisdom, and made several valuable changes in the land laws of the colony. After having remained five years in the country, he appointed George Yeardley deputy-governor, and returned to England. [3]During the administration of Yeardley the culture of tobacco, a native plant of the country was introduced, which soon became, not only the principal export, but even the currency of the colony.

1616. 3. *What is said of the culture of tobacco?*

1617. 4. *Give an account of Argall's administration.*

7. [4]In 1617, the office of deputy-governor was intrusted to Argall, who ruled with such tyranny as to excite universal discontent. He not only oppressed the colonists, but defrauded the company. After numerous complaints, and a strenuous contest among rival factions in the company, for the control of the

* The *Penobscot* is a river of Maine, which falls into Penobscot Bay, about 50 miles N.E. from the mouth of the Kennebec.

† *Mount Desert Island* is about 20 miles S.E. from the mouth of the Penobscot,—a peninsula intervening. It is 15 miles long, and 10 or 12 broad.

colony, Argall was displaced, and Yeardley appointed governor. [1]Under the administration of Yeardley, the planters were fully released from farther service to the colony, martial law was abolished, and the first colonial assembly ever held in Virginia was convened[a] at Jamestown. **1619.**

1. *Of Yeardley's administration.*
a. June 29.

8. [2]The colony was divided into eleven boroughs; and two representatives, called burgesses, were chosen from each. These, constituting the house of burgesses, debated all matters which were thought expedient for the good of the colony; but their enactments, although sanctioned by the governor and council, were of no force until they were ratified by the company in England. [3]In the month of August, 1620, a Dutch man-of-war entered James river, and landed twenty negroes for sale. This was the commencement of negro slavery in the English colonies.

2. *Of the origin and powers of the House of Burgesses.*

1620.

3. *Under what circumstances was slavery introduced?*

9. [4]It was now twelve years since the settlement of Jamestown, and after an expenditure of nearly four hundred thousand dollars by the company, there were in the colony only six hundred persons; yet, during the year 1620, through the influence of Sir Edwyn Sandys, the treasurer of the company, twelve hundred and sixty-one additional settlers were induced to emigrate. But as yet there were few women in the colony, and most of the planters had hitherto cherished the design of ultimately returning to England.

4. *What was the state of the colony in 1620, and what additional emigrations were made?*

10. [5]In order to attach them still more to the country, and to render the colony more permanent, ninety young women, of reputable character, were first sent over, and, in the following year, sixty more, to become wives to the planters. The expense of their transportation, and even more, was paid by the planters; the price of a wife rising from one hundred and twenty, to one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco.

5. *What measures were taken to attach the emigrants to the country?*

1621.

11. [6]In August, 1621, the London Company granted[c] to their colony a *written constitution*, ratifying, in the main, the form of government established by Yeardley. It decreed that a governor and council should be appointed by the company, and that a general assembly, consisting of the council, and two burgesses chosen by the people from each plantation, or borough, should

c. Aug. 3.

Give an account of the written constitution granted by the company.

Assembly, how constituted?

1621. be convened yearly. The governor had a negative voice upon the proceedings of the assembly, but no law was valid unless ratified by the company in England.

Powers of governor?

Laws?

12. With singular liberality it was farther ordained that no orders of the company in England should bind the colony until ratified by the assembly. The trial by jury was established, and courts of justice were required to conform to the English laws. This constitution, granting privileges which were ever after claimed as rights, was the basis of civil freedom in Virginia.

Orders of the company?

Trial by jury?

Constitution, basis of what?

a. Oct. 1. *What is said of the arrival of Sir Francis Wyatt, and the condition of the colony?*

13. [1]The new constitution was brought[a] over by Sir Francis Wyatt, who had been appointed to succeed Governor Yeardley. He found the numbers of the colony greatly increased, their settlements widely extended, and every thing in the full tide of prosperity. But this pleasant prospect was doomed soon to experience a terrible reverse.

2. *Give an account of the Indian conspiracy.*

14. [2]Since the marriage of Pocahontas, Powhatan had remained the firm friend of the English. But he being now dead, and his successor viewing with jealousy and alarm the rapidly increasing settlements of

1622. the English, the Indians concerted a plan of surprising and destroying the whole colony. Still preserving the language of friendship, they visited the settlements, bought the arms, and borrowed the boats of the English, and, even on the morning of the fatal day, came among them as freely as usual.

3. *Of the massacre and Indian war which followed.*

15. [3]On the first of April, 1622, at mid-day, the attack commenced; and so sudden and unexpected was the onset, that, in one hour, three hundred and forty-seven men, women, and children, fell victims to savage treachery and cruelty. The massacre would have been far more extensive had not a friendly Indian, on the previous evening, revealed the plot to an Englishman whom he wished to save; by which means Jamestown and a few of the neighboring settlements were well prepared against the attack.

4. *What is said of the distress of the colony?*

16. [4]Although the larger part of the colony was saved, yet great distress followed; the more distant settlements were abandoned; and the number of the

plantations was reduced from eighty to eight. [1]But the English soon aroused to vengeance. An exterminating war against the Indians followed; many of them were destroyed; and the remainder were obliged to retire far into the wilderness. **1623.**

1. *What was the result?*

17. [2]The settlement of Virginia by the London Company had been an unprofitable enterprise, and as the shares in the unproductive stock were now of little value, and the holders very numerous, the meetings of the company, in England, became the scenes of political debate, in which the advocates of liberty were arrayed against the upholders of royal prerogative. [3]The king disliked the freedom of debate here exhibited, and, jealous of the prevalence of liberal sentiments, at first sought to control the elections of officers, by overawing the assemblies.

2. *Give an account of the causes which led to the dissolution of the London Company.*

3. *What displeased the king?*

18. [4]Failing in this, he determined to recover, by a dissolution of the company, the influence of which he had deprived himself by a charter of his own concession. [5]Commissioners in the interest of the king were therefore appointed to examine the concerns of the corporation. As was expected, they reported in favor of a change; the judicial decision was soon after given; the London Company was dissolved; the king took into his own hands the government of the colony; and Virginia thus became a *royal government.* 1624.

4. *What did he determine?*

5. *How was the measure accomplished?*

19. [6]During the existence of the London Company, the government of Virginia had gradually changed from a royal government, under the first charter, in which the king had all power, to a proprietary government under the second and third charters, in which all executive and legislative powers were in the hands of the company.

6. *What gradual changes had occurred in the government of Virginia?*

20. [7]Although these changes had been made without consulting the wishes of the colonists, and notwithstanding the powers of the company were exceedingly arbitrary, yet as the majority of its active members belonged to the patriot party in England, so they acted as the successful friends of liberty in America. They had conceded the right of trial by jury, and had given to Virginia a representative government. These privileges, thus early conceded, could never be wrested

7. *What was the effect of these changes, both on Virginia and on the other colonies?*

1624. from the Virginians, and they exerted an influence, favorable to liberty, throughout all the colonies subsequently planted. All claimed as extensive privileges as had been conceded to their elder sister colony and future proprietaries could hope to win emigrants, only by bestowing franchises as large as those enjoyed by Virginia.

IV. VIRGINIA FROM THE DISSOLUTION OF THE LONDON COMPANY IN 1624, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR IN 1754.—1. [1]The dissolution of the London Company produced no immediate change in the domestic government and franchises of the colony. A governor and twelve counsellors, to be guided by the instructions of the king, were appointed to administer the government; but no attempts were made to suppress the colonial assemblies. [2]On the death[a] of James the First, in 1625, his son, Charles the First, succeeded him. The latter paid very little attention to the political condition of Virginia, but aimed to promote the prosperity of the colonists, only with the selfish view of deriving profit from their industry. He imposed some restrictions on the commerce of the colony, but vainly endeavored to obtain for himself the monopoly of the trade in tobacco.

1. What was the nature of the new government?

1625.

a. April 6.

2. What was the policy of Charles I. towards Virginia?

2. [3]In 1628, John Harvey, who had for several years been a member of the council, and was exceedingly unpopular, was appointed governor; but he did not arrive in the colony until late in the following year. He has been charged, by most of the old historians, with arbitrary and tyrannical conduct; but although he favored the court party, it does not appear that he deprived the colonists of any of their civil rights.

1628.

3. What is said of Harvey?

1629.

3. [4]His administration, however, was disturbed by disputes about land titles under the royal grants; and the colonists, being indignant that he should betray their interests by opposing their claims, deprived him of the government, and summoned an assembly to receive complaints against him. Harvey, in the mean time, had consented to go to England with commissioners appointed to manage his impeachment; but the king would not even admit his accusers to a hearing and Harvey immediately returned[b] to occupy his former station.

4. His administration?

1635.

1636.

b. Jan.

4. [1]During the first administration of Sir William Berkeley, from 1642 to '52, the civil condition of the Virginians was much improved; the laws and customs of England were still farther introduced; cruel punishments were abolished; old controversies were adjusted; a more equitable system of taxation was introduced; the rights of property and the freedom of industry were secured; and Virginia enjoyed nearly all the civil liberties which the most free system of government could have conferred. **1642.**

1. *Give an account of Berkeley's first administration.*

5. [2]A spirit of intolerance, however, in religious matters, in accordance with the spirit of the age, was manifested by the legislative assembly; which ordered[a] that no minister should preach or teach except in conformity to the Church of England. [3]While puritanism and republicanism were prevailing in England, leading the way to the downfall of monarchy, the Virginians showed the strongest attachment to the Episcopal Church and the cause of royalty.

2. *What instance of religious intolerance is mentioned?*

[a]1643.

3. *What singular contrast of principles is mentioned?*

6. [4]In 1644 occurred another Indian massacre, followed by a border warfare until October, 1646, when peace was again established. During several years the Powhatan tribes had shown evidences of hostility; but, in 1644, hearing of the dissensions in England, and thinking the opportunity favorable to their designs, they resolved on a general massacre, hoping to be able eventually to exterminate the colony. 1644.

4. *Give an account of the second Indian massacre and war in which the Virginians were involved.*

7. On the 28th of April, the attack was commenced on the frontier settlements, and about three hundred persons were killed before the Indians were repulsed. [5]A vigorous war against the savages was immediately commenced, and their king, the aged Opechancanough, the successor of Powhatan, was easily made prisoner, and died in captivity. Submission to the English, and a cession of lands, were the terms on which peace was purchased by the original possessors of the soil. 1646.

5. *What was the result of the war?*

8. [6]During the civil war* between Charles the First and his Parliament, the Virginians continued faithful to the royal cause, and even after the execution[a] of the king, his son, Charles the Second, although a fugitive

6. *What was the state of Virginia during the civil war in England?*

a. Feb 9.

* NOTE.—The tyrannical disposition, and arbitrary measures of Charles the First, of England, opposed, as they were, to the increasing spirit of liberty among the people

1652. from England, was still recognized as the sovereign of Virginia. [1]The parliament, irritated by this conduct, in 1652 sent a naval force to reduce the Virginians to submission. Previous to this (in 1650) foreign ships had been forbidden to trade with the rebellious colony, and in 1651 the celebrated navigation act, securing to English ships the entire carrying trade with England, and seriously abridging the freedom of colonial commerce, was passed.

1. *How was Virginia treated by the parliament?*

1652.

9. [2]On the arrival[a] of the naval force of parliament in 1652, all thoughts of resistance were laid aside, and although the Virginians refused to surrender to force, yet they voluntarily entered into a compact[b] with their invaders, by which they acknowledged the supremacy of parliament. [3]By this compact, which was faithfully observed till the restoration of monarchy, the liberties of Virginia were preserved, the navigation act itself was not enforced within her borders, and, regulated by her own laws, Virginia enjoyed freedom of commerce with all the world.

a. March.

2. *In what manner was her submission to parliament effected?*

b. March 22.

3. *What was the nature of the compact, and how observed?*

10. [4]During the existence of the Commonwealth Virginia enjoyed liberties as extensive as those of any English colony, and from 1652 till 1660, she was left almost entirely to her own independent government. Cromwell never made any appointments for Virginia; but her governors,[c] during the Commonwealth, were chosen by the burgesses, who were the representatives of the people. [5]When the news of the death[d] of Cromwell arrived, the assembly reasserted their right of electing the officers of government, and required the governor, Matthews, to confirm it; in order, as they said, "that what was their privilege then, might be the privilege of their posterity."

4. *What was the state of Virginia during the commonwealth?*

c. Bennet, Diggs, and Matthews.

1658.

d. Sept. 13.

5. *What occurred when news of the death of Cromwell arrived?*

---

involved that kingdom in a civil war; arraying, on the one side, Parliament and the Republicans; and, on the other, the Royalists and the King. Between 1642 and 1649, several important battles were fought, when the king was finally taken prisoner, tried, condemned, and executed, Jan. 30, (Old Style) 1649. The Parliament then ruled; but Oliver Cromwell, who had been the principal general of the Republicans, finally dissolved it by force, (April, 1653,) and took into his own hands the reins of government, with the title of "*Protector* of the Commonwealth." He administered the government with energy and ability until his death, in 1658. Richard Cromwell succeeded his father, as Protector, but, after two years, he abdicated the government, and quietly retired to private life. Charles the Second, a highly accomplished prince, but arbitrary, base, and unprincipled, was then restored (in 1660) to the throne of his ancestors, by the general wish of the people.

11. [1]On the death of governor Matthews, which happened just at the time of the resignation of Richard, the successor of Cromwell, the house of burgesses, after enacting that "the government of the country should be resident in the assembly until there should arrive from England a commission which the assembly itself should adjudge to be lawful," elected Sir William Berkeley governor, who, by accepting the office, acknowledged the authority to which he owed his elevation. [2]The Virginians hoped for the restoration of monarchy in England, but they did not immediately proclaim Charles the Second king, although the statement of their hasty return to royal allegiance has been often made. **1660.**

1. *At the time of the resignation of Richard?*

2. *What were the wishes of the Virginians with regard to monarchy?*

12. [3]When the news of the restoration of Charles the Second reached Virginia, Berkeley, who was then acting as governor elected by the people, immediately disclaimed the popular sovereignty, and issued writs for an assembly in the name of the king. The friends of royalty now came into power, and high hopes of royal favor were entertained.

3. *What happened at the time of the restoration of Charles II.?*

13. [4]But prospects soon darkened. The commercial policy of the Commonwealth was adopted, and restrictions upon colonial commerce were greatly multiplied. The new provisions of the navigation act enjoined that no commodities should be imported to any British settlements, nor exported from them, except in English vessels, and that the principal products of the colonies should be shipped to no country except England. The trade between the colonies was likewise taxed for the benefit of England, and the entire aim of the colonial system was to make the colonies dependent upon the mother country.

4. *What is said of the commercial restrictions imposed on the colonies?*

14. [5]Remonstrances against this oppression were of no avail, and the provisions of the navigation act were rigorously enforced. The discontents of the people were farther increased by royal grants of large tracts of land which belonged to the colony, and which included plantations that had long been cultivated; and, in 1673, the lavish sovereign of England, with his usual profligacy, gave away to Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, two royal favorites, "all the

5. *Of the discontents of the people, and of the grant to Culpepper and Arlington.*

1673.

1673. dominion of land and water called Virginia," for the space of thirty-one years.

1. *In what manner were the liberties of the people abridged?*

15. [1]In the mean time, under the influence of the royalist and the aristocratic party in Virginia, the legislature had seriously abridged the liberties of the people. The Episcopal Church had become the religion of the state,—heavy fines were imposed upon Quakers and Baptists,—the royal officers, obtaining their salaries by a permanent duty on exported tobacco, were removed from all dependence upon the people,—the taxes were unequal and oppressive,—and the members of the assembly, who had been chosen for a term of only two years, had assumed to themselves an indefinite continuance of power, so that, in reality, the representative system was abolished.

In matters of religion.

By fines.

Salaries.

Taxes.

Representatives.

2. *What was the effect of these grievances?*

16. [2]The pressure of increasing grievances at length produced open discontent; and the common people, highly exasperated against the aristocratic and royal party, began to manifest a mutinous disposition. [3]An excuse for appearing in arms was presented in the sudden outbreak of Indian hostilities. The Susquehanna Indians, driven from their hunting grounds at the head of the Chesapeake, by the hostile Senecas, had come down upon the Potomac, and, with their confederates, were then engaged in a war with Maryland. Murders had been committed on the soil of Virginia, and when six of the hostile chieftains presented themselves to treat for peace, they were cruelly put to death. The Indians aroused to vengeance, and a desolating warfare ravaged the frontier settlements.

3. *What is said of the Indian war which occurred at this time?*

1675.

4. *Of the demands of the people?*

1676.

5. *Of Berkeley?*

6. *And of the commencement of Bacon's rebellion?*

17. [4]Dissatisfied with the measures of defence which Berkeley had adopted, the people, with Nathaniel Bacon for their leader, demanded of the governor permission to rise and protect themselves. [5]Berkeley, jealous of the increasing popularity of Bacon, refused permission. [6]At length, the Indian aggressions increasing, and a party of Bacon's own men having been slain on his plantation, he yielded to the common voice, placed himself at the head of five hundred men, and commenced his march against the Indians. He was immediately proclaimed[a] traitor by Berkeley, and troops were levied to pursue him. Bacon continued

a. May.

his expedition, which was successful, while Berkeley was obliged to recall his troops, to suppress an insurrection in the lower counties. **1676.**

18. [1]The great mass of the people having arisen, Berkeley was compelled to yield; the odious assembly, of long duration, was dissolved; and an assembly, composed mostly of the popular party, was elected in their places. Numerous abuses were now corrected, and Bacon was appointed commander-in-chief. [2]Berkeley, however, at first refused to sign his commission, but Bacon having made his appearance in Jamestown, at the head of several hundred armed men, the commission was issued, and the governor united with the assembly in commending to the king the zeal, loyalty, and patriotism of the popular leader. But as the army was preparing to march against the enemy, Berkeley suddenly withdrew across the York* river to Gloucester,† summoned a convention of loyalists, and, even against their advice, once more proclaimed Bacon a traitor.

1. *What is said of the success of the popular cause?*

2. *Of the vacillating conduct of Berkeley?*

19. [3]Bacon, however, proceeded against the Indians, and Berkeley having crossed the Chesapeake to Accomac‡ county, his retreat was declared an abdication. Berkeley, in the mean time, with a few adherents, and the crews of some English ships, had returned to Jamestown, but, on the approach of Bacon and his forces, after some slight resistance the royalists were obliged to retreat, and Bacon took possession of the capital of Virginia.

3. *What were the events of the civil war which followed?*

20. The rumor prevailing that a party of royalists was approaching, Jamestown was burned, and some of the patriots fired their own houses, lest they might afford shelter to the enemy. Several troops of the royalists soon after joined the insurgents, but, in the midst of his successes, Bacon suddenly died.[a] His party, now left without a leader, after a few petty in-

a. Oct. 11.

* *York* river enters the Chesapeake about 18 miles N. from James River. It is navigable for the largest vessels, 25 miles. It is formed of the Mattapony and the Pamunky. The former, which is on the north, is formed of the *Mat*, *Ta*, *Po*, and *Ny* rivers.

† *Gloucester* county is on the N.E. side of York River, and borders on the Chesapeake. The town is on a branch or bay of the Chesapeake.

‡ *Accomac* county is on the eastern shore of Chesapeake Bay. This county and Northampton Co on the south, constitute what is called the Eastern Shore of Virginia

1676. surrections, dispersed, and the authority of the governor was restored.

1. *What is said of the cruelty of Berkeley?*

1677.

21. [1]The vengeful passions of Berkeley, however were not allayed by the submission of his enemies. Fines and confiscations gratified his avarice, and executions were continued till twenty-two had been hanged, when the assembly interfered, and prayed him to stop the work of death. The conduct of Berkeley was severely censured in England, and publicly by the king himself, who declared, "The old fool has taken away more lives in that country than I for the murder of my father."

2. *Of the character of Bacon, and the tyranny of the government?*

22. [2]Historians have not done justice to the principles and character of Bacon. He has been styled a *rebel;* and has been described as ambitious and revengeful; but if his principles are to be gathered from the acts of the assembly of which he was the head, they were those of justice, freedom, and humanity. At the time of the rebellion, "no printing press was allowed in Virginia; to speak ill of Berkeley or his friends was punished by fine or whipping; to speak, or write, or publish any thing in favor of the rebels, or the rebellion, was made a high misdemeanor, and, if thrice repeated, was evidence of treason. It is not strange then that posterity was for more than a hundred years defrauded of the truth."

3. *When and in what manner was a proprietary government established?*

23. [3]The grant of Virginia to Arlington and Culpepper has already been mentioned. In 1677 the latter obtained the appointment of governor for life, and thus Virginia became a proprietary government, with the administration vested in one of the proprietors.

1680.

1680 Culpepper arrived in the province, and assumed the duties of his office.

4. *What is said of Culpepper's administration?*

[4]The avaricious proprietor was more careful of his own interests than of those of the colony, and under his administration Virginia was impoverished.

5. *When and in what manner was the royal government restored?*

[5]In 1684, the grant was recalled,—Culpepper was deprived of his office, although he had been appointed for life, and Virginia again became a royal province. Arlington had previously surrendered his rights to Culpepper.

6. *What is said of the remaining history of Virginia?*

[6]The remaining portion of the history of Virginia, down to the period of the French and Indian war, is marked with few incidents of importance

1607.

CHAPTER II.

MASSACHUSETTS.*

Of what does Chap. II. treat?

SEC. I.—MASSACHUSETTS, FROM ITS EARLIEST HISTORY, TO THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES IN 1643.

Section I.?

DIVISIONS.

What are its Divisions?

I. Early History.—II. Plymouth Colony.—III. Massachusetts Bay Colony.—IV. Union of the N. England Colonies. —V Early Laws and Customs.

I. EARLY HISTORY.—1. [1]An account of the first attempt of the Plymouth Company to form a settlement in North Virginia has already been given.[a] Although vessels annually visited the coast for the purpose of trade with the Indians, yet little was known of the interior until 1614, when Captain John Smith, who had already obtained distinction in Virginia, sailed with two vessels to the territories of the Plymouth Company, for the purposes of trade and discovery.

1607.

a. See p. 43

What is said of the first attempted settlement in North Virginia, and what of the interior of the country?

1614.

2. [2]The expedition was a private adventure of Smith and four merchants of London, and was highly successful. After Smith had concluded his traffic with the natives, he travelled into the interior of the country, accompanied by only eight men, and, with great care, explored the coast from the Penobscot[b] to Cape Cod.[c] [3]He prepared a map of the coast, and called the country NEW ENGLAND,—a name which Prince Charles confirmed, and which has ever since been retained.

2. What is said of the expedition of Captain Smith?

b. Note p. 56 and 43.

c. Note p. 40.

3. Of the map which he prepared?

4. What is said of Thomas Hunt?

3. [4]After Smith's departure, Thomas Hunt, the master of the second ship, enticed a number of natives on board his vessel and carried them to Spain, where they were sold into slavery. [5]In the following[d] year, Smith, in the employ of some members of the Ply-

d 1615.

5. Of Smith's firs attempt to establish a colony?

* MASSACHUSETTS, one of the New England States, is about 120 miles long from east to west, 90 miles broad in the eastern part, and 50 in the western, and contains an area of about 7,500 square miles. Several ranges of mountains, extending from Vermont and New Hampshire, pass through the western part of this state into Connecticut. East of these mountains the country is hilly, except in the southern and southeastern portions, where it is low, and generally sandy. The northern and western portions of the state have generally a strong soil, well adapted to grazing. The valleys of the Connecticut and Housatonic are highly fertile. The marble quarries of West Stockbridge, in the western part of the state, and the granite quarries of Quincy, nine miles S.E. from Boston, are celebrated.

1615. mouth Company, sailed with the design of establishing a colony in New England. In his first effort a violen

a. July 4. 1. *Of his second attempt?* tempest forced him to return. [1]Again renewing[a] the enterprise, his crew became mutinous, and he was at last intercepted by French pirates, who seized his ship and conveyed him to France. He afterwards escaped alone, in an open boat, from the harbor of Rochelle,* and returned to England.

2. *Of the plans of the Plymouth Company?* 4. [2]By the representations of Smith, the attention of the Plymouth Company was again excited; they began to form vast plans of colonization, appointed Smith admiral of the country for life, and, at length, after several years of entreaty, obtained[b] a new charter for settling the country. [3]The original Plymouth Company was superseded by the Council of Plymouth, to which was conveyed, in absolute property, all the territory lying between the 40th and 48th degrees[c] of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and comprising more than a million of square miles.

1620.

b. Nov. 13. 3. *Of the council of Plymouth and their charter?*

c. See Maps.

4. *Of what was this charter the basis?* 5. *What is said of its exclusive privileges?* 5. [4]This charter was the basis of all the grants that were subsequently made of the country of New England. [5]The exclusive privileges granted by it occasioned disputes among the proprietors, and prevented emigration under their auspices, while, in the mean time, a permanent colony was established without the aid or knowledge of the company or the king.

6. *What is said of the Puritans?* II. PLYMOUTH COLONY.—1. [6]A band of Puritans, dissenters from the established Church of England, persecuted for their religious opinions, and seeking in a foreign land that liberty of conscience which their own country denied them, became the first colonists of New England. [7]As early as 1608 they emigrated to Holland, and settled, first, at Amsterdam,† and afterwards at Leyden,‡ where, during eleven years, they continued to live in great harmony, under the charge of their excellent pastor, John Robinson.

7. *Of their residence at Amsterdam and Leyden?*

* *Rochelle* is a strongly fortified town at the bottom of a small gulf on the coast of the Atlantic (or Bay of Biscay) in the west of France.

† *Amsterdam* is on a branch of the Zuyder Zee, a gulf or bay in the west of Holland. In the 17th century it was one of the first commercial cities of Europe. The soil being marshy, the city is built mostly on oaken piles driven into the ground. Numerous canals run through the city in every direction.

‡ *Leyden*, long famous for its University, is on one of the branches or mouths of the Rhine, 7 miles from the sea, and 25 miles S.W. from Amsterdam.

2. [1]At the end of that period, the same religious zeal that had made them exiles, combined with the desire of improving their temporal welfare, induced them to undertake a more distant migration. [2]But, notwithstanding they had been driven from their early homes by the rod of persecution, they loved England still, and desired to retain their mother tongue, and to live under the government of their native land. **1620.**

1. *Of the causes which induced them to remove from Holland?*
2. *But what did they still desire?*

3. [3]These, with other reasons, induced them to seek an asylum in the wilds of America. They obtained a grant of land from the London or Virginia Company, but, in vain, sought the favor of the king. [4]Destitute of sufficient capital, they succeeded in forming a partnership with some men of business in London, and, although the terms were exceedingly severe to the poor emigrants, yet, as they did not interfere with civil or religious rights, the Pilgrims were contented. [5]Two vessels having been obtained, the Mayflower and the Speedwell, the one hired, the other purchased, as many as could be accommodated prepared to take their final departure. Mr. Robinson and the main body were to remain at Leyden until a settlement should be formed.

3. *Whither did they design to remove, and what grant did they obtain?*
4. *What partnership did they form, and why?*
5. *What vessels did they obtain, and who were to depart and who to remain?*

4. [6]Assembled[a] at Delft Haven,* and kneeling in prayer on the seashore, their pious pastor commended them to the protection of Heaven, and gave them his parting blessing. [7]A prosperous wind soon bore the Speedwell to Southampton,† where it was joined by the Mayflower, with the rest of the company from London. After several delays, and finally being obliged to abandon the Speedwell as unseaworthy, part of the emigrants were dismissed, and the remainder were taken on board the Mayflower, which, with one hundred and one passengers, sailed from Plymouth‡ on the 16th of September.

a. Aug. 1.
6. *Describe the scene at Delft Haven.*
7. *What events occurred from this time until the final departure of the Pilgrims from England?*

5. [8]After a long and dangerous voyage, on the 19th

8. *What is said of their voyage, and their destination?*

* *Delft Haven*, the port or haven of Delft, is on the north side of the river Maese, in Holland, 18 miles south from Leyden, and about fifteen miles from the sea.

† *Southampton*, a town of England, is situated on an arm of the sea, or of the English Channel. It is 75 miles S.W. from London.

‡ *Plymouth* a large town of Devonshire, in England, about 200 miles S.W. from London, and 130 from Southampton, stands between the rivers Plym and Tamar, near their entrance into the English Channel Plymouth is an important naval station, and has one of the best harbors in England.

1620. of November they descried the bleak and dreary shores of Cape Cod, still far from the Hudson,* which they had selected as the place of their habitation. But the wintry storms had already commenced, and the dangers of navigation on an unknown coast, at that inclement season, induced them to seek a nearer resting-place.

1. Where did they first anchor, and what were their first proceedings?
2. Their leading men?
3. What parties were sent on shore, and why?
4. What hardships were endured?
5. What discoveries were made?

6. [1]On the 21st they anchored in Cape Cod harbor, but, before landing, they formed themselves into a body politic, by a solemn contract, and chose John Carver their governor for the first year. [2]Their other leading men, distinguished in the subsequent history of the colony, were Bradford, Brewster, Standish, and Winslow. [3]Exploring parties were sent on shore to make discoveries, and select a place for a settlement. [4]Great hardships were endured from the cold and storm, and from wandering through the deep snow which covered the country.

7. [5]A few Indians were seen, who fled upon the discharge of the muskets of the English; a few graves were discovered, and, from heaps of sand, a number of baskets of corn were obtained, which furnished seed for a future harvest, and probably saved the infant colony from famine. [6]On the 21st of December the harbor of Plymouth† was sounded, and being found fit for shipping, a party landed, examined the soil, and finding good water, selected this as the place for a settlement. [7]The 21st of December, corresponding with the 11th of December, Old Style, is the day which should be celebrated in commemoration of this important event, as the anniversary of the landing of the *Pilgrim Fathers*.

6. What is said of the landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth?
7. Of the anniversary of this event?

PLYMOUTH AND VIC.

* The *Hudson* River, in New York, one of the best for navigation in America, rises in the mountainous regions west of Lake Champlain, and after an irregular course to Sandy Hill its direction is nearly south, 200 miles by the river, to New York Bay, which lies between Long Island and New Jersey. The tide flows to Troy, 151 miles (by the river) from New York

† *Plymouth*, thus named from Plymouth in England, is now a village of about 5000 inhabitants. It is pleasantly situated on Plymouth harbor, 38 miles S.E. from Boston. The harbor is large, but shallow, and is formed by a sand beach extending three miles N.W. from the mouth of Eel River. In 1774 a part of the rock on which the Pilgrims landed was conveyed from the shore to a square in the centre of the village.

8. [1]In a few days the Mayflower was safely moored in the harbor. The buildings of the settlers progressed slowly, through many difficulties and discouragements, for many of the men were sick with colds and consumptions, and want and exposure rapidly reduced the numbers of the colony. The governor lost a son at the first landing; early in the spring his own health sunk under a sudden attack, and his wife soon followed him in death. The sick were often destitute of proper care and attention; the living were scarcely able to bury the dead; and, at one time, there were only seven men capable of rendering any assistance. Before April forty-six had died. [2]Yet, with the scanty remnant, hope and virtue survived;—they repined not in all their sufferings, and their cheerful confidence in the mercies of Providence remained unshaken. **1620.**

1. *Of the commencement of the settlement, and the sufferings during the first winter?*

2. *How were their afflictions borne by the settlers?*

9. [3]Although a few Indians had been seen at a distance hovering around the settlement, yet during several months none approached sufficiently near to hold any intercourse with the English. At length the latter were surprised by the appearance, among them, of an Indian named Samoset, who boldly entered[a] their settlement, exclaiming in broken English, Welcome Englishmen! Welcome Englishmen! He had learned a little English among the fishermen who had visited the coast of Maine, and gave the colony much useful information.

3. *Give an account of the first Indian visit that the colony received.*

a. March 26.

10. [4]He cordially bade the strangers welcome to the soil, which, he informed them, had a few years before been deprived of its occupants by a dreadful pestilence that had desolated the whole eastern seaboard of New England. [5]Samoset soon after visited the colony, accompanied by Squanto, a native who had been carried away by Hunt, in 1614, and sold into slavery, but who had subsequently been liberated and restored to his country.

4. *What information did Samoset give?*

5. *Who accompanied him on a subsequent visit?*

11. [6]By the influence of these friendly Indians, Massasoit, the great Sachem of the Wampanoags, the principal of the neighboring tribes, was induced to visit the colony, where he was received[b] with much formality and parade. [7]A treaty of friendship was soon concluded,[b] the parties promising to deliver up offend-

6. *What Indian chief was next induced to visit the colony?*

b. April 1.

7. *Give an account of the treaty with Massasoit.*

1621. ers, and to abstain from mutual injuries; the colony to receive assistance if attacked, and Massasoit, if attacked unjustly. This treaty was kept inviolate during a period of fifty years, until the breaking out of King Philip's War.

1. What is said of other treaties?

12. [1]Other treaties, of a similar character, soon after followed. A powerful chieftain within the dominions of Massasoit, who at first regarded the English as intruders, and threatened them with hostilities, was finally

1622. compelled to sue for peace. [2]Canonicus, the chief of

2. Of Canonicus?

the Narragansetts, sent to Plymouth a bundle of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, as a token of his hostility. The governor, Bradford, filled the skin with powder and shot and returned it; but the chieftain's courage failed at the sight of this unequivocal symbol, which was rejected by every community to which it was carried, until at last it was returned to Plymouth, with all its contents. The Narragansetts were awed into submission.

3. Of Weston's colony?

13. [3]In 1622, Thomas Weston, a merchant of London, sent out a colony of sixty adventurers, who spent most of the summer at Plymouth, enjoying the hospitality of the inhabitants, but afterwards removed to Weymouth,* where they began a plantation. [4]Being

4. Character and conduct of the settlers?

soon reduced to necessity by indolence and disorder, and having provoked the Indians to hostilities by their injustice, the latter formed a plan for the destruction of the settlement.

1623. 14. [5]But the grateful Massasoit having revealed the

5. How were they saved from destruction?

design to the Plymouth colony, the governor sent Captain Standish with eight men to aid the inhabitants of Weymouth. With his small party Standish intercepted and killed the hostile chief, and several of his men,

6. What was the fate of the plantation?

and the conspiracy was defeated. [6]The Weymouth Plantation was soon after nearly deserted, most of the settlers returning to England.

7. What was the conduct of the London adventurers?

15. [7]The London adventurers, who had furnished the Plymouth settlers with capital, soon becoming discouraged by the small returns from their investments, not only deserted the interests of the colony, but dic

* *Weymouth*, called by the Indians *Wessagussett*, is a small village between two branches of the outer harbor of Boston, 12 miles S.E. from the city. (See Map, p 74

much to injure its prosperity. They refused to furnish Robinson and his friends a passage to America, attempted to enforce on the colonists a clergyman more friendly to the established church, and even despatched a ship to injure their commerce by rivalry. [1]At last, the emigrants succeeded in purchasing[a] the rights of the London merchants; they made an equitable division of their property, which was before in common stock; and although the progress of population was slow, yet, after the first winter, no fears were entertained of the permanence of the colony. **1624.** 1626. a. Nov. 1. *What did the emigrants do, and what is said of the permanence of the colony?*

III. MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.—1. [2]In 1624, Mr. White, a Puritan minister of Dorchester,* in England, having induced a number of persons to unite with him in the design of planting another colony in New England, a small company was sent over, who began a settlement at Cape Ann.† This settlement, however, was abandoned after an existence of less than two years. 2. *Give an account of the attempted settlement of Cape Ann.*

2. [3]In 1628, a patent was obtained[b] from the council of Plymouth, and a second company was sent over, under the charge of John Endicott, which settled[c] at Salem,‡ to which place a few of the settlers of Cape Ann had previously removed. [4]In the following year the proprietors received[d] a charter from the king, and were incorporated by the name of the "Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England." About 200 additional settlers came[e] over, a part of whom removed to and founded Charlestown.§ 1628. b. March 29. 3. *Of the settlement of Salem.* c. Sept. 1629. d. March 14. 4. *What events occurred in the following year?* e. July.

3. [5]During the year 1630, the Massachusetts Bay colony received a large accession to its numbers, by the arrival[f] of about three hundred families, mostly pious and intelligent Puritans, under the charge of the 1630. 5. *What accessions were made to the colony in 1630?* f. July.

---

* *Dorchester*, in England, is situated on the small river Froom, 20 miles from its entrance into the English Channel, six miles N. from Weymouth, and 120 S.W. from London.

† *Cape Ann*, the northern cape of Massachusetts Bay, is 30 miles N.E. from Boston. The cape and peninsula are now included in the town of Gloucester. Gloucester, the principal village, called also the *Harbor*, is finely located on the south side of the peninsula.

‡ *Salem*, called by the Indians *Na-um-keag*, is 14 miles N.E. from Boston. It is built on a sandy peninsula, formed by two inlets of the sea, called North and South Rivers. The harbor, which is in South River, is good for vessels drawing not more than 12 or 14 feet of water. (See Map, p. 74.)

§ See Note on page 78. Map, p. 74, and also on p. 210.

1630. excellent John Winthrop. [1]At the same time the whole government of the colony was removed to New England, and Winthrop was chosen governor.

1. *What other events occurred at the same time?*

4. [2]The new emigrants located themselves beyond the limits of Salem, and settled at Dorchester,* Roxbury,† Cambridge,‡ and Watertown.§ [3]The accidental advantage of a spring of good water induced a few families, and with them the governor, to settle on the peninsula of *Shawmut;* and Boston‖ thenceforth became the metropolis of New England.

2. *Where did the new emigrants settle?*

3. *What is said of the first settlement of Boston?*

5. [4]Many of the settlers were from illustrious and noble families, and having been accustomed to a life of ease and enjoyment, their sufferings from exposure and the failure of provisions were great, and, before December, two hundred had died. A few only, disheartened by the scenes of woe, returned to England. [5]Those who remained were sustained in their afflictions by religious faith and Christian fortitude;—not a trace of repining appears in their records, and sickness never prevented their assembling at stated times for religious worship.

4. *Of the sufferings of the settlers?*

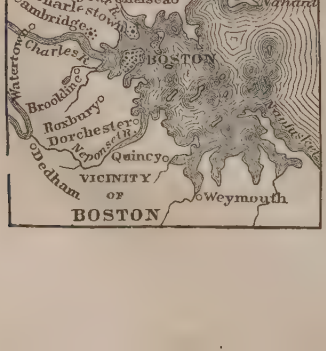
5. *What is said of those who remained?*

---

* That part of *Dorchester* which was first settled, is Dorchester Neck, about four miles S.E. from Boston. (See Map, p. 210.)

† *Roxbury* village is two miles south from Boston. Its principal street may be considered as the continuation of Washington Street, Boston, extending over Boston Neck. A great part of the town is rocky land: hence the name, *Rock's-bury.* (Map.)

‡ *Cambridge*, formerly called Newtown, is situated on the north side of Charles River, three miles N.W. from Boston. The courthouse and jail are at East Cambridge, formerly called *Lechmere's Point*, within a mile of Boston, and connected with it and Charlestown by bridges. Harvard College, the first established in the United States, is at Cambridge. (Map.) (See also Map, p. 210.)



§ *Watertown* village is on the north side of Charles River, west of Cambridge, and seven miles from Boston. (Map.)

‖ *Boston*, the largest town in New England, and the capital of Massachusetts, is situated on a peninsula of an uneven surface, two miles long and about one mile wide, connected with the mainland, on the south, by a narrow neck about forty rods across. Several bridges also now connect it with the mainland on the north, west, and south. The harbor, on the east of the city, is very extensive, and is one of the best in the United States. *South Boston*, formerly a part of Dorchester, and *East Boston*, formerly Noddles Island, are now included within the limits of the city (Also see Map on p. 210.)

6. [1]In 1631 the general court, or council of the people, ordained[a] that the governor, deputy-governor, and assistants, should be chosen by the freemen alone; but at the same time it was declared that those only should be admitted to the full rights of citizenship, who were members of some church within the limits of the colony.* [2]This law has been severely censured for its intolerance, by those who have lived in more enlightened times, but it was in strict accordance with the policy and the spirit of the age, and with the professions of the Puritans themselves, and originated in the purest motives.

1631.

1. *What regulations were adopted in 1631?*

a. May 28.

2. *How has this law of exclusion been regarded, and what is said of it?*

7. [3]In 1634 the pure democratic form of government, which had hitherto prevailed, was changed[b] to a representative democracy, by which the powers of legislation were intrusted to deputies chosen by the people. [4]In the same year the peculiar tenets of Roger Williams, minister of Salem, began to occasion much excitement in the colony. A puritan, and a fugitive from English persecution, Roger Williams had sought, in New England, an asylum among those of his own creed; but finding there, in matters of religion, the same kind of intolerance that prevailed in England, he earnestly raised his voice against it.

1634.

3. *What change in the government was made in 1634?*

b. May.

4. *What is said of Roger Williams?*

8. [5]He maintained that it is the duty of the civil magistrate to give equal protection to all religious sects, and that he has no right to restrain or direct the consciences of men, or, in any way, interfere with their modes of worship, or the principles of their religious faith. [6]But with these doctrines of religious tolerance he united others that were deemed subversive of good government, and opposed to the fundamental principles of civil society. Such were those which declared it wrong to enforce an oath of allegiance to the sovereign, or of obedience to the magistrate, and which asserted that the king had no right to usurp the power of disposing of the territory of the Indians, and hence that the colonial charter itself was invalid.

5. *Of his principles?*

6. *What other opinions did he advance?*

* NOTE.—But when New Hampshire united with Massachusetts in 1641, not as a province, but on equal terms, neither the freemen nor the deputies of New Hampshire were required to be church members.

1635. 9. [1]Such doctrines, and particularly those which related to religious toleration, were received with alarm, and Roger Williams, after having been in vain remonstrated with by the ruling elders of the churches, was summoned before the general court, and, finally, banished[a] from the colony. He soon after became the founder of Rhode Island.[b]

1. *How were the doctrines of Williams received, and what is said of his banishment?*

a. Autumn of 1635.

b. See p. 111.

10. [2]During the same year, 1635, three thousand new settlers came over, among whom were Hugh Peters and Sir Henry Vane, two individuals who afterwards acted conspicuous parts in the history of England. Sir Henry Vane, then at the age of twenty five, gained the affections of the people by his integrity, humility, and zeal in religion; and, in the following year, was chosen governor.

2. *What additional settlers came over in 1635, and what is said of Peters and Vane?*

11. [3]Already the increasing numbers of the colonists began to suggest the formation of new settlements still farther westward. The clustering villages around the Bay of Massachusetts had become too numerous and too populous for men who had few attachments to place, and who could choose their abodes from the vast world of wilderness that lay unoccupied before them; and, only seven years from the planting of Salem, we find a little colony branching[c] off from the parent stock, and wending its way through the forests, nearly a hundred miles, to the banks of the Connecticut.*

3. *Give an account of the emigration to the Connecticut?*

Oct. 25. See p. 104.

1636. 12. [4]Severe were the sufferings of the emigrants during the first winter. Some of them returned, through the snow, in a famishing state; and those who remained subsisted on acorns, malt, and grains; but, during the summer following, new emigrants came in larger companies, and several settlements were firmly established. [5]The display of Puritan fortitude, enterprise, and resolution, exhibited in the planting of the Connecticut colony, are distinguishing traits of New England character. From that day to the present the

4. *What is said of the sufferings of the emigrants?*

5. *What is remarked of this enterprise?*

* *Connecticut* River, the largest river in New England, has its source in the high lands on the northern border of New Hampshire. Its general course is S. by W., and after forming the boundary between Vermont and New Hampshire, and passing through Massachusetts and Connecticut, it enters Long Island Sound, 100 miles N.E. from New York. It is not navigable for the largest vessels. Hartford, fifty miles from its mouth is at the head of sloop navigation.

hardy sons of New England have been foremost among the bold pioneers of western emigration. **1636.**

13. [1]Soon after the banishment of Roger Williams, other religious dissensions arose, which again disturbed the quiet of the colony. It was customary for the members of each congregation to assemble in weekly meetings, and there debate the doctrines they had heard the previous Sunday, for the purpose of extending their sacred influence through the week. As women were debarred the privilege of taking part in these debates, a Mrs. Hutchinson, a woman of eloquence and ability, established meetings for those of her own sex, in which her zeal and talent soon procured her a numerous and admiring audience.

1. *What was the cause of other religious dissensions which arose soon after?*

14. [2]This woman, from being an expounder of the doctrines of others, soon began to teach new ones; she assumed the right of deciding upon the religious faith of the clergy and the people, and, finally, of censuring and condemning those who rejected, or professed themselves unable to understand her peculiar tenets. [3]She was supported by Sir Henry Vane the governor, by several of the magistrates, and men of learning, and by a majority of the people of Boston. [4]She was opposed by most of the clergy, and by the sedate and more judicious men of the colony. [5]At length, in a general synod[a] of the churches, the new opinions were condemned as erroneous and heretical, and the general court soon after issued a decree of banishment against Mrs. Hutchinson and several of her followers.

2. *What course did Mrs. Hutchinson take?*

3. *By whom was she supported?*

1637.

4. *By whom opposed?*

5. *What is said of her banishment?*

a. Aug.

15. [6]During the same year occurred an Indian war[b] in Connecticut, with the Pequods, the most warlike of the New England tribes. [7]The Narragansetts of Rhode Island, hereditary enemies of the Pequods, were invited to unite with them in exterminating the invaders of their country; but, through the influence of Roger Williams, they rejected the proposals, and, lured by the hope of gratifying their revenge for former injuries, they determined to assist the English in the prosecution of the war. [8]The result[c] of the brief contest was the total destruction of the Pequod nation. The impression made upon the other tribes secured a long tranquillity to the English settlements.

6. *Of the Pequod war?*

b. See p. 105

7. *Of the Narragansetts?*

8. *What was the result of the contest?*

c See p. 106

1637. 16. [1]The persecutions which the Puritans in England suffered, during this period, induced large numbers of them to remove to New England. But the jealousy of the English monarch, and of the English bishops, was at length aroused by the rapid growth of a Puritan colony, in which sentiments adverse to the claims of the established church and the prerogatives of royalty were ardently cherished; and repeated attempts were made to put a stop to farther emigration. As early as 1633, a proclamation to that effect was issued, but the vacillating policy of the king neglected to enforce it.

1. *What is said of the attempts in England to prevent emigration?*

1638. 17. [2]In 1638 a fleet of eight ships, on board of which were some of the most eminent Puritan leaders and patriots, was forbidden to sail, by order of the king's council; but the restraint was finally removed, and the ships proceeded on their intended voyage. [3]It has been asserted, and generally believed, that the distinguished patriots John Hampden and Oliver Cromwell were on board of this fleet, but were detained by special order of the king. [4]If the assertion be correct, this assumption of arbitrary power by the king was a fatal error; for the exertions of Hampden and Cromwell, in opposing the encroachments of kingly authority, afterwards contributed greatly to the furtherance of those measures which deprived Charles I. of his crown, and finally brought him to the scaffold.

2. *What occurred in 1638?*

3. *What has been asserted with regard to Hampden and Cromwell?*

4. *What is said of this assertion?*

18. [5]The settlers of Massachusetts had early turned their attention to the subject of education, wisely judging that learning and religion would be the best safeguards of the commonwealth. In 1636 the general court appropriated about a thousand dollars for the purpose of founding a public school or college, and, in the following year, directed that it should be established at Newtown. In 1638, John Harvard, a worthy minister, dying at Charlestown,* left to the institution upwards of three thousand dollars. In honor of this

5. *What is said of education in New England, and of the founding of Harvard College?*

* *Charlestown* is situated on a peninsula, north of and about half as large as that of Boston, formed by Mystic River on the N., and an inlet from Charles River on the S The channel between Charlestown and Boston is less than half a mile across, over which bridges have been thrown. The United States Navy Yard, located at Charlestown covers about 60 acres of land. It is one of the best naval depôts in the Union (See Map, p. 74, and also Map, p. 210.)

pious benefactor the general court gave to the school the name of Harvard College; and, in memory of the place where many of the settlers of New England had received their education, that part of Newtown in which the college was located, received the name of Cambridge.[a] **1638.**

a. Note and Map, p. 74.

IV. UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—1. [1]In 1643 the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Plymouth, and New Haven, formed[b] themselves into one confederacy, by the name of THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND. [2]The reasons assigned for this union were, the dispersed state of the colonies; the dangers apprehended from the Dutch, the French, and the Indians; the commencement of civil contests in the parent country; and the difficulty of obtaining aid from that quarter, in any emergency. [3]A few years later Rhode Island petitioned[c] to be admitted into the confederacy, but was refused, because she was unwilling to consent to what was required of her, an incorporation with the Plymouth colony. 1643.

1. *Of the union of the New England colonies?*

b. May 29.*

2. *The reasons for this union?*

3. *Why was Rhode Island not admitted?*

c. 1643

2. [4]By the terms of the confederacy, which existed more than forty years, each colony was to retain its separate existence, but was to contribute its proportion of men and money for the common defence; which, with all matters relating to the common interest, was to be decided in an annual assembly composed of two commissioners from each colony. [5]This transaction of the colonies was an assumption of the powers of sovereignty, and doubtless contributed to the formation of that public sentiment which prepared the way for American Independence.

4. *What were the terms of the confederacy?*

5. *What is said of the nature of this transaction?*

V. EARLY LAWS AND CUSTOMS.—1. [6]As the laws and customs of a people denote the prevailing sentiments and opinions, the peculiarities of early New England legislation should not be wholly overlooked. [7]By a fundamental law of Massachusetts it was enacted that all strangers professing the Christian religion, and fleeing to the country, from the tyranny of their persecutors, should be supported at the public charge till

6. *Of early laws and customs?*

7. *What was a fundamental law of Massachusetts?*

* NOTE.—The Plymouth commissioners, for want of authority from their general court, did not sign the articles until Sept. 17th.

1643. other provision could be made for them. [1]Yet this toleration did not extend to Jesuits and popish priests, who were subjected to banishment; and, in case of their return, to death.

1. But how was it limited?

2. [2]Defensive war only was considered justifiable; blasphemy, idolatry, and witchcraft, were punishable with death; all gaming was prohibited; intemperance, and all immoralities, were severely punished; persons were forbidden to receive interest for money lent, and to wear expensive apparel unsuitable to their estates: parents were commanded to instruct and catechise their children and servants; and, in all cases in which the laws were found defective, the Bible was made the ultimate tribunal of appeal.

2. What is said of "war," "blasphemy," &c.? "Immoralities?" "Money loaned?" "Instruction of children?" "The Bible?"

3. [3]Like the tribes of Israel, the colonists of New England had forsaken their native land after a long and severe bondage, and journeyed into the wilderness for the sake of religion. [4]They endeavored to cherish a resemblance of condition so honorable, and so fraught with incitements to piety, by cultivating a conformity between their laws and customs, and those which had distinguished the people of God. [5]Hence arose some of the peculiarities which have been observed in their legislative code; and hence arose also the practice of commencing their sabbatical observances on Saturday evening, and of accounting every evening the commencement of the ensuing day.

2. What comparison is here observed?

4. What did the colonists endeavor to cherish, and how?

5. What peculiarities hence arose?

4. [6]'The same predilection for Jewish customs begat, or at least promoted, among them, the habit of bestowing significant names on children; of whom, the first three that were baptized in Boston church, received the names of Joy, Recompense, and Pity.' This custom prevailed to a great extent, and such names as Faith, Hope, Charity, Patience, &c., and others of a similar character, were long prevalent throughout New England.

6. What is said of the names of children?

SECTION II.

Of what does Section II. of this Chapter treat?

MASSACHUSETTS, FROM THE UNION OF THE N. ENGLAND COLONIES IN 1643, TO THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR IN 1697.

DIVISIONS.

What are its Divisions?

I.—Events from the "Union" to King Philip's War.—II. King Philip's War.—III. Controversies and Royal Tyranny.—IV. Massachusetts during King William's War.

I. EVENTS FROM THE "UNION" TO KING PHILIP'S WAR.—1. [1]In 1644 an important change took place in the government of Massachusetts. When representatives were first chosen, they sat and voted in the same room with the governor's council; but it was now ordained that the governor and his council should sit apart; and thence commenced the separate existence of the democratic branch of the legislature, or house of representatives. [2]During the same year the disputes which had long existed between the inhabitants of New England and the French settlers in Acadia were adjusted by treaty.[a]

1. *What change in the government occurred in 1644*

2. *What disputes were adjusted?*

a. Oct. 18.

2. [3]During the civil war[b] which occurred in England, the New England colonies were ardently attached to the cause of the Parliament, but yet they had so far forgotten their own wrongs, as sincerely to lament the tragical fate of the king. [4]After the abolition of royalty, a requisition[c] was made upon Massachusetts for the return of her charter, that a new one might be taken out under the authorities which then held the reins of government. Probably through the influence of Cromwell the requisition was not enforced. When the supreme authority devolved upon Cromwell, as Protector of the Commonwealth of England, the New England colonies found in him an ardent friend, and a protector of their liberties.

b. Note p. 61.

3. *What is said of Massachusetts during the civil war in England?*

c. 1651.

4. *After the abolition of royalty?*

5. *During the Commonwealth?*

1652.

6. *Give an account of the early history of Maine.*

3. [5]In 1652 the province of Maine* was taken

* MAINE, the northeastern of the United States, is supposed to contain an area of nearly 35,000 square miles. In the north and northwest the country is mountainous, and has a poor soil. Throughout the interior it is generally hilly, and the land rises so rapidly from the seacoast, that the tide in the numerous rivers flows but a short distance inland. The best land in the state is between the Penobscot and Kennebec rivers, where it is excellent. The coast is lined with islands, and indented with numerous

1652. under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. As early as 1626 a few feeble settlements were commenced along the coast of Maine, but hardly had they gained a permanent existence, before the whole territory, from the Piscataqua* to the Penobscot, was granted away by the Plymouth Company, by a succession of conflicting patents, which were afterwards the occasion of long-continued and bitter controversies.

a. April 13.

1. *What is said of Gorges, and his scheme of government?*

4. [1]In 1639 Ferdinand Gorges, a member of the Plymouth Company, obtained[a] a royal charter, constituting him Lord Proprietor of the country. The stately scheme of government which he attempted to establish was poorly suited to the circumstances of the people; and they finally sought a refuge from anarchy, and the contentions of opposing claimants to their territory, by taking into their own hands the powers of government, and placing[b] themselves under the protection of a sister colony.

b. 1652.

1656.

2. *Of the first arrival of Quakers in Massachusetts?*

5. [2]In 1656 occurred the first arrival of Quakers in Massachusetts, a sect which had recently arisen in England. The report of their peculiar sentiments and actions had preceded them, and they were sent back by the vessels in which they came. [3]The four united colonies then concurred in a law[c] prohibiting the introduction of Quakers, but still they continued to arrive in increasing numbers, although the rigor of the law was increased against them. At length, in 1658, by the advice of the commissioners of the four colonies, the legislature of Massachusetts, after a long discussion, ar l by a majority of a single vote, denounced the punishment of death upon all Quakers returning from banishment.

3. *Of the laws against them?*

c 1657.

1658.

4. *What was the avowed object of the law of 1658?*

5. *What was its effect?*

6. [4]The avowed object of the law was not to persecute the Quakers, but to exclude them; and it was thought that its severity would be effectual. [5]But the fear of death had no influence over men who believed they were divinely commissioned to proclaim the sin

---

bays and inlets, which furnish more good harbors than are found in any other state in the Union.

* The *Piscataqua* rises between Maine and New Hampshire, and throughout its whole course, of forty miles, constitutes the boundary between the two states. That part of the stream above Berwick Falls, it is called *Salmon Falls* river. Great Bay, with its tributaries, Lamprey, Exeter, Oyster River, and other streams, unites with it on the south, five miles above Portsmouth. (See Map, p. 101.)

fulness of a dying people; and four of those who had been banished, were executed according to the law,— rejoicing in their death, and refusing to accept a pardon, which was vainly urged upon them, on condition of their abandoning the colony for ever. **1659.**

7. [1]During the trial of the last who suffered, another, who had been banished, entered the court, and reproached the magistrates for shedding innocent blood. [2]The prisons were soon filled with new victims, who eagerly crowded forward to the ranks of martyrdom; but, as a natural result of the severity of the law, public sympathy was turned in favor of the accused, and the law was repealed.[a] The other laws were relaxed, as the Quakers gradually became less ardent in the promulgation of their sentiments, and more moderate in their opposition to the usages of the people. 1660.

1. *What occurred at the trial of the last who suffered?*

2. *What was the final result of these proceedings?*

[a] 1661.

8. [3]Tidings of the restoration of monarchy in England were brought by the arrival,[b] at Boston, of two of the judges who had condemned Charles I. to death, and who now fled from the vengeance of his son. These judges, whose names were Edward Whalley and William Goffe, were kindly received by the people; and when orders were sent, and messengers arrived[c] for their arrest, they were concealed from the officers of the law, and were enabled to end their days in New England.

3. *What is said of the judges of Charles I.?*

[b] Aug. 6 1660.

[c] 1661.

9. [4]The commercial restrictions from which the New England colonies were exempt during the time of the Commonwealth, were renewed after the restoration. The harbors of the colonies were closed against all but English vessels; such articles of American produce as were in demand in England were forbidden to be shipped to foreign markets; even the liberty of free trade among the colonies themselves was taken away, and they were finally forbidden to manufacture, for their own use, or for foreign markets, those articles which would come in competition with English manufactures. [5]These restrictions were the subject of frequent complaints, and could seldom be strictly enforced; but England would never repeal them, and they became a prominent link in the chain of causes which led to the revolution.

4. *Give an account of the restrictions upon New England commerce*

5. *Were these restrictions enforced?*

1664.

1664.

a. Aug. 2.

1. *What is said of the arrival of royal commissioners in New England?*

2. *How was this measure viewed?*

3. *In Maine and N. H.? In Conn., Plymouth, and R. I.?*

4. *What was the conduct of Massachusetts?*

5. *What was the result?*

10. [1]In 1664 a royal fleet, destined for the reduction of the Dutch colonies on the Hudson, arrived[a] at Boston, bringing commissioners who were instructed to hear and determine all complaints that might exist in New England, and take such measures as they might deem expedient for settling the peace and security of the country on a solid foundation. [2]Most of the New England colonies, ever jealous of their liberties, viewed this measure with alarm, and considered it a violation of their charters.

11. [3]In Maine and New Hampshire the commissioners occasioned much disturbance; in Connecticut they were received with coldness; in Plymouth with secret opposition; but, in Rhode Island, with every mark of deference and attention. [4]Massachusetts alone, although professing the most sincere loyalty to the king, asserted with boldness her chartered rights, and declining to acknowledge the authority of the commissioners, protested against its exercise within her limits. [5]In general, but little attention was paid to the acts of the commissioners, and they were at length recalled. After their departure, New England enjoyed a season of prosperity and tranquillity, until the breaking out of King Philip's war, in 1675.

6. *What is said of the treaty with Massasoit?*

D. See p. 71.

c. 1662.

7. *Of the two sons of Massasoit?*

d. 1662.

8. *What has been said of Philip by the early N. England historians?*

9. *By later writers?*

II. King Philip's War.—1. [6]The treaty of friendship which the Plymouth colony made[b] with Massasoit, the great sachem of the Wampanoags, was kept unbroken during his lifetime. [7]After his death,[c] his two sons, Alexander and Philip, were regarded with much jealousy by the English, and were suspected of plotting against them. The elder brother, Alexander, soon dying,[d] Philip succeeded him.

2. [8]It is said by the early New England historians, that this chief, jealous of the growing power of the whites, and perceiving, in it, the eventual destruction of his own race, during several years secretly carried on his designs of uniting all the neighboring tribes in a warlike confederacy against the English. [9]By later and more impartial writers, it is asserted that Philip received the news of the death of the first Englishmen who were killed, with so much sorrow as to cause him to weep; and that he was forced into the war by the

ardor of his young men, against his own judgment, and that of his chief counsellors. **1674.**

3. [1]A friendly Indian missionary, who had detected the supposed plot, and revealed it to the Plymouth people, was, soon after, found murdered.[a] Three Indians were arrested, tried, and convicted of the murder, —one of whom, at the execution, confessed they had been instigated by Philip to commit the deed. Philip, now encouraged by the general voice of his tribe, and seeing no possibility of avoiding the war, sent his women and children to the Narragansetts for protection, and, early in July, 1675, made an attack[b] upon Swanzey,* and killed several people.

a. 1674.

1. *Give an account of the commencement of King Philip's war.*

1675

b. July 4.

4. [2]The country was immediately alarmed, and the troops of Plymouth, with several companies from Boston, marched in pursuit of the enemy. A few Indians were killed, the troops penetrated to Mount Hope,† the residence of Philip, but he and his warriors fled at their approach. [3]It being known that the Narragansetts favored the cause of Philip, and it being feared that they would join him in the war, the forces proceeded into the Narragansett country, where they concluded a treaty[c] of peace with that tribe.

2. *Of the pursuit of the enemy.*

July

3. *What is said of the Narragansetts?*

c. July 25.

5. [4]During the same month the forces of Philip were attacked[d] in a swamp at Pocasset, now Tiverton,‡ but the whites, after losing sixteen of their number, were obliged to withdraw. They then attempted to guard the avenues leading from the swamp, in the hope of reducing the Indians by starvation; but, after a siege of thirteen days, the enemy contrived to escape in the night across an arm of the bay, and most of them, with Philip, fled westward to the Connecticut River, where they had previously induced the Nipmucks,§ a tribe in the interior of Massachusetts, to join them.

d. July 28.

4. *Give an account of the events at Tiverton, and of the flight of Philip.*

* *Swanzey* is a small village of Massachusetts, on a northern branch of Mount Hope Bay, (part of Narragansett Bay,) It is twelve miles S.E. from Providence, and about thirty-five S.W. from Plymouth. (See Map p. 112.)

† *Mount Hope*, or *Pokanoket*, is a hill of a conical form, nearly 300 feet high, in the present town of Bristol, Rhode Island, and on the west shore of Mount Hope Bay. The hill is two miles N.E. from Bristol Courthouse. The view from its summit is highly beautiful. (See Map, p. 112.)

‡ *Tiverton* is in the State of Rhode Island, south from Mount Hope Bay, and having on the west the *East Passage* of Narragansett Bay. A stone bridge 1000 feet long connects the village, on the south, with the island of Rhode Island. The village is thirteen miles N.E. from Newport, and sixteen in a direct line S.E. from Providence. The *Swamp* on *Pocasset Neck* is seven miles long. (See Map, p. 112.)

§ The *Nipmucks* occupied the country in the central and southern parts of Worcester county.

1675. 6. [1]The English, in the hope of reclaiming the Nipmucks, had sent Captains Wheeler and Hutchinson, with a party of twenty men, into their country, to treat with them. The Indians had agreed to meet them near Brookfield;* but, lurking in ambush, they fell upon them as they approached, and killed most of the party.[a]

1. *Of the events that happened at Brookfield.*

a. Aug. 12.

2. *Of the siege at that place.*

7. [2]The remainder fled to Brookfield, and alarmed the inhabitants, who hastily fortified a house for their protection. Here they were besieged during two days, and every expedient which savage ingenuity could devise was adopted for their destruction. At one time the savages had succeeded in setting the building on fire, when the rain suddenly descended and extinguished the kindling flames. On the arrival of a party to the relief of the garrison the Indians abandoned the place.

b. Sept. 5.

3. *What occurred at Deerfield?*

8. [3]A few days later, 180 men attacked[b] the Indians in the southern part of the town of Deerfield,† killing twenty-six of the enemy, and losing ten of their own number. On the eleventh of September Deerfield was burned, by the Indians.

4. *At Hadley?*

[4]On the same day Hadley‡ was alarmed in time of public worship, and the people thrown into the utmost confusion. Suddenly there appeared a man of venerable aspect in the midst of the affrighted inhabitants, who put himself at their head, led them to the onset, and, after the dispersion of the enemy, instantly disappeared. The deliverer of Hadley, then imagined to be an angel, was General Goffe,[c] one of the judges of Charles I., who was at that time concealed in the town.

c. See p. 83.

5. *At Bloody Brook?*

9. [5]On the 28th of the same month, as Captain Lathrop and eighty young men, with several teams, were

---

* *Brookfield* is in Worcester county, Massachusetts, sixty miles W. from Boston, and twenty-five E. from Connecticut River. This town was long a solitary settlement, being about half way between the old towns on Connecticut River, and those on the east towards the Atlantic coast. The place of *ambuscade* was two or three miles west from the village, at a narrow passage between a steep hill and a thick swamp, at the head of Wickaboag Pond.

† The town of *Deerfield* is in Franklin county, Massachusetts, on the west bank of Connecticut River. Deerfield River runs through the town, and at its N.E. extremity enters the Connecticut. The *village* is pleasantly situated on a plain, bordering on Deerfield River, separated from the Connecticut by a range of hills. (See Map, p. 87.)

‡ *Hadley* is on the east side of Connecticut River, three miles N.E. from Northampton, with which it is connected by a bridge 1080 feet long. (See Map, p. 87.)

transporting a quantity of grain from Deerfield to Hadley, nearly a thousand Indians suddenly surrounded them at a place since called Bloody Brook,* and killed nearly their whole number. The noise of the firing being heard at Deerfield, Captain Mosely, with seventy men, hastened to the scene of action. After a contest of several hours he found himself obliged to retreat, when a reenforcement of one hundred English and sixty friendly Mohegan Indians, came to his assistance, and the enemy were at length repulsed with a heavy loss. **1675**

10. [1]The Springfield† Indians, who had, until this period, remained friendly, now united with the enemy, with whom they formed a plot for the destruction of the town. The people, however, escaped to their garrisons, although nearly all their dwellings were burned.[a] [2]With seven or eight hundred of his men, Philip next made an attack[b] upon Hatfield,‡ the head-quarters of the whites, in that region, but he met with a brave resistance and was compelled to retreat.

1. *At Springfield.*

a. Oct. 15.

2. *At Hatfield.*

b. Oct. 29.

11. [3]Having accomplished all that could be done on the western frontier of Massachusetts, Philip returned to the Narragansetts, most of whom he induced to unite with him, in violation of their recent treaty with the English. [4]An army of 1500 men from Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, with a number of friendly Indians, was therefore sent into the Narragansett country, to crush the power of Philip in that quarter.

3. *What was the next movement of Philip?*

4. *What was done by the English?*

---

* *Bloody Brook* is a small stream in the southern part of the town of Deerfield. The place where Lathrop was surprised is now the small village of *Muddy Brook*, four or five miles from the village of Deerfield. (See Map.)

† *Springfield* is in the southern part of Massachusetts, on the east side of the Connecticut River, twenty-four miles N. from Hartford, and ninety S.W. from Boston. The main street extends along the river two miles. Here is the most extensive public armory in the U States. The Chickapee River, passing through the town, enters the Connecticut at Cabotsville, four miles north from Springfield. (See Map.)

‡ *Hatfield* is on the west side of the Connecticut, four or five miles N. from Northampton. (See Map.)

1675. 12. [1]In the centre of an immense swamp,* in the southern part of Rhode Island, Philip had strongly fortified himself, by encompassing an island of several acres with high palisades, and a hedge of fallen trees, and here 3000 Indians, well supplied with provisions, had collected, with the intention of passing the winter. [2]Before this fortress the New England forces arrived on a cold stormy day in the month of December. Between the fort and the mainland was a body of water, over which a tree had been felled, and upon this, as many of the English as could pass rushed with ardor; but they were quickly swept off by the fire of Philip's men. Others supplied the places of the slain, but again they were swept from the fatal avenue, and a partial, but momentary recoil took place.

1. *Give an account of the Narragansett fortress.*

a. Dec. 29.

2. *Of the attack by the English.*

13. [3]Meanwhile a part of the army, wading through the swamp, found a place destitute of palisades, and although many were killed at the entrance, the rest forced their way through, and, after a desperate conflict, achieved a complete victory. Five hundred wigwams were now set on fire, although contrary to the advice of the officers; and hundreds of women and children,—the aged, the wounded, and the infirm, perished in the conflagration. A thousand Indian warriors were killed, or mortally wounded; and sev-

3. *And the destruction of the Narragansetts.*

---

* Explanation of the Map.—The *Swamp*, mentioned above, is a short distance S.W. from the village of Kingston, in the town of South Kingston, Washington county Rhode Island.

The *Fort* was on an island containing four or five acres, in the N.W. part of the swamp

a. The place where the English formed, whence they marched upon the fort.

b. A place at which resided an English family, of the name of Babcock, at the time of the fight. Descendants of that family have resided on or near the spot ever since.

NARRAGANSETT FORT AND SWAMP.

c. The present residence (1845) of J G. Clarke, Esq., whose father purchased the island on which the fort stood, in the year 1775, one hundred years after the battle. On ploughing the land soon after; besides bullets, bones, and various Indian utensils, several bushels of burnt corn were found,—the reliques of the conflagration. It is said the Indians had 500 bushels of corn in the stack.

d. A piece of upland of about 200 acres.

e. The depôt of the Stonington and Providence Rail Road. The Rail Road crosses the swamp in a S.W. direction.

eral hundred were taken prisoners. [1]Of the English, eighty were killed in the fight, and one hundred and fifty were wounded. [2]The power of the Narragansetts was broken, but the remnant of the nation repaired, with Philip, to the country of the Nipmucks, and still continued the war. **1675.**

1. *What is said of the English loss?*
2. *Of the remnant of the Narragansetts?*

14. [3]It is said that Philip soon after repaired to the country of the Mohawks, whom he solicited to aid him against the English, but without success. [4]His influence was felt, however, among the tribes of Maine and New Hampshire, and a general Indian war opened upon all the New England settlements. [5]The unequal contest continued, with the ordinary details of savage warfare, and with increasing losses to the Indians, until August of the following year, when the finishing stroke was given to it in the United Colonies by the death of Philip. 1676.

3. *Whither did Philip next repair?*
4. *What is said of the extent of his influence?*
5. *How long did the contest continue?*

15. [6]After the absence of a year from the home of his tribe, during which time nearly all his warriors had fallen, and his wife and only son had been taken prisoners, the heart-broken chief, with a few followers, returned to Pokanoket. Tidings of his arrival were brought to Captain Church, who, with a small party, surrounded the place where Philip was concealed. The savage warrior attempted to escape, but was shot[a] by a faithless Indian, an ally of the English, one of his own tribe, whom he had previously offended. The southern and western Indians now came in and sued for peace, but the tribes in Maine and New Hampshire continued hostile until 1678, when a treaty was concluded[b] with them.

6. *Give an account of Philip's death, and the close of the war*

a. Aug. 22.

b. April 22, 1678.

III. Controversies, and Royal Tyranny.—1. [7]In 1677, a controversy which had long subsisted between Massachusetts and the heirs of Gorges, relative to the province of Maine, was decided in England, in favor of the former; and Massachusetts then purchased[c] the claims of the heirs, both as to soil and jurisdiction. [8]In 1680, the claims of Massachusetts to New Hampshire were decided against the former, and the two provinces were separated, much against the wishes of the people of both. New Hampshire then became a 1677.

7. *What is said of the claims of Massachusetts to Maine?*

c. May 16.

1680.

8. *To New Hampshire*

1680. royal province, over which was established the first royal government in New England.

1. *Of opposition to commercial restrictions?*

2. [1]Massachusetts had ever resisted, as unjust and illegal, the commercial restrictions which had been imposed upon the colonies; and when a custom-house officer was sent[a] over for the collection of duties, he was defeated in his attempts, and finally returned[b] to England without accomplishing his object. [2]The king seized the occasion for carrying out a project which he had long entertained, that of taking into his own hands the governments of all the New England colonies. [3]Massachusetts was accused of disobedience to the laws of England, and English judges, who held their offices at the pleasure of the crown, declared[c] that she had forfeited her charter. [4]The king died[d] before he had completed his scheme of subverting the charter governments of the colonies, but his plans were prosecuted with ardor by his brother and successor, James II.

a. Randolph; in 1681.

b. 1682.

2. *Of a favorite project of the king?*

3. *How was the object accomplished?*

c. June 28. 1684.

d. Feb. 26, 1685.

4. *Did the king complete his scheme?*

1686.

3. [5]In 1686 the charter government of Massachusetts was taken away, and a President,[e] appointed by the king, was placed over the country from Narragansett to Nova Scotia. [6]In December of the same year Sir Edmund Andros arrived[f] at Boston, with a commission as royal governor of all New England. [7]Plymouth, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, immediately submitted; and, in a few months, Connecticut was added to his jurisdiction.

e. Joseph Dudley.

5. *What change of government occurred in 1686?*

6. *What is said of the arrival of Andros?*

f. Dec. 30.

7. *His jurisdiction?*

4. [8]The hatred of the people was violently excited against Andros, who, on account of his arbitrary proceedings, was styled the tyrant of New England; and when, early in 1689, tidings reached[g] Boston that the tyranny of James II. had caused a revolution in England, and that the king had been driven from his throne, and succeeded by William of Orange, the people arose in arms, seized[h] and imprisoned Andros and his officers and sent them to England, and established their former mode of government.

8. *His tyranny, imprisonment, and return to England?*

g. April 14.

h. April 28.

IV. Massachusetts during King William's War.

—1. [9]When James II. fled from England he repaired to France, where his cause was espoused by the French monarch. This occasioned a war between France and England, which extended to their colonia.

9. *What was the cause of King William's war?*

possessions in America, and continued from 1689 to the peace of Ryswick* in 1697. **1689.**

2. [1]The opening of this war was signalized by several successful expeditions of the French and Indians against the northern colonies. In July,[a] 1689, a party of Indians surprised and killed Major Waldron and twenty of the garrison at Dover,† and carried twenty-nine of the inhabitants captives to Canada. In the following month an Indian war party, starting from the French settlement on the Penobscot, fell upon the English fort at Pemaquid,‡ which they compelled to surrender.[b]

1. *What inroads of the French and Indians opened the war?*

a. July 7.

b. Aug. 12.

3. Early in the following year, 1690, Schenectady§ was burned;[c] the settlement at Salmon Falls,‖ on the Piscataqua, was destroyed;[d] and a successful attack was made[e] on the fort and settlement at Casco Bay.¶ [2]In anticipation of the inroads of the French, Massachusetts had hastily fitted out an expedition, under Sir William Phipps, against Nova Scotia, which resulted in the easy conquest[f] of Port Royal.

1690.

c. Feb. 18, see p. 129.

d. March 28.

e. May 27.

2. *What successful expedition was sent against the French?*

f. May.

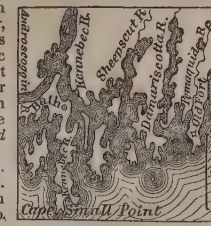
---

* *Ryswick* is a small town in the west of Holland, two miles S.E. from Hague, and thirty-five S.W. from Amsterdam.

† (See pages 100 and 101.)

‡ The fort at *Pemaquid*, the most noted place in the early history of Maine, was in the present town of Bremen, on the east side of, and near the mouth of Pemaquid River, which separates the towns of Bremen and Bristol. It is about eighteen miles N.E. from the mouth of Kennebec River, and forty N.E. from Portland. The fort was at first called *Fort George*. In 1692 it was rebuilt of stone, by Sir William Phipps, and named *Fort William Henry*. In 1730 it was repaired, and called *Fort Frederic*. Three miles and a quarter south from the old fort is *Pemaquid Point*. (See Map.)

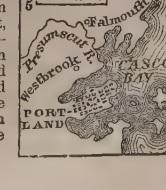
VIC. OF PEMAQUID FORT.



§ *Schenectady*, an early Dutch settlement, is on the S. bank of Mohawk River, sixteen miles N.W. from Albany. The buildings of Union College are pleasantly situated on an eminence half a mile east from the city. (See Map, p. 118.)

‖ The *settlement* formerly called *Salmon Falls*, is in the town of South Berwick, Maine, on the east side of the Piscataqua or Salmon Falls River, seventeen miles N W from Portsmouth. The Indian name by which it is often mentioned in history, is *Newichawannoc*. (See Map, p. 101.)

VICINITY OF PORTLAND



¶ *Casco Bay* is on the coast of Maine, S.W. from the mouth of the Kennebec River. It sets up between Cape Elizabeth on the S.W. and Cape Small Point on the N.E., twenty miles apart, and contains 300 islands, mostly small, but generally very productive. In 1690 the settlements extended around the western shore of the bay, and were embraced in what was then called the town of *Falmouth*. The fort and settlement mentioned above, were on a peninsula called *Casco Neck*, the site of the present city of Portland. The fort, called *Fort Loyal*, was on the southwesterly shore of the peninsula, at the end of the present King Street. (See Map.)

1690. 4. [1]Late in the same year a more important enterprise, the conquest of Canada, was undertaken by the people of New England and New York acting in concert. An armament, designed for the reduction of Quebec, was equipped by Massachusetts, and the command of it given to Sir William Phipps; while a land expedition was to proceed from New York against Montreal. The fleet proceeded up the St. Lawrence, and appeared before Quebec about the middle of October; but the land troops of New York having returned,[a] Quebec had been strengthened by all the French forces, and now bade defiance to the fleet, which soon returned to Boston. [2]This expedition imposed a heavy debt upon Massachusetts, and, for the payment of troops, bills of credit were issued;—the first emission of the kind in the American colonies.

1. *Give an account of the expedition against Canada.*

a. See p. 130.

2. *What is said of the debts incurred by this expedition?*

3. *Why was Phipps sent to England?*

5. [3]Soon after the return of Sir William Phipps from this expedition, he was sent to England to request assistance in the farther prosecution of the war, and likewise to aid other deputies of Massachusetts in applying for the restoration of the colonial charter.

1691.

4. *Was he successful? And why not?*

[4]But in neither of these objects was he successful. England was too much engaged at home to expend her treasures in the defence of her colonies; and the king and his counsellors were secretly averse to the liberality of the former charter.

1692. 6. [5]Early in 1692 Sir William Phipps returned[b] with a new charter, which vested the appointment of governor in the king, and united Plymouth, Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia, in one royal government. Plymouth lost her separate government contrary to her wishes; while New Hampshire, which had recently[c] placed herself under the protection of Massachusetts, was now forcibly severed from her.

b. May 24.

5. *Give an account of the establishment of royal government over most of New England.*

c. See p. 102.

7. [6]While Massachusetts was called to mourn the desolation of her frontiers by savage warfare, and to grieve the abridgment of her charter privileges, a new and still more formidable calamity fell upon her. The belief in witchcraft was then almost universal in Christian countries, nor did the Puritans of New England escape the delusion. The laws of England, which admitted the existence of witchcraft, and punished i

6. *What is said of the general belief in witchcraft?*

with death, had been adopted in Massachusetts, and in less than twenty years from the founding of the colony, one individual was tried and executed[a] for the supposed crime. **1692.**

a. In 1648, at Charlestown.

8. [1]In 1692 the delusion broke out[b] with new violence and frenzy in Danvers,* then a part of Salem. The daughter and niece of the minister, Mr. Parris, were at first moved by strange caprices, and their singular conduct was readily ascribed to the influence of witchcraft. The ministers of the neighborhood held a day of fasting and prayer, and the notoriety which the children soon acquired, with perhaps their own belief in some mysterious influence, led them to accuse individuals as the authors of their sufferings. An old Indian servant in the family was whipped until she confessed herself a witch; and the truth of the confession, although obtained in such a manner, was not doubted.

b. Feb.

1. *Give an account of the first appearance of the Salem witchcraft*

March.

9. [2]Alarm and terror spread rapidly; evil spirits were thought to overshadow the land; and every case of nervous derangement, aggravated by fear; and every unusual symptom of disease, was ascribed to the influence of wicked demons, who were supposed to have entered the bodies of those who had sold themselves into the power of Satan.

2. *What is said of the spread of the delusion, and its nature?*

10. [3]Those supposed to be bewitched were mostly children, and persons in the lowest ranks of life; and the accused were at first old women, whose ill-favored looks seemed to mark them the fit instruments of unearthly wickedness. [4]But, finally, neither age, nor sex, nor station, afforded any safeguard against a charge of witchcraft. Magistrates were condemned, and a clergyman[c] of the highest respectability was executed.[d]

3. *Who were those first supposed to be bewitched, and who the accused?*

4. *Finally who were accused?*

c. Burroughs.

d. Aug. 29.

11. [5]The alarming extent of the delusion at length opened the eyes of the people. Already twenty persons had suffered death; fifty-five had been tortured or terrified into confessions of witchcraft; a hundred and fifty were in prison; and two hundred more had been accused. [6]When the legislature assembled, in Octo-

5. *What is said of the extent of the delusion?*

6. *Of its ending?*

* *Danvers* is two miles N.W. from Salem. The principal village is a continuation of the streets of Salem, of which it is, virtually, a suburb.

1692. ber, remonstrances were urged against the recent proceedings; the spell which had pervaded the land was suddenly dissolved; and although many were subsequently tried, and a few convicted, yet no more were
1693. executed. The prominent actors in the late tragedy lamented and condemned the delusion to which they had yielded, and one of the judges, who had presided at the trials, made a frank and full confession of his error.

1694. 12. [1]The war with the French and Indians still
a. July 28. continued. In 1694, Oyster River,* in New Hampshire, was attacked,[a] and ninety-four persons were killed, or carried away captive. Two years later, the
1. *What events occurred in the war with the French and Indians?* English fort at Pemaquid[b] was surrendered[c] to a large force of French and Indians commanded by the Baron
1696. Castine, but the garrison were sent to Boston, where
b. Note p. 91. they were exchanged for prisoners in the hands of the
c. July 25. English.

1697. 13. [2]In March, 1697, Haverhill,† in Massachusetts,
d. March 25. was attacked,[d] and forty persons were killed, or carried
2. *What occurred at Haverhill?* away captive. [3]Among the captives were Mrs. Duston
3. *Give an account of Mrs. Duston.* and her nurse, who, with a boy previously taken, fell to the lot of an Indian family, twelve in number. The three prisoners planned an escape from captivity, and in one night, killed ten of the twelve Indians, while they were asleep, and returned in safety to their friends —filling the land with wonder at their successful daring
4. *When was the war terminated?* [4]During the same year King William's war was terminated by the treaty[e] of Ryswick.[f]
e. Sept. 20.
f. See p. 91.

* *Oyster River* is a small stream, of only twelve or fifteen miles in length, which flows from the west into *Great Bay*, a southern arm, or branch, of the Piscataqua. The settlement mentioned in history as Oyster River, was in the present town of Durham, ten miles N.W. from Portsmouth. (See Map, p. 101.)

† *Haverhill*, in Massachusetts, is on the N. side of the Merrimac, at the head of navigation,—thirty miles north from Boston. The village of Bradford is on the opposite side of the river.

1697.

SECTION III.

Of what does Section III. of this Chapter treat?

MASSACHUSETTS, FROM THE CLOSE OF KING WILLIAM'S WAR, IN 1697, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, IN 1754. (57 YEARS.)

DIVISIONS.

What are its Divisions?

Massachusetts during Queen Anne's War.—II. King George's War.

1701.

I. MASSACHUSETTS DURING QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—1. [1]After the death of James II., who died[a] in France, in 1701, the French government acknowledged his son, then an exile, as king of England; which was deemed an unpardonable insult to the latter kingdom, which had settled the crown on Anne, the second daughter of James. In addition to this, the French monarch was charged with attempting to destroy the proper balance of power in Europe, by placing his grandson, Philip of Anjou,* on the throne of Spain. These causes led to a war between England, on the one side, and France and Spain on the other, which is commonly known in America as "Queen Anne's War," but, in Europe, as the "War of the Spanish Succession."

a. Sept.

1. Give an account of the causes which led to Queen Anne's war

2. [2]The Five Nations had recently concluded a treaty[b] of neutrality with the French of Canada, by which New York was screened from danger; so that the whole weight of Queen Anne's war, in the north, fell upon the New England colonies. [3]The tribes from the Merrimac† to the Penobscot had assented to a treaty[c] of peace with New England; but, through the influence of the French, seven weeks after, it was treacherously broken;[d] and, on one and the same day, the whole frontier, from Casco‡ to Wells,§ was devoted to the tomahawk and the scalping-knife.

b. Aug. 4, 1701.

2. Where did the weight of this war fall, and why?

3. What is said of the Indian tribes from the Merrimac to the Penobscot?

c July 1, 1703.

d. Aug. 20.

---

* *Anjou* was an ancient province in the west of France, on the river Loire.

† The *Merrimac* River, in New Hampshire, is formed by the union of the Pemigewasset and the Winnipiseogee. The former rises near the Notch, in the White Mountains, and at Sanbornton, seventy miles below its source, receives the Winnipiseogee from Winnipiseogee Lake. The course of the Merrimac is then S.E. to the vicinity of Lowell, Massachusetts, when, turning to the N.E., after a winding course of fifty miles, it falls into the Atlantic, at Newburyport. ‡ *Casco.* See *Casco Bay*, p. 91.

§ *Wells* is a town in Maine, thirty miles S.W. from Portland, and twenty N.E. from Portsmouth.

1704.

a. March 11.

1. *Give an account of the attack on Deerfield.*

2. *What became of the prisoners?*

3. [1]In the following year, 1704, four hundred and fifty French and Indians attacked Deerfield, burned[a] the village, killed more than forty of the inhabitants, and took one hundred and twelve captives, among whom were the minister, Mr. Williams, and his wife; all of whom were immediately ordered to prepare for a long march through the snow to Canada. [2]Those who were unable to keep up with the party were slain by the wayside, but most of the survivors were afterwards redeemed, and allowed to return to their homes. A little girl, a daughter of the minister, after a long residence with the Indians, became attached to them, adopted their dress and customs, and afterwards married a Mohawk chief.

3. *What was the general character of the war on the frontiers?*

4. [3]During the remainder of the war, similar scenes were enacted throughout Maine and New Hampshire, and prowling bands of savages penetrated even to the interior settlements of Massachusetts. The frontier settlers abandoned the cultivation of their fields, and collected in buildings which they fortified; and if a garrison, or a family, ceased its vigilance, it was ever liable to be cut off by an enemy who disappeared the moment a blow was struck. The French often accompanied the savages in their expeditions, and made no effort to restrain their cruelties.

1707.

June.

4. *Give an account of the expedition against Port Royal, and the final conquest of Acadia.*

1710.

b. Oct. 12.

c. Oct. 13.

5. [4]In 1707 Massachusetts attempted the reduction of Port Royal; and a fleet conveying one thousand soldiers was sent against the place; but the assailants were twice obliged to raise the siege with considerable loss. Not disheartened by the repulse, Massachusetts spent two years more in preparation, and sailed by a fleet from England, in 1710 again demanded[b] the surrender of Port Royal. The garrison, weak and dispirited, capitulated[c] after a brief resistance; the name of the place was changed to Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne; and Acadia, or Nova Scotia, was permanently annexed to the British crown.

1711.

d. July 6.

e. Aug. 10.

f. Aug. 25.

5. *Of the attempted conquest of Canada.*

6. [5]In July of the next year, a large armament under Sir Hovenden Walker arrived[d] at Boston, and taking in additional forces, sailed,[e] near the middle of August, for the conquest of Canada. The fleet reached[f] the mouth of the St. Lawrence in safety, but here the ob-

stinacy of Walker, who disregarded the advice of his pilots, caused the loss of eight of his ships, and nearly nine hundred men. In the night[a] the ships were driven upon the rocks on the northern shore and dashed to pieces. Weakened by this disaster, the fleet returned to England, and the New England troops to Boston. **1711.**

a. Sept. 2, 3

7. [1]A land expedition,[b] under General Nicholson, which had marched against Montreal, returned after learning the failure of the fleet. [2]Two years later the treaty[c] of Utrecht* terminated the war between France and England; and, soon after, peace was concluded[d] between the northern colonies and the Indians.

v. See p 133

1. *What is said of the expedition against Montreal?*

c. April 11, 1713.

2. *Of the close of the war?*

d. At Portsmouth, July 24, 1713.

8. [3]During the next thirty years after the close of Queen Anne's war, but few events of general interest occurred in Massachusetts. Throughout most of this period a violent controversy was carried on between the representatives of the people and three successive royal governors,[e] the latter insisting upon receiving a permanent salary, and the former refusing to comply with the demand; preferring to graduate the salary of the governor according to their views of the justice and utility of his administration. [4]A compromise was at length effected, and, instead of a permanent salary, a particular sum was annually voted.

3. *What are the only events of interest that occurred in Massachusetts during the next thirty years?*

e. Shute, Burnett, and Belcher.

4. *How was the controversy settled?*

II. KING GEORGE'S WAR.—1. [5]In 1744, during the reign of George II., war again broke out[f] between France and England, originating in European disputes, relating principally to the kingdom of Austria, and again involving the French and English possessions in America. This war is generally known in America as "King George's War," but, in Europe, as the "*War of the Austrian Succession.*"

1744.

5. *What is said of the origin of King George's war?*

f. War declared by France 15th March, by G. Britain April 9th.

2. [6]The most important event of the war in America, was the siege and capture of Louisburg.† This

6. *What is said of Louisburg?*

* *Utrecht* is a rich and handsome city of Holland, situated on one of the mouths of the Rhine, twenty miles S.E. from Amsterdam. From the top of its lofty cathedral, 380 feet high, fifteen or sixteen cities may be seen in a clear day. The place is celebrated for the "Union of Utrecht," formed there in 1579, by which the *United Provinces* declared their independence of Spain;—and likewise for the treaty of 1713.

† *Louisburg* is on the S.E. side of the island of Cape Breton. It has an excellent harbor, of very deep water, nearly six miles in length, but frozen during the winter. After the capture of Louisburg in 1758 (see p. 186), its walls were demolished, and the materials of its buildings were carried away for the construction of Halifax, and other towns on the coast. Only a few fishermen's huts are now found within the environs

1744.

1. *Of the proposal to capture it?*

place, situated on the island of Cape Breton,* had been fortified by France at great expense, and was regarded by her as the key to her American possessions. [1]William Shirley, the governor of Massachusetts, perceiving the importance of the place, and the danger to which its possession by the French subjected the British province of Nova Scotia, laid[a] before the legislature of the colony a plan for its capture.

1745.

a. Jan.

2. *What were the preparations for the expedition?*

3. [2]Although strong objections were urged, the governor's proposals were assented to; Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, furnished their quotas of men; New York sent a supply of artillery, and Pennsylvania of provisions. [3]Commodore Warren, then in the West Indies with an English fleet, was invited to co-operate in the enterprise, but he declined doing so without orders from England. [4]This unexpected intelligence was kept a secret, and in April, 1745, the New England forces alone, under William Pepperell, commander-in-chief, and Roger Wolcott, second in command, sailed[b] for Louisburg.

3. *What is said of Commodore Warren?*

4. *Of the sailing of the fleet?*

b. April 4.

5. *What occurred at Canseau?*

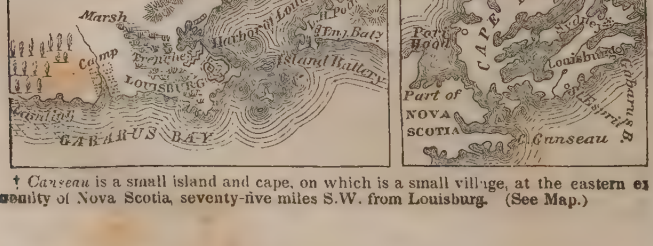
4. [5]At Canseau† they were unexpectedly met by the fleet of Commodore Warren, who had recently received orders to repair to Boston and concert measures with Governor Shirley for his majesty's service

c. Pronounced Can-so.

---

of the city, and so complete is the ruin, that it is with difficulty that the outlines of the fortifications, and of the principal buildings, can be traced. (See Map.)

* *Cape Breton*, called by the French *Isle Royale*, is a very irregularly shaped island on the S.E. border of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and separated from Nova Scotia by the narrow channel of Canseau. It is settled mostly by Scotch Highlanders, together with a few of the ancient French Acadians. (See Map.)



† *Canseau* is a small island and cape, on which is a small village, at the eastern extremity of Nova Scotia, seventy-five miles S.W. from Louisburg. (See Map.)

in North America. [1]On the 11th of May the combined forces, numbering more than 4000 land troops, came in sight of Louisburg, and effected a landing at Gabarus Bay,* which was the first intimation the French had of their danger. **1745.**

1. *What is said of the landing of the troops?*

5. [2]On the day after the landing a detachment of four hundred men marched by the city and approached the royal battery,[a] setting fire to the houses and stores on the way. The French, imagining that the whole army was coming upon them, spiked the guns and abandoned the battery, which was immediately seized by the New England troops. Its guns were then turned upon the town, and against the island battery at the entrance of the harbor.

a. See Map

2. *Give an account of the siege and conquest of Louisburg.*

6. As it was necessary to transport the guns over a morass, where oxen and horses could not be used, they were placed on sledges constructed for the purpose, and the men with ropes, sinking to their knees in the mud, drew them safely over. Trenches were then thrown up within two hundred yards of the city,—a battery was erected on the opposite side of the harbor, at the Light House Point,—and the fleet of Warren captured[b] a French 74 gun-ship, with five hundred and sixty men, and a great quantity of military stores designed for the supply of the garrison.

b. May 29

7. A combined attack by sea and land was planned for the 29th of June, but, on the day previous, the city, fort, and batteries, and the whole island, were surrendered. [3]This was the most important acquisition which England made during the war, and, for its recovery, and the desolation of the English colonies, a powerful naval armament under the Duke d'Anville was sent out by France in the following year. But storms, shipwrecks, and disease, dispersed and enfeebled the fleet, and blasted the hopes of the enemy.

3. *What is said of the importance of this acquisition, and of the attempts of the French to recover the place?*

1746.

8. [4]In 1748 the war was terminated by the treaty[c] of Aix la Chapelle.† The result proved that neither

4. *What is said of the close of the war, and the terms of the treaty?*

c. Oct. 18.

* *Gabarus Bay* is a deep bay on the eastern coast of Cape Breton, a short distance S. W. from Louisburg. (See Map.)

† *Aix la Chapelle*, (pronounced *A lah sha-pell*,) is in the western part of Germany, near the line of Belgium, in the province of the Rhine, which belongs to Prussia. It is a very ancient city, and was long in possession of the Romans, who called it Aquægranii Its present name was given it by the French, on account of a *chapel* built there by Charlemagne, who for some time made it the capital of his empire. It is celebrated for its

1748. party had gained any thing by the contest; for all acquisitions made by either were mutually restored.

1. Of the causes of a future war?

[1]But the causes of a future and more important war still remained in the disputes about boundaries, which were left unsettled; and the "FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR" soon followed,[a] which was the last struggle of the French for dominion in America.

a. See p. 178

Of what does Chapter III. of Part II. treat?

CHAPTER III.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.*

2. With what is the history of New Hampshire blended?

3. Why is it here treated separately?

1. [2]During the greater portion of its colonial existence, New Hampshire was united with Massachusetts, and its history is therefore necessarily blended with that of the parent of the New England colonies. [3]But in order to preserve the subject entire, a brief sketch of its separate history will here be given.

1622.

4. What is said of Gorges and Mason?

2. [4]Two of the most active members of the council of Plymouth were Sir Ferdinand Gorges and Captain John Mason. In 1622 they obtained of their associates a grant[b] of land lying partly in Maine and partly in New Hampshire, which they called *Laconia*. [5]In the

b. Aug. 20.

1623.

5. Of the first settlements in New Hampshire?

spring of the following year they sent over two small parties of emigrants, one of which landed at the mouth of the Piscataqua, and settled at Little Harbor,† a short distance below Portsmouth;‡ the other, proceeding farther up, formed a settlement at Dover.§

---

hot springs, its baths, and for several important treaties concluded there. It is seventy-five miles E. from Brussels, and 125 S.E. from Amsterdam.

* NEW HAMPSHIRE, one of the Eastern or New England States, lying north of Massachusetts, and west of Maine, is 180 miles long from north to south, and ninety broad in the southern part, and contains an area of about 9500 square miles. It has only eighteen miles of seacoast, and Portsmouth is its only harbor. The country twenty or thirty miles from the sea becomes uneven and hilly, and, toward the northern part, is mountainous. Mount Washington, a peak of the White Mountains, and, next to Black Mountain in N. Carolina, the highest point east of the Rocky Mountains, is 6428 feet above the level of the sea. The elevated parts of the state are a fine grazing country, and the valleys on the margins of the rivers are highly productive.

† *Little Harbor*, the place first settled, is at the southern entrance to the harbor of Portsmouth, two miles below the city, and opposite the town and island of Newcastle. (See L. H. in Map, opposite page.)

‡ *Portsmouth*, in New Hampshire, is situated on a peninsula, on the south side of the Piscataqua, three miles from the ocean. It has an excellent harbor, which, owing to the rapidity of the current, is never frozen. It is fifty-four miles N. from Boston, and the same distance S.W. from Portland. (See Map, opposite page.)

§ *Dover* village, in N. H., formerly called *Cocheco*, is situated on Cocheco River, four

3. [1]In 1629 the Rev. John Wheelright and others purchased[a] of the Indians all the country between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua. [2]A few months later, this tract of country, which was a part of the grant to Gorges and Mason, was given[b] to Mason alone, and it then first received the name of New Hampshire. [3]The country was divided among numerous proprietors, and the various settlements, during several years, were governed separately, by agents of the different proprietors, or by magistrates elected by the people. **1629.**

a. May.

1. *What purchase was made by Mr. Wheelright?*

b. Nov. 17.

2. *What separate grant was made to Mason?*

3. *How was the country governed?*

4. [4]In 1641 the people of New Hampshire placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts, in which situation they remained until 1680, when, after a long controversy with the heirs of Mason, relative to the ownership of the soil, New Hampshire was separated[c] from Massachusetts by a royal commission, and made a royal province. [5]The new government was to consist of a president and council, to be appointed by the king, and a house of representatives to be chosen by the people. [6]No dissatisfaction with the government of Massachusetts had been expressed, and the change to a separate province was received with reluctance by all. **1641.**

4. *What is said of the union with Massachusetts? Of the separation?*

1680.

c. Royal commission, Sept. 28, 1679. Actual separation Jan. 1680.

5. *What was the nature of the new government?*

6. *What is remarked of the change?*

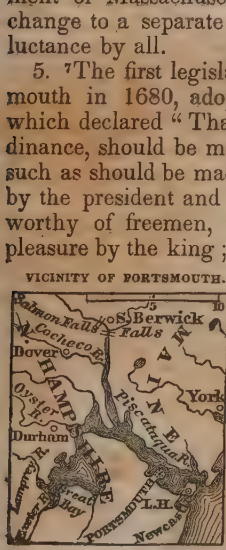
5. [7]The first legislature, which assembled[d] at Portsmouth in 1680, adopted a code of laws, the first of which declared "That no act, imposition, law, or ordinance, should be made, or imposed upon them, but such as should be made by the assembly and approved by the president and council." [8]This declaration, so worthy of freemen, was received with marked displeasure by the king; but New Hampshire, ever after, was as forward as any of her sister colonies in resisting every encroachment upon her just rights.

d. March 26.

7. *When did the first Legislature assemble, and what were its proceedings?*

8. *What is said of the king's displeasure, and the spirit of the people?*

VICINITY OF PORTSMOUTH.



6. [9]Early in the following year Robert Mason arrived,—asserted his right to the province, on the ground of the early grants **1681.**

9. *Give an account of the controversy with the proprietors about lands.*

miles above its junction with the Piscataqua, and twelve N.W. from Portsmouth. The first settlement in the town was on a beautiful peninsula between Black and Piscataqua Rivers. (See Map.)

1681. made to his ancestor, and assumed the title of lord proprietor. But his claims to the soil, and his demands for rent, were resisted by the people. A long controversy ensued; lawsuits were numerous; and judgments for rent were obtained against many of the leading men in the province; but, so general was the hostility to the proprietor, that he could not enforce them.

1686.

1. *What is said of Dudley and Andros, and of the second union with Massachusetts?*

a. See p. 90.

1690.

b. March.

2. *When separated and when again united?*

c. Aug. 1692.

7. [1]In 1686 the government of Dudley, and afterwards that of Andros, was extended over New Hampshire. When the latter was seized[a] and imprisoned, on the arrival of the news of the revolution in England, the people of New Hampshire took the government into their own hands, and, in 1690, placed[b] themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. [2]Two years later, they were separated from Massachusetts, contrary to their wishes, and a separate royal government was established[c] over them; but in 1699 the two provinces were again united, and the Earl of Bellamont was appointed governor over both.

3. *Give an account of the continuance and final settlement of the Masonian controversy.*

8. [3]In 1691 the heirs of Mason sold their title to the lands in New Hampshire to Samuel Allen, between whom and the people, contentions and lawsuits continued until 1715, when the heirs of Allen relinquished their claims in despair. A descendant of Mason, however, subsequently renewed the original claim, on the ground of a defect in the conveyance to Allen. The Masonian controversy was finally terminated by a relinquishment, on the part of the claimants, of all except the unoccupied portions of the territory.

4. *What is said of the final separation from Massachusetts?*

5. *What is said of the nature of the union with Massachusetts?*

9. [4]In 1741, on the removal of Governor Belcher, the provinces of Massachusetts and New Hampshire were separated, never to be united again, and a separate governor was appointed over each. [5]During the forty-two years previous to the separation, New Hampshire had a separate legislative assembly, and the two provinces were, in reality, distinct, with the exception of their being under the administration of the same royal governor.

6. *What is said of the sufferings of New Hampshire during the Indian wars?*

10. [6]New Hampshire suffered greatly, and perhaps more than any other New England colony, by the several French and Indian wars, whose general history has been already given. A particular recital of

the plundering and burning of her towns, of her frontiers laid waste, and her children inhumanly murdered, or led into a wretched captivity, would only exhibit scenes similar to those which have been already described, and we willingly pass by this portion of her local history. 1630.

CHAPTER IV.

Of what does Chapter IV. of Part II. treat?

CONNECTICUT.*

DIVISIONS.

What are its Divisions?

I. Early Settlements.—II. Pequod War.—III. New Haven Colony.—IV. Connecticut under her own Constitution.—V. Connecticut under the Royal Charter.

1. EARLY SETTLEMENTS.—1. [1]In 1630 the soil of Connecticut was granted by the council of Plymouth to the Earl of Warwick; and, in the following year, the Earl of Warwick transferred[a] the same to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke and others. Like all the early colonial grants, that of Connecticut was to extend westward from the Atlantic Ocean to the *South Sea*, or the Pacific. [2]During the same year some of the people of Plymouth, with their governor, Mr. Winslow, visited the valley of the Connecticut, by invitation of an Indian chief, who wished the English to make a settlement in that quarter.

1630.

1. Give an account of the early grants of Connecticut.

1631.

a. March 29.

2. Of the visit to the country by the Plymouth people.

2. [3]The Dutch at New York, apprized of the object of the Plymouth people, determined to anticipate them, and, early in 1633, despatched a party who erected a fort at Hartford.† [4]In October of the same year, a company from Plymouth sailed up the Connecticut

3. Of the Dutch fort at Hartford.

4. Of the English trading-house at Windsor.

* CONNECTICUT, the southernmost of the New England States, is from ninety to 100 miles long from E. to W., and from fifty to seventy broad, and contains an area of about 4,700 square miles. The country is, generally, uneven and hilly, and somewhat mountainous in the northwest. The valley of the Connecticut is very fertile, but in most parts of the state the soil is better adapted to grazing than to tillage. An excellent freestone, much used in building, is found in Chatham and Haddam; iron ore of a superior quality in Salisbury and Kent; and fine marble in Milford.

† *Hartford*, one of the capitals of Connecticut, is on the W. side of the Connecticut River, fifty miles from its mouth, by the river's course. Mill, or Little River, passes through the southern part of the city. The old Dutch fort was on the S. side of Mill River, at its entrance into the Connecticut. The Dutch maintained their position until 1654. (See Map, next page.)

1633. River, and passing the Dutch fort, erected a trading-house at Windsor.* The Dutch ordered Captain Holmes, the commander of the Plymouth sloop, to strike his colors, and, in case of refusal, threatened to fire upon him; but he declared that he would execute the orders of the governor of Plymouth, and, in spite of their threats, proceeded resolutely onward. [1]In the following year the Dutch sent a company to expel the English from the country, but finding them well fortified, they came to a parley, and finally returned in peace.

1634. 1. *What occurred in the following year?*

1635. 2. *Give an account of the emigration from Massachusetts.*

a. See p. 76.

3. *Of the settlement of Saybrook.*

3. [2]In the summer of 1635, exploring parties from Massachusetts Bay colony visited the valley of the Connecticut, and, in the autumn of the same year, a company of about sixty men, women, and children, made a toilsome journey through the wilderness, and settled[a] at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield.† [3]In October, the younger Winthrop, son of the governor of Massachusetts, arrived at Boston, with a commission from the proprietors of Connecticut, authorizing him to erect a fort at the mouth of the river of that name, and make the requisite preparations for planting a colony. Scarcely was the fort erected when a Dutch vessel appeared at the mouth of the river, but was not permitted to enter. In honor of Lord Say-and-Seal, and Lord Brooke, the new settlement was named Saybrook,‡ which continued a separate colony until 1644.

1636. 4. *What is said of the Pequods?* 5. *Of their depredations upon the English?*

II. PEQUOD WAR.—1. [4]During the year 1636 the Pequods, a powerful tribe of Indians residing mostly within the limits of Connecticut, began to annoy the infant colony. [5]In July, the Indians of Block Island,§

---

* *Windsor* is on the W. side of the Connecticut, seven miles N. from Hartford. The village is on the N. side of Farmington River. The trading-house erected by the Plymouth people, was below the mouth of Farmington River. The meadow in the vicinity is still called *Plymouth Meadow*. (See Map.)

VIC. OF HARTFORD.

† *Wethersfield* is on the W. side of the Connecticut, four miles S. from Hartford. The river here is continually changing its course, by the wearing away of the land on one side, and its gradual deposit on the other. (See Map.)

‡ *Saybrook* is on the west side of Connecticut River, at its entrance into Long Island Sound.

§ *Block Island*, discovered in 1614 by Adrian Blok, a Dutch captain, is twenty-four miles S.W. from Newport. It is attached to Newport Co., R. I., and constitutes the township of Newshoreham. It has no harbor. It is eight miles long from N. to S., and from two to four broad.

who were supposed to be in alliance with the Pequods, surprised and plundered a trading vessel and killed the captain. An expedition[a] from Massachusetts was sent against them, which invaded the territory of the Pequods, but as nothing important was accomplished, it served only to excite the Indians to greater outrages. During the winter, a number of whites were killed in the vicinity of Saybrook fort. In April following, nine persons were killed at Wethersfield, and the alarm became general throughout the plantations on the Connecticut. **1636.**

a. Sept. and Oct.

1637

2. [1]The Pequods, who had long been at enmity with the Narragansetts, now sought their alliance in a general war upon the English; but the exertions[b] of Roger Williams not only defeated their designs, but induced the Narragansetts again to renew the war against their ancient enemy. [2]Early in May, the magistrates of the three infant towns of Connecticut formally declared war against the Pequod nation, and, in ten days, a little army of eighty English, and seventy friendly Mohegan Indians, was on its way against the enemy, whose warriors were said to number more than two thousand men.

1. *Of their attempted alliance with the Narragansetts?*

b. See p. 77.

2. *Of the expedition against them?*

3. [3]The principal seat of the Pequods was near the mouth of Pequod River, now called the Thames,* in the eastern part of Connecticut. [4]Captain Mason sailed down the Connecticut with his forces, whence he proceeded to Narragansett Bay,[c] where several hundred of the Narragansetts joined him. He then commenced his march across the country, towards the principal Pequod fort, which stood on an eminence on the west side of Mystic† River, in the present town of Groton.‡ [5]The Pequods were ignorant of his approach, for they had seen the boats of the English pass the mouth of their river a few days before, and they believed that their enemies had fled through fear.

3. *Where was the principal seat of the Pequods?*

4. *Describe the route, &c., of Mason.*

c. Note p. 112

5. *What did the Pequods think of the English?*

* The *Pequod*, or *Thames* River, rises in Massachusetts, and, passing south through the eastern part of Connecticut, enters Long Island Sound, below New London. It is generally called *Quinebaug* from its source to Norwich. On the west it receives Shetucket, Yantic, and other small streams. It is navigable fourteen miles, to Norwich.

† *Mystic* River is a small river which enters L. I. Sound, six miles E. from the Thames

‡ The town of *Groton* lies between the Thames and the Mystic, bordering on the Sound. The Pequod fort, above mentioned, was on Pequod Hill, in the N.E. part of the town, about half a mile west from Mystic River, and eight miles N.E. from New London. A public road now crosses the hill, and a dwelling house occupies its summit

1637. 4. [1]Early in the morning of the 5th of June, the soldiers of Connecticut advanced against the fort, while their Indian allies stood aloof, astonished at the boldness of the enterprise. The barking of a dog betrayed their approach, and an Indian, rushing into the fort, gave the alarm; but scarcely were the enemy aroused from their slumbers, when Mason and his little band, having forced an entrance, commenced the work of destruction. The Indians fought bravely, but bows and arrows availed little against weapons of steel. Yet the vast superiority of numbers on the side of the enemy, for a time rendered the victory doubtful. "We must burn them!" shouted Mason, and applying a firebrand, the frail Indian cabins were soon enveloped in flame.

1. *Give an account of the attack on the Pequod fort.*

5. [2]The English now hastily withdrew and surrounded the place, while the savages, driven from their enciosure, became, by the light of the burning pile, a sure prey to the English muskets; or, if they attempted a sally, they were cut down by the broadsword, or they fell under the weapons of the Narragansetts, who now rushed forward to the slaughter. As the sun rose upon the scene of destruction it showed that the victory was complete. About six hundred Indians,—men, women, and children, had perished; most of them in the hideous conflagration. Of the whole number within the fort, only seven escaped, and seven were made prisoners. [3]Two of the whites were killed, and nearly twenty were wounded.

2. *Of the destruction of the Pequods.*

3. *Loss of the English.*

6. [4]The loss of their principal fort, and the destruction of the main body of their warriors, so disheartened the Pequods, that they no longer made a stand against the English. They scattered in every direction; straggling parties were hunted and shot down like deer in the woods; their Sachem, Sassacus, was murdered by the Mohawks, to whom he fled for protection; their territory was laid waste; their settlements were burned, and about two hundred survivors, the sole remnant of the Pequod nation, surrendering in despair, were enslaved by the English, or incorporated among their Indian allies. [5]The vigor with which the war had been prosecuted, struck terror into the other tribes of

4. *What was the farther history of the Pequods?*

5. *The effect of the war on other tribes?*

New England, and secured to the settlements a succession of many years of peace. **1637.**

III. NEW HAVEN COLONY.—1. [1]The pursuit of the Pequods westward of the Connecticut, made the English acquainted with the coast from Saybrook[a] to Fairfield;* and late in the year, a few men from Boston explored the country, and, erecting a hut at New Haven,† there passed the winter.

1. Give an account of the discovery and settlement of New Haven.

a. Note page 104.

1638.

2. In the spring of the following year, a Puritan colony, under the guidance of Theophilus Eaton, and the Rev. John Davenport, who had recently arrived from Europe, left[b] Boston for the new settlement at New Haven. [2]They passed their first Sabbath[c] under a spreading oak,‡ and Mr. Davenport explained to the people, with much counsel adapted to their situation, how the Son of Man was led into the wilderness to be tempted.

b. April 9.

c. April 28.

2. What is said of the first Sabbath at New Haven?

3. [3]The settlers of New Haven established a government upon strictly religious principles, making the Bible their law book, and church members the only freemen. Mr. Eaton, who was a merchant of great wealth, and who had been deputy-governor of the British East India Company, was annually chosen governor of New Haven colony during twenty years, until his death. [4]The colony quickly assumed a flourishing condition. The settlements extended rapidly along the Sound, and, in all cases, the lands were honorably purchased of the natives.

3. Give an account of the government of the colony.

4. What is said of its prosperity?

1639.

IV. CONNECTICUT UNDER HER OWN CONSTITUTION.—1. [5]In 1639 the inhabitants of the three towns on the Connecticut, who had hitherto acknowledged the authority of Massachusetts, assembled[d] at Hartford, and

5. What important events occurred in 1639?

d. Jan. 24.

---

* *Fairfield* borders on the Sound, fifty miles S.W. from the mouth of the Connecticut. Some of the Pequods were pursued to a great swamp in this town. Some were slain, and about 200 surrendered. The town was first settled by a Mr. Ludlow and others in 1639.

† *New Haven*, now one of the capitals of Connecticut, called by the Indians *Quinipiac*, lies at the head of a harbor which sets up four miles from Long Island Sound. It is about seventy-five miles N.E. from New York, and thirty-four S.W. from Hartford. The city is on a beautiful plain, bounded on the west by West River, and on the east by Wallingford, or Quinipiac River. Yale College is located at New Haven. (See Map.)

‡ This tree stood near the corner of George and College streets.

NEW HAVEN.

1639. formed a separate government for themselves. [1]The constitution was one of unexampled liberality, guarding with jealous care against every encroachment on the rights of the people. The governor and legislature were to be chosen annually by the freemen, who were required to take an oath of allegiance to the commonwealth, instead of the English monarch; and in the general court alone was vested the power of making and repealing laws. [2]At this time three separate colonies existed within the limits of the present state of Connecticut.

1. *Describe the first constitution of Connecticut.*

2. *How many separate colonies then existed in Connecticut? What were they?*

3. *What is said of the disputes with the Dutch?*

2. [3]The Connecticut colonies were early involved in disputes with the Dutch of New Netherlands, who claimed the soil as far eastward as the Connecticut River. The fear of an attack from that quarter, was one of the causes which, in 1643, led to the confederation of the New England colonies for mutual defence.

1644. [4]In 1644 Saybrook was purchased of George Fenwick, one of the proprietors, and permanently annexed to the Connecticut colony. [5]In 1650 Governor Stuyvesant visited Hartford, where a treaty was concluded, determining the line of partition between New Netherlands and Connecticut.

4. *Of the purchase of Saybrook?*

5. *Of the treaty with the Dutch?*

1651. 3. [6]In 1651 war broke out between England and Holland, and although their colonies in America had agreed to remain at peace, the governor of New Netherlands was accused of uniting with the Indians, in plotting the destruction of the English. [7]The commissioners of the United Colonies decided[a] in favor of commencing hostilities against the Dutch and Indians but Massachusetts refused to furnish her quota of men and thus prevented the war. [8]Connecticut and New Haven then applied to Cromwell for assistance, who promptly despatched[b] a fleet for the reduction of New Netherlands; but while the colonies were making preparations to co-operate with the naval force, the news of peace in Europe arrested the expedition.

6. *What is said of the war between England and Holland?*

[a] 1653.

7. *What prevented the war in America?*

8. *What colonies applied to Cromwell, and what was the result?*

[b] 1654.

1660. V. CONNECTICUT UNDER THE ROYAL CHARTER.—1. [9]When Charles II. was restored[c] to the throne of his ancestors, Connecticut declared her loyalty, and submission to the king, and applied for a royal charter. [10]The aged Lord Say-and-Seal, the early friend of the

[c] May.

9. *What is said of the loyalty of Connecticut?*

emigrants, now exerted his influence in their favor; while the younger Winthrop, then governor of the colony, went to England as its agent. When he appeared before the king with his petition, he presented him a favorite ring which Charles I. had given to Winthrop's grandfather. This trifling token, recalling to the king the memory of his own unfortunate father, readily won his favor, and Connecticut thereby obtained a charter,[a] the most liberal that had yet been granted and confirming, in every particular, the constitution which the people themselves had adopted. **1660.**

1. In what manner was the royal charter obtained, and what was its character?

1662.

a. May 36.

2. [1]The royal charter, embracing the territory from the Narragansett Bay and river westward to the Pacific Ocean, included, within its limits, the New Haven colony, and most of the present state of Rhode Island. [2]New Haven reluctantly united with Connecticut in 1665. [3]The year after the grant of the Connecticut charter, Rhode Island received[b] one which extended her western limits to the Pawcatuck* River, thus including a portion of the territory granted to Connecticut, and causing a controversy between the two colonies, which continued more than sixty years.

1. What territory was embraced by the charter?

2. What is said of New Haven?

1665.

b. July 18, 1663.

3. Of the Rhode Island charter?

3. [4]During King Philip's war, which began in 1675, Connecticut suffered less, in her own territory, than any of her sister colonies, but she furnished her proportion of troops for the common defence. [5]At the same time, however, she was threatened with a greater calamity, in the loss of her liberties, by the usurpations of Andros, then governor of New York, who attempted to extend his arbitrary authority over the country as far east as the Connecticut River.

1675.

4. What is said of Connecticut during King Philip's war?

5. What is said of the usurpations of Andros?

4. [6]In July, Andros, with a small naval force, proceeded to the mouth of the Connecticut, and hoisting the king's flag, demanded[c] the surrender of the fort; but Captain Bull, the commander, likewise showing his majesty's colors, expressed his determination to defend it. Being permitted to land, Andros attempted to read his commission to the people, but, in the king's name, he was sternly commanded to desist. He finally

6. Of his expedition to Connecticut, and its result?

c. July 21.

* The *Pawcatuck*, formed by the junction of Wood and Charles Rivers in Washington County, Rhode Island, is still, in the lower part of its course, the dividing line between Connecticut and Rhode Island.

1675. returned to New York without accomplishing his object.

1687. 5. [1]Twelve years later, Andros again appeared in Connecticut, with a commission from King James, appointing him royal governor of all New England. Proceeding to Hartford, he found the assembly in session, and demanded[a] the surrender of the charter. A discussion arose, which was prolonged until evening. The charter was then brought in and laid on the table. While the discussion was proceeding, and the house was thronged with citizens, suddenly the lights were extinguished. The utmost decorum prevailed, but when the candles were re-lighted, the charter was missing, and could no where be found.

1. *Give an account of the second visit of Andros to Connecticut.*

a. Nov. 10.

2. *How was the charter preserved?*

3. *What then was done by Andros?*

6. [2]A Captain Wadsworth had secreted it in a hollow tree, which is still standing, and which retains the venerated name of the Charter Oak. [3]Andros, however, assumed the government, which was administered in his name until the revolution[b] in England deprived James of his throne, and restored the liberties of the people.

1689.

b. See p. 90.

c. 1689—1697.

4. *What occurred during King William's war?*

5. *What is said of Fletcher's commission?*

6. *What course was taken by the legislature, and what by Fletcher?*

7. [4]During King William's war,[c] which immediately followed the English revolution, the people of Connecticut were again called to resist an encroachment on their rights. [5]Colonel Fletcher, governor of New York, had received a commission vesting in him the command of the militia of Connecticut. [6]This was a power which the charter of Connecticut had reserved to the colony itself, and the legislature refused to comply with the requisition. Fletcher then repaired to Hartford, and ordered the militia under arms.

1693. Nov. 6.

7. *Give an account of Fletcher's visit to Hartford.*

8. [7]The Hartford companies, under Captain Wadsworth, appeared, and Fletcher ordered his commission and instructions to be read to them. Upon this, Captain Wadsworth commanded the drums to be beaten. Colonel Fletcher commanded silence, but no sooner was the reading commenced a second time, than the drums, at the command of Wadsworth, were again beaten with more spirit than ever. But silence was again commanded, when Wadsworth, with great earnestness, ordered the drums to be beaten, and turning to Fletcher, said, with spirit and meaning in his looks,

'If I am interrupted again I will make the sun shine through you in a moment." Governor Fletcher made no farther attempts to read his commission, and soon judged it expedient to return to New York. **1693.**

9. [1]In the year 1700, several clergymen assembled at Branford,* and each, producing a few books, laid them on the table, with these words: "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." Such was the beginning of Yale College, now one of the most honored institutions of learning in the land. It was first established[a] at Saybrook, and was afterwards removed[b] to New Haven. It derived its name from Elihu Yale, one of its most liberal patrons. 1700. 1. *Give an account of the establishment of Yale College.* a. 1702. b. 1717.

10. [2]The remaining portion of the colonial history of Connecticut is not marked by events of sufficient interest to require any farther notice than they may gain in the more general history of the colonies. [3]The laws, customs, manners, and religious notions of the people, were similar to those which prevailed in the neighboring colony of Massachusetts, and, generally, throughout New England. 2. *What is said of the remaining history of Connecticut?* 3. *Of the laws, customs, manners, &c.?*

CHAPTER V.

RHODE ISLAND.†

Of what does Chapter V. of Part II. treat?

c. Jan. 1636.

1. [4]After Roger Williams had been banished from Massachusetts, he repaired[c] to the country of the Narragansetts, who inhabited nearly all the territory which now forms the state of Rhode Island. [5]By the sachems of that tribe he was kindly received, and during fourteen weeks, he found a shelter in their wigwams, from the severity of winter. [6]On the opening of spring he proceeded to Seekonk,‡ on the north of Narragansett 4. *What did Roger Williams do after his banishment from Massachusetts?* 5. *How was he received by the Narragansetts?* 6. *What did he do in the spring?*

* *Branford* is a town in Connecticut, bordering on the Sound, seven miles S. from New Haven.

† RHODE ISLAND, the smallest state in the Union, contains an area, separate from the waters of Narragansett Bay, of about 1,225 square miles. In the northwestern part of the state the surface of the country is hilly, and the soil poor. In the south and west the country is generally level, and in the vicinity of Narragansett Bay, and on the islands which it contains, the soil is very fertile.

‡ The town of *Seekonk*, the western part of the early *Rehoboth*, lies east of, and adjoining the northern part of Narragansett Bay. The village is on Ten Mile River, three or four miles east from Providence. (See Map next page.)

1636. Bay,* and having been joined by a few faithful friends from Massachusetts, he obtained a grant of land from an Indian chief, and made preparations for a settlement.

1. Whither was he advised to remove, and why?

2. [1]Soon after, finding that he was within the limits of the Plymouth colony, and being advised by Mr. Winslow, the governor, to remove to the other side of the water, where he might live unmolested, he resolved to comply with the friendly advice. [2]Embarking with five companions in a frail Indian canoe, he passed down the Narragansett River† to Moshassuck, which he selected as the place of settlement, purchased the land of the chiefs of the Narragansetts, and, with unshaken confidence in the mercies of Heaven, named the place Providence.‡ [3]The settlement was called Providence Plantation.

a. June.

2. Give an account of the settlement of Providence.

3. What was the settlement called?

4. What effect had religious toleration?

3. [4]As Roger Williams brought with him the same principles of religious toleration, for avowing and maintaining which he had suffered banishment, Providence became the asylum for the persecuted of the neighboring colonies; but the peace of the settlement was never seriously disturbed by the various and discordant opinions which gained admission. [5]It was found that the numerous and conflicting sects of the day could dwell together in harmony, and the world beheld, with surprise, the novel experiment of a government in which the magistrates were allowed to rule "only in civil matters," and in which "God alone was respected as the ruler of conscience."

5. What novel experiment was beheld?

6. Give an account of the government of the colony.

4. [6]The political principles of Roger Williams were as liberal as his religious opinions. For the purpose

* *Narragansett Bay* is in the eastern part of the state of Rhode Island, and is twenty-eight miles long from N. to S., and from eight to twelve broad. The N.E. arm of the bay is called *Mount Hope Bay;* the northern, *Providence Bay;* and the N. Western, *Greenwich Bay.* It contains a number of beautiful and fertile islands, the principal of which are Rhode Island, Conanicut, and Prudence. (See Map.)

† The northern part of Narragansett Bay was often called *Narragansett River.*

‡ *Providence*, one of the capitals of Rhode Island, is in the northern part of the state, at the head of Narragansett Bay, and on both sides of Providence River, which is, properly, a small bay, setting up N.W. from the Narragansett The Pawtucket or Blackstone River falls into the head of Narragansett Bay, from the N.E., a little below Providence Brown University is located at Providence, on the east side of the river. (See Map.)

of preserving peace, all the settlers were required to subscribe to an agreement that they would submit to such rules, "not affecting the conscience," as should be made for the public good, by a majority of the inhabitants; and under this simple form of pure democracy, with all the powers of government in the hands of the people, the free institutions of Rhode Island had their origin. [1]The modest and liberal founder of the state reserved no political power to himself, and the territory which he had purchased of the natives he freely granted to all the inhabitants in common, reserving to himself only two small fields, which, on his first arrival, he had planted with his own hands. **1636.**

1. *What is said of the liberality of Mr. Williams?*

5. [2]Soon after the removal of Mr. Williams to Providence, he gave to the people of Massachusetts, who had recently expelled him from their colony, the first intimation of the plot which the Pequods were forming for their destruction. [3]When the Pequods attempted to form an alliance with the Narragansetts, the magistrates of Massachusetts solicited the mediation of Mr. Williams, whose influence was great with the chiefs of the latter tribe. [4]Forgetting the injuries which he had received from those who now needed his favor, on a stormy day, alone, and in a poor canoe, he set out upon the Narragansett, and through many dangers repaired to the cabin of Canonicus.

2. *Of what did he inform the people of Massachusetts?*

3. *What did Massachusetts solicit of him?*

4. *What did Mr. Williams do?*

6. [5]There the Pequod ambassadors and Narragansett chiefs had already assembled in council, and three days and nights Roger Williams remained with them, in constant danger from the Pequods, whose hands, he says, seemed to be still reeking with the blood of his countrymen, and whose knives he expected nightly at his throat. But, as Mr. Williams himself writes, "God wonderfully preserved him, and helped him to break in pieces the negotiation and designs of the enemy, and to finish, by many travels and charges, the English league with the Narragansetts and Mohegans against the Pequods."

5. *Give an account of Mr. Williams's embassy to the Narragansetts.*

7. [6]The settlers at Providence remained unmolested during the Pequod war, as the powerful tribe of the Narragansetts completely sheltered them from the enemy. [7]Such, however, was the aid which Mr. Wil-

6. *What was the situation of Providence during the Pequod war?*

7. *What is said of Mr. Williams' aid in this war?*

637. liams afforded, in bringing that war to a favorable termination, that some of the leading men in Massachusetts felt that he deserved to be honored with some mark of favor for his services. [1]The subject of recalling him from banishment was debated, but his principles were still viewed with distrust, and the fear of their influence overcame the sentiment of gratitude.

1. Why was he not recalled from banishment?

1638. 8. [2]In 1638 a settlement was made[a] at Portsmouth,* in the northern part of the Island of Aquetneck, or Rhode Island,† by William Coddington and eighteen others, who had been driven from Massachusetts by persecution for their religious opinions. [3]In imitation of the form of government which once prevailed among the Jews, Mr. Coddington was chosen[b] judge, and three elders were elected to assist him, but in the following year the chief magistrate received the title of governor.

a. April.

2. Gives an account of the settlement of Portsmouth.

3. Of the form of government.

b. Nov.

1639. [4]Portsmouth received considerable accessions during the first year, and in the spring of 1639, a number of the inhabitants removed to the southwestern part of the island, where they laid the foundation of Newport.‡ [5]The settlements on the island rapidly extended, and the whole received the name of the Rhode Island Plantation.

4. Of the settlement of Newport.

5. What name was given to the new settlements?

1643. 9. [6]Under the pretence that the Providence and Rhode Island Plantations had no charter, and that their territory was claimed by Plymouth and Massachusetts, they were excluded from the confederacy which was formed between the other New England colonies in 1643. [7]Roger Williams therefore proceeded to England, and, in the following year, obtained[c] from parliament, which was then waging a civil war with the king, a free charter of incorporation, by which the two plantations were united under the same government.

6. Why were the Plantations excluded from the union of 1643?

1644.

c. March 24.

7. What is said of the charter from Parliament?

---

* The town of *Portsmouth* is in the northern part of the island of Rhode Island, and embraces about half of the island. The island of Prudence, on the west, is attached to this town. (See Map, p. 112.)

† *Rhode Island*, so called from a fancied resemblance to the island of Rhodes in the Mediterranean, is in the southeastern part of Narragansett Bay. It is fifteen miles long, and has an average width of two and a half miles. The town of Portsmouth occupies the northern part of the island, Middletown the central portion, and Newport the southern. (See Map, p. 112.)

‡ *Newport* is on the S.W. side of Rhode Island, five miles from the sea, and twenty-five miles S. from Providence. The town is on a beautiful declivity, and has an excellent harbor. (See Map, p. 112.)

10. [1]In 347 the General Assembly of the several towns met[a] at Portsmouth, and organized the government, by the choice of a president and other officers. A code of laws was also adopted, which declared the government to be a democracy, and which closed with the declaration, that "all men might walk as their consciences persuaded them, without molestation, every one in the name of his God." **1647.**

a. May 29.
1. *Of the organization of the government and of the early laws of Rhode Island?*

11. [2]After the restoration[b] of monarchy, and the accession of Charles II. to the throne of England, Rhode Island applied for and obtained[c] a charter from the king, in which the principles of the former parliamentary charter, and those on which the colony was founded, were embodied. The greatest toleration in matters of religion was enjoined by the charter, and the legislature again reasserted the principle. [3]It has been said that Roman Catholics were excluded from the right of voting, but no such regulation has ever been found in the laws of the colony; and the assertion that Quakers were persecuted and outlawed, is wholly erroneous.

b. 1660.
2. *Of the charter from the king, and its principles?*
c. July 18, 1663.
3. *What is remarked of Catholics and Quakers?*

12. [4]When Andros assumed the government of the New England colonies, Rhode Island quietly submitted[d] to his authority; but when he was imprisoned[e] at Boston, and sent to England, the people assembled[f] at Newport, and, resuming their former charter privileges, re-elected the officers whom Andros had displaced. Once more the free government of the colony was organized, and its seal was restored, with its symbol an anchor, and its motto Hope,—fit emblems of the steadfast zeal with which Rhode Island has ever cherished all her early religious freedom, and her civil rights.

4. *What is said of Rhode Island during and after the usurpation of Andros?*
d. Jan. 1687.
e. See p. 90
f. May 11 168[9]

1607.

Of what does Chapter VI. of Part II. treat?

CHAPTER VI.

NEW YORK.*

Section I.?

SEC. I.—NEW NETHERLANDS, PREVIOUS TO ITS CONQUEST BY THE ENGLISH IN 1664.

1. What is said of the first two voyages of Henry Hudson?

1. [1]During the years 1607 and 1608, Henry Hudson, an English mariner of some celebrity, and then in the employ of a company of London merchants, made two voyages to the northern coasts of America, with the hope of finding a passage, through those icy seas, to the genial climes of Southern Asia. [2]His employers being disheartened by his failure, he next entered the service of the Dutch East India Company, and in April, 1609, sailed[a] on his third voyage.

2. What did Hudson next do?

1609.

a. April 14.

3. Give an account of the voyage.

2. [3]Failing to discover a northern passage to India, he turned to the south, and explored the eastern coast, in the hope of finding an opening to the Pacific through the continent. After proceeding south as far as the capes† of Virginia, he again turned north, examined the waters of Delaware Bay,‡ and, following the eastern coast of New Jersey, on the [1]3th of September he anchored his vessel within Sandy Hook.§

b. Sept. 21.

4. Of the discovery of Hudson River.

3. [4]After a week's delay, Hudson passed[b] through

---

* NEW YORK, the most northern of the Middle States, and now the most populous in the Union, has an area of nearly 47,000 square miles. This state has a great variety of surface. Two chains of the Alleghanies pass through the eastern part of the state. The Highlands, coming from New Jersey, cross the Hudson near West Point, and soon after pass into Connecticut. The Catskill mountains, farther west, and more irregular in their outlines, cross the Mohawk, and continue under different names, along the western border of Lake Champlain. The western part of the state has generally a level surface, except in the southern tier of counties, where the western ranges of the Alleghanies terminate. The soil throughout the state is, generally, good; and along the valley of the Mohawk, and in the western part of the state, it is highly fertile.

† Capes Charles and Henry, at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay.

‡ *Delaware Bay* is a large arm of the sea, setting up into the land between New Jersey and Delaware; and having, at its entrance, Cape May on the north and Cape Henlopen on the south, eighteen miles apart. Some distance within the capes the bay is thirty miles across. This bay has no safe natural harbor, but a good artificial harbor has been constructed by the general government within Cape Henlopen. It is formed by two massive stone piers, called the *Delaware Breakwater*.

§ *Sandy Hook* is a low sandy island, on the eastern coast of New Jersey, extending north from the N. Eastern extremity of Monmouth County, and separated from it by Shrewsbury Inlet. It is five miles in length, and seventeen miles S. from New York. At the northern extremity of the island is a light-house, but the accumulating sand is gradually extending the point farther north. Sandy Hook was a peninsula until 1778, when the waters of the ocean forced a passage, and cut it off from the mainland. In 1800 the inlet was closed but it was opened again in 1830, and now admits vessels through its channel

the Narrows,* and, during ten days, continued to ascend the noble river which bears his name; nor was it until his vessel had passed beyond the city of Hudson,† and a boat had advanced probably beyond Albany, that he appears to have relinquished all hopes of being able to reach the Pacific by this inland passage. [1]Having completed his discovery, he slowly descended the stream, and sailing[a] for Europe, reached England in the November[b] following. The king, James the First, jealous of the advantages which the Dutch might seek to derive from the discovery, forbade his return to Holland. **1609**

a. Oct. 14.
1. *What is said of Hudson's return, and his treatment by the king?*
b. Nov. 17.

4. [2]In the following year, 1610, the Dutch East India Company fitted out a ship with merchandise, to traffick with the natives of the country which Hudson had explored. [3]The voyage being prosperous, the traffic was continued; and when Argall, in 1613, was returning from his excursion[c] against the French settlement of Port Royal, he found on the island of Manhattan‡ a few rude hovels, which the Dutch had erected there as a summer station for those engaged in the trade with the natives. **1610.**

2. *What was done by the Dutch East India Company?*
c. See p. 56.
3. *What was the condition of the Dutch settlement at the time of Argall's visit?*

5. [4]The Dutch, unable to make any resistance against the force of Argall, quietly submitted to the English claim of sovereignty over the country; but,

4. *What was the result of Argall's visit?*

---

* The entrance to New York harbor, between Long Island on the east and Staten Island on the west, is called the *Narrows*. It is about one mile wide, and is nine miles below the city. (See Map.)

† The city of *Hudson* is on the east side of Hudson River, 116 miles N. from New York, and twenty-nine miles S. from Albany.

‡ *Manhattan*, or New York island, lies on the east side of Hudson River, at the head of New York harbor. It is about fourteen miles in length, and has an average width of one mile and three fifths. It is separated from Long Island on the east, by a strait called the East River, which connects the harbor and Long Island Sound; and from the mainland on the east by Harlem River, a strait which connects the East River and the Hudson. The Dutch settlement on the southern part of the island, was called *New Amsterdam*. Here now stands the city of *New York*, the largest in America, and second only to London in the amount of its commerce. The city is rapidly increasing in size, although its compact parts already have a circumference of about nine miles. (See Map.)

NEW YORK AND VICINITY.

1613. on his departure, they continued their traffic,—passed the winter there, and, in the following year, erected a rude fort on the southern part of the island. [1]In 1615 they began a settlement at Albany,* which had been previously visited, and erected a fort which was called Fort Orange. The country in their possession was called NEW NETHERLANDS.†

1614.

1. What new settlement was soon after made, and what was the country called?

2. How was the country governed,—when actually colonized,—and when was the first governor appointed?

6. [2]During several years, Directors, sent out by the East India Company, exercised authority over the little settlement of New Amsterdam on the island of Manhattan, but it was not until 1623 that the actual colonizing of the country took place, nor until 1625 that an actual governor was formally appointed. [3]In 1621 the Dutch West India Company was formed, and, in the same year, the States-General of Holland granted to it the exclusive privilege to traffick and plant colonies on the American coast, from the Straits of Magellan to the remotest north.

1621.

3. What is said of the Dutch West India Company?

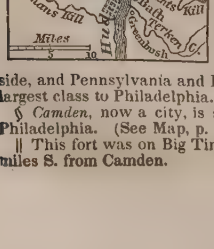
1623.

4. Give an account of the attempted settlement in the southern part of New Jersey.

7. [4]In 1623 a number of settlers, duly provided with the means of subsistence, trade, and defence, were sent out under the command of Cornelius Mey, who not only visited Manhattan, but, entering Delaware Bay and ascending the river,‡ took possession of the country, and, a few miles below Camden,§ in the present New Jersey, built Fort Nassau.‖ The fort, however, was soon after abandoned, and the worthy Captain Mey carried away with him the affectionate regrets of the natives, who long cherished his memory. [5]Probably a few years before this, the Dutch settled at

5. Of settlements in the north of New Jersey.

ALBANY AND VICINITY.



* *Albany*, now the capital of the state of New York, is situated on the west bank of the Hudson River, 145 miles N. from New York by the river's course. It was first called by the Dutch Beaverwyck, and afterwards Williamstadt. (See Map.)

† The country from Cape Cod to the banks of the Delaware was claimed by the Dutch.

‡ The *Delaware* River rises in the S. Eastern part of the state of New York, west of the Catskill mountains. It forms sixty miles of the boundary line between New York and Pennsylvania, and during the remainder of its course is the boundary between New Jersey on the one side, and Pennsylvania and Delaware on the other. It is navigable for vessels of the largest class to Philadelphia.

§ *Camden*, now a city, is situated on the east side of Delaware River, opposite Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 152.)

‖ This fort was on Big Timber Creek, in the present Gloucester County, about five miles S. from Camden.

Bergen,* and other places west of the Hudson, in New Jersey. **1623.**

8. [1]In 1625 Peter Minuits arrived at Manhattan, as governor of New Netherlands, and in the same year the settlement of Brooklyn,† on Long Island,‡ was commenced. [2]The Dutch colony at this time showed a disposition to cultivate friendly relations with the English settlements in New England, and mutual courtesies were exchanged,—the Dutch cordially inviting[a] the Plymouth settlers to remove to the more fertile soil of the Connecticut, and the English advising the Dutch to secure their claim to the banks of the Hudson by a treaty with England. 1625. *1. What events occurred in 1625?* *2. What feelings were entertained by the Dutch and the English colonists towards each other?* *a.* Oct.

9. [3]Although Holland claimed the country, on the ground of its discovery by Hudson, yet it was likewise claimed by England, on the ground of the first discovery of the continent by Cabot. [4]The pilgrims expressed the kindest wishes for the prosperity of the Dutch, but, at the same time, requested them not to send their skiffs into Narragansett Bay for beaver skins. [5]The Dutch at Manhattan were at that time little more than a company of hunters and traders, employed in the traffic of the furs of the otter and the beaver. *3. What is said of the opposing claims to the country?* *4. What did the Pilgrims request of the Dutch?* *5. What was the condition of the Dutch at Manhattan?*

10. [6]In 1629 the West India Company, in the hope of exciting individual enterprise to colonize the country, promised, by "a charter of liberties," the grant of an extensive tract of land to each individual who should, within four years, form a settlement of fifty persons. Those who should plant colonies were to purchase the land of the Indians, and it was likewise enjoined upon them that they should, at an early period, provide for the support of a minister and a schoolmaster, that the service of God, and zeal for religion, might not be neglected. 1629. *6. Give an account of the "charter of liberties."*

---

* The village of *Bergen* is on the summit of Bergen Ridge, three miles W. from Jersey City, and four from New York. (See Map, p. 117.)

† *Brooklyn*, now a city, is situated on elevated land at the west end of Long Island, opposite the lower part of the city of New York, from which it is separated by East River, three fourths of a mile wide. (See Map, p. 117.)

‡ *Long Island*, forming a part of the state of New York, lies south of Connecticut, from which it is separated by Long Island Sound. It is 120 miles in length, and has an average width of about twelve miles. It contains an area of about 1,450 square miles, and is, therefore, larger than the entire state of Rhode Island. The north side of the island is rough and hilly,—the south low and sandy. (See Map, p. 117.)

1629. 11. [1]Under this charter, four directors of the company, distinguished by the title of patrons or patroons, appropriated to themselves some of the most valuable portions of the territory. [2]One[a] of the patroons having purchased[b] from the natives the southern half of the present state of Delaware, a colony under De Vriez was sent out, and early in 1631 a small settlement was formed near the present Lewistown.* [3]The Dutch now occupied Delaware, and the claims of New Netherlands extended over the whole country from Cape Henlopen† to Cape Cod.[c]

1. What was done by some of the directors of the W. India Company?

a. Godyn.

b. June.

2. Give an account of the attempt to form a settlement in Delaware.

c. Note p. 40.

1632.

12. [4]After more than a year's residence in America, De Vriez returned to Holland, leaving his infant colony to the care of one Osset. The folly of the new commandant, in his treatment of the natives, soon provoked their jealousy, and on the return[d] of De Vriez, at the end of the year, he found the fort deserted. Indian vengeance had prepared an ambush, and every white man had been murdered. [5]De Vriez himself narrowly escaped the perfidy of the natives, being saved by the kind interposition of an Indian woman, who warned him of the designs of her countrymen.

3. What was now the extent of the Dutch claims?

d. Dec.

4. What was the fate of the Delaware colony?

5. What is said of the escape of De Vriez?

1633.

[6]After proceeding to Virginia for the purpose of obtaining provisions, De Vriez sailed to New Amsterdam, where he found[e] Wouter Van Twiller, the second governor, who had just been sent out to supersede the discontented Minuits.

6. What places did he next visit?

e. April.

13. [7]A few months before the arrival of Van Twiller as governor, the Dutch had purchased of the natives the soil around Hartford,[f] and had erected[g] and fortified a trading-house on land within the limits of the present city. The English, however, claimed the country; and, in the same year, a number of the Plymouth colonists proceeded up the river, and, in defiance of the threats of the Dutch, commenced[h] a settlement at Windsor. [8]Although for many years the Dutch West India Company retained possession of their feeble trading station yet it was finally overwhelmed by the numerous settlements of the more en

7. Give an account of the first settlement of the Dutch, and of the English, in Connecticut.

f. N. p. 103.

g. Jan

h. Oct. See page 103.

8. What became of the Dutch trading station?

---

* *Lewistown* is on Lewis Creek, in Sussex County, Delaware, five or six miles from Cape Henlopen. In front of the village is the Delaware Breakwater.

† *Cape Henlopen* is the southern cape of the entrance into Delaware Bay.

terprising New Englanders. [1]The English likewise formed settlements on the eastern end of Long Island, although they were for a season resisted by the Dutch, who claimed the whole island, as a part of New Netherlands. **1633.**

1. *What is said of the settlements on Long Island?*

14. [2]While the English were thus encroaching upon the Dutch on the east, the southern portion of the territory claimed by the latter was seized by a new competitor. Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, the hero of his age, and the renowned champion of the Protestant religion in Europe, had early conceived the design of planting colonies in America. Under the auspices of the Swedish monarch a commercial company was formed for this purpose as early as 1626, but the German war, in which Gustavus was soon after engaged, delayed for a time the execution of the project. [3]After the death[a] of Gustavus, which happened at the battle of Lutzen,* in 1633, his worthy minister renewed the plan of an American settlement, the execution of which he intrusted to Peter Minuits, the first governor of New Netherlands.

2. *What is said of Gustavus Adolphus, and what delayed the execution of his project?*

a Nov. 28, 1633.

3. *What was done by the minister of Gustavus?*

15. [4]Early in the year 1638, about the same time that Sir William Kieft succeeded Van Twiller in the government of New Netherlands, the Swedish colony under Minuits arrived, erected a fort, and formed a settlement on Christiana Creek,† near Wilmington,‡ within the present state of Delaware. [5]Kieft, considering this an intrusion upon his territories, sent[b] an unavailing remonstrance to the Swedes, and, as a check to their aggressions, rebuilt Fort Nassau on the eastern bank of the Delaware. [6]The Swedes gradually extended their settlements, and, to preserve their ascendency over the Dutch, their governor established[c] his residence and built

1638.

4. *Give an account of the settlement of Delaware.*

5. *What opposition was made by the Dutch?*

b May.

6. *What is said of the progress of the Swedish settlements?*

c 1643.

NORTHERN PART OF DELAWARE.

* *Lutzen* is a town in Prussian Saxony, on one of the branches of the Elbe. Here the French, under Bonaparte, defeated the combined forces of Prussia and Russia in 1813.

† *Christiana Creek* is in the northern part of the state of Delaware, and has its head branches in Pennsylvania and Maryland. It enters the Brandywine River at Wilmington. (See Map.)

‡ *Wilmington*, in the northern part of the state of Delaware, is situated between Brandywine and Christiana Creeks, one mile above their junction, and two miles west from Delaware River. (See Map.)

1643. a fort on the island of Tinicum,* a few miles below Philadelphia. [1]The territory occupied by the Swedes extending from Cape Henlopen to the falls in the Delaware, opposite Trenton,† was called NEW SWEDEN.

1. *Extent and name of the Swedish territory?*

2. *Give an account of the Indian hostilities in which the Dutch were engaged.*

16. [2]In 1640 the Long Island and New Jersey Indians began to show symptoms of hostility towards the Dutch. Provoked by dishonest traders, and maddened by rum, they attacked the settlements on Staten Island,‡ and threatened New Amsterdam. A fruitless expedition[a] against the Delawares of New Jersey was the consequence. [3]The war continued, with various success, until 1643, when the Dutch solicited peace; and by the mediation of the wise and good Roger Williams, a brief truce was obtained.[b] But confidence could not easily be restored, for revenge still rankled in the hearts of the Indians, and in a few months they again began[c] the work of blood and desolation.

a. 1641.

1643.

3. *How was a truce obtained, but what soon after followed?*

b. April.

c. Sept.

4. *Give an account of the exploits of Captain Underhill.*

17. [4]The Dutch now engaged in their service Captain John Underhill, an Englishman who had settled on Long Island, and who had previously distinguished himself in the Indian wars of New England. Having raised a considerable number of men under Kieft's authority, he defeated[d] the Indians on Long Island, and also at Strickland's Plain,§ or Horseneck, on the mainland.

d. Probably in 1645.

5. *How was the war terminated?*

18. [5]The war was finally terminated by the mediation of the Iroquois, who, claiming a sovereignty over the Algonquin tribes around Manhattan, proposed terms of peace, which were gladly accepted[e] by both parties. [6]The fame of Kieft is tarnished by the exceeding cruelty which he practiced towards the Indians. The colonists requesting his recall, and the West India Company disclaiming his barbarous policy, in 1647 he embarked for Europe in a richly laden vessel, but the ship

e. 1645.

6. *What is said of the cruelty and the death of Kieft?*

1647.

* *Tinicum* is a long narrow island in Delaware River, belonging to Pennsylvania, twelve miles, by the river's course, S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 152.)

† *Trenton*, now the capital of New Jersey, is situated on the E. side of Delaware River, thirty miles N.E. from Philadelphia, and fifty-five S.W. from New York. (See Map, p. 226, and also p. 228.)

‡ *Staten Island*, belonging to the state of New York, is four and a half miles S.E from New York city. It is about thirty-five miles in circumference. It has Newark Bay on the north, Raritan Bay on the south, and a narrow channel, called Staten Island Sound, on the west. (See Map, p. 117, and p. 226.)

§ *Strickland's Plain* is at the western extremity of the state of Connecticut, in the present town of Greenwich. The peninsula on which the plain is situated was called *Horseneck*, because it was early used as a pasture for horses. (See Map, p. 225.)

was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and the unhappy governor perished. **1647.**

19. [1]William Kieft was succeeded[a] by Peter Stuyvesant, the most noted of the governors of New Netherlands. By his judicious treatment of the Indians he conciliated their favor, and such a change did he produce in their feelings towards the Dutch, that he was accused of endeavoring to enlist them in a general war against the English.

a. June.

1. *What is said of Stuyvesant's treatment of the Indians?*

20. [2]After long continued boundary disputes with the colonies of New England, Stuyvesant relinquished a portion of his claims, and concluded a provisional treaty,[b] which allowed New Netherlands to extend on Long Island as far as Oyster Bay,* and on the mainland as far as Greenwich,† near the present boundary between New York and Connecticut. [3]For the purpose of placing a barrier to the encroachments of the Swedes on the south, in 1651 Stuyvesant built Fort Casimir on the site of the present town of Newcastle,‡ within five miles of the Swedish fort at Christiana. The Swedes, however, soon after obtained possession[c] of the fort by stratagem, and overpowered the garrison.

2. *Of his treaty with the English?*

1650.

b. Sept.

3. *Of the erection and loss of Fort Casimir?*

1651.

c. 1654.

21. [4]The home government, indignant at the outrage of the Swedes, ordered Stuyvesant to reduce them to submission. With six hundred men the governor sailed for this purpose in 1655, and soon compelled the surrender[d] of all the Swedish fortresses. Honorable terms were granted to the inhabitants. Those who quietly submitted to the authority of the Dutch retained the possession of their estates; the governor, Rising, was conveyed to Europe; a few of the colonists removed to Maryland and Virginia, and the country was placed under the government of deputies of New Netherlands.

4. *Give an account of the conquest of New Sweden.*

d. Sept. and Oct.

22. [5]Such was the end of the little Protestant colony of New Sweden. It was a religious and intelligent community,—preserving peace with the natives, ever

5. *What is said of the character of the Swedish colony?*

* *Oyster Bay* is on the north side of Long Island, at the N.E. extremity of Queens County, thirty miles N.E. from New York city.

† *Greenwich* is the S. Western town of Connecticut. Byram River enters the Sound on the boundary between Connecticut and New York. (See Map, p. 225.)

‡ *Newcastle* is on the west side of Delaware River, in the state of Delaware, thirty-two miles S.W. from Philadelphia. The northern boundary of the state is part of the circumference of a circle drawn twelve miles distant from Newcastle. (See Map, p. 121.)

1655. cherishing a fond attachment to the mother country and loyalty towards its sovereign; and long after their conquest by the Dutch, and the subsequent transfer to England, the Swedes of the Delaware remained the objects of generous and disinterested regard at the court of Stockholm.

What Indian hostilities occurred at this time?

23. [1]While the forces of the Dutch were withdrawn from New Amsterdam, in the expedition against the Swedes, the neighboring Indians appeared in force before the city, and ravaged the surrounding country. The return of the expedition restored confidence;—peace was concluded, and the captives were ransomed.

a. June.

What other aggressions followed, and what was the result of the war?

24. [2]In 1663 the village of Esopus, now Kingston,* was suddenly attacked[a] by the Indians, and sixty-five of the inhabitants were either killed or carried away captive. A force from New Amsterdam being sent to their assistance, the Indians were pursued to their villages; their fields were laid waste; many of their warriors were killed, and a number of the captives were released. These vigorous measures were followed by a truce in December, and a treaty of peace in the May following.[b]

b. 1664.

What is said of the boundaries of New Netherlands—and of the opposition to the Dutch claims?

25. [3]Although the Dutch retained possession of the country as far south as Cape Henlopen, yet their claims were resisted, both by Lord Baltimore, the proprietor of Maryland, and by the governor of Virginia. The southern boundary of New Netherlands was never definitely settled. At the north, the subject of boundaries was still more troublesome; Massachusetts claimed an indefinite extent of territory westward, Connecticut had increased her pretensions on Long Island, and her settlements were steadily advancing towards the Hudson.

What discontents arose among the Dutch?

26. [4]Added to these difficulties from without, discontents had arisen among the Dutch themselves. The New England notions of popular rights began to prevail;—the people, hitherto accustomed to implicit deference to the will of their rulers, began to demand

How were their demands met?

greater privileges as citizens, and a share in the government. [5]Stuyvesant resisted the demands of the

* *Kingston*, formerly called Esopus, is on the W. side of Hudson River, in Ulster County, about ninety miles N. from New York city.

people, and was sustained by the home government. [1]The prevalence of liberal principles, and the unjust exactions of an arbitrary government, had alienated the affections of the people, and when rumors of an English invasion reached them, they were already prepared to submit to English authority, in the hope of obtaining English rights. **1664.**

1. *To what extent had the affections of the people become alienated?*

27. [2]Early in 1664, during a period of peace between England and Holland, the king of England, indifferent to the claims of the Dutch, granted[a] to his brother James, the Duke of York, the whole territory from the Connecticut River to the shores of the Delaware. [3]The duke soon fitted out a squadron under Colonel Nichols, with orders to take possession of the Dutch province. The arrival of the fleet found New Amsterdam in a defenceless state. The governor, Stuyvesant, faithful to his employers, assembled his council and proposed a defence of the place; but it was in vain that he endeavored to infuse his own spirit into his people, and it was not until after the capitulation had been agreed[b] to by the magistrates, that he reluctantly signed[c] it.

2. *What is said of the grant to the Duke of York?*

a. March 22.

3. *Give an account of the expedition of Nichols, and the surrender of New Netherlands*

b. Sept. 6.

c. Sept. 8.

28. [4]The fall of the capital, which now received the name of New York, was followed by the surrender[d] of the settlement at Fort Orange, which received the name of Albany, and by the general submission of the province, with its subordinate settlements on the Delaware.[e] [5]The government of England was acknowledged over the whole, early in October, 1664.

4. *What places were included in the surrender?*

d. Oct. 4.

e. Oct. 11.

5. *When was the government of England acknowledged over the whole?*

29. [6]Thus, while England and Holland were at peace, by an act of the most flagrant injustice, the Dutch dominion in America was overthrown after an existence of little more than half a century. [7]Previous to the surrender, the Duke of York had conveyed[f] to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret all that portion of New Netherlands which now forms the state of New Jersey, over which a separate government was established under its proprietors. [8]The settlements on the Delaware, subsequently called "The Territories," were connected with the province of New York until their purchase[g] by William Penn in 1682, when they were joined to the government of Pennsylvania.

6. *What is said of the injustice of this conquest?*

f. July 3, 4.

7. *What grant was made to Berkeley and Carteret?*

8. *What is said of "The Territories?"*

g. See p. 150.

1664.

SECTION II.

Of what does Section II. treat?

NEW YORK, FROM THE CONQUEST OF NEW NETHERLANDS IN 1664, UNTIL THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR IN 1754. (DELAWARE* INCLUDED UNTIL 1682.)

1. What changes took place after the surrender of New Netherlands?

a. 1623.

1. [1]On the surrender of New Netherlands, the new name of its capital was extended to the whole territory embraced under the government of the Duke of York. Long Island, which had been previously granted[a] to the Earl of Sterling, was now, in total disregard of the claims of Connecticut, purchased by the duke, and has since remained a part of New York. "The Territories," comprising the present Delaware, remained under the jurisdiction of New York, and were ruled by deputies appointed by the governors of the latter.

2. Give an account of the administration of Governor Nichols.

2. [2]Colonel Nichols, the first English governor of the province, exercised both executive and legislative powers, but no rights of representation were conceded to the people. The Dutch titles to land were held to be invalid, and the fees exacted for their renewal were a source of much profit to the new governor. The people were disappointed in not obtaining a representative government, yet it must be admitted that the governor, considering his arbitrary powers, ruled with much moderation.

1667.

1670.

3. Of the administration of Lovelace.

3. [3]Under Lovelace, the successor of Nichols, the arbitrary system of the new government was more fully developed. The people protested against being taxed for the support of a government in which they had no voice, and when their proceedings were transmitted to the governor, they were declared "scandalous, illegal, and seditious," and were ordered to be burned by the common hangman. Lovelace declared that, to keep the people in order, such taxes must be laid upon them as should give them time to think of nothing but how to discharge them.

---

* **DELAWARE**, one of the Middle States, and, next to Rhode Island, the smallest in the Union, contains an area of but little more than 2,000 square miles. The southern part of the state is level and sandy; the northern moderately hilly and rough; while the western border contains an elevated table land, dividing the waters which fall into the Chesapeake from those which flow into Delaware Bay.

4. [1]A war having broken out between England and Holland in 1672, in the following year the latter despatched a small squadron to destroy the commerce of the English colonies. Arriving at New York during the absence of the governor, the city was surrendered[a] by the traitorous and cowardly Manning, without any attempt at defence. New Jersey made no resistance, and the settlements on the Delaware followed the example. The name New Netherlands was again revived, but it was of short continuance. In February of the following year peace was concluded[b] between the contending powers, and early in November New Netherlands was again surrendered to the English.

1672.

1673.

a. Aug. 9.

1. *Give an account of the reconquest of the country by the Dutch, and its restoration to England.*

1674.

b. Feb. 19.

5. [2]Doubts having been raised as to the validity of the Duke of York's title, because it had been granted while the Dutch were in full and peaceful possession of the country, and because the country had since been reconquered by them, the duke thought it prudent to obtain[c] from his brother, the king, a new patent, confirming the former grant. [3]The office of governor was conferred[d] on Edmund Andros, who afterwards became distinguished as the tyrant of New England.

2. *Why did the Duke of York obtain a new patent to the country?*

c. July 9.

3. *Who was appointed governor?*

d. July 11.

6. [4]His government was arbitrary; no representation was allowed the people, and taxes were levied without their consent. [5]As the Duke of York claimed the country as far east as the Connecticut River, in the following summer Andros proceeded to Saybrook, and attempted[e] to enforce the claim; but the spirited resistance of the people compelled him to return without accomplishing his object.

4. *What was the character of the government of Andros?*

1675.

5. *What is said of his attempt to enforce the duke's claim to Connecticut?*

e. July. See p. 109.

7. [6]Andros likewise attempted[f] to extend his jurisdiction over New Jersey, claiming it as a dependency of New York, although it had previously been regranted[g] by the duke to Berkeley and Carteret. [7]In 1682 the "Territories," now forming the state of Delaware, were granted[h] by the Duke of York to William Penn, from which time until the Revolution they were united with Pennsylvania, or remained under the jurisdiction of her governors

6. *To New Jersey?*

f. 1678—1680.

g. See p. 125, and p. 137.

1682.

7. *What farther is said of the history of Delaware?*

h. See p. 150

8. [8]Andros having returned to England, Colonel Thomas Dongan, a Catholic, was appointed governor,

8. *Who was the successor of Andros?*

1683. and arrived in the province in 1683. [1]Through the advice of William Penn the duke had instructed Dongan to call an assembly of representatives. The assembly, with the approval of the governor, established[a] a "CHARTER OF LIBERTIES," which conceded to the people many important rights which they had not previously enjoyed.

1. Under what circumstances was the "Charter of Liberties" established?

a. Nov. 9.

2. What were the provisions of the Charter?

9. [2]The charter declared that 'supreme legislative power should for ever reside in the governor, council, and people, met in general assembly;—that every freeholder and freeman might vote for representatives without restraint,—that no freeman should suffer, but by judgment of his peers, and that all trials should be by a jury of twelve men,—that no tax should be assessed, on any pretence whatever, but by the consent of the assembly,—that no seaman or soldier should be quartered on the inhabitants against their will,—that no martial law should exist,—and that no person professing faith in God, by Jesus Christ, should at any time, be in any way disquieted or questioned for any difference of opinion in matters of religion.' [3]In 1684 the governors of New York and Virginia met the deputies of the Five Nations at Albany, and renewed[b] with them a treaty of peace.

3. What treaty was made in 1684?

b. Aug. 12.

1685.

10. [4]On the accession[c] of the Duke of York to the throne of England, with the title of James II., the hopes which the people entertained, of a permanent representative government, were, in a measure, defeated. A direct tax was decreed,—printing presses, the dread of tyrants, were forbidden in the province; and many arbitrary exactions were imposed on the people.

c. Feb.

4. What arbitrary measures followed the accession of James II.?

11. [5]It was the evident intention of the king to introduce the Catholic religion into the province, and most of the officers appointed by him were of that faith. [6]Among other modes of introducing popery, James instructed Governor Dongan to favor the introduction of Catholic priests, by the French, among the Iroquois; but Dongan, although a Catholic, clearly seeing the ambitious designs of the French for extending their influence over the Indian tribes, resisted the measure. [7]The Iroquois remained attached to the English, and

5. What is said of the introduction of the Catholic religion?

6. What instruction did Dongan receive, and why did he resist the measure?

7. What is said of the Iroquois and the French?

long carried on a violent warfare against the French. During the administration of Dongan the French made two invasions[a] of the territory of the Iroquois, neither of which was successful. **1687.**

a. In 1684 and 1687.

12. [1]Dongan was succeeded by Francis Nicholson, the lieutenant-general of Andros. Andros had been previously[b] appointed governor of New England, and his authority was now extended over the province of New York. [2]The discontents of the people had been gradually increasing since the conquest from the Dutch, and when, in 1689, news arrived of the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, the people joyfully received the intelligence, and rose in open rebellion to the existing government. 1688.

1. *What farther is said of the authority of Andros in New York?*

b. See p. 90.

2. *How did the people receive the news of the accession of William and Mary?*

1689.

13. [3]One Jacob Leisler, a captain of the militia, aided by several hundred men in arms, with the general approbation of the citizens took possession[c] of the fort at New York, in the name of William and Mary; while Nicholson, after having vainly endeavored to counteract the movements of the people, secretly went on board a ship and sailed for England. [4]The magistrates of the city, however, being opposed to the assumption of Leisler, repaired to Albany, where the authority of Leisler was denied, although, in both places, the government was administered in the name of William and Mary.

3. *Give an account of the proceedings of Leisler and of Nicholson.*

c. June.

4. *What did the magistrates of the city do?*

14. [5]Milborne, the son-in-law of Leisler, was sent to Albany to demand the surrender of the fort; but, meeting with opposition, he returned without accomplishing his object. [6]In December, letters arrived from the king, empowering Nicholson, or whoever administered the government in his absence, to take the chief command of the province. Leisler regarded the letter as addressed to himself, and assumed the title and authority of lieutenant-governor.

5. *What is said of Milborne's embassy to Albany?*

6. *What instructions were received from England, and how did Leisler regard them?*

1690.

15. [7]King William's war having at this period broken out, in February,[d] 1690, a party of about three hundred French and Indians fell upon Schenectady, a village on the Mohawk, killed sixty persons, took thirty prisoners, and burned the place. [8]Soon after this event, the northern portion of the province, terrified by the

7. *Give an account of the destruction of Schenectady.*

d. Feb. 18.

8. *What occurred soon after this event?*

1690. recent calamity, and troubled by domestic factions, yielded to the authority of Leisler.

1. *What is said of the northern colonies, and of the enterprise against Montreal and Quebec?*

16. [1]The northern colonies, roused by the atrocities of the French and their savage allies at the commencement of King William's war, resolved to attack the enemy in turn. After the successful expedition[a] of Sir William Phipps against Port Royal; New York, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, united for the reduction of Montreal and Quebec. The naval armament sent against Quebec was wholly unsuccessful.[b] The land expedition, planned by Leisler, and placed under the command of General Winthrop of Connecticut, proceeded as far as Wood Creek,* near the head of Lake Champlain,† when sickness, the want of provisions, and dissensions among the officers, compelled a return.

a. May. See page 91.

b. See p. 92.

1691. 17. [2]Early in 1691 Richard Ingoldsby arrived at New York, and announced the appointment of Colonel Sloughter, as governor of the province. He bore a commission as captain, and without producing any order from the king, or from Sloughter, haughtily demanded[c] of Leisler the surrender of the fort. With this demand Leisler refused to comply. He protested against the lawless proceedings of Ingoldsby, but declared his readiness to yield the government to Sloughter on his arrival.

2. *What passed between Leisler and Ingoldsby?*

c. Feb. 9.

d. March 29.

3. *When did Sloughter arrive, and what followed?*

18. [3]At length, in March, Sloughter himself arrived,[d] and Leisler immediately sent messengers to receive his orders. The messengers were detained, and Ingoldsby was twice sent to the fort with a verbal commission to demand its surrender. [4]Leisler at first hesitated to yield to his inveterate enemy, preferring to deliver the fort into the hands of Sloughter himself; but, as his messengers and his letters to Sloughter were unheeded, the next day he personally surrendered the fort, and,

4. *Why did Leisler at first hesitate to yield, and what was the result?*

---

* *Wood Creek*, in Washington County, New York, flows north, and falls into the south end of Lake Champlain, at the village of Whitehall. The narrow body of water, however, between Whitehall and Ticonderoga, is often called *South River*. Through a considerable portion of its course Wood Creek is now used as a part of the Champlain Canal. There is another Wood Creek in Oneida County, New York. (See p. 181.)

† *Lake Champlain* lies between the states of New York and Vermont, and extends four or five miles into Canada. It is about 120 miles in length, and varies from half a mile to fifteen miles in width, its southern portion being the narrowest. Its outlet is the Sorel or Richelieu, through which it discharges its waters into the St. Lawrence. This lake was discovered in 1609 by Samuel Champlain, the founder of Quebec.

with Milborne and others, was immediately thrown into prison. **1691.**

19. [1]Leisler and Milborne were soon after tried on the charge of being rebels and traitors, and were condemned to death, but Sloughter hesitated to put the sentence in execution. At length the enemies of the condemned, when no other measures could prevail with the governor, invited him to a feast, and, when his reason was drowned in wine, persuaded him to sign the death warrant. Before he recovered from his intoxication the prisoners were executed.[a] [2]Their estates were confiscated, but were afterwards, on application to the king, restored to their heirs.

1. *Give an account of the trial and execution of Leisler and Milborne.*

a. May 26.

2. *What was done with their estates?*

20. [3]In June, Sloughter met a council of the Iroquois, or Five Nations, at Albany, and renewed the treaties which had formerly been in force. Soon after, having returned to New York, he ended, by a sudden death,[b] a short, weak, and turbulent administration. [4]In the mean time the English, with their Indian allies, the Iroquois, carried on the war against the French, and, under Major Schuyler, made a successful attack on the French settlements beyond Lake Champlain.

3. *What other events are mentioned in Sloughter's administration?*

b. Aug. 2.

4. *What war was carried on in the mean time, and with what results?*

1692.

21. [5]Benjamin Fletcher, the next governor of the province, was a man of strong passions, and of moderate abilities; but he had the prudence to follow the counsels of Schuyler, in his intercourse with the Indians. [6]The Iroquois remained the active allies of the English, and their situation in a great measure screened the province of New York from the attacks of the French.

5. *What was the character of Gov. Fletcher?*

6. *How was New York screened from the attacks of the French?*

1693.

22. [7]Fletcher having been authorized by the crown to take the command of the militia of Connecticut, he proceeded to Hartford to execute his commission; but the people resisted,[c] and he was forced to return without accomplishing his object. [8]He labored with great zeal, in endeavoring to establish the English church; but the people demanded toleration, and the assembly resolutely opposed the pretensions of the governor. [9]In 1696 the French, under Frontenac, with a large force, made an unsuccessful invasion[d] of the territory of the Iroquois. [10]In the following year King William's war was terminated by the peace of Ryswick.[e]

7. *What is said of Fletcher's errand to Connecticut?*

c. Nov. 6. See p. 110.

8. *Of his attempts to establish the English church?*

1696.

9. *What occurred in 1696?*

d July—Aug

10. *When was the war closed?*

e. Sept. 20.

1698.

a. April 12.

1. *What is said of Bellamont, and of the extent of his jurisdiction?*

2. *Of piracy?*

23. [1]In 1698, the Earl of Bellamont, an Irish peer a man of energy and integrity, succeeded[a] Fletcher in the administration of the government of New York, and, in the following year, New Hampshire and Massachusetts were added to his jurisdiction. [2]Piracy had at this time increased to an alarming extent, infesting every sea from America to China; and Bellamont had been particularly instructed to put an end to this evil on the American coast.

3. *Of Bellamont's efforts to suppress it?*

4. *What is related of Kidd?*

24. [3]For this purpose, before his departure for America, in connexion with several persons of distinction he had equipped a vessel, the command of which was given to William Kidd. [4]Kidd, himself, however, soon after turned pirate, and became the terror of the seas; but, at length, appearing publicly at Boston, he was arrested,[b] and sent to England, where he was tried and executed.[c] [5]Bellamont and his partners were charged with abetting Kidd in his piracies, and sharing the plunder, but after an examination in the House of Commons, nothing could be found to criminate them.

b. July, 1699.

c. May 23, 1701.

5. *What charge was made against Bellamont?*

1701.

d. March 16.

6. *What is said of the next governor, and the extent of his jurisdiction?*

25. [6]On the death[d] of Bellamont, the vicious, haughty, and intolerant Lord Cornbury was appointed governor of New York, and New Jersey was soon afterwards added to his jurisdiction,—the proprietors of the latter province having surrendered their rights to the crown in 1702.[e] [7]On the arrival[f] of Cornbury, the province was divided between two violent factions, the friends and the enemies of the late unfortunate Leisler; and the new governor, by espousing the cause of the latter, and by persecuting with unrelenting hate all denominations except that of the Church of England, soon rendered himself odious to the great mass of the people.

1702.

e. See p. 140.

f. May.

7. *What was the state of the province on his arrival, and what rendered him odious to the people?*

8. *What induced the people to request his recall?*

26. [8]He likewise embezzled the public money,—contracted debts which he was unable to pay,—repeatedly dissolved the assembly for opposition to his wishes,—and, by his petty tyranny, and dissolute habits, soon weakened his influence with all parties, who repeatedly requested his recall. [9]Being deprived[g] of his office, his creditors threw him into the same prison where he had unjustly confined many worthier men

g. 1708.

9. *What followed his removal from office?*

and where he remained a prisoner, for debt, unti the death of his father, by elevating him to the peerage, entitled him to his liberation. **1708.**

27. [1]As the history of the successive administrations of the governors of New York, from this period until the time of the French and Indian war, would possess little interest for the general reader, a few of the more important events only will be mentioned.

1. *What is remarked of the following administrations?*

28. [2]Queen Anne's war having broken out in 1702, the northern colonies, in 1709, made extensive preparations for an attack on Canada. While the New England colonies were preparing a naval armament to cooperate with one expected from England, New York and New Jersey raised a force of eighteen hundred men to march against Montreal by way of Lake Champlain. This force proceeded as far as Wood Creek,[a] when, learning that the armament promised from England had been sent to Portugal, the expedition was abandoned.

1709.

2. *What is said of the preparations for invading Canada, and why was the enterprise abandoned?*

a. N. p. 130.

29. [3]Soon after, the project was renewed, and a large fleet under the command of Sir Hovenden Walker being sent from England to co-operate with the colonial forces, an expedition of four thousand men from New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut, commenced its march towards Canada. The fleet being shattered[b] by a storm, and returning to England, the land expedition, after proceeding as far as Lake George,* was likewise compelled to return.

1711.

3. *Give an account of the second attempt.*

b. Sept. 2, 3 See p. 97.

30. [4]The debt incurred by New York, in these expeditions, remained a heavy burden upon her resources for many years. [5]In 1713 the Tuscaroras, having been defeated in a war with the Carolinians, migrated to the north, and joined the confederacy of the Five Nations, —afterwards known as the "Six Nations."

4. *What is said of the debt incurred?*

1713.

5. *Of the migration of the Tuscaroras?*

c. April 11.

31. [6]The treaty of Utrecht in 1713[c] put an end to Queen Anne's war, and, if we except the brief interval

6. *Of the treaty of Utrecht?*

* *Lake George*, called by the French *Lac Sacrament*, on account of the purity of its waters, and now frequently called the *Horicon*, lies mostly between Washington and Warren Counties, near the southern extremity of Lake Champlain, with which its outlet communicates. It is a beautiful sheet of water, 230 feet above the Hudson, and surrounded by high hills; it is thirty-three miles in length, and from two to three in width, and is interspersed with numerous islands. Lake George was long conspicuous in the early wars of the country, and several memorable battles were fought on its borders. (See Map, p. 181.)

1713. of King George's war,[a] relieved the English colonies, during a period of forty years, from the depredations of the French and their Indian allies. [1]In 1722 the governors of New York, Virginia, and Pennsylvania, met the deputies of the Iroquois at Albany, for the purpose of confirming treaties, and transacting other business. [2]During the same year Governor Burnett established a trading-house at Oswego,* on the southeastern shore of Lake Ontario; and in 1727 a fort was completed at the same place. [3]The primary object of this frontier establishment was to secure the favor of the Indians, by a direct trade with them, which had before been engrossed by the French.

a. 1744—1748.

1722.

1. *What meeting was held at Albany in 1722?*

2. *What establishment was made at Oswego?*

3. *For what object?*

32. [4]The French, at this time, had evidently formed the scheme of confining the English to the territory east of the Alleghanies, by erecting a line of forts and trading-houses on the western waters, and by securing the influence of the western tribes. [5]With this view, in 1726 they renewed the fortress at Niagara,† which gave them control over the commerce of the remote interior. Five years later they established a garrison on the eastern shore of Lake Champlain, but soon after removed it to Crown Point,‡ on the western shore. The latter defended the usual route to Canada, and gave security to Montreal. [6]With the exception of the English fortress at Oswego, the French had possession of the entire country watered by the St. Lawrence and its tributaries, while their claims to Louisiana, on the west, embraced the whole valley of the Mississippi.

4. *What scheme had the French formed?*

5. *What were the means employed?*

1731.

6. *What is said of the possessions and claims of the French at this time?*

7. *What was the condition of the province under Gov. Cosby?*

8. *What prosecution occurred, and what was the result?*

33. [7]During the administration of Governor Cosby, who came out in 1732, the province was divided between two violent parties, the liberal or democratic, and the aristocratic party. [8]A journal of the popular

---

* (See page 183.)

† This place was in the state of New York, on a point of land at the mouth of Niagara River. As early as 1679 a French officer, M. de Salle, enclosed a small spot here with palisades. The fortifications once enclosed a space of eight acres, and it was long the greatest place south of Montreal and west of Albany. The American fort Niagara now occupies the site of the old French fort. (See Map, p. 306.)

‡ *Crown Point* is a town in Essex County, New York, on the western shore of Lake Champlain. The fort, called by the French *Fort Frederic*, and afterwards repaired and called *Crown Point*, was situated on a point of land projecting into the lake at the N.E extremity of the town ninety-five miles, in a direct line, N.E. from Albany. Its site is now marked by a heap of ruins.

party having attacked the measures of the governor and council with some virulence, the editor[a] was thrown into prison,[b] and prosecuted for a libel against the government. Great excitement prevailed; the editor was zealously defended by able counsel; and an independent jury gave a verdict of acquittal.[c] **1732.**

a. J. P. Zenger.
b. Nov. 1734.
1735.
c. July.

34. [1]The people applauded their conduct, and, to Andrew Hamilton of Philadelphia, one of the defenders of the accused, the magistrates of the city of New York presented an elegant gold box, for his learned and generous defence of the rights of mankind and the liberty of the press. [2]This important trial shows the prevailing liberal sentiments of the people at that period, and may be regarded as one of the early germs of American freedom.

1. *How did the people and magistrates regard the conduct of the jury?*
2. *What did this trial show, and how may its result be regarded?*

35. [3]In 1741 a supposed negro plot occasioned great excitement in the city of New York. There were then many slaves in the province, against whom suspicion was first directed by the robbery of a dwelling house, and by the frequent occurrence of fires evidently caused by design. The magistrates of the city having offered rewards, pardon, and freedom, to any slave that would testify against incendiaries and conspirators, some abandoned females were induced to declare that the negroes had combined to burn the city and make one of their number governor.

1741.
3. *What is related of the negro plot of 1741?*

36. [4]There was soon no want of witnesses; the number of the accused increased rapidly; and even white men were designated as concerned in the plot. Before the excitement was over more than thirty persons were executed;—several of these were burned at the stake; and many were transported to foreign parts.

4. *What was the result of the excitement?*

37. [5]When all apprehensions of danger had subsided, and men began to reflect upon the madness of the project itself, and the base character of most of the witnesses, the reality of the plot began to be doubted; and the people looked back with horror upon the numerous and cruel punishments that had been inflicted.

5. *How was the affair regarded when apprehensions of danger had subsided?*

38. [6]Boston and Salem have had their delusions of witchcraft, and New York its Negro Plot, in each of which many innocent persons suffered death. These mournful results show the necessity of exceeding cau-

6. *What should we learn from such instances of public excitement?*

1741. tion and calm investigation in times of great public excitement, lest terror or deluded enthusiasm get the predominance of reason, and "make madmen of us all."

39. [1]The subsequent history of New York, previous to the commencement of the French and Indian war, contains few events of importance. In 1745, during King George's war, the savages in alliance with France made some incursions into the territory north of Albany, and a few villages were deserted[a] on their approach. The province made some preparations to join the eastern colonies in an expedition against Canada, but in 1748 a treaty of peace was concluded[b] between the contending powers, and New York again enjoyed a short interval of repose, soon to be disturbed by a conflict more sanguinary than any which had preceded. A connected history of that contest, in which all the colonies acted in concert, is given in the "French and Indian War."[c]

1745.

1. What is related of the subsequent history of New York?

a. Nov.

1748.

b. Oct. 18.

c. See p. 173.

CHAPTER VII.

NEW JERSEY.*

Of what does Chapter VII. treat?

2. In what was New Jersey at first included?

3. Give an account of the early settlements.

1. [2]The territory embraced in the present state of New Jersey was included in the Dutch province of New Netherlands; and the few events connected with its history, previous to the conquest by the English in 1664, belong to that province. [3]In 1623 Fort Nassau was built on the eastern bank of the Delaware, but was soon after deserted. Probably a few years before this the Dutch began to form settlements at Bergen, and other places west of the Hudson, in the vicinity of New York; but the first colonizing of the province dates, more properly, from the settlement of Elizabethtown† in 1664.

1664.

* NEW JERSEY, one of the Middle States, bordering on the Atlantic, and lying south of New York, and east of Pennsylvania and Delaware, contains an area of about 8,000 square miles. The northern part of the state is mountainous, the middle is diversified by hills and valleys, and is well adapted to grazing and to most kinds of grain, while the southern part is level and sandy, and, to a great extent, barren; the natural growth of the soil being chiefly shrub oaks and yellow pines.

† *Elizabethtown* is situated on Elizabethtown Creek, two and a half miles from its

2. [1]Soon after the grant of New Netherlands to the Duke of York, and previous to the surrender, the duke conveyed[a] that portion of the territory which is bounded on the east, south, and west, respectively, by the Hudson, the sea, and the Delaware, and north by the 41st degree and 40th minute of latitude, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, who were already proprietors of Carolina. [2]This tract was called New Jersey, in compliment to Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey,* and had defended it for the king during the civil war.[b] **1664.**

a. July 3, 4.

1. *What portion of his territory did the Duke of York convey away, and to whom?*

2. *What name was given to this tract, and why?*

b. Note p. 61

3. [3]To invite settlers to the country, the proprietors soon published[c] a liberal constitution for the colony, promising freedom from taxation, except by the act of the colonial assembly, and securing equal privileges, and liberty of conscience to all. [4]In 1665 Philip Carteret, the first governor, arrived,[d] and established himself at Elizabethtown, recently settled by emigrants from Long Island, and which became the first capital of the infant colony. 1665.

c. Feb. 20.

3. *What is said of the constitution formed by the proprietors?*

d. Aug.

4. *Who was the first governor, and what was the capital of the province?*

4 [5]New York and New England furnished most of the early settlers, who were attracted by the salubrity of the climate, and the liberal institutions which the inhabitants were to enjoy. [6]Fearing little from the neighboring Indians, whose strength had been broken by long hostilities with the Dutch, and guarded by the Five Nations and New York against the approaches of the French and their savage allies, the colonists of New Jersey, enjoying a happy security, escaped the dangers and privations which had afflicted the inhabitants of most of the other provinces.

5. *What is said of the early settlers?*

6. *Of the causes of the security which they enjoyed?*

5. [7]After a few years of quiet, domestic disputes began to disturb the repose of the colony. The proprietors, by their constitution, had required the payment, after 1670, of a penny or half penny an acre for the use of land; but when the day of payment arrived, the demand of the tribute met with general op- 1670.

7. *What, after a few years, disturbed the repose of the colony?*

entrance into Staten Island Sound, and twelve miles S.W. from New York city. It was named from Lady Elizabeth Carteret, wife of Sir George Carteret. (See Map, p. 117, and p. 226.)

* The island of *Jersey* is a strongly fortified island in the English Channel, seventeen miles from the French coast. It is twelve miles long, and has an average width of about five miles

1670. position. Those who had purchased land of the Indians refused to acknowledge the claims of the proprietors, asserting that a deed from the former was paramount to any other title. [1]A weak and dissolute son of Sir George Carteret was induced to assume[a] the government, and after two years of disputes and confusion, the established authority was set at defiance by open insurrection, and the governor was compelled to return[b] to England.

1. What troubles followed?

a. 1670.

b. 1672.

1673.

2. What occurred in the following year?

6. [2]In the following year, during a war with Holland, the Dutch regained[c] all their former possessions, including New Jersey, but restored them to the English in 1674. [3]After this event, the Duke of York obtained[d] a second charter, confirming the former grant; and, in disregard of the rights of Berkeley and Carteret, appointed[e] Andros governor over the whole re-united province. On the application of Carteret, however, the duke consented to restore New Jersey; but he afterwards endeavored[f] to avoid the full performance of his engagement, by pretending that he had reserved certain rights of sovereignty over the country, which Andros seized every opportunity of asserting.

c. See p. 127.

1674.

d. July 9.

3. Relate the farther proceedings of the Duke of York.

e. July 11.

f. Oct.

1674.

4. How did Berkeley dispose of his territory?

7. [4]In 1674 Lord Berkeley sold[g] his share of New Jersey to John Fenwick, in trust for Edward Byllinge and his assignees. [5]In the following year Philip Carteret returned to New Jersey, and resumed the government; but the arbitrary proceedings of Andros long continued to disquiet the colony. Carteret, attempting to establish a direct trade between England and New Jersey, was warmly opposed by Andros, who claimed, for the duke his master, the right of rendering New Jersey tributary to New York, and even went so far as to arrest Governor Carteret and convey him prisoner to New York.

g. March 28.

1675.

5. Give an account of the difficulties between Carteret and Andros.

6. What disposal did Byllinge make of his share, and what was done by the assignees?

8. [6]Byllinge, having become embarrassed in his fortunes, made an assignment of his share in the province to William Penn and two others, all Quakers, whose first care was to effect a division of the territory between themselves and Sir George Carteret, that they might establish a separate government in accordance

with their peculiar religious principles. [1]The division* was accomplished[a] without difficulty; Carteret receiving the eastern portion of the province, which was called EAST JERSEY; and the assignees of Byllinge the western portion, which they named WEST JERSEY. [2]The western proprietors then gave[b] the settlers a free constitution, under the title of "Concessions," similar to that given by Berkeley and Carteret, granting all the important privileges of civil and religious liberty.

1676.

a. July 11

1. *What division of the province was made?*

1677.

b. March 13.

2. *What then was done by the western proprietors?*

9. [3]The authors of the "Constitution" accompanied its publication with a special recommendation of the province to the members of their own religious fraternity, and in 1677 upwards of four hundred Quakers came over and settled in West New Jersey. [4]The settlers being unexpectedly called upon by Andros to acknowledge the sovereignty of the Duke of York, and submit to taxation, they remonstrated earnestly with the duke, and the question was finally referred to the eminent jurist, Sir William Jones, for his decision.

3. *How were settlers invited to the colony, and with what result?*

4. *What subject was referred to Sir William Jones for decision?*

1680.

10. [5]The result was a decision against the pretensions of the duke, who immediately relinquished all claims to the territory and the government. Soon after, he made a similar release in favor of the representatives of Carteret, in East Jersey, and the whole province thus became independent of foreign jurisdiction.

5. *What was the result,—and what the conduct of the duke?*

1681.

11. [6]In 1681 the governor of West Jersey convoked the first representative assembly, which enacted[c] several important laws for protecting property, punishing crimes, establishing the rights of the people, and defining the powers of rulers. [7]The most remarkable feature in the new laws was a provision, that, in all criminal cases except treason, murder, and theft, the person aggrieved should have power to pardon the offender.

6. *What were the proceedings of the first assembly in West Jersey?*

c. Dec. 5.

7. *What was a remarkable feature in the new laws?*

d. Dec. 1679.

12. [8]After the death[d] of Sir George Carteret, the trustees of his estates offered his portion of the province for sale; and in 1682 William Penn and eleven others,

8. *What disposal was made of East Jersey, and what is said of Barclay's administration?*

* According to the terms of the deed, the dividing line was to run from the most southerly point of the east side of Little Egg Harbor, to the N. Western extremity of New Jersey; which was declared to be a point on the Delaware River in latitude 41° 40′, which is 18′ 23″ farther north than the present N. Western extremity of the state. Several partial attempts were made, at different times, to run the line, and much controversy arose from the disputes which these attempts occasioned.

1682. members of the society of Friends, purchased[a] East Jersey, over which Robert Barclay, a Scotch gentleman, the author of the "Apology for Quakers," was appointed[b] governor for life. During his brief administration[c] the colony received a large accession of emigrants, chiefly from Barclay's native county of Aberdeen, in Scotland.

a. Feb. 11, 12.

b. July 27, 1683.

c. He died in 1690.

1685. 13. [1]On the accession of the Duke of York to the throne, with the title of James II.,—disregarding his previous engagements, and having formed the design of annulling all the charters of the American colonies, he caused writs to be issued against both the Jerseys and in 1688 the whole province was placed under the jurisdiction of Andros, who had already[d] become the king's governor of New York and New England.

1. *Give an account of the arbitrary measures of the Duke of York, when he became king.*

1688.

d. See p. 129, and p. 90.

1688–9. 14. [2]The revolution in England terminated the authority of Andros, and from June, 1689, to August, 1692, no regular government existed in New Jersey, and during the following ten years the whole province remained in an unsettled condition. [3]For a time New York attempted to exert her authority over New Jersey, and at length the disagreements between the various proprietors and their respective adherents occasioned so much confusion, that the people found it difficult to ascertain in whom the government was legally vested. [4]At length the proprietors, finding that their conflicting claims tended only to disturb the peace of their territories, and lessen their profits as owners of the soil, made a surrender[e] of their powers of government to the crown; and in 1702 New Jersey became a royal province, and was united[f] to New York, under the government of Lord Cornbury.

2. *What followed the revolution in England?*

3. *What evils arose from the disputes of the proprietors?*

4. *What disposal did the proprietors make of their claims?*

1702.

e. April 25.

f. See p. 132.

5. *How was New Jersey then governed?*

g. 1702—1708, see p. 132.

6. *What is said of Lord Cornbury's administration?*

7. *What formed the constitution of New Jersey?*

15. [5]From this period until 1738 the province remained under the governors of New York, but with a distinct legislative assembly. [6]The administration[g] of Lord Cornbury, consisting of little more than a history of his contentions with the assemblies of the province, fully developed the partiality, frauds, and tyranny of the governor, and served to awaken in the people a vigorous and vigilant spirit of liberty. [7]The commission and instructions of Cornbury formed the consti

tution of New Jersey until the period when it ceased to be a British province. **1728.**

16. [1]In 1728 the assembly petitioned the king to separate the province from New York; but the petition was disregarded until 1738, when, through the influence of Lewis Morris, the application was granted, and Mr. Morris himself received the first commission as royal governor over the separate province of New Jersey. [2]After this period we meet with no events of importance in the history of New Jersey until the Revolution.

1. *Give an account of the separation of New Jersey from New York.* 1738.

2. *What is said of the subsequent history?*

CHAPTER VIII.

Of what does Chapter VIII. treat?

MARYLAND.*

1. [3]The second charter given[a] to the London Company, embraced, within the limits of Virginia, all the territory which now forms the state of Maryland. [4]The country near the head of the Chesapeake was early explored[b] by the Virginians, and a profitable trade in furs was established with the Indians. [5]In 1631 William Clayborne, a man of resolute and enterprising spirit, who had first been sent out as a surveyor, by the London Company, and who subsequently was appointed a member of the council, and secretary of the colony, obtained[c] a royal license to traffick with the Indians. 1609.

a. June 2. See p. 52.

3. *In what was Maryland embraced?*

b. 1627, 8, 9.

4. *By whom was the country explored?*

5. *What is said of the license to Clayborne?*

c. May 26.

2. [6]Under this license, which was confirmed[d] by a commission from the governor of Virginia, Clayborne perfected several trading establishments which he had previously formed; one on the island of Kent,† nearly 1632.

d. March 18.

6. *What settlements did Clayborne form?*

---

* MARYLAND, the most southern of the Middle States, is very irregular in its outline, and contains an area of about 11,000 square miles. The Chesapeake Bay runs nearly through the state from N. to S., dividing it into two parts, called the *Eastern Shore* and the *Western Shore*. The land on the eastern shore is generally level and low, and, in many places, is covered with stagnant waters; yet the soil possesses considerable fertility. The country on the western shore, below the falls of the rivers, is similar to that on the eastern, but above the falls the country becomes gradually uneven and hilly, and in the western part of the state is mountainous. Iron ore is found in various parts of the state, and extensive beds of coal between the mountains in the western part.

† *Kent*, the largest island in Chesapeake Bay, lies opposite Annapolis, near the eastern shore, and belongs to Queen Anne's County. It is nearly in the form of a triangle, and contains an area of about forty-five square miles. (See Map, next page.)

1632. opposite Annapolis,* in the very heart of Maryland; and one near the mouth of the Susquehanna. [1]Clayborne had obtained a monopoly of the fur trade, and Virginia aimed at extending her jurisdiction over the large tract of unoccupied territory lying between her borders and those of the Dutch in New Netherlands.

1. *What is said of the claims of Virginia?*

2. *How were her claims defeated?*

[2]But before the settlements of Clayborne could be completed, and the claim of Virginia confirmed, a new province was formed within her limits, and a government established on a plan as extraordinary as its results were benevolent.

3. *What is related of Lord Baltimore?*

3. [3]As early as 1621, Sir George Calvert, whose title was Lord Baltimore, a Roman Catholic nobleman, influenced by a desire of opening in America a refuge for Catholics, who were then persecuted in England, had established a Catholic colony in Newfoundland, and had freely expended his estate in advancing its interests. [4]But the rugged soil, the unfavorable climate, and the frequent annoyances from the hostile French, soon destroyed all hopes of a flourishing colony. [5]He next visited[a] Virginia, in whose mild and fertile regions he hoped to find for his followers a peaceful and quiet asylum. The Virginians, however, received him with marked intolerance, and he soon found that, even here, he could not enjoy his religious opinions in peace.

4. *What destroyed his hopes of a colony in Newfoundland?*

a. 1628.

5. *What place did he next visit, and how was he received?*

6. *To what country did he next turn his attention, and what was the result?*

1632.

4. [6]He next turned his attention to the unoccupied country beyond the Potomac; and as the dissolution of the London Company had restored to the monarch his prerogative over the soil, Calvert, a favorite with the royal family, found no difficulty in obtaining a charter for domains in that happy clime. [7]The charter was probably drawn by the hand of Lord Baltimore himself, but as he died[b] before it received the royal seal, the same was made out to his son Cecil. [8]The terri-

7. *By whom was the charter drawn?*

b. April 25.

8. *What was the extent and what the name of the territory granted?*

VICINITY OF ANNAPOLIS.

* *Annapolis*, (formerly called Providence,) now the capital of Maryland, is situated on the S.W. side of the River Severn, two miles from its entrance into Chesapeake Bay. It is twenty-five miles S. from Baltimore, and thirty-three N.E. from Washington. The original plan of the city was designed in the form of a circle, with the State-house on an eminence in the centre, and the streets, like radii, diverging from it. (See Map.)

tory thus granted,[a] extending north to the 40th degree, the latitude of Philadelphia, was now erected into a separate province, and, in honor of Henrietta Maria, daughter of Henry IV. king of France, and wife of the English monarch, was named MARYLAND. **1632.**

a. June 20.

5. [1]The charter granted to Lord Baltimore, unlike any which had hitherto passed the royal seal, secured to the emigrants equality in religious rights and civil freedom, and an independent share in the legislation of the province. [2]The laws of the colony were to be established with the advice and approbation of a majority of the freemen, or their deputies; and although Christianity was made the law of the land, yet no preferences were given to any sect or party.

1. *What were the provisions of the charter?*

2. *How were the laws to be established?*

6. [3]Maryland was also most carefully removed from all dependence upon the crown; the proprietor was left free and uncontrolled in his appointments to office; and it was farther expressly stipulated, that no tax whatsoever should ever be imposed by the crown upon the inhabitants of the province.

3. *What farther liberties were granted to the people and the proprietor?*

7. [4]Under this liberal charter, Cecil Calvert, the son, who had succeeded to the honors and fortunes of his father, found no difficulty in enlisting a sufficient number of emigrants to form a respectable colony; nor was it long before gentlemen of birth and fortune were found ready to join in the enterprise. [5]Lord Baltimore himself, having abandoned his original purpose of conducting the emigrants in person, appointed his brother, Leonard Calvert, to act as his lieutenant. 1633.

4. *Give an account of the favorable beginning of the enterprise.*

5. *What appointment was made?*

8. [6]In December, 1633, the latter, with about two hundred emigrants, mostly Roman Catholics, sailed[b] for the Potomac, where they arrived[c] in March of the following year. In obedience to the express command of the king, the emigrants were welcomed with courtesy by Harvey, the governor of Virginia, although Virginia had remonstrated against the grant to Lord Baltimore, as an invasion of her rights of trade with the Indians, and an encroachment on her territorial limits.

b. Dec. 2. 1634.

c. March 6.

6. *Give an account of the departure of the colonists, and of their reception at Virginia.*

7. *What is said of Calvert's interview with the Indians?*

9. [7]Calvert, having proceeded about one hundred and fifty miles up the Potomac found on its eastern

1634. bank the Indian village of Piscataway,* the chieftain of which would not bid him either go or stay, but told him "He might use his own discretion." [1]Deeming it unsafe, however, to settle so high up the river, he descended the stream, entered the river now called St. Mary's,† and, about ten miles from its junction with the Potomac, purchased of the Indians a village, where he commenced[a] a settlement, to which was given the name St. Mary's.

1. *Where was the first settlement made?*

a. April 6.

2. *How was he friendship of the Indians secured?*

3. *Describe the happy situation of the colony.*

10. [2]The wise policy of Calvert, in paying the Indians for their lands, and in treating them with liberality and kindness, secured their confidence and friendship. [3]The English obtained from the forests abundance of game, and as they had come into possession of lands already cultivated, they looked forward with confidence to abundant harvests. No sufferings were endured,—no fears of want were excited,—and under the fostering care of its liberal proprietor the colony rapidly advanced in wealth and population.

1635. 11. [4]Early in 1635 the first legislative assembly of the province was convened[b] at St. Mary's, but as the records have been lost,[c] little is known of its proceedings. [5]Notwithstanding the pleasant auspices under which the colony commenced, it did not long remain wholly exempt from intestine troubles. Clayborne had, from the first, refused to submit to the authority of Lord Baltimore, and, acquiring confidence in his increasing strength, he resolved to maintain his possessions by force of arms. A bloody skirmish occurred[d] on one of the rivers‡ of Maryland, and several lives were lost, but Clayborne's men were defeated and taken prisoners.

4. *What is said of the first legislative assembly?*

b. March 8.

c. In the rebellion of 1645. See next page.

5. *What troubles were caused by Clayborne?*

d. May.

12. [6]Clayborne himself had previously fled to Virginia, and, when reclaimed by Maryland, he was sent by the governor of Virginia to England for trial. The Maryland assembly declared[e] him guilty of treason,

6. *What were the proceedings and verdict in relation to him?*

e. March, 1638.

---

* This Indian village was fifteen miles S. from Washington, on the east side of the Potomac, at the mouth of Piscataway Creek, opposite Mount Vernon, and near the site of the present Fort Washington.

† The *St. Mary's* River, called by Calvert *St. George's* River, enters the Potomac from the north, about fifteen miles from the entrance of the latter into the Chesapeake. It is properly a small arm or estuary of the Chesapeake.

‡ NOTE.—This skirmish occurred either on the River *Wicomico*, or the *Pocomoke*, on the eastern shore of Maryland; the former fifty-five miles, and the latter eighty miles S.E. from the Isle of Kent

seized his estates, and declared them forfeited. In England, Clayborne applied to the king to gain redress for his alleged wrongs; but after a full hearing it was decided that the charter of Lord Baltimore was valid against the earlier license of Clayborne, and thus the claims of the proprietor were fully confirmed. **1638.**

13. [1]At first the people of Maryland convened in general assembly for passing laws,—each freeman being entitled to a vote; but in 1639 the more convenient form of a representative government was established,—the people being allowed to send as many delegates to the general assembly as they should think proper. [2]At the same time a declaration of rights was adopted; the powers of the proprietor were defined; and all the liberties enjoyed by English subjects at home, were confirmed to the people of Maryland. 1639.

1. *How were laws at first enacted, and what change was afterwards made?*

2. *What other regulations were made?*

14. [3]About the same time some petty hostilities were carried on against the Indians, which, in 1642, broke out into a general Indian war, that was not terminated until 1644.

3. *What is said of the Indian war which soon followed?*

1644.

15. [4]Early in 1645 Clayborne returned to Maryland, and, having succeeded in creating a rebellion, compelled the governor to withdraw into Virginia for protection. [5]The vacant government was immediately seized by the insurgents, who distinguished the period of their dominion by disorder and misrule; and notwithstanding the most vigorous exertions of the governor, the revolt was not suppressed until August of the following year. 1645.

4. *What new troubles were caused by Clayborne?*

5. *What was the character and nature of the government of the insurgents?*

1646.

16. [6]Although religious toleration had been declared, by the proprietor, one of the fundamental principles of the social union over which he presided, yet the assembly, in order to give the principle the sanction of their authority, proceeded to incorporate it in the laws of the province. It was enacted[a] that no person, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, should be molested in respect of his religion, or the free exercise thereof; and that any one who should reproach his neighbor with opprobrious names of religious distinction, should pay a fine to the person insulted. 1649.

6. *What was done in regard to religious toleration?*

a. May 1.

17. [7]Thus Maryland quickly followed Rhode Island in establishing religious toleration by law. [1]While

7. *What honor is ascribed to Maryland?*

1649. at this very period the Puritans were persecuting their Protestant brethren in Massachusetts, and the Episcopalians were retorting the same severity on the Puritans in Virginia, there was forming, in Maryland, a sanctuary where all might worship, and none might oppress; and where even Protestants sought refuge from Protestant intolerance.*

1. *What comparison is drawn between Maryland and other colonies?*

1650.

18. [2]In 1650 an important law was passed, confirming the division of the legislative body into two branches, an upper and a lower house; the former consisting of the governor and council, appointed by the proprietor, and the latter of the burgesses or representatives, chosen by the people. [3]At the same session the rights of Lord Baltimore, as proprietor, were admitted, but all taxes were prohibited unless they were levied with the consent of the freemen.

a. April 16.

2. *What important law was passed in 1650?*

3. *What is said of the rights of Lord Baltimore,—and of taxation?*

1651.

19. [4]In the mean time the parliament had established its supremacy in England, and had appointed[b] certain commissioners, of whom Clayborne was one, to reduce and govern the colonies bordering on the bay of the Chesapeake. [5]The commissioners appearing in Maryland, Stone, the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore, was at first removed[c] from his office, but was soon after restored.[d] In 1654, upon the dissolution of the Long Parliament, from which the commissioners had received their authority, Stone restored the full powers of the proprietor; but the commissioners, then in Virginia, again entered the province, and compelled Stone to surrender his commission and the government into their hands.[e]

4. *In what manner did Parliament interfere with the government?*

b. Oct. 6.

c. April 8.

d. July 8.

1654.

5. *What events occurred between this time and the second removal of Gov. Stone?*

e. Aug. 1.

20. [6]Parties had now become identified with religious sects. The Protestants, who had now the power in their own hands, acknowledging the authority of Cromwell, were hostile to monarchy and to an hereditary proprietor; and while they contended earnestly for every civil liberty, they proceeded to disfranchise those who differed from them in matters of religion. Catholics were excluded from the assembly which was then called; and an act of the assembly declared that

6. *What use did the Protestants make of their ascendency?*

Oct.—Nov.

* NOTE.—*Bozman*, in his History of Maryland, ii. 350—356, dwells at considerable length upon these laws; but he maintains that a majority of the members of the assembly of 1649 were *Protestants*.

Catholics were not entitled to the protection of the laws of Maryland. **1654.**

21. [1]In January of the following year, Stone, the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore, reassumed his office of governor,—organized an armed force,—and seized the provincial records. [2]Civil war followed. Several skirmishes occurred between the contending parties, and at length a decisive battle* was fought,[a] which resulted in the defeat of the Catholics, with the loss of about fifty men in killed and wounded. Stone himself was taken prisoner, and four of the principal men of the province were executed.

1655.

1. *What measures were taken by the lieutenant of Lord Baltimore?*

2. *Relate the events which followed.*

a. April 4.

1656.

22. [3]In 1656 Josiah Fendall was commissioned[b] governor by the proprietor, but he was soon after arrested[c] by the Protestant party. After a divided rule of nearly two years, between the contending parties, Fendall was at length acknowledged[d] governor, and the proprietor was restored to the full enjoyment of his rights. [4]Soon after the death[e] of Cromwell, the Protector of England, the Assembly of Maryland, fearing a renewal of the dissensions which had long distracted the province, and seeing no security but in asserting the power of the people, dissolved the upper house, consisting of the governor and his council, and assumed[f] to itself the whole legislative power of the state.

b. July 20.

3. *What further disturbances took place, and how were they composed?*

c. Aug.

1658.

d. April 3.

e. Sept. 1658.

4. *What led to the dissolution of the upper house?*

1660.

f. March 24.

23. [5]Fendall, having surrendered the trust which Lord Baltimore had confided to him, accepted from the assembly a new commission as governor. [6]But on the restoration[g] of monarchy in England, the proprietor was re-established, in his rights,—Philip Calvert was appointed governor,—and the ancient order of things was restored. [7]Fendall was tried for treason and found guilty; but the proprietor wisely proclaimed a general pardon to political offenders, and Maryland once more experienced the blessings of a mild government, and internal tranquillity.

5. *What course was taken by Fendall?*

g. June, 1660.

6. *What occurred on the restoration of monarchy?*

7. *How were political offenders then treated, and what was the effect?*

1675.

24. [8]On the death[h] of Lord Baltimore, in 1675, his son Charles, who inherited his father's reputation for virtue and ability, succeeded him as proprietor. He

h. Dec. 10.

8. *Who succeeded Lord Baltimore, and what course did he pursue?*

* NOTE.—The place where this battle was fought was on the south side of the small creek which forms the southern boundary of the peninsula on which Annapolis, the capital of Maryland, now stands. (See Map, p. 142.)

1675. confirmed the law which established an absolute political equality among all denominations of Christians,—caused a diligent revision of the laws of the province to be made, and, in general, administered the government with great satisfaction to the people.

1689. 25. [1]At the time of the revolution in England, the repose of Maryland was again disturbed. The deputies of the proprietor having hesitated to proclaim the new sovereigns, and a rumor having gained prevalence that the magistrates and the Catholics had formed a league with the Indians for the massacre of all the Protestants in the province, an armed association was formed for asserting the right of King William, and for the defence of the Protestant faith.

1. What events in Maryland followed the revolution in England?

Sept. 26. [2]The Catholics at first endeavored to oppose, by force, the designs of the association; but they at length surrendered the powers of government by capitulation. [3]A convention of the associates then assumed the government, which they administered until 1691, when the king, by an arbitrary enactment,[a] deprived Lord Baltimore of his political rights as proprietor, and constituted Maryland a *royal government*.

2. What was then done by the Catholics?

3. How was the government administered until 1691, and what change then took place?

a. June 11.

1692. 27. [4]In the following year Sir Lionel Copley arrived as royal governor,—the principles of the proprietary administration were subverted,—religious toleration was abolished,—and the Church of England was established as the religion of the state, and was supported by taxation.

4. Give an account of the administration of Sir Lionel Copley.

28. [5]After an interval of more than twenty years, the legal proprietor, in the person of the infant heir of Lord Baltimore, was restored[b] to his rights, and Maryland again became a proprietary government, under which it remained until the Revolution. Few events of interest mark its subsequent history, until, as an independent state, it adopted a constitution, when the claims of the proprietor to jurisdiction and property were finally rejected.

5. What is said of the remaining history of Maryland, previous to the revolution?

b. 1715–16.

1643.

CHAPTER IX.

PENNSYLVANIA *

Of what does Chapter IX. treat?

1. [1]As early as 1643 the Swedes, who had previously settled[a] near Wilmington, in Delaware, erected a fort on the island of Tinicum, a few miles below Philadelphia; and here the Swedish governor, John Printz, established his residence. Settlements clustered along the western bank of the Delaware, and Pennsylvania was thus colonized by Swedes, nearly forty years before the grant of the territory to William Penn.

1. Give an account of the early Swedish settlements in Pennsylvania.

5. See p. 121.

2. [2]In 1681, William Penn, son of Admiral Penn, a member of the society of Friends, obtained[b] of Charles II. a grant of all the lands embraced in the present state of Pennsylvania. [3]This grant was given, as expressed in the charter, in consideration of the desire of Penn to enlarge the boundaries of the British empire, and reduce the natives, by just and gentle treatment, to the love of civil society and the Christian religion; and, in addition, as a recompense for unrequited services rendered by his father to the British nation.

1681.

2. What grant did William Penn obtain?

b. March 14.

3. In consideration of what was this grant given?

3. [4]The enlarged and liberal views of Penn, however, embraced objects of even more extended benevolence than those expressed in the royal charter. His noble aim was to open, in the New World, an asylum where civil and religious liberty should be enjoyed; and where, under the benign influence of the principles of PEACE, those of every sect, color, and clime, might dwell together in unity and love. [5]As Pennsylvania included the principal settlements of the Swedes, Penn issued[c] a proclamation to the inhabitants, in which he assured them of his ardent desire for their welfare, and prom-

4. What, however, did the views of Penn embrace, and what was his noble aim?

c. April.

5. What proclamation was made by Penn?

* PENNSYLVANIA contains an area of about 46,000 square miles. The central part of the state is covered by the numerous ridges of the Alleghanies, running N.E. and S.W., but on both sides of the mountains the country is either level or moderately hilly, and the soil is generally excellent. Iron ore is widely disseminated in Pennsylvania, and the coal regions are very extensive. The bituminous, or soft coal, is found in inexhaustible quantities west of the Alleghanies, and anthracite or hard coal on the east, particularly between the Blue Ridge and the N. branch of the Susquehanna. The principal coal-field is sixty-five miles in length, with an average breadth of about five miles.

1681. ised that they should live a free people, and be governed by laws of their own making.

1. How were settlers invited, and what is said of the first emigration?

a. May and Oct.

2. What instructions were given to Markham?

b. Oct. 28.

3. What did Penn write to the natives?

4. [1]Penn now published a flattering account of the province, and an invitation to purchasers, and during the same year three ships, with emigrants, mostly Quakers, sailed[a] for Pennsylvania. [2]In the first came William Markham, agent of the proprietor, and deputy-governor, who was instructed to govern in harmony with law,—to confer with the Indians respecting their lands,—and to conclude with them a league of peace. [3]In the same year Penn addressed[b] a letter to the natives, declaring himself and them responsible to the same God, who had written his law in the hearts of all, and assuring them of his "great love and regard for them," and his "resolution to live justly, peaceably, and friendly" with them.

1682.

c. May 15.

4. What did Penn publish in the following year?

d. Aug. 31.

5. What release and grant did Penn obtain?

e. Sept. 3.

6. When did he visit America?

5. [4]Early in the following year Penn published[c] a "frame of government," and a code of laws, which were to be submitted to the people of his province for their approval. [5]He soon after obtained[d] from the Duke of York a release of all his claims to the territory of Pennsylvania, and likewise a grant[e] of the present state of Delaware, then called THE TERRITORIES, or, "The Three Lower Counties on the Delaware." [6]In September Penn himself, with a large number of emigrants of his own religious persuasion, sailed for America, and on the sixth of November following landed at Newcastle.

7. What events occurred immediately after his arrival?

f. Nov. 7.

8. What relations had already been established with the Indians?

9. Give an account of his meeting the Indians at Kensington.

6. [7]On the day after his arrival he received in public, from the agent of the Duke of York, a surrender[f] of "The Territories;"—made a kind address to the people,—and renewed the commissions of the former magistrates. [8]In accordance with his directions a friendly correspondence had been opened with the neighboring tribes of Indians, by the deputy-governor Markham; they had assented to the form of a treaty and they were now invited to a conference for the purpose of giving it their ratification. [9]At a spot which is now the site of Kensington,* one of the suburbs of

* *Kensington* constitutes a suburb of Philadelphia, in the N.E. part of the city, bordering on the Delaware; and, though it has a separate government of its own, it should be regarded as a part of the city. (See Map, p. 152.)

Philadelphia, the Indian chiefs assembled at the head of their armed warriors; and here they were met by William Penn, at the head of an unarmed train of his religious associates,—all clad in the simple Quaker garb, which the Indians long after venerated as the habiliments of peace. **1682.**

7. [1]Taking his station beneath a spreading elm, Penn addressed the Indians through the medium of an interpreter. He told them that the Great Spirit knew with what sincerity he and his people desired to live in friendship with them. "We meet," such were his words, "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side; disputes shall be settled by arbitrators mutually chosen; and all shall be openness and love." [2]Having paid the chiefs the stipulated price for their lands, he delivered to them a parchment record of the treaty, which he desired that they would carefully preserve, for the information of their posterity, for three generations.

1. What was Penn's address to them?

2. What is said of the record of the treaty?

8. [3]The children of the forest cordially acceded to the terms of friendship offered them, and pledged themselves to live in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the sun and moon should endure. [4]The friendship thus created between the province and the Indians continued more than seventy years, and was never interrupted while the Quakers retained the control of the government. Of all the American colonies, the early history of Pennsylvania alone is wholly exempt from scenes of savage warfare. The Quakers came without arms, and with no message but peace and not a drop of their blood was ever shed by an Indian.

3. What did the Indians promise?

4. What were the happy effects of Penn's policy?

9. [5]A few months after Penn's arrival, he selected a place between the rivers Schuylkill* and Delaware, for the capital of his province,—purchased the land of the Swedes, who had already erected a church there, and having regulated the model of the future city by a 1683.

5. Give an account of the founding of Philadelphia.

* The *Schuylkill* River, in the eastern part of Pennsylvania, rises by three principal branches in Schuylkill County, and pursuing a S.E. course, enters Delaware River five miles below Philadelphia. Vessels of from 300 to 400 tons ascend it to the western wharves of Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 152.)

1683. map, named it Philadelphia,* or the city of 'Brotherly Love." [1]The groves of chestnut, walnut, and pine, which marked the site, were commemorated by the names given to the principal streets. [2]At the end of a year the city numbered eighty dwellings, and at the end of two years it contained a population of two thousand five hundred inhabitants.

1. *What is said of the names of the streets?*

2. *Of the growth of the city?*

10. [3]The second assembly of the province was held in the infant city in March, 1683. The "frame of government," and the laws previously agreed upon, were amended at the suggestion of Penn; and, in their place, a charter of liberties, signed by him, was adopted,[a] which rendered Pennsylvania, nearly all but in name, a representative democracy. [4]While in the other colonies the proprietors reserved to themselves the appointment of the judicial and executive officers, William Penn freely surrendered these powers to the people. His highest ambition, so different from that of the founders of most colonies, was to do good to the people of his care; and to his dying day he declared that if they needed any thing more to make them happier, he would readily grant it.

5. *When and where was the second assembly held, and how were the laws amended?*

a. April 12.

4. *What is said of Penn's liberality to the people?*

1684. 11. [5]In August, 1684, Penn sailed for England, having first appointed five commissioners of the provincial council, with Thomas Lloyd as president, to administer the government during his absence. [6]Little occurred to disturb the quiet of the province until 1691, when the "three lower counties on the Delaware," dissatisfied with some proceedings of a majority of the council, withdrew[b] from the Union, and, with the reluctant consent of the proprietor,

5. *How was the government administered after Penn's return to England?*

1691.

6. *What is said of the withdrawal of Delaware from the Union?*

b. April 11.

PHILADELPHIA AND VICINITY.

* *Philadelphia* City, now the second in size and population in the United States, is situated between the Delaware and the Schuylkill Rivers, five miles above their junction, and 120 miles, by the Delaware River, from the ocean. It is about eighty miles, in a direct line, S.W. from New York, and 125 N.E. from Washington. The compact part of the city is now more than eight miles in circumference. (See Map.)

a separate deputy-governor was then appointed over them. **1691.**

12. [1]In the mean time James II. had been driven from his throne, and William Penn was several times imprisoned in England, in consequence of his supposed adherence to the cause of the fallen monarch. [2]In 1692 Penn's provincial government was taken from him, by a royal commission[a] to Governor Fletcher, of New York; who, the following year, reunited[b] Delaware to Pennsylvania, and extended the royal authority over both. Soon after, the suspicions against Penn were removed, and in August, 1694, he was restored[c] to his proprietary rights.

1. *What is said of Penn's imprisonment in England?*

1692.

a. Oct. 31.

2. *When was the government of his province taken from him, and what events followed?*

b. May.

c. Aug. 30.

1699.

13. [3]In the latter part of the year 1699 Penn again visited[d] his colony, but instead of the quiet and repose which he expected, he found the people dissatisfied, and demanding still farther concessions and privileges. [4]He therefore presented[e] them another charter, or frame of government, more liberal than the former, and conferring greater powers on the people; but all his efforts could not remove the objections of the delegates of the lower counties, who had already withdrawn[f] from the assembly, and who now refused to receive the charter continuing their union with Pennsylvania. [5]In the following year the legislature of Pennsylvania was convened apart, and in 1703 the two colonies agreed to the separation. They were never again united in legislation, although the same governor still continued to preside over both.

d. Dec. 10.

3. *When did Penn revisit his province, and what was its condition?*

e. Nov. 7, 1701.

4. *How did he labor to satisfy the people, and with what success?*

f. Oct. 20

1702.

5. *What final separation occurred in 1703?*

14. [6]Immediately after the grant of the last charter, Penn returned[g] to England, where his presence was necessary to resist a project which the English ministers had formed, of abolishing all the proprietary governments in America. [7]He died in England in 1718, leaving his interest in Pennsylvania and Delaware to his sons John, Thomas, and Richard Penn, who continued to administer the government, most of the time by deputies, until the American revolution, when the commonwealth purchased all their claims in the province for about 580,000 dollars.

6. *What required Penn's presence in England?*

g. Dec. 1701.

1718.

7. *When did Penn die, and what more is said of the colonial history of Pennsylvania?*

1630.

CHAPTER X.

NORTH CAROLINA.*

Of what does Chapter X. treat?

a. 1585, 6, 7. See p. 38.

1. *What is said of the early attempts to settle North Carolina?*

b. 1630.

2. *Of the grant to Sir Robert Heath?*

3. *Why declared void?*

4. *When and by whom was Carolina first explored and settled?*

c. The particular year is not known.

5. *When and to whom was the second grant made, and what government was established?*

d. April 8.

1665.

e. July 19.

6. *What extension was given to the grant?*

7. *What rights and powers were secured by the charter?*

1. [1]The early attempts[a] of the English, under Sir Walter Raleigh, to form a settlement on the coast of North Carolina, have already been mentioned.[a] [2]About forty years later, the king of England granted[b] to Sir Robert Heath a large tract of country lying between the 30th and 36th degrees of north latitude, which was erected into a province by the name of Carolina. [3]No settlements, however, were made under the grant, which, on that account, was afterwards declared void.

2. [4]Between 1640 and 1650 exploring parties from Virginia penetrated into Carolina, and from the same source came the first emigrants, who soon after settled[c] near the mouth of the Chowan,† on the northern shore of Albemarle Sound. [5]In 1663 the province of Carolina was granted[d] to Lord Clarendon and seven others, and in the same year a government under William Drummond was established over the little settlement on the Chowan, which, in honor of the Duke of Albemarle, one of the proprietors, was called the *Albemarle County Colony.*

3. [6]Two years later, the proprietors having learned that the settlement was not within the limits of their charter, the grant was extended,[e] so as to embrace the half of Florida on the south, and, on the north, all within the present limits of North Carolina, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. [7]The charter secured religious freedom to the people, and a voice in the legis-

* NORTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, lying next south of Virginia contains an area of nearly 50,000 square miles. Along the whole coast is a narrow ridge of sand, separated from the mainland in some places by narrow, and in other places by broad sounds and bays. The country for more than sixty miles from the coast is a low sandy plain, with many swamps and marshes and inlets from the sea. The natural growth of this region is almost universally pitch pine. Above the falls of the rivers the country becomes uneven, and the soil more fertile. In the western part of the state is an elevated table land, and some high ranges of the Alleghanies. *Black Mountain*, the highest point in the United States east of the Rocky Mountains, is 6,476 feet high. The gold region of North Carolina lies on both sides of the Blue Ridge, in the S. Western part of the state.

† The *Chowan* River, formed by the union of Nottoway, Meherrin, and Blackwater Rivers, which rise and run chiefly in Virginia, flows into Albemarle Sound, a little north of the mouth of the Roanoke. The first settlements were on the N.E side of the Chowan near the present village of Edenton.

lation of the colony; but granted to the corporation of eight, an extent of powers and privileges, that made it evident that the formation of an empire was contemplated. **1665.**

4. [1]During the same year that the grant to Clarendon was extended, another colony was firmly established within the present limits of North Carolina. In 1660 or 1661, a band of adventurers from New England entered Cape Fear River,* purchased a tract of land from the Indians, and, a few miles below Wilmington,† on Old Town Creek,‡ formed a settlement. The colony did not prosper. The Indians became hostile, and before the autumn of 1663, the settlement was abandoned. Two years later a number of planters from Barbadoes§ formed a permanent settlement near the neglected site of the New England colony, and a county named *Clarendon* was established, with the same constitution and powers that had been granted to Albemarle. [2]Sir John Yeamans, the choice of the people, ruled the colony with prudence and affection.

1. *Give an account of the establishment of the Clarendon colony.*

2. *Who became governor?*

5. [3]As the proprietors of Carolina anticipated the rapid growth of a great and powerful people within the limits of their extensive and fertile territory, they thought proper to establish a permanent form of government, commensurate, in dignity, with the vastness of their expectations. [4]The task of framing the constitution was assigned to the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the number, who chose the celebrated philosopher, John Locke, as his friend and adviser in the work of legislation.

3. *What did the proprietors anticipate, and what did they think proper to do?*

4. *Who were the framers of the constitution?*

---

* *Cape Fear* River, in North Carolina, is formed by the union of Haw and Deep Rivers, about 125 miles N.W. from Wilmington. It enters the Atlantic by two channels, one on each side of Smith's Island, twenty and twenty-five miles below Wilmington. (See the Map.)

† *Wilmington*, the principal seaport in North Carolina, is situated on the east side of Cape Fear River, twenty-five miles from the ocean, by way of Cape Fear, and 150 miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map.)

‡ *Old Town Creek* is a small stream that enters Cape Fear River from the W. eight miles below Wilmington. (Map.)

§ *Barbadoes* is one of the Caribbee or Windward Islands, and the most eastern of the West Indies. It is twenty miles long, and contains an area of about 150 square miles. The island was granted by James I. to the Earl of Marlborough in 1624

VIC. OF WILMINGTON, N. C.

1669. 6. [1]The object of the proprietors, as expressed[a] by themselves, was "to make the government of Carolina agree, as nearly as possible, to the monarchy of which it was a part; and to avoid erecting a numerous democracy." [2]A constitution of one hundred and twenty articles, called the "Fundamental Constitutions," was adopted, establishing a government to be administered by lords and noblemen; connecting political power with hereditary wealth; and placing nearly every office in the government beyond the reach of the people.

a. Constitutions signed March 11.

1. *What was the object of the proprietors?*

2. *What was the nature of the constitution adopted?*

1670. 7. [3]The attempt to establish the new form of government proved ineffectual. The former plain and simple laws were suited to the circumstances of the people, and the magnificent model of government, with its appendages of royalty, contrasted too ludicrously with the sparse population, and rude cabins of Carolina. After a contest of little more than twenty years, the constitution, which was never in effectual operation, and which had proved to be a source of perpetual discord, was abrogated[b] by the proprietors themselves.

3. *What is said of the attempt to establish the constitution—and what was the result?*

b. 1693.

1671. 8. [4]The Clarendon county colony had never been very numerous, and the barrenness of the soil in its vicinity, offered little promise of reward to new adventurers. In 1671 Sir John Yeamans, the governor, was transferred[c] from the colony to the charge of another which had recently been established[d] in South Carolina. Numerous removals to the southward greatly reduced the numbers of the inhabitants, and nearly the whole country embraced within the limits of the Clarendon colony was a second time surrendered to the aborigines before the year 1690.

c. Dec.

4. *What circumstances retarded, and finally defeated the settlement of Clarendon?*

d. See p. 160.

5. *What is said of dissensions in the Albemarle colony?*

1676. 9. [5]Domestic dissensions long retarded the prosperity of the Albemarle or northern colony. Disorder arose from the attempts of the governors to administer the government according to the constitution of the proprietors; excessive taxation, and restrictions upon the commerce of the colony, occasioned much discontent; while numerous refugees from Virginia, the actors in Bacon's rebellion, friends of popular liberty, being kindly sheltered in Carolina, gave encouragement to the people to resist oppression.

677. Dec. 10. [6]The very year after the suppression of Bacon's

rebellion in Virginia, a revolt occurred in Carolina, occasioned by an attempt to enforce the revenue laws against a vessel from New England. The people took arms in support of a smuggler, and imprisoned the president of the colony and six members of his council. John Culpepper, who had recently fled from South Carolina, was the leader in the insurrection. [1]During several years, officers chosen by the people administered the government, and tranquillity was for a time restored. The inhabitants were restless and turbulent under a government imposed on them from abroad, but firm and tranquil when left to take care of themselves. **1677.**

6. Of the revolt in Carolina, and of its leader?

1. How was tranquillity restored and preserved?

11. [2]In 1683 Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, arrived as governor of the province. Being exceedingly avaricious, he not only plundered the colonists, but cheated his proprietary associates. He valued his office only as the means of gaining wealth, and in the pursuit of his favorite object, whether as judge, or executive, he was ever open to bribery and corruption. [3]An historian of North Carolina remarks, that "the dark shades of his character were not relieved by a single ray of virtue." [4]The patience of the inhabitants being exhausted after nearly six years of oppression, they seized their governor with the design of sending him to England; but, at his own request, he was tried by the assembly, which banished him from the colony. 1683. 1688. 1689.

2. When did Sothel become governor, and what was his character?

3. What is remarked of him?

4. What is said of his arrest and trial?

12. [5]Ludwell, the next governor, redressed the frauds, public and private, which Sothel had committed, and restored order to the colony. [6]In 1695 Sir John Archdale, another of the proprietors, a man of much sagacity and exemplary conduct, arrived as governor of both the Carolinas. [7]In 1698 the first settlements were made on Pamlico or Tar* River. The Pamlico Indians in that vicinity had been nearly destroyed, two years previous by a pestilential fever; while another numerous tribe had been greatly reduced by the arms of a more powerful nation.

5. What is said of the administration of Ludwell?

Aug.

6. Of the arrival and character of Archdale?

7. Of the first settlements on Pamlico River, and what prepared the way for them?

* *Tar* River, in the eastern part of North Carolina, flows S E., and enters Pamlico Sound. It is the principal river next south of the Roanoke. It expands into a wide estuary a short distance below the village of Washington, from which place to Pamlico Sound, a distance of forty miles, it is called *Pamlico* River.

1707. 13. [1]The want of harmony, which generally prevailed between the proprietors and the people, did not check the increase of population. [2]In 1707 a company of French Protestants, who had previously settled in Virginia, removed to Carolina. Two years later, they were followed by a hundred German families from the Rhine;* who had been driven in poverty, from their homes, by the devastations of war, and religious persecution. [3]The proprietors assigned to each family two hundred and fifty acres of land; and generous contributions in England furnished them with provisions and implements of husbandry, sufficient for their immediate wants.

1. *What is said of the increase of population?*

2. *Of the arrival of emigrants?*

1709.

3. *What provision was made for the emigrants?*

4. *What changes had fallen upon the Indian tribes since the time of Sir Walter Raleigh?*

14. [4]A great change had fallen upon the numerous Indian tribes on the seacoast, since the time of Sir Walter Raleigh's attempted settlements. One tribe which could then bring three thousand bowmen into the field, was now reduced to fifteen men; another had entirely disappeared; and, of the whole, but a remnant remained. After having sold most of their lands, their reservations had been encroached upon;—strong drink had degraded the Indians, and crafty traders had impoverished them; and they had passed away before the march of civilization, like snow beneath a vertical sun.

5. *What is said of the Tuscaroras and the Corees?*

15. [5]The Tuscaroras and the Corees, being farther inland, had held little intercourse with the whites; but they had observed, with jealousy and fear, their growing power, and the rapid advance of their settlements, and with Indian secrecy they now plotted the extermination of the strangers. [6]A surveyor, who was found upon their lands with his chain and compass was the first victim.[a] Leaving their fire-arms, to avoid suspicion, in small parties, acting in concert, they approached the scattered settlements along Roanoke† River and Pamlico Sound; and in one night,[b] one hundred and thirty persons fell by the hatchet.

1711.

6. *Give an account of the commencement of hostilities.*

a. Sept.

b. Oct. 2.

7. *Of the services of Col. Barnwell against the Indians.*

16. [7]Colonel Barnwell, with a considerable body of

* The *Rhine*, one of the most important rivers in Europe, rises in Switzerland, passes through Lake Constance, and after flowing N. and N.W. through Germany it turns to the west, and, through several channels, enters the North Sea or German Ocean, between Holland and Belgium.

† *Roanoke* River, formed by the junction of Staunton and Dan Rivers, near the south boundary of Virginia, flows S.E. through the northeastern part of North Carolina, and enters the head of Albemarle Sound.

friendly Cherokees, Creeks, and Catawbas, was sent from South Carolina to the relief of the settlers, and having defeated the enemy in different actions, he pursued them to their fortified town,* which capitulated, and the Indians were allowed to escape. [1]But in a few days the treaty was broken on both sides, and the Indians renewed hostilities. At length Colonel Moore, of South Carolina, arrived,[a] with forty white men and eight hundred friendly Indians: and in 1713 the Tuscaroras were besieged in their fort,† and eight hundred taken prisoners.[b] At last the hostile part of the tribe migrated north, and, joining their kindred in New York, became the sixth nation of the Iroquois confederacy. In 1715 peace was concluded[c] with the Corees.

1712.

1. *Of the farther progress, and the end of the war.*

a. Dec. 1713.

b. April 5.

1715.

c. Feb.

17. [2]In 1729, the two Carolinas, which had hitherto been under the superintendence of the same board of proprietors, were finally separated;[d] and royal governments, entirely unconnected, were established[e] over them. [3]From this time, until the period immediately preceding the Revolution, few events occurred to disturb the peace and increasing prosperity of North Carolina. In 1744 public attention was turned to the defence of the seacoast, on account of the commencement of hostilities between England and Spain. About the time of the commencement of the French and Indian war, the colony received large accessions to its numbers, by emigrants from Ireland and Scotland, and thus the settlements were extended into the interior, where the soil was far more fertile than the lands previously occupied.

1729.

2. *What occurred in 1729?*

d. July.

e. Sept.

3. *Give an account of the condition and progress of North Carolina from this time till the revolution.*

1754.

* This place was near the River Neuse, a short distance above Edenton, in Craven County.

† This place was in Greene County, on *Cotentnea* (or Cotechney) Creek, a short distance above its entrance into the River Neuse.

1670.

CHAPTER XI.

SOUTH CAROLINA.*

Of what does Chapter XI. treat?

1. *What is said of the charter to Clarendon?*

a. See p. 154.

1670.

2. *Give an account of the planting of the first colony in South Carolina.*

1. [1]The charter granted to Lord Clarendon and others, in 1663, embraced, as has been stated,[a] a large extent of territory, reaching from Virginia to Florida. [2]After the establishment of a colony in the northern part of their province, the proprietors, early in 1670, fitted out several ships, with emigrants, for planting a southern colony, under the direction of William Sayle, who had previously explored the coast. The ships which bore the emigrants entered the harbor of Port Royal, near Beaufort,† whence, after a short delay, they sailed into Ashley‡ River, on the south side of which the settlement of Old Charleston was commenced. The colony, in honor of Sir George Carteret, one of the proprietors, was called the CARTERET COUNTY COLONY.

1671.

3. *What occurred in 1671?*

b. Dec.

4. *How was the colony supplied with laborers?*

5. *What is said of the government of the colony?*

c. 1671–2.

2. [3]Early in 1671 Governor Sayle sunk under the diseases of a sickly climate, and the council appointed Joseph West to succeed him, until they should learn the will of the proprietors. In a few months, Sir John Yeamans, then governor of Clarendon, was appointed[b] governor of the southern colony. [4]From Barbadoes he brought a number of African slaves, and South Carolina was, from the first, essentially, a planting state, with slave labor. [5]Representative government was early established[c] by the people, but the attempt to carry out the plan of government formed by the proprietors proved ineffectual.

---

* SOUTH CAROLINA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of nearly 33,000 square miles. The seacoast is bordered with a chain of fertile islands. *The Low Country*, extending from eighty to 100 miles from the coast, is covered with forests of pitch pine, called pine barrens, interspersed with marshes and swamps, which form excellent rice plantations. Beyond this, extending fifty or sixty miles in width, is the *Middle Country*, composed of numerous ridges of sand hills, presenting an appearance which has been compared to the waves of the sea suddenly arrested in their course. Beyond these sand hills commences the *Upper Country*, which is a beautiful and healthy, and generally fertile region, about 800 feet above the level of the sea. The Blue Ridge, a branch of the Alleghanies, passes along the N. Western boundary of the state.

† *Beaufort*, in South Carolina, is situated on Port Royal Island, on the W. bank of Port Royal River, a narrow branch of the ocean. It is sixteen miles from the sea, and about thirty-six miles, in a direct line, N.E. from Savannah. (See Map, p. 35.)

‡ *Ashley* River rises about thirty miles N.W. from Cnarleston, and, passing along the west side of the city, enters Charleston Harbor seven miles from the ocean. (See Map next page.)

1671.

3. [1]Several circumstances contributed to promote the early settlement of South Carolina. A long and bloody war between two neighboring Indian tribes, and a fatal epidemic which had recently prevailed, had opened the way for the more peaceful occupation of the country by the English. The recent conquest of New Netherlands induced many of the Dutch to emigrate, and several ship loads of them were conveyed[a] to Carolina, by the proprietors, free of expense. Lands were assigned them west of the Ashley River, where they formed a settlement, which was called Jamestown. The inhabitants soon spread themselves through the country, and in process of time the town was deserted. Their prosperity induced many of their countrymen from Holland to follow them. A few years later a company of French Protestants, refugees from their own country, were sent[b] over by the king of England.

1. *What circumstances favored the settlement and growth of South Carolina?*

a. 1671.

b. 1679.

4. [2]The pleasant location of "Oyster Point," between the rivers Ashley and Cooper,* had early attracted the attention of the settlers, and had gained a few inhabitants; and in 1680 the foundation of a new town was laid there, which was called Charleston.† It was immediately declared the capital of the province, and during the first year thirty dwellings were erected. [3]In the same year the colony was involved in difficulties with the Indians. Straggling parties of the Westoes began to plunder the plantations, and several Indians were shot by the planters. War immediately broke out; a price was fixed on Indian prisoners; and

2. *Give an account of the settlement and progress of Charleston.*

1680.

3. *Of the first war with the Indians, and its termination.*

---

* *Cooper* River rises about thirty-five miles N.E. from Charleston, and passing along the East side of the city, unites with Ashley River, to form Charleston Harbor. Wando River, a short but broad stream, enters the Cooper from the east, four miles above the city. (See Map.)

† *Charleston*, a city and seaport of S. Carolina, is situated on a peninsula formed by the union of Ashley and Cooper Rivers, seven miles from the ocean. It is only about seven feet above high tide; and parts of the city have been overflowed when the wind and tide have combined to raise the waters. The harbor, below the city, is about two miles in width, and seven in length, across the mouth of which is a sand bar, having four passages, the deepest of which, near Sullivan's Island, has seventeen feet of water, at high tide. During the summer months the city is more healthy than the surrounding country.

VICINITY OF CHARLESTON.

1680. many of them were sent to the West Indies, and sold for slaves. The following year[a] peace was concluded, and commissioners were appointed to decide all complaints between the contending parties.

a. 1681.

1684. 1. *What occurred at Port Royal?*

5. [1]In 1684 a few families of Scotch emigrants settled at Port Royal; but two years later, the Spaniards of St. Augustine, claiming the territory, invaded the settlement, and laid it waste.

1686. b. 1685. 2. *What induced the Huguenots to remove to America?* 3. *Where did they settle?* 4. *How were they at first regarded, and how treated by the English?*

[2]About this time the revocation[b] of the edict of Nantes,* induced a large number of French Protestants, generally called Huguenots, to leave their country, and seek an asylum in America. [3]A few settled in New England; others in New York; but South Carolina became their chief resort. [4]Although they had been induced, by the proprietors, to believe that the full rights of citizenship would be extended to them here, yet they were long viewed with jealousy and distrust by the English settlers, who were desirous of driving them from the country, by enforcing against them the laws of England respecting aliens.

c. 1686–90. 5. *What events occurred during Gov. Colleton's administration?*

6 [5]The administration[c] of Governor Colleton was signalized by a continued series of disputes with the people, who, like the settlers in North Carolina, refused to submit to the form of government established by the proprietors. An attempt of the governor to collect the rents claimed by the proprietors, finally drove the people to open rebellion. They forcibly took possession of the public records, held assemblies in opposition to the governor, and the authority of the proprietors, and imprisoned the secretary of the province At length Colleton, pretending danger from Indians or Spaniards, called out the militia, and proclaimed the province under martial law. This only exasperated the people the more, and Colleton was finally impeached by the assembly, and banished from the province.

1690. 6. *Give an account of Sothel's administration.* d. See p. 157.

7. [6]During these commotions, Seth Sothel, who had previously been banished[d] from North Carolina, arrived in the province, and assumed the government, with

* *Nantes* is a large commercial city in the west of France, on the N. side of the River Loire, thirty miles from its mouth. It was in this place that Henry IV. promulgated the famous edict in 1598, in favor of the Protestants, granting them the free exercise of their religion. In 1685 this edict *was revoked* by Louis XIV.;—a violent persecution of the Protestants followed, and thousands of them fled from the kingdom

the consent of the people. But his avarice led him to trample upon every restraint of justice and equity; and after two years of tyranny and misrule, he likewise was deposed, and banished by the people. [1]Philip Ludwell, for some time governor of North Carolina, was then sent to the southern province, to re-establish the authority of the proprietors. But the old disputes revived, and after a brief, but turbulent administration, he gladly withdrew into Virginia. **1690.**

1. *Of Ludwell's administration.* 1692.

8. [2]In 1693, one cause of discontent with the people was removed by the proprietors; who abolished the "Fundamental Constitution," and returned to a more simple and more republican form of government. [3]But contentions and disputes still continuing, John Archdale, who was a Quaker, and proprietor, came over in 1695; and by a wise and equitable administration, did much to allay private animosities, and remove the causes of civil discord. [4]Matters of general moment were settled to the satisfaction of all, excepting the French refugees; and such was the antipathy of the English settlers against these peaceable, but unfortunate people, that Governor Archdale found it necessary to exclude the latter from all concern in the legislature. 1693.

2. *What occurred in 1693?*

3. *Why did Archdale come over, and what is said of his administration?*

4. *What is said of the French refugees?*

9. [5]Fortunately for the peace of the colony, soon after the return of Archdale, all difficulties with the Huguenots were amicably settled. Their quiet and inoffensive behavior, and their zeal for the success of the colony, had gradually removed the national antipathies; and the general assembly at length admitted[a] them to all the rights of citizens and freemen. The French and English Protestants of Carolina have ever since lived together in harmony and peace. [6]In 1702, immediately after the declaration[b] of war, by England, against France and Spain, Governor Moore proposed to the assembly of Carolina an expedition against the Spanish settlement of St. Augustine, in Florida. [7]The more considerate opposed the project, but a majority being in favor of it, a sum of about nine thousand dollars was voted for the war, and 1200 men were raised, of whom half were Indians. 1696.

5. *Give an account of the termination of the difficulties with them.*

1697.

a. March.

1702.

6. *What warlike measure was proposed by the governor in 1702?*

b. May.

7. *How was it received?*

8. *Give an account of the expedition against St. Augustine.*

10. [8]While Colonel Daniel marched against St. Augustine by land, the governor proceeded with the

1702. main body by sea, and blocked up the harbor. The Spaniards, taking with them all their most valuable effects, and a large supply of provisions, retired to their castle. As nothing could be effected against it, for the want of heavy artillery, Daniel was despatched to Jamaica,* for cannon, mortars, &c. During his absence, two Spanish ships appeared off the harbor; when Governor Moore, abandoning his ships, made a hasty retreat into Carolina. Colonel Daniel, on his return, standing in for the harbor, made a narrow escape from the enemy.

1. What debt was incurred, and how defrayed?

11. [1]The hasty retreat of the governor was severely censured by the people of Carolina. This enterprise loaded the colony with a debt of more than 26,000 dollars, for the payment of which bills of credit were

1703. issued; the first paper money used in Carolina. [2]An

2. Give an account of the war with the Apalachians.

expedition which was soon after undertaken[a] against the Apalachian Indians, who were in alliance with the Spaniards, proved more successful. The Indian towns between the rivers Altamaha† and Savannah‡ were laid in ashes; several hundred Indians were taken

1704. prisoners; and the whole province of Apalachia was obliged to submit to the English government.

a. Dec.

3. What had long been a favorite object with the proprietors, and how far did they succeed?

12. [3]The establishment of the Church of England in Carolina, had long been a favorite object with several of the proprietors, and during the administration of Sir Nathaniel Johnson, who succeeded[b] Governor Moore, their designs were fully carried out; and not only was the Episcopal form of worship established, as the religion of the province, but all dissenters were excluded from the colonial legislature. [4]The dissenters then carried their cause before the English parliament, which declared that the acts complained of were repugnant to the laws of England, and contrary to the charter of the proprietors. [5]Soon after, the co-

b. 1704.

4. What did Parliament decide in this matter?

5. What change was then made?

1706.

* *Jamaica*, one of the West India Islands, is 100 miles S. from Cuba, and 800 S.E. from St. Augustine. It is of an oval form, and is about 150 miles long.

† The *Altamaha*, a large and navigable river of Georgia, is formed by the union of the Oconee and the Ocmulgee, after which it flows S.E., upwards of 100 miles, and enters the Atlantic by several outlets, sixty miles S.W. from Savannah. Milledgeville, the capital of the state, is on the Oconee, the northern branch. (See Map, p. 168.)

‡ The *Savannah* River has its head branches in N. Carolina, and, running a S. East ern course, forms the boundary between S. Carolina and Georgia. The largest vessels pass up the river fourteen miles, and steamboats to Augusta, 120 miles, in a direct line from the mouth of the river, and more than 300 by the river's course.

onial assembly of Carolina repealed[a] the laws which disfranchised a portion of the people; but the Church of England remained the established religion of the province until the Revolution. **1706.** a. Nov.

13. [1]From these domestic troubles, a threatened invasion of the province turned the attention of the people towards their common defence against foreign enemies. [2]Queen Anne's war still continued; and Spain, considering Carolina as a part of Florida, determined to assert her right by force of arms. [3]In 1706, a French and Spanish squadron from Havanna appeared before Charleston; but the inhabitants, headed by the governor and Colonel Rhett, assembled in great numbers for the defence of the city. The enemy landed in several places, but were repulsed with loss. One of the French ships was taken, and the invasion, at first so alarming, was repelled with little loss, and little expense to the colony.

1. *What next engaged the attention of the people?*
2. *Why were the Spaniards hostile?*
3. *What events occurred in 1706?*

14. [4]In 1715 a general Indian war broke out, headed by the Yamassees, and involving all the Indian tribes from Cape Fear River to the Alabama. The Yamassees had previously shown great friendship to the English; and the war commenced[b] before the latter were aware of their danger. The frontier settlements were desolated; Port Royal was abandoned; Charleston itself was in danger; and the colony seemed near its ruin. [5]But Governor Craven, with nearly the entire force of the colony, advanced against the enemy, drove their straggling parties before him, and on the banks of the Salkehatchie,* encountered[c] their main body in camp, and, after a bloody battle, gained a complete victory. At length the Yamassees, being driven from their territory, retired to Florida, where they were kindly received by the Spaniards.

1715.

4. *Give an account of the Indian war of 1715.*

b. April 28.

5. *Of the services of Gov. Craven, and the close of the war.*

c. May

15. [6]The war with the Yamassees was followed, in 1719, by a domestic revolution in Carolina. [7]As the proprietors refused to pay any portion of the debt incurred by the war, and likewise enforced their land claims with severity, the colonists began to look to-

6. *By what was this war followed?*
7. *What were the causes of discontent?*

* *Salkehatchie* is the name given to the upper portion of the Cambahee River, (which see, Map, p. 35). Its course is S.E., and it is from twenty to thirty miles E. from the Savannah River.

1719. wards the crown for assistance and protection. [1]After much controversy and difficulty with the proprietors, the assembly and the people openly rebelled against their authority, and proclaimed[a] James Moore governor of the province, in the name of the king. The agent of Carolina obtained, in England, a hearing from the lords of the regency, who decided that the proprietors had forfeited their charter.

1. *What was the result of the controversy?*

a. Dec. 1720.

16. [2]While measures were taken for its abrogation, Francis Nicholson, who had previously exercised the office of governor in New York, in Maryland, in Virginia, and in Nova Scotia; now received[b] a royal commission as governor of Carolina; and, early in the following year,[c] arrived in the province. [3]The controversy with the proprietors was finally adjusted in 1729, when seven, out of the eight, sold to the king, for less than 80,000 dollars, their claims to the soil and rents in both Carolinas; and all assigned to him the powers of government granted them by their charter. [4]Both Carolinas then became royal governments, under which they remained until the Revolution.

2. *What is said of Nicholson?*

b. Sept.

c. 1721.

3. *What arrangement was made between the proprietors and the king?*

4. *What then became the situation of the Carolinas?*

CHAPTER XII.

GEORGIA.*

Of what does Chapter XII. treat?

d. 1729.

1. [5]At the time of the surrender[d] of the Carolina charter to the crown, the country southwest of the Savannah was a wilderness, occupied by savage tribes, and claimed by Spain as a part of Florida, and by England as a part of Carolina. [6]Happily for the claims of the latter, and the security of Carolina, in 1732 a number of persons in England, influenced by

5. *What was the situation of Georgia at the time of the surrender of the Carolina charter?*

6. *What project was formed in 1732?*

* GEORGIA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 60,000 square miles. The entire coast, to the distance of seven or eight miles, is intersected by numerous inlets, communicating with each other, and navigable for small vessels. The islands thus formed consist mostly of salt marshes, which produce sea island cotton of a superior quality. The coast on the mainland, to the distance of several miles, is mostly a salt marsh; beyond which are the pine barrens, and the ridges of sand hills similar to those of South Carolina. The *Upper Country* is an extensive table land, with a black and fertile soil. Near the boundary of Tennessee and Carolina, on the north the country becomes mountainous

motives of patriotism and humanity, formed the project of planting a colony in the disputed territory. **1732.**

2. [1]James Oglethorpe, a member of the British parliament; a soldier and a loyalist, but a friend of the unfortunate; first conceived the idea of opening, for the poor of his own country, and for persecuted Protestants of all nations, an asylum in America, where former poverty would be no reproach, and where all might worship without fear of persecution. [2]The benevolent enterprise met with favor from the king, who granted,[a] for twenty-one years, to a corporation, "In trust for the poor," the country between the Savannah and the Altamaha, and westward to the Pacific Ocean. The new province was named *Georgia*.

1. *What is said of Oglethorpe and his benevolent designs?*

2. *Of the first grant or charter of Georgia*

a. June 9.

3. [3]In November of the same year, Oglethorpe, with nearly one hundred and twenty emigrants, embarked[b] for America; and after touching[c] at Charleston and Port Royal, on the twelfth of February landed at Savannah.* On Yamacraw bluff, a settlement was immediately commenced, and the town, after the Indian name of the river, was called Savannah. [4]After completing a slight fortification for the defence of the settlers, Oglethorpe invited the neighboring Indian chiefs to meet him at Savannah, in order to treat with them for their lands, and establish relations of friendship.

b. Nov. 23.

3. *Give an account of the settlement of Savannah.*

1733.

c. Jan. 24.

4. *How did Oglethorpe begin his intercourse with the Indians?*

4. [5]In June the chiefs of the Creek nation assembled;—kind feelings prevailed; and the English were cordially welcomed to the country. An aged warrior presented several bundles of skins, saying that, although the Indians were poor, they gave, with a good heart, such things as they possessed. Another chief presented the skin of a buffalo, painted, on the inside, with the head and feathers of an eagle. He said the English were as swift as the eagle, and as strong as the buffalo; for

5. *Give an account of this first meeting with the Indians.*

VICINITY OF SAVANNAH.

* *Savannah*, now the largest city, and the principal seaport of Georgia, is situated on the S.W bank of the Savannah River, on a sandy plain forty feet above the level of the tide, and seventeen miles from the sea. The city is regularly laid out in the form of a parallelogram, with streets crossing each other at right angles. Vessels requiring fourteen feet of water come up to the wharves of the city, and larger vessels to *Five Fathom Hole*, three miles below the city. (See Map.)

1733. they flew over vast seas; and were so powerful, that nothing could withstand them. He reminded them that the feathers of the eagle were soft, and signified love; that the skin of the buffalo was warm, and signified protection; and therefore he hoped that the English would love and protect the little families of the Indians.

1. *What is said of the character of the early settlers?*

5. [1]The settlers rapidly increased in numbers, but as most of those who first came over, were not only poor, but unaccustomed to habits of industry, they were poorly qualified to encounter the toil and hardships to which their situation exposed them.

2. *What other emigrants arrived?*

[2]The liberality of the trustees then invited emigrants of more enterprising habits; and large numbers of Swiss, Germans, and Scotch, accepted their proposals.

3. *What regulations of the trustees are mentioned?*

[3]The regulations of the trustees at first forbade the use of negroes,—prohibited the importation of rum,—and interdicted all trade with the Indians, without a special license. Slavery was declared to be not only immoral, but contrary to the laws of England.

1736.

a. Feb. 16.

4. *What addition was made to the colony in 1736?*

5. *What was done in anticipation of warbetween England and Spain?*

6. [4]Early in 1736, Oglethorpe, who had previously visited England, returned[a] to Georgia, with a new company of three hundred emigrants. [5]In anticipation of war between England and Spain, he fortified his colony, by erecting forts at Augusta,* Darien,† Frederica,‡ on Cumberland Island§ near the mouth of the St. Mary's,‖ and even as far as the St. John's, claiming for the English, all the territory north of that river. [6]But the Spanish authorities of St. Augustine com-

* *Augusta* City is situated on the S.W. side of the Savannah River, 120 miles N.W. from Savannah City. It is at the head of steamboat navigation on the Savannah, is surrounded by a rich country, and has an active trade.

† *Darien* is situated on a high sandy bluff, on the north and principal channel of the Altamaha, twelve miles from the bar near its mouth. (See Map.)

VICINITY OF FREDERICA.

‡ *Frederica* is situated on the west side of St. Simon's Island, below the principal mouth of the Altamaha, and on one of its navigable channels. The fort, mentioned above, was constructed of *tabby*, a mixture of water and lime, with shells or gravel, forming a hard rocky mass when dry. The ruins of the fort may still be seen.

§ *Cumberland* Island lies opposite the coast, at the southeastern extremity of Georgia. It is fifteen miles in length, and from one to four in width. The fort was on the southern point, and commanded the entrance to St. Mary's River.

‖ *St. Mary's River*, forming part of the boundary between Georgia and Florida, enters the Atlantic, between Cumberland Island on the north, and Amelia Island on the south.

plained of the near approach of the English; and their commissioners, sent to confer with Oglethorpe, demanded the evacuation of the country, as far north as St. Helena Sound;* and, in case of refusal, threatened hostilities. [1]The fortress at the mouth of the St. John's was abandoned; but that near the mouth of the St. Mary's was retained; and this river afterwards became the southern boundary of Georgia. **1736.**

6. What claims did the Spanish authorities urge?

1. How far were their claims admitted?

7. [2]The celebrated John Wesley, founder of the Methodist church, had returned with Oglethorpe, with the charitable design of rendering Georgia a religious colony, and of converting the Indians. [3]Having become unpopular by his zeal and imprudence, he was indicted for exercising unwarranted ecclesiastical authority; and, after a residence of two years in the colony, he returned to England, where he was long distinguished for his piety and usefulness. [4]Soon after his return the Rev. George Whitefield, another and more distinguished Methodist, visited[a] Georgia, with the design of establishing an orphan asylum on lands obtained from the trustees for that purpose. The plan but partially succeeded during his lifetime, and was abandoned after his death.[b]

2. What is said of Wesley's visit, and its object?

3. What rendered him unpopular, and caused his return?

4. What is said of the visit of Whitefield?

a. May, 1738.

b. In 1770.

8. [5]To hasten the preparations for the impending contest with Spain, Oglethorpe again visited[c] England; where he received[d] a commission as brigadier-general; with a command extending over South Carolina; and, after an absence of more than a year and a half, returned[e] to Georgia, bringing with him a regiment of 600 men, for the defence of the southern frontiers. [6]In the latter part of 1739, England declared[f] war against Spain; and Oglethorpe immediately planned an expedition against St. Augustine. In May of the following year,[g] he entered Florida with a select force of four hundred men from his regiment, some Carolina troops, and a large body of friendly Indians.

5. What preparations did Oglethorpe make for war?

c. Winter of 1736–37.

1737.

d. Sept. 7.

e. Oct.

6. When was war declared, and what were the first measures of Oglethorpe?

f. Nov. 3.

g. 1740.

9. [7]A Spanish fort, twenty-five miles from St. Augustine, surrendered after a short resistance;—another, within two miles, was abandoned; but a summons for the surrender of the town was answered by a bold de-

7. Relate the circumstances attending the expedition against St. Augustine.

* *St. Helena Sound* is the entrance to the Combahee River. It is north of St. Helena Island, and about fifty miles N.E. from Savannah. (see Map, p. 33.)

1740. fiance. For a time the Spaniards were cut off from all supplies, by ships stationed at the entrance of the harbor; but at length several Spanish galleys eluded the vigilance of the blockading squadron, and brought a reenforcement and supplies to the garrison. All hopes of speedily reducing the place were now lost;—sickness began to prevail among the troops; and Oglethorpe, with sorrow and regret, returned[a] to Georgia.

a. July.

1742.

1. *Give an account of the Spanish invasion of Georgia.*

10. [1]Two years later, the Spaniards, in return, made preparations for an invasion of Georgia. In July, a fleet of thirty-six sail from Havanna and St. Augustine, bearing more than three thousand troops, entered the harbor of St. Simon's;* landed[b] on the west side of the island, a little above the town of the same name; and erected a battery of twenty guns. [2]General Oglethorpe, who was then on the island with a force of less than eight hundred men, exclusive of Indians, withdrew to Frederica; anxiously awaiting an expected reinforcement from Carolina. A party of the enemy, having advanced within two miles of the town, was driven back with loss; another party of three hundred, coming to their assistance, was ambuscaded,[c] and two thirds of the number were slain or taken prisoners.

b. July 16.

2. *Of the movements of Oglethorpe, and his success against the enemy.*

c. July 18.

3. *What prevented an attack on the Spanish camp?*

4. *What was Oglethorpe's plan for deceiving the enemy?*

11. [3]Oglethorpe next resolved to attack, by night, one of the Spanish camps; but a French soldier deserted, and gave the alarm, and the design was defeated. [4]Apprehensive that the enemy would now discover his weakness, he devised an expedient for destroying the credit of any information that might be given. He wrote a letter to the deserter, requesting that he would urge the Spaniards to an immediate attack, or, if he should not succeed in this, that he would induce them to remain on the island three days longer, for in that time several British ships, and a reinforcement, were expected from Carolina. He also dropped some hints of an expected attack on St. Augustine by a British fleet. This letter he bribed a

* *St. Simon's* Island lies south of the principal channel of the Altamaha. It is twelve miles in length, and from two to five in width. The harbor of St. Simon's is at the southern point of the island, before the town of the same name, and eight miles below Frederica. At St. Simon's there was also a small fort. The northern part of the island is separated from the mainland by a small creek, and is called *Little St. Simon's*. See Map, p. 168.

Spanish prisoner to deliver to the deserter, but, as was expected, it was given to the Spanish commander. **1742.**

12. [1]The deserter was immediately arrested as a spy, but the letter sorely perplexed the Spanish officers, some of whom believed it was intended as a deception, while others, regarding the circumstances mentioned in it as highly probable, and fearing for the safety of St. Augustine, advised an immediate return of the expedition. [2]Fortunately, while they were consulting, there appeared, at some distance on the coast, three small vessels, which were regarded as a part of the British fleet mentioned in the letter. [3]It was now determined to attack Oglethorpe at Frederica, before the expected reinforcement should arrive.

1. *What was the result of this plan?*

2. *What circumstance greatly favored its success?*

3. *What did the Spaniards resolve upon?*

13. [4]While advancing for this purpose, they fell into an ambuscade,[a] at a place since called "Bloody Marsh," where they were so warmly received that they retreated with precipitation,—abandoned their works, and hastily retired to their shipping; leaving a quantity of guns and ammunition behind them. [5]On their way south they made an attack[b] on Fort William,* but were repulsed; and two galleys were disabled and abandoned. [6]The Spaniards were deeply mortified at the result of the expedition; and the commander of the troops, on his return to Havanna, was tried by a court-martial, and, in disgrace, dismissed from the service.

4. *What was the result of their intended attack?*

a. July 25.

5. *What occurred on their return?*

b. July 29.

6. *How was the commander of the expedition treated*

14. [7]Soon after these events, Oglethorpe returned to England, never to revisit the colony which, after ten years of disinterested toil, he had planted, defended, and now left in tranquillity. [8]Hitherto, the people had been under a kind of military rule; but now a civil government was established; and committed to the charge of a president and council, who were required to govern according to the instructions of the trustees. 1743.

7. *What more is said of Oglethorpe?*

8. *What change was made in the government?*

15. [9]Yet the colony did not prosper, and most of the settlers still remained in poverty, with scarcely the hope of better days. Under the restrictions of the trus-

9. *What was the condition of the colony?*

* *Fort William* was the name of the fort at the southern extremity of Cumberland Island. There was also a fort, called *Fort Andrew*, at the northern extremity of the island.

1743. tees, agriculture had not flourished; and commerce had scarcely been thought of. [1]The people complained, that, as they were poor, the want of a free title to their lands almost wholly deprived them of credit; they wished that the unjust rule of descent, which gave their property to the eldest son, to the exclusion of the younger children, should be changed for one more equitable; but, more than all, they complained that they were prohibited the use of slave labor, and requested that the same encouragements should be given to them as were given to their more fortunate neighbors in Carolina.

1. Of what did the people complain?

2. How were the laws against slavery evaded?

16. [2]The regulations of the trustees began to be evaded, and the laws against slavery were not rigidly enforced. At first, slaves from Carolina were hired for short periods; then for a hundred years, or during life; and a sum equal to the value of the negro paid in advance; and, finally, slavers from Africa sailed directly to Savannah; and Georgia, like Carolina, became a planting state, with slave labor.

1752. 17. [3]In 1752, the trustees of Georgia, wearied with complaints against the system of government which they had established, and finding that the province languished under their care, resigned[a] their charter to the king; and the province was formed[b] into a royal government. [4]The people were then favored with the same liberties and privileges that were enjoyed by the provinces of Carolina; but it was not until the close of the French and Indian war, and the surrender of the Floridas to England, by which security was given to the frontiers, that the colony began to assume a flourishing condition.

3. When was the form of government changed, and why?

a. July 1.
b. Oct.

4. What gave prosperity to the colony?

DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE. (See page 192.)

1753.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR,

EXTENDING FROM 1754 TO THE PEACE OF 1763.

Of what does Chapter XIII. treat?

DIVISIONS.

What are the Divisions of the Chapter?

Causes of the War, and Events of 1754.—*II.* 1755: *Expeditions of Monckton, Braddock, Shirley, and Winslow.—III.* 1756: *Delays; Loss of Oswego; Indian Incursions.—IV.* 1757: *Designs against Louisburg, and Loss of Fort Wm. Henry.—V.* 1758: *Reduction of Louisburg; Abercrombie's Defeat; The taking of Forts Frontenac and Du Quesne.—VI.* 1759 *to* 1763: *Ticonderoga and Crown Point Abandoned; Niagara Taken; Conquest of Quebec,—Of all Canada; War with the Cherokees; Peace of* 1763.

Of what does the first Division treat?

I. CAUSES OF THE WAR, AND EVENTS OF 1754.—Thus far, separate accounts of the early American colonies have been given, for the purpose of preserving that unity of narration which seemed best adapted to render prominent the distinctive features which marked the settlement and progress of each. [2]But as we have arrived at a period when the several colonies have be-

1. Why have separate accounts of the colonies been thus far given?

2. What change is now made, and for what reason?

1753. come firmly established, and when their individual histories become less eventful, and less interesting, their general history will now be taken up, and continued in those more important events which subsequently affected all the colonies. [1]This period is distinguished by the final struggle for dominion in America, between the rival powers of France and England.

1. By what is this period distinguished?

2. [2]Those previous wars between the two countries, which had so often embroiled their transatlantic colonies, had chiefly arisen from disputes of European origin; and the events which occurred in America were regarded as of secondary importance to those which, in a greater measure, affected the influence of the rival powers in the affairs of Europe. [3]But the growing importance of the American possessions of the two countries, occasioning disputes about territories tenfold more extensive than either possessed in Europe, at length became the sole cause of involving them in another contest, more important to America than any preceding one, and which is commonly known as the *French and Indian War*.

2. What is said of previous wars between France and England?

3. What led to the French and Indian war?

3. [4]The English, by virtue of the early discovery by the Cabots, claimed the whole seacoast from Newfoundland to Florida; and by numerous grants of territory, before the French had established any settlements in the Valley of the Mississippi, they had extended their claims westward to the Pacific Ocean. [5]The French, on the contrary, founded their claims upon the actual occupation and exploration of the country. [6]Besides their settlements in New France or Canada, and Acadia, they had long occupied Detroit,* had explored the Valley of the Mississippi, and formed settlements at Kaskaskia† and Vincennes,‡ and along the northern border of the Gulf of Mexico.

4. What was the ground, and what the extent of the English claim?

5. Upon what did the French found their claims?

6. How far did their settlements extend?

4. [7]According to the French claims, their northern possessions of New France and Acadia embraced within their southern limits, the half of New York, and the greater portion of New England; while their

7. What was the extent of the French claim?

---

* *Detroit.* (See Map, p. 304.)

† *Kaskaskia*, in the southwestern part of the state of Illinois, is situated on the W side of Kaskaskia River, seven miles above its junction with the Mississippi.

‡ *Vincennes* is in the southwestern part of Indiana, and is situated on the E. bank of the Wabash River, 100 miles, by the river's course, above its entrance into the Ohio.

western possessions, of Upper and Lower Louisiana, were held to embrace the entire valley of the Mississippi and its tributary streams. [1]For the purpose of vindicating their claims to these extensive territories, and confining the English to the country east of the Alleghanies, the French were busily engaged in erecting a chain of forts, by way of the Great Lakes and the Mississippi, from Nova Scotia to the Gulf of Mexico. **1753.**

1. *How were they preparing to defend it?*

5. [2]A royal grant[a] of an extensive tract of land on the Ohio* River, to a company of merchants, called the Ohio Company, gave the French the first apprehension that the English were designing to deprive them of their western trade with the Indians, and cut off their communication between Canada and Louisiana. [3]While the company were surveying these lands, with the view of settlement, three British traders were seized[b] by a party of French and Indians, and conveyed to a French fort at Presque Isle.† The Twightwees, a tribe of Indians friendly to the English, resenting the violence done to their allies, seized several French traders, and sent them to Pennsylvania.

a. 1749.

2. *What was the immediate cause of controversy?*

3. *What violent measures followed?*

b. 1753

6. [4]The French soon after began the erection of forts south of Lake Erie, which called forth serious complaints from the Ohio Company. As the territory in dispute was within the original charter limits of Virginia, Robert Dinwiddie, lieutenant-governor of the colony, deemed it his duty to remonstrate with the French commandant of the western posts, against his proceedings, and demand a withdrawal of his troops. [5]The person employed to convey a letter to the French commandant was George Washington, an enterprising and public-spirited young man, then in his twenty-second year, who thus early engaged in the public

4. *Why did Governor Dinwiddie remonstrate?*

5. *Who was employed to convey a letter to the French, and what is said of him?*

* The *Ohio River* is formed by the confluence of the Alleghany from the N., and the Monongahela from the S., at Pittsburg, in the western part of Pennsylvania. From Pittsburg the general course of the river is S.W. to the Mississippi, a distance of 950 miles by the river, but only about 520 in a direct line. It separates the states of Virginia and Kentucky on the S., from Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois on the N., and drains a valley containing more than 200,000 square miles. The only considerable falls in the river are at Louisville, where the water descends twenty-two and a half feet in two miles, around which has been completed a canal that admits the passage of the largest steamboats.

† *Presque Isle* (almost an island, as its name implies,) is a small peninsula on the southern shore of Lake Erie, at the northwestern extremity of Pennsylvania. The place referred to in history as Presque Isle is the present village of *Erie*, which is situated on the S.W. side of the bay formed between Presque Isle and the mainland.

1753. service, and who afterwards became illustrious in the annals of his country.

1. *What is said of the service to which Washington was called?*

7. [1]The service to which Washington was thus called, was both difficult and dangerous; as half of his route, of four hundred miles, lay through a trackless wilderness, inhabited by Indian tribes, whose feelings were hostile to the English. [2]Departing, on the 31st of October, from Williamsburg,* then the seat of government of the province, on the 4th of December he reached a French fort at the mouth of French Creek,† from which he was conducted to another fort higher up the stream, where he found the French commandant, M. De St. Pierre,[a] who entertained him with great politeness, and gave him a written answer to Governor Dinwiddie's letter.

2. *Give an account of his journey.*

a. Pronounced Pe-âre.

b. Dec. 16.

3. *What dangers did he meet during his return?*

8. [3]Having secretly taken the dimensions of the fort, and made all possible observations, he set out[b] on his return. At one time he providentially escaped being murdered by a party of hostile Indians; one of whom, at a short distance, fired upon him, but fortunately missed him. At another time, while crossing a river on a raft, he was thrown from it by the floating ice; and, after a narrow escape from drowning, he suffered greatly from the intense severity of the cold.

1754.

c. Jan. 16.

4. *What was the answer of the French commander?*

[4]On his arrival[c] at Williamsburg, the letter of St. Pierre was found to contain a refusal to withdraw his troops; with the assurance that he was acting in obedience to the commands of the governor-general of Canada, whose orders alone he should obey.

5. *What measures were taken in consequence?*

9. [5]The hostile designs of the French being apparent from the reply of St. Pierre, the governor of Virginia made immediate preparations to resist their encroachments. The Ohio Company sent out a party of thirty men to erect a fort at the confluence of the Alleghany‡

---

* *Williamsburg* is situated on elevated ground between James and York Rivers, a few miles N.E. from Jamestown. It is the seat of William and Mary College, founded in 1693. (See Map, p. 44.)

† *French Creek*, called by the French *Aux Bœufs*, (O Buff,) enters Alleghany River from the west, in the present county of Venango, sixty-five miles N. from Pittsburg. The French fort, called *Venango*, was on the site of the present village of Franklin, the capital of Venango County.

‡ The *Alleghany River* rises in the northern part of Pennsylvania, and runs, first N.W. into New York, and then, turning to the S.W., again enters Pennsylvania, and a Pittsburg unites with the Monongahela to form the Ohio.

and Monongahela;* and a body of provincial troops, placed under the command of Washington, marched into the disputed territory. [1]The men sent out by the Ohio Company had scarcely commenced their fort, when they were driven[a] from the ground by the French, who completed the works, and named the place Fort du Quesne.[b] **1754.**

1. *What happened to the Ohio Company's men?*
a. April 18.
b. Pronounced du-Kāne.

10. [2]An advance party under Jumonville, which had been sent out to intercept the approach of Washington, was surprised[c] in the night; and all but one were either killed or taken prisoners. [3]After erecting a small fort, which he named Fort Necessity,† and being joined by some additional troops from New York and Carolina, Washington proceeded with four hundred men towards Fort du Quesne, when, hearing of the advance of a large body of French and Indians, under the command of M. de Villiers,[x] he returned to Fort Necessity, where he was soon after attacked[d] by nearly fifteen hundred of the enemy. After an obstinate resistance of ten hours, Washington agreed to a capitulation,[e] which allowed him the honorable terms of retiring unmolested to Virginia.

2. *What was the fate of Jumonville's party?*
c. May 28.
3. *What were the next movements of Washington, and what was the result?*
x. Vil-le-ār.
d. July 3
e. July 4.

11. [4]It having been seen by England, that war with France would be inevitable, the colonies had been advised to unite upon some plan of union for the general defence. [5]A convention had likewise been proposed to be held at Albany, in June, for the purpose of conferring with the Six Nations, and securing their friendship. [6]After a treaty had been made with the Indians, the convention took up the subject of the proposed union; and, on the fourth of July, the very day of the surrender of Fort Necessity, adopted a plan which had been drawn up by Dr. Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania.

4. *What did England advise the colonies?*
5. *For what had a convention been proposed at Albany?*
6. *What was done there?*

12. [7]This plan proposed the establishment of a general government in the colonies, to be administered by a governor-general appointed by the crown, and a council chosen by the several colonial legislatures; having the power to levy troops, declare war, raise

7. *Describe the plan of union proposed.*

* The *Monongahela* rises by numerous branches in the northwestern part of Virginia, and running north enters Pennsylvania, and unites with the Alleghany at Pittsburg.

† The remains of *Fort Necessity* are still to be seen near the national road from Cumberland to Wheeling, in the southeastern part of Fayette County, Pennsylvania.

1754. money, make peace, regulate the Indian trade, and concert all other measures necessary for the general safety. The governor-general was to have a negative on the proceedings of the council, and all laws were to be submitted to the king for ratification.

1. Why was it rejected?

13. [1]This plan, although approved by all the delegates present, except those from Connecticut, who objected to the negative voice of the governor-general, shared the singular fate of being rejected, both by the colonial assemblies, and by the British government: by the former, because it was supposed to give too much power to the representative of the king; and by the latter, because it was supposed to give too much power to the representatives of the people. [2]As no plan of union could be devised, acceptable to both parties, it was determined to carry on the war with British troops, aided by such forces as the colonial assemblies might voluntarily furnish.

2. What was then determined?

1755. II. 1755: EXPEDITIONS OF MONCKTON, BRADDOCK, SHIRLEY, AND SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON.—1. [3]Early in 1755, General Braddock arrived[a] from Ireland, with two regiments of British troops, and with the authority of commander-in-chief of the British and colonial forces. [4]At a convention of the colonial governors, assembled at his request in Virginia, three expeditions were resolved upon; one against the French at Fort du Quesne, to be led by General Braddock himself; a second against Niagara, and a third against Crown Point, a French post on the western shore of Lake Champlain.

Of what does the second division of the Chapter treat?

a. Feb.

3. What is said of General Braddock?

4. What three expeditions were resolved upon?

2. [5]While preparations were making for these expeditions, an enterprise, that had been previously determined upon, was prosecuted with success in another quarter. About the last of May, Colonel Monckton sailed[b] from Boston, with three thousand troops, against the French settlements at the head of the Bay of Fundy, which were considered as encroachments upon the English province of Nova Scotia.

5. What other expedition was previously undertaken?

b. May 20.

3. [6]Landing at Fort Lawrence,* on the eastern shore of Chignecto,† a branch of the Bay of Fundy, a French block-house was carried[c] by assault, and Fort Beause

6. Give an account of its progress and termination.

c. June 4.

* For localities see Map, next page.

† *Chignecto Bay* is the northern, or northwestern, arm of the Bay of Fundy. (Map.)

1755.

four[a] surrendered,[b] after an investment of four days. The name of the fort was then changed to Cumberland. Fort Gaspereau,[c] on Bay Verte,[d] or Green Bay,* was next taken; and the forts on the New Brunswick coast were abandoned. In accordance with the views of the governor of Nova Scotia, the plantations of the French settlers were laid waste; and several thousands of the hapless fugitives, ardently attached to their mother country, and refusing to take the oath of allegiance to Great Britain, were driven on board the British shipping, at the point of the bayonet, and dispersed, in poverty, through the English colonies.

a. Pronounced, Bo-sa-zi.oor.
b. June 16.
c. Pronounced, Gas-pe-ro.
d. Pronounced, Vairt.

4. [1]The expedition against the French on the Ohio, was considerably delayed, by the difficulty of obtaining supplies of wagons and provisions; but, on the tenth of June, General Braddock set out from Fort Cumberland,† with a force of little more than two thousand men, composed of British regulars and provincials. [2]Apprehending that Fort du Quesne might be reenforced, he hastened his march with a select corps of 1200 men; leaving Col. Dunbar to follow in the rear with the other troops and the heavy baggage.

1. *What delayed the expedition of Braddock, and when did he commence his march?*

2. *In what manner did he hasten his march, and why?*

5. [3]Neglecting the proper measures necessary for guarding against a surprise, and too confident in his own views, to receive the advice of Washington, who acted as his aid, and who requested to lead the provincials in advance; Braddock continued to press forward, heedless of danger, until he had arrived within nine or ten miles of Fort du Quesne. [4]While marching in apparent security, his advanced guard of regulars, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Gage, was fired upon[e] by an unseen enemy; and, unused to Indian warfare, was thrown into disorder; and falling back on the main body, a general confusion ensued.

3. *What was the cause of his being surprised?*

4. *Give the particulars of the surprise.*

e. July 9.

* Bay *Verte*, or *Green Bay*, is a western arm of Northumberland Strait; a strait which separates Prince Edward's Island from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. (See Map.)

† *Fort Cumberland* was on the site of the present village of Cumberland, which is situated on the N side of the Potomac River, in Maryland, at the mouth of Will's Creek. The Cumberland, or National Road, which proceeds W. to Ohio, &c., commences here.

1755. 6. [1]General Braddock, vainly endeavoring to rally his troops on the spot where they were first attacked after having had three horses killed under him, and after seeing every mounted officer fall, except Washington, was himself mortally wounded, when his troops fled in dismay and confusion. [2]The cool bravery of the Virginia provincials, who formed under the command of Washington, covered the retreat of the regulars, and saved the army from total destruction. [3]In this disastrous defeat more than two-thirds of all the officers, and nearly half the privates, were either killed or wounded.

1. What was the conduct of Braddock, and the result of the battle?

2. What saved the army from total destruction?

3. How many were killed or wounded?

7. [4]No pursuit was made by the enemy, to whom the success was wholly unexpected; yet so great was the panic communicated to Colonel Dunbar's troops, that they likewise fled with precipitation, and made no pause until they found themselves sheltered by the walls of Fort Cumberland. [5]Soon after, Colonel Dunbar, leaving at Cumberland a few provincial troops, but insufficient to protect the frontiers, retired[a] with the rest of the army to Philadelphia.

4. Describe the retreat.

5. What disposition was made of the army?

a. Aug. 2.

8. [6]The expedition against Niagara was intrusted to Governor Shirley of Massachusetts; on whom the command in chief of the British forces had devolved, after the death of General Braddock. The forces designed for this enterprise were to assemble at Oswego,[b] whence they were to proceed by water to the mouth of the Niagara River.* The main body of the troops, however, did not arrive until the last of August; and then a succession of western winds and rain, the prevalence of sickness in the camp, and the desertion of the Indian allies, rendered it unadvisable to proceed; and most of the forces were withdrawn.[c] The erection of two new forts had been commenced on the east side of the river; and suitable garrisons were left to defend them.

6. What is said of the expedition against Niagara?

b. N. p. 183.

c. Oct. 24.

7. Give the particulars of the expedition against Crown Point, previous to the arrival of Johnson.

9. [7]The expedition against Crown Point was intrusted to General Johnson, afterwards Sir William Johnson, a member of the council of New York. In

* *Niagara River* is the channel which connects Lake Erie with Lake Ontario. It is about thirty-six miles long, and flows from S. to N. In this stream, twenty-two miles north from Lake Erie, are the celebrated *Falls of Niagara*, the greatest natural curiosity in the world. (See Map, p. 306 and 319.)

June and July, about 6000 troops, under General Lyman, were assembled at the carrying place between Hudson River and Lake George;[a] where they constructed a fort which they named Fort Lyman, but which was afterwards called Fort Edward.* [1]In the latter part of August General Johnson arrived; and, taking the command, moved forward with the main body of his forces to the head of Lake George; where he learned,[b] by his scouts, that nearly two thousand French and Indians were on their march from Crown Point,[c] with the intention of attacking Fort Edward. **1755.**

a. N. p. 133.

1. *When did Gen. Johnson arrive, and what did he soon after learn?*

b. Sept. 7.

c. N. p. 134.

10. [2]The enemy, under the command of the Baron Dieskau,[d] approaching by the way of Wood Creek,[e] had arrived within two miles of Fort Edward; when the commander, at the request of his Indian allies, who stood in great dread of the English cannon, suddenly changed his route, with the design of attacking the camp of Johnson. [3]In the mean time, Johnson had sent out a party of a thousand provincials under the command of Colonel Williams; and two hundred Indians under the command of Hendricks, a Mohawk sachem for the purpose of intercepting the return of the enemy, whether they succeeded, or failed, in their designs against Fort Edward.

d. Pronounced, De-es-ko.

e. N. p. 130.

2. *Describe the movements of the enemy.*

3. *What detachment was sent against them, and why?*

11. [4]Unfortunately, the English, being drawn into an ambuscade,[f] were overpowered by superior numbers, and driven back with a severe loss. Among the killed were Colonel Williams and the chieftain Hendricks. The loss of the enemy was also considerable; and among the slain was St. Pierre, who commanded the Indians. [5]The firing being heard in the camp of Johnson, and its near approach convincing him of the repulse of Williams; he rapidly constructed a breastwork of fallen trees, and mounted several cannon, which, two days before, he had fortunately received from Fort Edward.

f. Sept. 8.

4. *What was the fate of this detachment?*

5. *What preparations did Johnson hastily make?*

VICINITY OF LAKE GEORGE

* *Fort Edward* was on the site of the present village of Fort Edward, in Washington County, on the E. side of Hudson River, and about forty-five miles N. from Albany This spot was also called *the carrying place;* being the point where, in the expeditions against Canada, the troops, stores, &c., were landed, and thence carried to Wood Creek, a distance of twelve miles, where they were again embarked. (See Map)

1755. 12. [1]The fugitives had scarcely arrived at the camp, when the enemy appeared and commenced a spirited attack; but the unexpected reception which the English cannon gave them, considerably cooled their ardor. The Canadian militia and the Indians soon fled; and the French troops, after continuing the contest several hours, retired in disorder. [2]Dieskau was found wounded and alone, leaning against the stump of a tree. While feeling for his watch, in order to surrender it, an English soldier, thinking he was searching for a pistol, fired upon him, and inflicted a wound which caused his death. [3]After the repulse of the French, a detachment from Fort Edward fell upon their rear, and completed their defeat.

1. *Describe the attack on his camp.*

2. *What was the fate of Dieskau?*

3. *What completed the defeat of the enemy?*

13. [4]For the purpose of securing the country from the incursions of the enemy, General Johnson erected a fort at his place of encampment, which he named Fort William Henry.* Learning that the French were strengthening their works at Crown Point, and likewise that a large party had taken possession of, and were fortifying Ticonderoga;† he deemed it advisable to make no farther advance; and, late in the season—after leaving sufficient garrisons at Forts William Henry and Edward, he retired[a] to Albany, whence he dispersed the remainder of his army to their respective provinces.

4. *What were the farther proceedings of Johnson?*

a. Dec.

Of what does the third division treat?

III. 1756: DELAYS: LOSS OF OSWEGO: INDIAN INCURSIONS.—1. [5]The plan for the campaign of 1756, which had been agreed upon in a council of the colonial governors held at Albany, early in the season, was similar to that of the preceding year; having for its object the reduction of Crown Point, Niagara, and Fort du Quesne. [6]Lord Loudon was appointed by the king commander-in-chief of his forces in America, and also governor of Virginia; but, being unable to depart immediately, General Abercrombie was ordered

1756.

5. *What was the plan of the campaign of 1756?*

6. *What commanders were appointed?*

---

* *Fort Wm. Henry* was situated at the head of Lake George, a little E. from the village of Caldwell, in Warren County. After the fort was levelled by Montcalm, in 1757 (see page 185,) Fort George was built as a substitute for it, on a more commanding site yet it was never the scene of any important battle. (See Map, previous page.)

† *Ticonderoga* is situated at the mouth of the outlet of Lake George, in Essex County, on the western shore of Lake Champlain, about eighty-five miles in a direct line N from Albany. (See Map and Note, p. 240.) The village of Ticonderoga is two miles above the ruins of the fort.

to precede him, and take the command of the troops until his arrival. [1]Thus far, hostilities had been carried on without any formal declaration of war; but, in May of this year, war was declared[a] by Great Britain against France, and, soon after,[b] by the latter power against Great Britain. **1756.**

1. *What is said of the declaration of war?*
a. May 17.
b. June 9.

2. [2]In June, General Abercrombie arrived, with several regiments, and proceeded to Albany, where the provincial troops were assembled; but deeming the forces under his command inadequate to carry out the plan of the campaign, he thought it prudent to await the arrival of the Earl of Loudon. This occasioned a delay until the latter part of July; and even after the arrival of the earl, no measures of importance were taken. [3]The French, in the mean time, profiting by the delays of the English, seized the opportunity to make an attack upon Oswego.*

2. *What is said of the measures of Abercrombie and Lord Loudon?*

3. *How did the French profit by these delays?*

3. [4]Early in August, the Marquis Montcalm, who had succeeded the Baron Dieskau in the chief command of the French forces in Canada, crossed Lake Ontario with more than five thousand men, French, Canadians, and Indians; and, with more than thirty pieces of cannon, commenced[c] the siege of Fort Ontario, on the east side of Oswego River.† After an obstinate, but short defence, this fort was abandoned,[d] —the garrison safely retiring to the old fort on the west side of the river.

4. *Give an account of Montcalm's expedition against Oswego.*

c. Aug. 11.

d. Aug. 12.

4. [5]On the fourteenth, the English, numbering only 1400 men, found themselves reduced to the necessity of a capitulation; by which they surrendered themselves prisoners of war. Several vessels in the harbor, together with a large amount of military stores, consisting of small arms, ammunition, provisions, and 134 pieces of cannon, fell into the hands of the enemy. Montcalm, after demolishing the forts, returned to Canada.

5. *What is said of the surrender of this place, and the loss suffered by the English?*

FORTS AT OSWEGO.

* The village of *Oswego*, in Oswego County, is situated on both sides of Oswego River, at its entrance into Lake Ontario. Old Fort Oswego, built in 1727, was on the west side of the river. In 1755 Fort Ontario was built on an eminence on the E. side of the river; a short distance N. of which stands the present Fort Oswego.

† *Oswego River* is formed by the junction of Seneca and Oneida Rivers. The former is the outlet of Canandaiga, Crooked, Seneca, Cayuga, Owasco, and Skeneateles Lakes; and the latter of Oneida Lake.

1756. 5. [1]After the defeat of Braddock, the Indians on the western frontiers, incited by the French, renewed their depredations. and killed, or carried into captivity, more than a thousand of the inhabitants. [2]In August of this year, Colonel Armstrong, with a party of nearly 300 men, marched against Kittaning,* their principal town, on the Alleghany River. The Indians, although surprised,[a] defended themselves with great bravery; refusing quarter when it was offered them. Their principal chiefs were killed, their town was destroyed, and eleven prisoners were recovered. The English suffered but little in this expedition. Among their wounded was Captain Mercer, afterwards distinguished in the war of the revolution. [3]These were the principal events of this year; and not one of the important objects of the campaign was either accomplished or attempted.

1. *What is said of Indian depredations on the western frontiers?*

2. *Give an account of Col. Armstrong's expedition.*

a. Sept. 8.

3. *What is said of the result of this year's campaign?*

1757. IV. 1757: DESIGNS AGAINST LOUISBURG, AND LOSS OF FORT WILLIAM HENRY.—1. [4]The plan of the campaign of 1757, was limited, by the commander-in-chief, to an attempt upon the important fortress of Louisburg. [5]With the reduction of this post in view, Lord Loudon sailed[b] from New York, in June, with 6000 regular troops; and, on the thirtieth of the same month, arrived at Halifax; where he was reenforced by a powerful naval armament commanded by Admiral Holbourn; and a land force of 5000 men from England. [6]Soon after, information was received,[c] that a French fleet, larger than that of the English, had already arrived in the harbor of Louisburg, and that the city was garrisoned by more than 6000 men. The expedition was, therefore, necessarily abandoned. The admiral proceeded to cruise off Louisburg, and Lord Loudon returned[d] to New York.

Of what does the fourth division treat?

4. *What was the object of the campaign of 1757?*

b. June 20.

5. *What preparations were made?*

6. *Why was the object abandoned?*

c. Aug. 4.

d. Aug. 31.

2. [7]While these events were transpiring, the French commander, the Marquis Montcalm, having collected his forces at Ticonderoga, advanced with an army of 9000 men, 2000 of whom were savages, and laid siege to Fort William Henry.[f] [8]The garrison of the fort

7. *What was Montcalm doing in the mean time?*

e. Aug. 3.

f. See Note, p. 182.

* *Kittaning*, the county seat of Armstrong County, Pennsylvania, is built on the site of the old Indian town. It is on the E. side of Alleghany River, about forty miles N.E from Pittsburg.

consisted of between two and three thousand men, commanded by Colonel Monro; and, for the farther security of the place, Colonel Webb was stationed at Fort Edward, only fifteen miles distant, with an army of 4000 men. During six days, the garrison maintained an obstinate defence; anxiously awaiting a reinforcement from Fort Edward; until, receiving positive information that no relief would be attempted, and their ammunition beginning to fail them, they surrendered[a] the place by capitulation. **1757.**

8. Give an account of the siege and surrender of Fort William Henry.

a. Aug 9.

3. [1]Honorable terms were granted the garrison "on account of their honorable defence," as the capitulation itself expressed; and they were to march out with their arms, and retire in safety under an escort to Fort Edward. [2]The capitulation, however, was shamefully broken by the Indians attached to Montcalm's party; who fell upon the English as they were leaving the fort; plundered them of their baggage, and butchered many of them in cold blood. [3]The otherwise fair fame of Montcalm has been tarnished by this unfortunate affair; but it is believed that he and his officers used their utmost endeavors, except firing upon the Indians, to stop the butchery.

1. What terms were granted the garrison?

2. How was the capitulation broken?

3. What is said of the conduct of Montcalm on this occasion?

V. 1758: REDUCTION OF LOUISBURG; ABERCROMBIE'S DEFEAT; THE TAKING OF FORTS FRONTENAC AND DU QUESNE.—1. [4]The result of the two preceding campaigns was exceedingly humiliating to England, in view of the formidable preparations that had been made for carrying on the war; and so strong was the feeling against the ministry and their measures, that a change was found necessary. [5]A new administration was formed, at the head of which was placed Mr. Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham; Lord Loudon was recalled; additional forces were raised in America; and a large naval armament, and twelve thousand additional troops, were promised from England. [6]Three expeditions were planned: one against Louisburg, another against the French on Lake Champlain, and a third against Fort du Quesne.

1758.

Of what does the fifth division treat?

4. What is said of the result of the two preceding campaigns?

5. What changes followed?

6. What expeditions were planned?

2. [7]Early in the season, Admiral Boscawen arrived at Halifax, whence he sailed, on the 28th of May, with a fleet of nearly forty armed vessels, together with

7. Give an account of the expedition against Louisburg.

1758. twelve thousand men under the command of General Amherst, for the reduction of Louisburg.[a] On the second of June, the fleet anchored in Gabarus Bay; and on the 8th the troops effected a landing, with little loss; when the French called in their outposts, and dismantled the royal battery.

a. See Note and Map, pp. 97, 98.

3. [1]Soon after, General Wolfe, passing[b] around the Northeast Harbor, erected a battery at the North Cape, near the light-house, from which the island battery was silenced:[c] three French ships were burned[d] in the harbor; and the fortifications of the town were greatly injured. At length, all the shipping being destroyed, and the batteries from the land side having made several breaches in the walls, near the last of July, the city and island, together with St. John's,* were surrendered[e] by capitulation.

b. June 12.
1. *Of the progress of the siege, and the surrender of the place.*
c. June 25.
d. July 21.
e. July 26.

4. [2]During these events, General Abercrombie, on whom the command in chief had devolved on the recall of Lord Loudon, was advancing against Ticonderoga.[f] [3]On the 5th of July, he embarked on Lake George, with more than 15,000 men, and a formidable train of artillery. On the following morning, the troops landed near the northern extremity of the lake, and commenced their march through a thick wood towards the fort, then defended by about four thousand men under the command of the Marquis Montcalm. Ignorant of the nature of the ground, and without proper guides, the troops became bewildered; and the centre column, commanded by Lord Howe, falling in with an advanced guard of the French, Lord Howe himself was killed; but after a warm contest, the enemy were repulsed.[g]

2. *During these events what was occurring elsewhere?*
f. See Note and Map, p. 240.
3. *Give an account of the progress of the expedition, and of the first attack.*
g. July 6.

5. [4]After the death of Lord Howe, who was a highly valuable officer, and the soul of the expedition, the ardor of the troops greatly abated; and disorder and confusion prevailed. [5]Most of the army fell back to the landing-place, but, early on the morning of the 8th, again advanced in full force to attack the fort; the general being assured, by his chief engineer, that

4. *What was the effect of Lord Howe's death?*
5. *Give the particulars of the second attack.*

* *St. John's*, or *Prince Edward's Island*, is an island of very irregular shape, about 130 miles long; lying west of Cape Breton, and north of Nova Scotia, from which it is separated by Northumberland Strait. The French called the island *St. John*: but in 1799 the English changed its name to *Prince Edward*.

the intrenchments were unfinished, and might be attempted with good prospect of success. Unexpectedly, the breastwork was found to be of great strength, and covered with felled trees, with their branches pointing outwards; and notwithstanding the intrepidity of the troops, after a contest of nearly four hours, they were repulsed* with great slaughter; leaving nearly two thousand of their number killed or wounded on the field of battle. **1758.**

a. July 8.

6. [1]After this repulse, the army retired to the head of Lake George, whence, at the solicitation of Colonel Bradstreet, an expedition of three thousand men, under the command of that officer, was sent against Fort Frontenac,* on the western shore of the outlet of Lake Ontario, a place which had long been the chief resort for the traders of the Indian nations who were in alliance with the French. Proceeding by the way of Oswego, Bradstreet crossed the lake, landed[b] within a mile of the fort without opposition, and, in two days, compelled that important fortress to surrender.[c] The fort was destroyed, and nine armed vessels, sixty cannon, and a large quantity of military stores and goods, designed for the Indian trade, fell into the hands of the English.

1. *What is related of the expedition against Fort Frontenac?*

b. Aug. 25.

c. Aug. 27.

7. [2]The expedition against Fort du Quesne was intrusted to General Forbes, who set out from Philadelphia early in July, at the head of 9000 men. An advanced party under Major Grant was attacked near the fort, and defeated with the loss of three hundred men; but, as the main body of the army advanced, the French, being deserted by their Indian allies, abandoned[d] the place, and escaped in boats down the Ohio. Quiet possession was then taken[e] of the fort, when it was repaired and garrisoned, and, in honor of Mr. Pitt, named *Pittsburg*.† [3]The western Indians soon after came in and concluded a treaty of neutrality with the English. [4]Notwithstanding the defeat of Abercrombie, the events of the year had weakened the

2. *Of the expedition against Fort du Quesne?*

d. Nov. 24.

e. Nov. 25.

3. *What treaty was then formed?*

4. *What is said of the result of the campaign of 1758?*

* The village of Kingston, in Canada, now occupies the site of Old Fort Frontenac.

† *Pittsburg*, now a flourishing city, is situated on a beautiful plain, at the junction of the Alleghany and the Monongahela, in the western part of Pennsylvania. There are several thriving villages in the vicinity, which should be regarded as suburbs of Pittsburg, the principal of which is *Alleghany City*, on the N.W. side of the Alleghany River.

1759. French power in America; and the campaign closed with honor to England and her colonies.

1759.

What are the subjects of the sixth division?

What honors were bestowed on General Amherst?

VI. 1759 TO 1763: TICONDEROGA AND CROWN POINT ABANDONED; NIAGARA TAKEN; CONQUEST OF QUEBEC, —OF ALL CANADA; WAR WITH THE CHEROKEES; PEACE OF 1763.—1. [1]The high reputation which General Amherst had acquired in the siege of Louisburg, had gained him a vote of thanks from parliament, and had procured for him the appointment of commander-in-chief of the army in North America, with the responsibility of carrying out the vast and daring project of Mr. Pitt, which was no less than the entire conquest of Canada in a single campaign.

2. What was the plan of the campaign of 1759?

2. [2]For the purpose of dividing and weakening the power of the French, General Wolfe, a young officer of uncommon merit, who had distinguished himself at the siege of Louisburg, was to ascend the St. Lawrence and lay siege to Quebec: General Amherst was to carry Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and then, by way of Lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence, was to unite with the forces of General Wolfe; while a third army, after the reduction of Niagara, was to proceed down the lake and river against Montreal.

3. What was the success of Gen. Amherst at Ticonderoga?

3. [3]In the prosecution of the enterprise which had been intrusted to him, General Amherst arrived[a] before Ticonderoga[b] in the latter part of July, with an army of little more than 11,000 men. While preparing for a general attack, the French abandoned[c] their lines, and withdrew to the fort; but, in a few days, abandoned[d] this also, after having partially demolished it, and retired to Crown Point.[e]

a. July 22.

b. See Note and Map, p. 240.

c. July 23.

d. July 26.

e. N. p. 134.

4. Give an account of the farther pursuit of the enemy, and of the return of the army.

4. [4]Pursuing his successes, General Amherst advanced towards this latter post; but, on his approach, the garrison retired[f] to the Isle of Aux Noix* in the river Sorel.[g] After having constructed several small vessels, and acquired a naval superiority on the lake, the whole army embarked[h] in pursuit of the enemy; but a succession of storms, and the advanced season of the year, finally compelled a return[i] to Crown Point, where the troops went into winter quarters.

f. Aug. 1.

g. N. p. 130.

h. Oct. 11.

i. Oct. 2.

* *Aux Noix* (O Noo-ah) is a small island in the River Sorel, or Richelieu, a short distance above the northern extremity of Lake Champlain

5. [1]General Prideaux,[a] to whom was given the command of the expedition against Niagara, proceeded by the way of Schenectady and Oswego; and, on the sixth of July, landed near the fort without opposition. Soon after the commencement of the siege, the general was killed through the carelessness of a gunner, by the bursting of a cohorn, when the command devolved on Sir William Johnson. As twelve hundred French and Indians, from the southern French forts, were advancing to the relief of the place, they were met, and routed[b] with great loss; when the garrison, despairing of assistance, submitted[c] to terms of capitulation. The surrender of this important post effectually cut off the communication between Canada and Louisiana. **1759.**

a. Pronounced, Pre-do.

1. *Relate the events of the expedition against Niagara.*

b. July 24.

c. July 25

6. [2]While these events were transpiring, General Wolfe was prosecuting the more important part of the campaign, the siege of Quebec.* Having embarked about 8000 men at Louisburg, under convoy of a fleet of 22 ships of the line, and an equal number of frigates and small armed vessels, commanded by Admirals Saunders and Holmes; he safely landed[d] the army, near the end of June, on the Isle of Orleans, a few miles below Quebec. [3]The French forces, to the number of thirteen thousand men, occupied the city,

2. *What was Gen. Wolfe doing in the mean time?*

d. June 27.

3. *How were the French forces disposed?*

* *Quebec*, a strongly fortified city of Canada, is situated on the N.W. side of the River St. Lawrence, on a lofty promontory formed by that river and the St. Charles. The city consists of the Upper and the Lower Town; the latter on a narrow strip of land, wholly the work of art, near the water's edge; and the former on a plain, difficult of access, more than 200 feet higher. Cape Diamond, the most elevated part of the Upper Town, on which stands the citadel, is 345 feet above the level of the river, and commands a grand view of an extensive tract of country. The fortifications of the Upper Town, extending nearly across the peninsula, enclose a circuit of about two miles and three quarters. The *Plains of Abraham*, immediately westward, and in front of the fortifications, rise to the height of more than 300 feet, and are exceedingly difficult of access from the river. (Map.)

1759. and a strong camp on the northern shore of the St Lawrence, between the rivers St. Charles and Mont morenci.*

a. June 30.
b. See Map, p. 189.

7. [1]General Wolfe took possession[a] of Point Levi,[b] where he erected batteries which destroyed the Lower Town, but did little injury to the defences of the city. He soon after crossed the north channel of the St. Lawrence, and encamped[c] his army near the enemy's left, the river Montmorenci lying between them.

1. *What were the first measures which Wolfe adopted?*
c. July 10.

[2]Convinced, however, of the impossibility of reducing the place unless he could erect batteries nearer the city than Point Levi, he soon decided on more daring measures. He resolved to cross the St. Lawrence and the Montmorenci, with different divisions, at the same time, and storm the intrenchments of the French camp.

2. *On what daring measures did he next resolve?*

8. [3]For this purpose, on the last day of July, the boats of the fleet, filled with grenadiers, and with troops from Point Levi, under the command of General Monckton, crossed the St. Lawrence, and, after considerable delay by grounding on a ledge of rocks, effected a landing a little above the Montmorenci; while Generals Townshend and Murray, fording that stream at low water, near its mouth, hastened to the assistance of the troops already landed. [4]But as the grenadiers rushed impetuously forward without waiting for the troops that were to support them, they were driven back with loss, and obliged to seek shelter behind a redoubt which the enemy had abandoned [5]Here they were detained a while by a thunder storm still exposed to a galling fire; when night approaching, and the tide setting in, a retreat was ordered This unfortunate attempt was attended with the loss of nearly 500 men.

3. *Describe the landing of the troops.*
July 31.
4. *What caused the repulse of the grenadiers?*
5. *What compelled a retreat, and what loss was sustained?*

9. [6]The bodily fatigues which General Wolfe had endured, together with his recent disappointment, acting upon a frame naturally delicate, threw him into a violent fever; and, for a time, rendered him incapable of taking the field in person. [7]He therefore called a council of his officers, and, requesting their advice,

6. *What is said of the sickness of Gen. Wolfe?*
7. *What plan was next proposed?*

* The River *Montmorenci* enters the St. Lawrence from the N., about seven miles below Quebec. The falls in this river, near its mouth, are justly celebrated for their beauty. The water descends 240 feet in one unbroken sheet of foam. (Map, p. 189.)

proposed a second attack on the French lines. They were of opinion, however, that this was inexpedient, but proposed that the army should attempt a point above Quebec, where they might gain the heights which overlooked the city. The plan being approved, preparations were immediately made to carry it into execution. 1759.

10. [1]The camp at Montmorenci being broken up, the troops and artillery were conveyed to Point Levi; and, soon after, to some distance above the city; while Montcalm's attention was still engaged with the apparent design of a second attack upon his camp. All things being in readiness, during the night of the 12th of September, the troops in boats silently fell down the stream; and, landing within a mile and a half of the city, ascended the precipice,—dispersed a few Canadians and Indians; and, when morning dawned, were drawn up in battle array on the plains of Abraham.

1. *Give an account of the execution of the plan adopted.*

11. [2]Montcalm, surprised at this unexpected event, and perceiving that, unless the English could be driven from their position, Quebec was lost, immediately crossed the St. Charles with his whole army, and advanced to the attack. [3]About nine in the morning fifteen hundred Indians and Canadians, advancing in front, and screened by surrounding thickets, began the battle;[a] but the English reserved their fire for the main body of the French, then rapidly advancing; and, when at the distance of forty yards, opened upon them with such effect as to compel them to recoil with confusion.

2. *What did Montcalm then do?*

3. *Describe the attack.*

a. Sept. 13

12. [4]Early in the battle General Wolfe received two wounds in quick succession, which he concealed, but, while pressing forward at the head of his grenadiers, with fixed bayonets, a third ball pierced his breast. Colonel Monckton, the second officer in rank, was dangerously wounded by his side, when the command devolved on General Townshend. The French general, Montcalm, likewise fell; and his second in command was mortally wounded. General Wolfe died on the field of battle, but he lived long enough to be informed that he had gained the victory.

4. *Relate the circumstances of the deaths of the two commanders.*

1759.

13. [1]Conveyed to the rear and supported by a few attendants, while the agonies of death were upon him, he heard the distant cry, "They run, they run." Raising his drooping head, the dying hero anxiously asked, "Who run?" Being informed that it was the French, "Then," said he, "I die contented," and immediately expired. Montcalm lived to be carried into the city. When informed that his wound was mortal, "So much the better," he replied, "I shall not then live to witness the surrender of Quebec."

1. *Continue the relation.*

14. [2]Five days after the battle the city surrendered,[a] and received an English garrison, thus leaving Montreal the only place of importance to the French, in Canada. [3]Yet in the following spring the French attempted the recovery of Quebec; and, after a bloody battle fought[b] three miles above the city, drove the English to their fortifications, from which they were relieved only by the arrival[c] of an English squadron with reenforcements.

a. Sept. 18.
2. *What occurred five days after the battle?*

1760.

3. *Give an account of the attempt to recover Quebec.*
b. April 28.
c. May 16.

15. [4]During the season, General Amherst, the commander-in-chief, made extensive preparations for reducing Montreal. Three powerful armies assembled[d] there by different routes, early in September; when the commander of the place, perceiving that resistance would be ineffectual, surrendered,[e] not only Montreal, but all the other French posts in Canada, to his Britannic majesty.

4. *Of the conquest of Montreal.*
d. Sept. 6, 7.
e. Sept. 8.

16. [5]Early in the same year a war broke out with the powerful nation of the Cherokees, who had but recently, as allies of the French, concluded[f] a peace with the English. General Amherst sent Colonel Montgomery against them, who, assisted by the Carolinians, burned[g] many of their towns; but the Cherokees, in turn, besieged Fort Loudon,* and having compelled the garrison to capitulate,[h] afterwards fell upon them, and either killed,[i] or carried away prisoners, the whole party. [6]In the following year Colonel Grant marched into their country,—overcame them in battle,[j]—de-

5. *Relate the events of the war with the Cherokees, during the year 1760.*
f. Sept. 26, 1759.
g. May, Aug.
h. Aug. 7
i. Aug. 8.

6. *During the year 1761.*
j. June 10.

* *Fort Loudon* was in the northeastern part of Tennessee, on the Watauga River, a stream which, rising in N. Carolina, flows westward into Tennessee, and unites with Holston River. Fort Loudon was built in 1757, and was the first settlement in Tennessee, which was then included in the territory claimed by N. Carolina.

stroyed their villages,—and drove the savages to the mountains; when peace was concluded with them. **1761.**

17. [1]The war between France and England continued on the ocean, and among the islands of the West Indies, with almost uniform success to the English, until 1763; when, on the 10th of February of that year, a definitive treaty of peace was signed at Paris. [2]France thereby surrendered to Great Britain all her possessions in North America, eastward of the Mississippi River, from its source to the river Iberville;* and thence, through Lakes Maurepas† and Pontchartrain,‡ to the Gulf of Mexico. At the same time Spain, with whom England had been at war during the previous year, ceded to Great Britain her possessions of East and West Florida.§

1. *Give an account of the farther progress and end of the war between France and England.*

1763.

2. *What possessions were ceded by France, and what by Spain?*

CHAPTER XIV.

CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

Of what does Chapter XIV. treat?

1. [3]By the treaty of Paris in 1763, England gained a large addition to her American territory; extending it from the northeastern extremity of the continent to the Gulf of Mexico; and from the Mississippi to the Atlantic. [4]During a century and a half, the rival powers of France and England had contended for supremacy in America; involving, in the mean time,

3. *What was the extent of British American territory after the treaty of Paris?*

4. *What had been the situation of the American colonies du-*

* *Iberville*, an outlet of the Mississippi, leaves that river fourteen miles below Baton Rouge, and flowing E. enters Amite River, which falls into *Lake Maurepas*. It now receives water from the Mississippi only at high flood. In 1698 the French naval officer, Iberville, sailed up the Mississippi to this stream, which he entered, and thence passed through Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain to Mobile Bay.

† *Maurepas* is a lake about twenty miles in circumference, communicating with Lake Pontchartrain on the E. by an outlet seven miles long.

‡ *Pontchartrain* is a lake more than a hundred miles in circumference, the southern shore of which is about five miles N. from New Orleans. The passage by which it communicates with Lake Borgne on the E. is called *The Rigolets*.

§ That part of the country ceded by Spain was divided, by the English monarch, into the governments of East and West Florida. *East Florida* included all embraced in the present Florida, as far W. as the Apalachicola River. *West Florida* extended from the Apalachicola to the Mississippi, and was bounded on the N. by the 31st degree of latitude, and on the S. by the Gulf of Mexico, and a line drawn through Lakes Pontchartrain and Maurepas, and the Rivers Amite and Iberville, to the Mississippi. Thus those parts of the states of Alabama and Mississippi which extend from the 31st degree down to the Gulf of Mexico, were included in West Florida.

1763. the British American colonies in almost continued Indian warfare, at an enormous expense of blood and treasure.

ring a century and a half previous to this treaty?

2. [1]The subversion of the French power in America was looked to as the harbinger of long-continued peace and prosperity to the colonies; but scarcely had the struggle ended, when a contest arose, between the desire of power on the one hand, and the abhorrence of oppression on the other, which finally resulted in the dismemberment of the British empire.

1. How was the downfall of the French power in America regarded? But what contest arose soon after?

3. [2]Although the colonists had ever cherished feelings of filial regard for the mother country; and were proud of their descent from one of the most powerful nations of Europe; yet, even before any decided acts of oppression had driven them to resistance, other causes had strongly operated to prepare the way for American Independence.

2. What is said of the feelings of the early colonists towards England?

4. [3]Although the Americans were under different colonial governments; yet they were socially united as one people, by the identity of their language, laws, and customs, and the ties of a common kindred; and still more, by a common participation in the vicissitudes of peril and suffering through which they had passed. [4]These and other causes, had closely united them in one common interest; and, in the ratio of their fraternal union as colonies, had weakened their attachment to the parent land.

3. By what causes were the colonies socially united as one people?

4. What effect had these causes on their attachment to England?

5. [5]Before they left England, they were allied in principle and in feeling with the republican, or liberal party; which was ever seeking to abridge the prerogatives of the crown, and to enlarge the liberties of the people. They scoffed at the "divine right of kings," looked upon rulers as public servants bound to exercise their authority for the sole benefit of the governed; and maintained that it is the inalienable right of the subject, freely to give his money to the crown, or to withhold it at his discretion.

5. What is said of the republican principles of the people?

6. [6]With such principles, it is not surprising that any attempt on the part of Great Britain to tax her colonies, should be met with determined opposition, and we are surprised to find that severe restrictions upon American commerce, highly injurious to the col-

6. In view of such principles, what are we surprised to find?

onies, but beneficial to England, had long been submitted to without open resentment. 1763.

7. [1]Such were the navigation acts, which, for the benefit of English shipping, declared[a] that no merchandise of the English plantations should be imported into England in any other than English vessels;—which, for the benefit of English manufacturers, prohibited[b] the exportation from the colonies, and the introduction from one colony into another, of hats and woollens of domestic manufacture;—which forbade hatters to have, at one time, more than two apprentices;—which prohibited[c] the importation of sugar, rum, and molasses, without the payment of exorbitant duties;—which forbade[d] the erection of certain iron works, and the manufacture of steel; and which prohibited the felling of pitch and white-pine trees, not comprehended within enclosures.

a. First Navigation Act, 1651; confirmed and extended in 1660. See pp. 62, 63.

1. *Mention some of the early restrictions on American commerce.*

b. 1732.

c. 1733.

d. 1750

8. [2]Although parliament, as early as 1733, had imposed duties on sugar and molasses imported into the colonies; yet the payment of them was for many years evaded, or openly violated, with but little interference by the British authorities. [3]In 1761 an attempt was made to enforce the act, by the requisition, from the colonial courts, of "writs of assistance;" which were general search-warrants, authorizing the king's officers to search for suspected articles which had been introduced into the provinces without the payment of the required duties. [4]In Boston, violent excitements prevailed; the applications for the writs were met by the spirited opposition of the people, and the bold denunciations of Thatcher, Otis, and others. [5]In 1763, the admiralty undertook to enforce the strict letter of the laws; vessels engaged in the contraband commerce were seized and confiscated; and the colonial trade with the West Indies was nearly annihilated.

2. *What is said of the duties imposed on sugar and molasses?*

3. *Of the writs of assistance?*

4. *What occurred in Boston?*

1763.

5. *What was done in 1763?*

9. [6]In 1764, the sugar act was re-enacted; accompanied by the first formal declaration, on the part of parliament, of the design of taxing the colonies. [7]At the same time, Mr. Grenville, the prime minister, introduced a resolution, "That it would be proper to charge certain stamp duties on the colonies." The resolution was adopted[e] by the House of Commons,

1764.

6. *What in 1764?*

7. *What is said of Mr. Grenville's resolution in favor of taxing the colonies?*

e. March 10.

1764. but the consideration of the proposed act was postponed to the next session of parliament; giving to the Americans, in the mean time, an opportunity of expressing their sentiments with regard to these novel measures of taxation.

1. How did the colonies receive the intelligence of these proceedings, and what did they do in return?

10. [1]The colonies received the intelligence of these proceedings with a general feeling of indignation. They considered them the commencement of a system of revenue, which, if unresisted, opened a prospect of oppression, boundless in extent, and endless in duration. The proposed stamp-act was particularly obnoxious. Numerous political meetings were held; remonstrances were addressed to the king, and the two houses of parliament; and agents were sent to London, to exert all their influence in preventing, if possible, the intended act from becoming a law.

2. What were the arguments urged in favor of taxing the colonies?

11. [2]While England asserted her undoubted right to tax her colonies, the latter strongly denied both the justice and the constitutionality of the claim. The former maintained that the colonies were but a portion of the British empire; that they had ever submitted, as in duty bound, to the jurisdiction of the mother country; that the inhabitants of the colonies were as much represented in parliament as the great majority of the English nation; that the taxes proposed were but a moderate interest for the immense sums which had already been bestowed in the defence of the colonies, and which would still be required, for their protection; and that protection itself is the ground that gives the right of taxation.

3. What were the arguments opposed to taxation?

12. [3]On the other hand it was maintained, as a fundamental principle, that taxation and representation are inseparable; that the colonies were neither actually nor virtually represented in the British parliament; and that, if their property might be taken from them without their consent, there would be no limit to the oppression which might be exercised over them. They said they had hitherto supposed, that the assistance which Great Britain had given them, was offered from motives of humanity, and not as the price of their liberty; and if she now wished pay for it, she must make an allowance for the assistance she herself had received

from the colonies, and for the advantages she had gained by her oppressive restrictions on American commerce; and that, as for future protection, the colonies had full confidence in their ability to defend themselves against any foreign enemy. **1764.**

13. [1]Notwithstanding the murmurs which had arisen from every quarter, the British ministers were not to be diverted from their plan; and early in 1765, the stamp act passed[a] the House of Commons by a majority of five to one,—the House of Lords,[b] without any opposition,—and soon after received[c] the royal assent. This act ordained that instruments of writing, such as deeds, bonds, notes, and printed pamphlets, almanacs, newspapers, &c., should be executed on stamped paper; for which a duty should be paid to the crown. The act was to go into operation on the first day of November of the same year. 1765.

1. *Give an account of the Stamp Act.*

a. Feb. 7.

b. March 8.

c. March 22.

14. [2]When the news of the passage of this act reached America, a general indignation spread through the country; breaking forth, in some places, in acts of outrage and violence; and, in others, assuming the spirit of calm but determined resistance. [3]At Boston and Philadelphia, the bells were muffled and rung a funeral peal; at New York, the act was carried through the streets with a death's head affixed to it, and styled "The folly of England and the ruin of America." [4]The stamps themselves, in many places, were seized and destroyed; the houses of those who sided with the government were plundered; the stamp officers were compelled to resign; and the doctrine was openly avowed, that England had no right to tax America.

2. *In what manner was the indignation of the colonies manifested?*

3. *At Boston and Philadelphia?*

At New York?

4. *What is said of the stamps, and the stamp officers, and what doctrine was openly avowed?*

15. [5]In the assembly of Virginia, Patrick Henry introduced[d] a series of seven resolutions; the first four asserting the rights and privileges of the colonists; the fifth declaring the exclusive right of that assembly to tax the inhabitants of that colony; and the other two asserting that the people were "not bound to yield obedience to any law or ordinance whatsoever," designed to impose taxation upon them, other than the laws and ordinances of the general assembly; and that any person who, "By writing or speaking," should

d. May, 1765.

5. *Give an account of the Virginia Resolutions.*

1765. maintain the contrary, should be deemed "an enemy" to the colonies.

1. *What were Patrick Henry's remarks?*

16. [1]In the heat of the discussion which followed, Henry boldly denounced the policy of the British government; and, carried by the fervor of his zeal beyond the bounds of prudence, he declared that the king had acted the part of a tyrant. Alluding to the fate of other tyrants, he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George the Third,"—here pausing a moment until the cry of "Treason, treason," had ended,—he added, "may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

a. May 29.
2. *What was done with the resolutions?*

17. [2]After a violent debate, the first five resolutions were carried[a] by the bold eloquence of Henry, though by a small majority. The other two were considered too audacious and treasonable, to be admitted, even by the warmest friends of America. On the following day, in the absence of Henry, the fifth resolution was rescinded; but the whole had already gone forth to the country, rousing the people to a more earnest assertion of their rights, and kindling a more lively enthusiasm in favor of liberty.

3. *What was done by the Assembly of Massachusetts?*
b. June 6.

18. [3]The assembly of Massachusetts had been moved by a kindred spirit; and before the news of the proceedings in Virginia reached them, they had taken[b] the decisive step of calling a congress of deputies from the several colonies, to meet in the ensuing October, a few weeks before the day appointed for the stamp act to go into operation. [4]In the mean time the popular feeling against the stamp act continued to increase; town and country meetings were held in every colony; associations were formed; inflammatory speeches were made; and angry resolutions were adopted; and, in all directions, every measure was taken to keep up and aggravate the popular discontent.

4. *What was the state of popular feeling, and how exhibited?*

c. Oct. 7.
5. *Give an account of the proceedings of the first Colonial Congress.*

19. [5]In the midst of the excitement, which was still increasing in violence, the First Colonial Congress met[c] at New York, on the first Tuesday in October. Nine colonies were represented, by twenty-eight delegates. Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, was chosen president. After mature deliberation, the congress agreed on a Declaration of Rights and a statement

of grievances. They asserted, in strong terms, the right of the colonies to be exempted from all taxes not imposed by their own representatives. They also concurred in a petition to the king, and prepared a memorial to each house of parliament. **1765.**

20. [1]The proceedings were approved by all the members, except Mr. Ruggles of Massachusetts, and Mr. Ogden of New Jersey; but the deputies of three of the colonies had not been authorized by their respective legislatures to apply to the king or parliament. The petition and memorials were, therefore, signed by the delegates of six colonies only; but all the rest, whether represented or not, afterwards approved the measures adopted.

1. *By whom were the proceedings approved, and by whom signed?*

21. [2]On the arrival of the first of November, the day on which the stamp act was to go into operation, scarcely a sheet of the numerous bales of stamped paper which had been sent to America, was to be found in the colonies. Most of it had been destroyed, or reshipped to England. [3]The first of November was kept as a day of mourning. Shops and stores were closed; the vessels displayed their flags at half mast; bells were muffled and tolled as for a funeral; effigies were hung and burned; and every thing was done to manifest the determined opposition of the people to the act, its authors, and advocates.

2. *What is said of the arrival of the first of November?*

3. *How was the day kept?*

22. [4]As, by the terms of the act, no legal business could be transacted without the use of stamped paper, business was, for a time, suspended. The courts were closed; marriages ceased; vessels were delayed in the harbors; and all the social and mercantile affairs of a continent stagnated at once. By degrees, however, things resumed their usual course: law and business transactions were written on unstamped paper; and the whole machinery of society went on as before, without regard to the act of parliament.

4. *What effect had the Stamp Act on business transactions?*

23. [5]About this time the associations of the "*Sons of Liberty*" assumed an extent and importance which exerted great influence on subsequent events. These societies, forming a powerful combination of the defenders of liberty throughout all the colonies, denounced the stamp act as a flagrant outrage on the British con-

5. *Give an account of the associations of the "Sons of Liberty."*

1765. stitution. Their members resolved to defend the liberty of the press, at all hazards; and pledged their lives and property for the defence of those who, in the exercise of their rights as freemen, should become the objects of British tyranny.

1. What non-importation agreements were entered into?

24. [1]The merchants of New York, Boston, and Philadelphia, and, subsequently, of many other places, entered into engagements with each other to import no more goods from Great Britain, until the stamp act should be repealed. [2]Individuals and families denied themselves the use of all foreign luxuries; articles of domestic manufacture came into general use; and the trade with Great Britain was almost entirely suspended.

2. What course was taken by individuals and families? The effect?

3. How was the news of these proceedings received in England, and what change of ministry occurred?

25. [3]When the accounts of the proceedings in America were transmitted to England, they were received, by the government, with resentment and alarm. Fortunately, however, the former ministry had been dismissed; and, in the place of Lord Grenville, the Marquis of Rockingham, a friend of America, had been appointed first lord of the treasury. [4]To the new ministry it was obvious that the odious stamp act must be repealed, or that the Americans must, by force of arms, be reduced to submission. The former being deemed the wiser course, a resolution to repeal was introduced into parliament.

4. What course was taken by the new ministry?

1766.

5. Give an account of the proceedings which attended the repeal of the Stamp Act.

1766. March.

6. What were some of Mr. Pitt's remarks?

26. [5]A long and angry debate followed. The resolution was violently opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents; and as warmly advocated by Mr. Pitt, in the House of Commons, and by Lord Camden in the House of Peers. Mr. Pitt boldly justified the colonists in opposing the stamp act. [6]"You have no right," said he, "to tax America. I rejoice that America has resisted. Three millions of our fellow-subjects, so lost to every sense of virtue, as tamely to give up their liberties, would be fit instruments to make slaves of the rest." He concluded by expressing his deliberate judgment, that the stamp act "ought to be repealed, absolutely, totally, and immediately."

8. March 18.

7. By what was the repeal accompanied?

27. [7]The repeal was at length carried;[8] but it was accompanied by a declaratory act, designed as a kind of salvo to the national honor, affirming that parliament had power to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever

1766.

The repeal was received with great joy, in London, by the manufacturers and the friends of America. The shipping in the river Thames displayed their colors, and houses were illuminated throughout the city. [2]The news was received in America with lively expressions of joy and gratitude. Public thanksgivings were held; the importation of British goods was again encouraged; and a general calm, without a parallel in history, immediately succeeded the storm which had raged with such threatening violence.

1. *How was it received in London?*

2. *In America?*

28. [3]Other events, however, soon fanned the flame of discord anew. The passage of the declaratory act might have been a sufficient warning that the repeal of the stamp act was but a truce in the war against American rights. [4]The Rockingham ministry having been dissolved, a new cabinet was formed[a] under Mr. Pitt, who was created Earl of Chatham. [5]While Mr. Pitt was confined by sickness, in the country, Mr. Townsend, chancellor of the exchequer, revived the scheme of taxing America. By him a bill was introduced into parliament, imposing duties on glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea.

3. *What is remarked of "other events?" and the passage of the declaratory act?*

a. July, 1766.

4. *What change occurred in the ministry?*

5. *What new scheme of taxing America was introduced?*

29. [6]In the absence of Mr. Pitt the bill passed with but little opposition, and was approved[b] by the king. [7]A bill was also passed establishing a board of trade in the colonies, independent of colonial legislation; and another, suspending the legislative power of the assembly of New York, until it should furnish the king's troops with certain supplies at the expense of the colony. [8]The excitement produced in America, by the passage of these bills, was scarcely less than that occasioned by the passage of the stamp act, two years before.

1767.

6. *What is said of the passage of the bill?*

b. June 29.

7. *What other obnoxious bills were passed?*

8. *What is said of the excitement produced?*

30. [9]The colonial assemblies promptly adopted spirited resolutions against the odious enactments; new associations, in support of domestic manufactures, and against the use and importation of British fabrics, were entered into; the political writers of the day filled the columns of the public papers with earnest appeals to the people; and, already, the legislative authority of parliament over the colonies, instead of being longer the subject of doubt, began to be boldly denied. The

9. *What is said of the "Colonial assemblies?" "New associations?" "Political writers?" "Legislative authority of Parliament?"*

1768. assembly of Massachusetts sent[a] a circular to the other colonies, entreating their co-operation in obtaining a redress of grievances.

a. Feb.

"Massachusetts circular?"

31. [1]This circular highly displeased the British ministry, who instructed the governor of Massachusetts to require the assembly, in his majesty's name, to "*rescind*" the resolution adopting the circular; and to express their "disapprobation of that *rash* and *hasty* proceeding." [2]The assembly, however, were not intimidated. They passed a nearly unanimous vote not to rescind; and citing, as an additional cause of complaint, this attempt to restrain their right of deliberation, reaffirmed their opinions in still more energetic language. [3]Governor Bernard then dissolved the assembly, but not before they had prepared a list of accusations against him, and petitioned the king for his removal.

1. *What then did the British ministry require?*

2. *What did the Assembly do?*

3. *The Governor?*

32. [4]These proceedings were soon after followed by a violent tumult in Boston. A sloop having been seized[b] by the custom-house officers for violating some of the new commercial regulations, the people assembled in crowds, attacked the houses of the officers, assaulted their persons, and, finally, obliged them to take refuge in Castle William,* situated at the entrance of the harbor. [5]At the request of the governor, who had complained of the refractory spirit of the Bostonians, General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was ordered to station a military force in Boston, to overawe the citizens, and protect the custom-house officers in the discharge of their duties.

4. *Give an account of the tumult in Boston.*

b. June 10.

5. *What military orders followed?*

33. [6]The troops, to the number of 700, arrived from Halifax, late in September, and, on the first of October, under cover of the cannon of the ships, landed in the town, with muskets charged, bayonets fixed, and all the military parade usual on entering an enemy's country. [7]The selectmen of Boston having peremptorily refused to provide quarters for the soldiers, the governor ordered the state-house to be opened for their

6. *Give an account of the arrival and landing of royal troops.*

7. *How were they received, and how regarded by the inhabitants?*

* *Castle William* was on Castle Island, nearly three miles S.E. from Boston. In 1798 Massachusetts ceded the fortress to the United States. On the 7th Dec., 1799, it was visited by President Adams, who named it *Fort Independence*. Half a mile north is Governor's Island, on which is *Fort Warren*. Between these two forts is the entrance to Boston Harbor. (See Map, p. 210.)

reception. The imposing display of military force served only to excite the indignation of the inhabitants; the most irritating language passed between the soldiers and the citizens; the former looking upon the latter as rebels, and the latter regarding the former as the instruments of a most odious tyranny. **1768.**

34. [1]Early in the following year, both houses of parliament went a step beyond all that had preceded—censuring, in the strongest terms, the conduct of the people of Massachusetts,—approving the employment of force against the rebellious, and praying the king to direct the governor of Massachusetts to cause those guilty of treason to be arrested and sent to England for trial. [2]These proceedings of parliament called forth, from the colonial assemblies, still stronger resolutions, declaring the exclusive right of the people to tax themselves, and denying the right of his majesty to remove an offender out of the country for trial. 1769. *1. What odious proceedings of parliament followed?* Feb. 1769 " *2. How were they received by the colonial assemblies?*

35. [3]The refractory assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina were soon after dissolved by their governors. The governor of Massachusetts having called upon the assembly of that province to provide funds for the payment of the troops quartered among them, they resolved that they never would make such provision. The governor, therefore, prorogued the assembly, and, soon after being recalled, was succeeded[a] in office by Lieutenant-governor Hutchinson. *2. What events occurred in Virginia, Carolina, and Massachusetts?* a. Aug.

36. [4]In March of the following year, an event occurred in Boston, which produced a great sensation throughout America. An affray having taken place between some citizens and soldiers, the people became greatly exasperated; and, on the evening of the 5th of March, a crowd surrounded, and insulted a portion of the city guard, under Captain Preston, and dared them to fire. The soldiers at length fired, and three of the populace were killed, and several badly wounded. 1770. *4. Give an account of the affray in Boston.* March 5.

37. [5]The greatest commotion immediately prevailed. The bells were rung, and, in a short time, several thousands of the citizens had assembled under arms. With difficulty they were appeased by the governor, who promised that justice should be done them in the morning. Upon the demand of the inhabitants, the soldiers *5. Of the events which followed.*

1770. were removed from the city. Captain Preston and his company were arrested and tried for murder. Two of the most eminent American patriots, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, volunteered in their defence. Two of the soldiers were convicted of manslaughter, the rest were acquitted.

1. What is said of Lord North's partial repeal act?

38. [1]On the very day of the Boston outrage, Lord North, who had been placed at the head of the administration, proposed to parliament the repeal of all duties imposed by the act of 1767, except that on *tea*. The bill passed, though with great opposition,

a. April 12.

and was approved[a] by the king; but the Americans

The effect?

were not satisfied with this partial concession, and the non-importation agreements were still continued against the purchase and use of tea.

1772.

2. What was done in 1772?

39. [2]In 1772, by a royal regulation, provision was made for the support of the governor and judges of Massachusetts, out of the revenues of the province, independent of any action of the colonial assemblies.

3. How regarded by the Assembly?

[3]This measure the assembly declared to be an "Infraction of the rights of the inhabitants granted by the royal charter."

1773.

4. What were the next measures of the British ministry?

40. [4]In 1773, the British ministry attempted to effect, by artful policy, what open measures, accompanied by coercion, had failed to accomplish. A bill passed parliament, allowing the British East India Company to export their tea to America, free from the duties which they had before paid in England; retaining

5. Why was it thought that the Americans would pay the duty?

those only which were to be paid in America. [5]It was thought that the Americans would pay the small duty of three-pence per pound, as they would, even then, obtain tea cheaper in America than in England.

6. Why did the colonies resist the project?

41. [6]In this, however, the parliament was mistaken. Although no complaint of oppressive taxation could be made to the measure, yet the whole principle against which the colonies had contended was involved in it, and they determined, at all hazards, to defeat the project. [7]Vast quantities of tea were soon sent to America; but the ships destined for New York and Philadelphia, finding the ports closed against them, were obliged to return to England, without effecting a landing.

7. What became of the tea sent to New York and Philadelphia?

42. [1]In Charleston the tea was landed, but was not permitted to be offered for sale; and, being stored in damp cellars, it finally perished. [2]The tea designed for Boston had been consigned to the particular friends of Governor Hutchinson, and permission to return it to England was positively refused. But the people as obstinately refused to allow it to be landed. In this position of the controversy, a party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships; and, in the presence of thousands of spectators, broke open three hundred and forty-two chests of tea, and emptied[a] their contents into the harbor.

1773.

1. *What is said of the tea sent to Charleston*

2. *Give an account of the destruction of tea at Boston*

a. Dec. 16.

43. [3]In the spirit of revenge for these proceedings, parliament soon after passed[b] the Boston Port Bill; which forbade the landing and shipping of goods, wares, and merchandise, at Boston, and removed the custom-house, with its dependencies, to Salem. [4]The people of Salem, however, nobly refused to raise their own fortunes on the ruins of their suffering neighbors; and the inhabitants of Marblehead* generously offered the merchants of Boston the use of their harbor, wharves, and warehouses, free of expense.

1774.

b. March 31.

3. *What is said of the Boston Port Bill?*

4. *Of the generosity of Salem and Marblehead?*

44. [5]Soon after, the charter of Massachusetts was subverted;[c] and the governor was authorized to send to another colony, or to England, for trial, any person indicted for murder, or any other capital offence, committed in aiding the magistrates in the discharge of their duties. [6]The Boston Port Bill occasioned great suffering in Boston. The assembly of the province resolved that "The impolicy, injustice, inhumanity, and cruelty of the act, exceeded all their powers of expression." [7]The Virginia assembly appointed the 1st of June, the day on which the bill was to go into effect, as a day of "fasting, humiliation, and prayer."

c. May 20

5. *What measures were taken against Massachusetts?*

6. *What resolution did the assembly adopt?*

7. *What did the Virginia assembly do?*

45. [8]In September, a second colonial congress, composed of deputies from eleven colonies, met at Philadelphia. This body highly commended the course of Massachusetts in her conflict with "wicked ministers;"—agreed upon a declaration of rights;—recommended the suspension of all commercial inter-

8. *What were the proceedings of the second colonial congress?*

* *Marblehead*, originally a part of Salem, is about fifteen miles N.E. from Boston, and is situated on a rocky peninsula, extending three or four miles into Massachusetts Bay

1774. course with Great Britain, so long as the grievances of the colonies were unredressed; voted an address to the king, and likewise one to the people of Great Britain, and another to the inhabitants of Canada.

Oct.

1. Their effect on the British government?

2. What was done by General Gage?

46. [1]The proceedings of the congress called forth stronger measures, on the part of the British government, for reducing the Americans to obedience. [2]General Gage, who had recently been appointed governor of Massachusetts, caused Boston neck to be fortified, and, seizing the ammunition and military stores in the provincial arsenals at Cambridge and Charlestown, conveyed them to Boston.

Sept.

3. What was done by the assembly of Massachusetts?

Oct.

47. [3]On the other hand, the assembly of Massachusetts having been dissolved by the governor, the members again met, and resolved themselves into a provincial congress. They appointed committees of "safety" and "supplies;"—voted to equip twelve thousand men, and to enlist one-fourth of the militia as minute-men, who should be ready for action at a moment's warning.

4. In other colonies?

[4]Similar preparations, but less in extent, were made in other colonies.

1775.

Feb., March.

5. What is said of the final measure of determined oppression on the part of England?

48. [5]As the last measures of determined oppression, a bill was passed for restraining the commerce of the New England colonies; which was afterwards extended to embrace all the provinces, except New York and North Carolina. The inhabitants of Massachusetts were declared rebels; and several ships of the line, and ten thousand troops, were ordered to America, to aid in reducing the rebellious colonies to submission.

6. Of the determined resistance of the Americans?

49. [6]The Americans, on the other hand, having no longer any hope of reconciliation, and determined to resist oppression, anxiously waited for the fatal moment to arrive, when the signal of war should be given. Though few in numbers, and feeble in resources, when compared with the power which sought to crush them, they were confident of the justice of their cause, and the rectitude of their purposes; and they resolved, if no other alternative were left them, to die freemen rather than live slaves.

BATTLE OF BUNKER'S [OR BREED'S] HILL. (See page 212.)

1775.

PART III.

AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

Of what does Part III. treat?

CHAPTER I.

EVENTS OF 1775.

Of what does Chapter I. treat?

1. [1]In the beginning of April, the royal troops in Boston numbered nearly 3000 men. [2]With so large a force at his disposal, General Gage indulged the hope, either of awing the provincials into submission, or of being able to quell any sudden outbreak of rebellion. [3]Deeming it important to get possession of the stores and ammunition which the people had collected at various places, on the night of the 18th of April he secretly despatched a force of eight hundred men, to destroy the stores at Concord,* sixteen miles from Boston.

1. *What is said of the royal troops in Boston?*
2. *Of the views of Gen. Gage?*
3. *What measures were taken by him?*

* *Concord* is in Middlesex county, sixteen miles N.W. from Boston. A marble monument, erected in 1836, marks the spot where the first of the enemy fell in the war of the revolution.

1775. 2. [1]Notwithstanding the great precautions which had been taken to prevent the intelligence of this expedition from reaching the country, it became known to some of the patriots in Boston, who despatched confidential messengers along the supposed route; and early on the morning of the 19th, the firing of cannon, and the ringing of bells, gave the alarm that the royal troops were in motion.

1. *How did intelligence of the expedition reach the country?*

2. *What events occurred at Lexington?*

3. [2]At Lexington* a number of the militia had assembled, as early as two o'clock in the morning; but as the intelligence respecting the regulars was uncertain, they were dismissed, with orders to appear again at beat of drum. At five o'clock, they collected a second time, to the number of seventy, under command of Captain Parker. The British, under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, soon made their appearance. The latter officer rode up to the militia, and called out, "Disperse, you rebels, throw down your arms and disperse;" but not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his soldiers to fire. Several of the militia were killed, and the rest dispersed.

3. *What at Concord?*

4. [3]The detachment then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed a part of the stores; but the militia of the country having begun to assemble in numbers, a skirmish ensued, and several were killed on both sides.

4. *Give an account of the retreat of the British.*

[4]The British then commenced a hasty retreat,—the Americans pursuing, and keeping up a continual fire upon them. Fortunately for the British, they were met at Lexington by a reenforcement of nine hundred men with two field-pieces, under Lord Percy. The united forces then moved rapidly to Charlestown, and the following day, crossed over to Boston.

5. *What losses were sustained?*

[5]During this expedition, the British lost, in killed, wounded and missing, about two hundred and eighty;—the provincials, about ninety.

6. *What consequences followed the battle of Lexington?*

5. [6]Intelligence of these events spread rapidly through Massachusetts and the adjoining provinces. The battle of Lexington was the signal of war—the militia of the country hastily took up arms and repaired to the

* *Lexington* is ten miles N.W. from Boston, on the road to Concord. In 1799 a small monument, with an appropriate inscription, was erected four or five rods westward from the spot where the Americans were fired upon. (See Map, p. 74.)

scene of action; and, in a few days, a line of encampment was formed from Roxbury to the river Mystic,* and the British forces in Boston were environed by an army of 20,000 men. Ammunition, forts, and fortifications, were secured for the use of the provincials; and the most active measures were taken for the public defence. **1775.**

6. [1]A number of volunteers from Connecticut and Vermont, under Colonel Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, formed and executed the plan of seizing the important fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain, and commanding the entrance into Canada. The pass of Skeenesborough, now Whitehall,† was likewise secured; and by this fortunate expedition, more than one hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war, fell into the hands of the provincials.

1. *What is said of the expedition of Allen and Arnold?*

May.

7. [2]These events were soon followed by others of still greater importance, in the vicinity of Boston. The British troops had received[a] reinforcements, under three distinguished generals,—Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne; which, with the garrison, formed a well-disciplined army, of from ten to twelve thousand men. [3]General Gage, being now prepared to act with more decision and vigor, issued[b] a proclamation, declaring those in arms rebels and traitors; and offering pardon to such as would return to their allegiance, and resume their peaceful occupations. From this indulgence, however, Samuel Adams and John Hancock, two distinguished patriots, were excepted; as their crimes were deemed too flagitious to admit of pardon.

2. *What events in Boston followed?*

a. May 25

3. *What is said of Gen. Gage's proclamation?*

b. June 12.

8. [4]As the British were evidently prepared to penetrate into the country, the Americans first strengthened their intrenchments across Boston neck; but afterwards, learning that the views of the British had changed, and were then directed towards the peninsula of Charlestown, they resolved to defeat this new project of the enemy. [5]Orders were therefore given

4. *What hostile measures were adopted by the Americans?*

5. *What orders were given to Col. Prescott?*

* *Mystic*, or Medford River, flows into Boston Harbor, N.E. of Charlestown. (See Map, p. 74; and Map, p. 210.)

† *Whitehall* is situated on both sides of Wood Creek, at its entrance into the southern extremity of Lake Champlain. Being at the head of navigation, on the lake, and on the line of communication between New York and Canada, it was an important post. (See Map, p. 181; and Note, p. 130.)

1775. to Colonel Prescott, on the evening of the 16th of June, to take a detachment of one thousand Americans, and form an intrenchment on Bunker Hill;* a high eminence which commanded the neck of the peninsula of Charlestown.

1. *What was done by him?*

9. [1]By some mistake, the detachment proceeded to *Breed's Hill*,† an eminence within cannon shot of Boston; and, by the dawn of day, had erected a square redoubt, capable of sheltering them from the fire of the enemy. [2]Nothing could exceed the astonishment of the British, at beholding, on the following morning, this daring advance of the Americans. As the eminence overlooked the city of Boston, it was immediately perceived that a powerful battery, planted there, would soon compel the British to evacuate the place.

2. *How was this daring advance regarded?*

June 17.

3. *What measures were taken by the British?*

[3]A heavy fire was therefore commenced on the Americans, from vessels in the harbor, and from a fortification on Copp's Hill, in Boston; but with little effect; and about noon, a force of three thousand regulars, commanded by General Howe, crossed over to Charlestown, in boats, with the design of storming the works.

4. *What is said of their advance against the American works?*

10. [4]Landing at Moreton's Point,‡ on the extremity of the peninsula, the English formed in two columns, and advanced slowly, allowing time for the artillery to produce its effect upon the works.

5. *Of the spectators of this scene?*

[5]In the mean time the surrounding heights, the spires of churches, and the roofs of houses in Boston, were covered with thousands of spectators, waiting, in dreadful anxiety, the

PLAN OF THE SIEGE OF BOSTON. 1775.

* *Bunker's Hill* is in the northern part of the peninsula of Charlestown, and is 113 feet in height. (See Map.)

† *Breed's Hill*, which is eighty-seven feet high, commences near the southern extremity of Bunker's Hill, and extends towards the south and east. It is now usually called Bunker's Hill, and the monument on its summit, erected to commemorate the battle on the same spot, is called Bunker Hill Monument. This monument is built of Quincy granite, is thirty feet square at the base, and fifteen at the top; and rises to the height of 220 feet.

‡ *Moreton's Point* is S.E. from Breed's Hill, at the eastern extremity of the peninsula. (See Map.)

approaching battle. [1]While the British were advancing, orders were given by General Gage to set fire to the village of Charlestown; by which wanton act two thousand people were deprived of their habitations; and property, to a large amount, perished in the flames. **1775.**

1. *What is said of the burning of Charlestown?*

11. [2]The Americans waited in silence the advance of the enemy to within ten rods of the redoubt, when they opened upon them so deadly a fire of musketry, that whole ranks were cut down; the line was broken, and the royal troops retreated in disorder and precipitation. With difficulty rallied by their officers, they again reluctantly advanced, and were a second time beaten back by the same destructive and incessant stream of fire. At this critical moment General Clinton arrived with reenforcements. By his exertions, the British troops were again rallied, and a third time advanced to the charge, which at length was successful.

2. *Give an account of the battle.*

12. [3]The attack was directed against the redoubt at three several points. The cannon from the fleet had obtained a position commanding the interior of the works, which were battered in front at the same time. [4]Attacked by a superior force,—their ammunition failing,—and fighting at the point of the bayonet, without bayonets themselves,—the provincials now slowly evacuated their intrenchments, and drew off with an order not to have been expected from newly-levied soldiers. [5]They retreated across Charlestown Neck, with inconsiderable loss, although exposed to a galling fire from a ship of war, and floating batteries, and intrenched themselves on Prospect Hill,* still maintaining the command of the entrance to Boston.

3. *What was the mode of attack?*

4. *What were the disadvantages of the Americans?*

5. *Describe their retreat.*

13. [6]The British took possession of and fortified Bunker's Hill; but neither army was disposed to hazard any new movement. [7]In this desperate conflict, the royal forces engaged consisted of three thousand men; while the Americans numbered but fifteen hundred.† The loss of the British, in killed and wounded,

6. *What next did the British do?*

7. *What were the forces engaged, and the losses on each side?*

* *Prospect Hill* is a little more than two miles N.W. from Breed's Hill. (See Map p. 210.)

† NOTE.—Yet Stedman, and some other English writers, erroneously state, that the number of the Provincial troops engaged in the action was three times that of the British.

1775. was more than a thousand; that of the Americans, only about four hundred and fifty; but among the killed was the lamented General Warren.

14. [1]In the mean time the American congress had assembled[a] at Philadelphia. Again they addressed the king, and the people of Great Britain and Ireland, and, at the same time, published[b] to the world the reasons of their appeal to arms. [2]"We are reduced," said they, "to the alternative of choosing an unconditional submission to the tyranny of irritated ministers, or resistance by force. The latter is our choice. We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." [3]Having voted to raise an army of 20,000 men, they unanimously elected[c] George Washington commander-in-chief of all the forces raised or to be raised for the defence of the colonies, resolving that they would "assist him and adhere to him, with their lives and fortunes, in the defence of American liberty."

a. May 10.

1. *What were the measures of Congress at this time?*

b. Dated July 6.

2. *What language did they use?*

3. *What other measure were adopted?*

c. June 15.

15. [4]Washington, who was present, with great modesty and dignity accepted the appointment, but declined all compensation for his services, asking only the remuneration of his expenses. [5]At the same time the higher departments of the army were organized by the appointment of four major-generals, one adjutant, and eight brigadier-generals. Washington soon repaired[d] to Cambridge, to take command of the army which then amounted to about 14,000 men. These were now arranged in three divisions;[e] the right wing, under General Ward, at Roxbury; the left, under General Lee, at Prospect Hill; and the centre at Cambridge, under the commander-in-chief.

4. *On what terms did Washington accept the command?*

5. *How was the army organized and arranged?*

d. July 12.

e. See Map, p. 210.

16. [6]In entering upon the discharge of his duties, Washington had a difficult task to perform. The troops under his command were undisciplined militia, —hastily collected,—unaccustomed to subordination,— and destitute of tents, ammunition, and regular supplies of provisions. [7]But by the energy and skill of the commander-in-chief, aided, particularly, by General Gates, an officer of experience, order and discipline were soon introduced; stores were collected, and the American army was soon enabled to carry on, in due

6. *What difficulties had Washington to encounter?*

7. *What objects were soon effected?*

form, a regular siege. [1]General Gage having been recalled, he was succeeded by Sir William Howe, in the chief command of the English forces in America. **1775.**

1. *What change occurred in the British army?*

17. [2]During the summer, royal authority ended in the colonies;—most of the royal governors fleeing from the popular indignation, and taking refuge on board the English shipping. Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, having seized[a] a quantity of the public powder, and conveyed it on board a ship, the people assembled in arms, under Patrick Henry, and demanded a restitution of the powder, or its value. Payment was made, and the people quietly dispersed.

2. *What difficulties occurred with the royal governors?*

a. May

18. [3]Other difficulties occurring, Lord Dunmore retired on board a man-of-war,—armed a few ships,—and, by offering freedom to such slaves as would join the royal standard, collected a force of several hundred men, with which he attacked[b] the provincials near* Norfolk;† but he was defeated with a severe loss. Soon after, a ship of war arriving from England, Lord Dunmore gratified his revenge by reducing Norfolk to ashes.[c]

3. *What hostilities were committed by Lord Dunmore?*

b. Dec. 5

c. Jan. 1, 1776.

19. [4]The capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point having opened the gates of Canada, congress resolved to seize the favorable opportunity for invading that province; hoping thereby to anticipate the British, who were evidently preparing to attack the colonies through the same quarter. [5]For this purpose, a body of troops from New York and New England was placed under the command of Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, who passed up Lake Champlain, and, on the 10th of September, appeared before St. John's,‡ the first British post in Canada.

4. *Why did congress resolve to invade Canada?*

5. *What were the first movements in this expedition?*

6. *What prevented the capture of St. John's?*

d. Pronounced, O-Noo-ah.

20. [6]Opposed by a large force, and finding the fort too strong for assault, they retired to, and fortified Isle Aux Noix,[d] 115 miles north of Ticonderoga. [7]Soon after, General Schuyler returned to Ticonderoga to hasten

7. *What gave the command to Montgomery?*

* This affair occurred at a small village called *Great Bridge*, eight miles S. from Norfolk. The commanding officer of the enemy, and thirty of his men, were either killed or wounded.

† *Norfolk*, Virginia, is on the N.E. side of Elizabeth River, eight miles above its entrance into Hampton Roads. The situation is low, and the streets are irregular, but it is a place of extensive foreign commerce.

‡ *St. John's* is on the W. side of the River Sorel, twenty miles S.E. from Montreal and twelve miles N. from Isle Aux Noix

1775. reenforcements; but a severe illness preventing his again joining the army, the whole command devolved upon General Montgomery.

1. *What course did he pursue?*

21. [1]This enterprising officer, having first induced the Indians to remain neutral, in a few days returned to St. John's, and opened a battery against it; but want of ammunition seriously retarded the progress of the siege. While in this situation, by a sudden movement he surprised, and, after a siege of a few days,

2. Oct. 13.

captured[a] Fort Chambly,* a few miles north of St. John's, by which he obtained several pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of powder.

2. *What is said of Col. Allen?*

[2]During the siege of St. John's, Colonel Ethan Allen, having with extraordinary rashness forced his way to Montreal, with only eighty men, was defeated, captured, and sent to England in irons.

3. *When did St. John's surrender, and what events followed?*

22. [3]On the third of November St. John's surrendered, after which Montgomery proceeded rapidly to Montreal, which capitulated on the 13th; Governor Carleton having previously escaped with a small force to Quebec. Having left a garrison in Montreal, and also in the Forts Chambly and St. John's, Montgomery, with a corps of little more than three hundred men, the sole residue of his army, marched towards Quebec, expecting to meet there another body of troops which had been sent from Cambridge to act in concert with him.

4. *Give an account of Arnold's march to Canada.*

[4]This detachment, consisting of about a thousand men, under the command of General Arnold, had, with amazing difficulty and hardships, passed up the Kennebec, a river of Maine, and crossing the mountains, had descended the Chaudiere,[b]† to Point Levi, opposite Quebec, where it arrived on the 9th of November.

b. Pronounced, Sho-de-are.

13th & 14th.

c. See p. 191.

5. *What course did he pursue after his arrival?*

23. [5]On the 13th, the day of the surrender of Montreal, Arnold crossed the St. Lawrence, ascended the heights where the brave Wolfe had ascended[c] before him, and drew up his forces on the Plains of Abraham; but finding the garrison ready to receive him, and not being sufficiently strong to attempt an assault, he re-

* *Chambly* is on the W. side of the Sorel, ten miles N. from St. John's.

† The *Chaudiere* rises in Canada, near the sources of the Kennebec, and flowing N.W., enters the St. Lawrence six miles above Quebec. It is not navigable, owing to its numerous rapids.

tired to Point aux Trembles, twenty miles above Quebec, and there awaited the arrival of Montgomery. 1775.

24. [1]On the arrival[a] of the latter, the united forces, numbering in all but nine hundred effective men, marched to Quebec, then garrisoned by a superior force under command of Governor Carleton. A summons to surrender was answered by firing upon the bearer of the flag. After a siege of three weeks, during which the troops suffered severely from continued toil, and the rigors of a Canadian winter, it was resolved, as the only chance of success, to attempt the place by assault.

a. Dec. 1.

1. *What occurred after the arrival of Montgomery?*

25. [2]Accordingly, on the last[b] day of the year, between four and five o'clock in the morning, in the midst of a heavy storm of snow, the American troops, in four columns, were put in motion. While two of the columns were sent to make a feigned attack on the Upper Town,[c] Montgomery and Arnold, at the head of their respective divisions, attacked opposite quarters of the Lower Town.[c] [3]Montgomery, advancing upon the bank of the river by the way of Cape Diamond, had already passed the first barrier, when the single discharge of a cannon, loaded with grape shot, proved fatal to him,—killing, at the same time, several of his officers who stood near him.

b. Dec. 31.

2. *Describe the plan of attack.*

c. See Note and Map, p. 189.

3. *Give an account of the fall of Montgomery.*

26. [4]The soldiers shrunk back on seeing their general fall, and the officer next in command ordered a retreat. In the mean time Arnold had entered the town, but, being soon severely wounded, was carried to the hospital, almost by compulsion. Captain Morgan, afterwards distinguished by his exploits[d] at the South, then took the command; but, after continuing the contest several hours, against far superior and constantly increasing numbers, and at length vainly attempting a retreat, he was forced to surrender the remnant of his band prisoners of war.

4. *What other events happened, and what was the result of the attack?*

d. See p. 282

27. [5]The fall of Montgomery was deplored by friends and foes. Born of a distinguished Irish family, he had early entered the profession of arms;—had distinguished himself in the preceding French and Indian war;—had shared in the labors and triumph of Wolfe; and, ardently attached to the cause of liberty, had

5. *What brief account is given of Montgomery?*

1776. joined the Americans, on the breaking out of the Revolution. [1]Congress directed a monument to be erected to his memory; and in 1818, New York, his adopted state, caused his remains to be removed to her own metropolis, where the monument had been placed; and near that they repose.

1. How was his memory honored by congress; and by New York?

28. [2]After the repulse, Arnold retired with the remainder of his army to the distance of three miles above Quebec, where he received occasional reenforcements; but at no time did the army consist of more than 3000 men, of whom more than one half were generally unfit for duty. [3]General Thomas, who had been appointed to succeed Montgomery, arrived early in May; soon after which, Governor Carleton receiving reenforcements from England, the Americans were obliged to make a hasty retreat; leaving all their stores, and many of their sick, in the power of the enemy.

2. What was the condition of the army after the repulse?

3. What is said of the retreat of the army?

29. [4]The latter were treated with great kindness and humanity, and after being generously fed and clothed, were allowed a safe return to their homes; a course of policy which very much strengthened the British interests in Canada. [5]At the mouth of the Sorel the Americans were joined by several regiments, but were still unable to withstand the forces of the enemy. Here General Thomas died of the small-pox, a disease which had prevailed extensively in the American camp. After retreating from one post to another, by the 18th of June the Americans had entirely evacuated Canada.

4. What treatment did the sick receive?

5. Mention the farther events of the retreat.

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS OF 1776

Of what does Chapter II. treat?

1. [6]At the close of the year 1775, the regular troops under Washington, in the vicinity of Boston, numbered but little more than 9000 men; but by the most strenuous exertions on the part of congress, and the commander-in-chief, the number was augmented, by the middle of February, to 14,000. [7]Perceiving that

6. What is said of the American forces in the vicinity of Boston?

7. What course did congress urge Washington to take?

this force would soon be needed to protect other parts of the American territory, congress urged Washington to take more decisive measures, and, if possible, to dislodge the enemy from their position in Boston. **1776.**

2. [1]In a council of his officers, Washington proposed a direct assault; but the decision was unanimous against it; the officers alledging, that, without incurring so great a risk, but by occupying the heights[a] of Dorchester, which commanded the entire city, the enemy might be forced to evacuate the place. [2]Acquiescing in this opinion, Washington directed a severe cannonade[b] upon the city; and while the enemy were occupied in another quarter, a party of troops, with intrenching tools, on the evening of the fourth of March, took possession of the heights, unobserved by the enemy; and, before morning, completed a line of fortifications, which commanded the harbor and the city.

1. *What plan was proposed by Washington, and what by his officers?*

a. See Map p. 210.

2. *What events followed?*

b. March 2d, 3d, 4th.

3. [3]The view of these works excited the astonishment of the British general, who saw that he must immediately dislodge the Americans, or evacuate the town. [4]An attack was determined upon; but a furious storm rendering the harbor impassable, the attack was necessarily deferred; while, in the mean time, the Americans so strengthened their works, as to make the attempt to force them hopeless. No resource was now left to General Howe but immediate evacuation.

3. *How did the British general regard the works of the Americans?*

4. *What prevented an attack; and what, finally, was the only resource left to the British?*

4. [5]As his troops and shipping were exposed to the fire of the American batteries, an informal agreement was made, that he should be allowed to retire unmolested, upon condition that he would abstain from burning the city. [6]Accordingly, on the 17th, the British troops, amounting to more than 7000 soldiers, accompanied by fifteen hundred families of loyalists, quietly evacuated Boston, and sailed for Halifax. [7]Scarcely was the rear-guard out of the city, when Washington entered it, to the great joy of the inhabitants, with colors flying, and drums beating, and all the forms of victory and triumph.

5. *What agreement was made?*

March 17.

6. *What is said of the departure of the British?*

7. *Of the entrance of Washington into Boston?*

8. *What circumstances called Washington to New York, and what disposition was made of the troops?*

5. [8]Washington, ignorant of the plans of General Howe, and of the direction which the British fleet had taken, was not without anxiety for the city of New

1776. York. Therefore, after having placed Boston in a state of defence, the main body of the army was put in motion towards New York, where it arrived early in April.

1. What is said of Gen. Lee; of Sir Henry Clinton; and of the plan of the British?

6. [1]General Lee, with a force of Connecticut militia had arrived before the main body, about the time that Sir Henry Clinton, with a fleet from England, appeared off Sandy Hook. Clinton, foiled in his attempt against New York, soon sailed south; and at Cape Fear River was joined[a] by Sir Peter Parker, who had sailed[b] with a large squadron directly from Europe, having on board two thousand five hundred troops, under the command of the Earl of Cornwallis. The plan of the British was now to attempt the reduction of Charleston.

a. May 3.

b. From Cork, Feb. 12.

2. To what command had Gen. Lee been appointed; and what is said of the preparations to receive the enemy?

3. What had been done for the defence of Charleston?

7. [2]General Lee, who had been appointed to command the American forces in the Southern States, had pushed on rapidly from New York, anxiously watching the progress of Clinton; and the most vigorous preparations were made throughout the Carolinas, for the reception of the hostile fleet. [3]Charleston had been fortified, and a fort on Sullivan's Island,* commanding the channel leading to the town, had been put in a state of defence, and the command given to Colonel Moultrie.

c. June 4.

4. Give an account of the attack on Sullivan's Island.

d. See Map, p. 161.

June 28.

8. [4]Early in June, the British armament appeared[c] off the city, and having landed a strong force under General Clinton, on Long Island,[d] east of Sullivan's Island, after considerable delay advanced against the fort, and commenced a heavy bombardment on the morning of the 28th. Three of the ships that had attempted to take a station between the fort and the city were stranded. Two of them were enabled to get off much damaged, but the third was abandoned and burned.

5. What design of Gen. Clinton was defeated?

[5]It was the design of Clinton to cross the narrow channel which separates Long Island from Sullivan's Island, and assail the fort by land, during the attack by the ships; but, unexpectedly, the channel was found too deep to be forded, and a strong force

* *Sullivan's Island* is six miles below Charleston, lying to the N. of the entrance to the harbor, and separated from the mainland by a narrow inlet. (See Map, p. 161.

under Colonel Thompson, was waiting on the opposite bank ready to receive him. **1776.**

9. [1]The garrison of the fort, consisting of only about 400 men, mostly militia, acted with the greatest coolness and gallantry,—aiming with great precision and effect, in the midst of the tempest of balls hailed upon them by the enemy's squadron. [2]After an engagement of eight hours, from eleven in the forenoon until seven in the evening, the vessels drew off and abandoned the enterprise. [3]In a few days the fleet, with the troops on board, sailed for New York, where the whole British force had been ordered to assemble.

1. What is said of the conduct of the garrison?

2. Of the result of the action?

3. Of the departure of the fleet?

10. [4]In this engagement the vessels of the enemy were seriously injured, and the loss in killed and wounded exceeded 200 men. The admiral himself, and Lord Campbell, late governor of the province, were wounded,—the latter mortally. The loss of the garrison was only 10 killed and 22 wounded. [5]The fort, being built of palmetto, a wood resembling cork, was little damaged. In honor of its brave commander it has since been called Fort Moultrie. [6]This fortunate repulse of the enemy placed the affairs of South Carolina, for a time, in a state of security, and inflamed the minds of the Americans with new ardor.

4. What was the loss on each side?

5. What is said of the fort and its brave commander?

6. What were the effects of this repulse of the enemy?

11. [7]The preparations which England had recently been making for the reduction of the colonies, were truly formidable. By a treaty with several of the German princes, the aid of 17,000 German or Hessian troops had been engaged; 25,000 additional English troops, and a large fleet, had been ordered to America; amounting, in all, to 55,000 men, abundantly supplied with provisions, and all the necessary munitions of war; and more than a million of dollars had been voted to defray the extraordinary expenses of the year.

7. Give an account of the formidable warlike preparations of England.

8. What professions has the colonies thus far made to the British king, and what had they continually protested?

12. [8]Yet with all this threatening array against them, and notwithstanding all the colonies were now in arms against the mother country, they had hitherto professed allegiance to the British king, and had continually protested that they were contending only for their just rights and a redress of grievances. [9]But as it became more apparent that England would abandon

9. What change occurred in their feelings, and what was the cause?

1776. none of her claims, and would accept nothing bu the total dependence and servitude of her colonies, the feelings of the latter changed; and sentiments of loyalty gave way to republican principles, and the desire for independence.

1. *What did congress recommend to the colonies?*

13. [1]Early in May, congress, following the advance of public opinion, recommended to the colonies, no longer to consider themselves as holding or exercising any powers under Great Britain, but to adopt "Such governments as might best conduce to the happiness and safety of the people." [2]The recommendation was generally complied with, and state constitutions were adopted, and representative governments established, virtually proclaiming all separation from the mother country, and entire independence of the British crown.

2. *How was the recommendation complied with?*

3. *What instructions did some colonies give to their delegates?*

[3]Several of the colonies, likewise, instructed their delegates to join in all measures which might be agreed to in congress, for the advancement of the interests, safety, and dignity of the colonies.

June 7.

4. *What resolution was offered in congress by Richard Henry Lee?*

14. [4]On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered a resolution in congress, declaring that "The United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent states;—that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown;—and that all political connexion between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved."

5. *How was the resolution received?*

[5]This resolution was debated with great earnestness, eloquence, and ability; and although it finally passed, it at first encountered a strong opposition from some of the most zealous partisans of American liberty. Having at length been adopted by a bare majority, the final consideration of the subject was postponed to the first of July.

6. *What committee was appointed, and for what purpose?*

15. [6]In the mean time a committee,—consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston,—was instructed to prepare a declaration in accordance with the object of the resolution.

7. *Who drew up the declaration, and what is said of its adoption?*

[7]This paper, principally drawn up by Mr. Jefferson, came up for discussion on the first of July; and, on the fourth, received the assent of the delegates of all the colonies; which thus dissolved their allegiance to the British crown, and de-

July 4.

clared themselves free and independent, under the name of the thirteen UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. **1776.**

16. [1]The declaration of independence was every where received by the people with demonstrations of joy. Public rejoicings were held in various parts of the Union; the ensigns of royalty were destroyed; and nothing was forgotten that might tend to inspire the people with affection for the new order of things, and with the most violent hatred towards Great Britain and her adherents.

1. *How did the people manifest their joy on receiving it?*

17. [2]Before the declaration of independence, General Howe had sailed[a] from Halifax,—had arrived at Sandy Hook on the 25th of June,—and, on the second of July, had taken possession of Staten Island. Being soon after joined[b] by his brother, Admiral Howe, from England, and by the forces of Clinton from the south, he found himself at the head of an army of 24,000 of the best troops of Europe. Others were expected soon to join him, making, in the whole, an army of 35,000 men. [3]The design of the British was to seize New York, with a force sufficient to keep possession of the Hudson River,—open a communication with Canada, —separate the Eastern from the Middle States,—and overrun the adjacent country at pleasure.

2. *What military events occurred about the time of the declaration of independence?*

a. June 11.

b. July 12.

3. *What was the design of the British?*

18. [4]To oppose the designs of the enemy, the American general had collected a force, consisting chiefly of undisciplined militia, amounting to about 27,000 men; but many of these were invalids, and many were unprovided with arms; so that the effective force amounted to but little more than 17,000 men. [5]Soon after the arrival of the fleet, Lord Howe, the British admiral, sent a letter, offering terms of accommodation, and directed to "George Washington, Esq."

4. *What forces were at the command of the American general?*

5. *What is said of the letters that Lord Howe sent to General Washington?*

19. This letter Washington declined receiving; asserting that, whoever had written it, it did not express his public station; and that, as a private individual, he could hold no communication with the enemies of his country. A second letter, addressed to "George Washington, &c. &c. &c.," and brought by the adjutant-general of the British army, was in like manner declined. [6]It appeared, however, that the powers of the British generals extended no farther than

6. *What powers appeared to have been granted to the British generals?*

1776. "to grant pardons to such as deserved mercy." [1]They were assured in return, that the people were not conscious of having committed any crime in opposing British tyranny, and therefore they needed no pardon.

1. *What were they assured in return?*

2. *What did the British generals now resolve?*

20. [2]The British generals, having gained nothing by their attempts at accommodation, now directing their attention to the prosecution of the war, resolved to strike the first blow without delay. [3]Accordingly,

Aug. 22.

3. *Give an account of the landing of the enemy, and their march towards the American camp.*

on the 22d of August, the enemy landed on the southern shore of Long Island, near the villages of New Utrecht* and Gravesend;† and having divided their army into three divisions, commenced their march towards the American camp, at Brooklyn, then under the command of General Putnam.

4. *Describe the country which separated the two armies.*

21. [4]A range of hills, running from the Narrows to Jamaica, separated the two armies. Through these hills were three passes,—one by the Narrows,—a second by the village of Flatbush,‡—and a third by the way of Flatland;§ the latter leading to the right, and intersecting, on the heights, the road which leads from Bedford‖ to Jamaica. [5]General Grant, commanding the left division of the army, proceeded by the Narrows; General Heister directed the centre, composed of the Hessian regiments; and General Clinton the right.

5. *In what order did the British army advance?*

6. *What is said of the beginning and progress of the battle?*

22. [6]Detachments of the Americans, under the command of General Sullivan, guarded the coast, and the road from Bedford to Jamaica. On the evening of the 26th, General Clinton advanced from Flatland,—

Aug. 26.

Aug. 27.

reached the heights, and, on the morning of the 27th,

BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

* *New Utrecht* is at the W. end of Long Island, near the Narrows, seven miles below New York City. (See Map.)

† *Gravesend* is a short distance S.E. from New Utrecht, and nine miles from New York. (See Map.)

‡ *Flatbush* is five miles S.E. from New York. It was near the N.W. boundary of this town that the principal battle was fought. (See Map.)

§ *Flatland* is N.E. from the village of Gravesend, and about eight miles S.E. from New York. (See Map.)

‖ The village of *Bedford* is near the heights, two or three miles S.E. from Brooklyn. (See Map.)

seized an important defile, which, through carelessness, the Americans had left unguarded. With the morning light he descended with his whole force by the village of Bedford, into the plain which lay between the hills and the American camp. In the mean time Generals Grant and De Heister had engaged nearly the whole American force, which had advanced to defend the defiles on the west—ignorant of the movements of Clinton, who soon fell upon their left flank. 1776

23. [1]When the approach of Clinton was discovered, the Americans commenced a retreat; but being intercepted by the English, they were driven back upon the Hessians; and thus attacked, both in front and rear, many were killed, and many were made prisoners. Others forced their way through the opposing ranks, and regained the American lines at Brooklyn. [2]During the action, Washington passed over to Brooklyn, where he saw, with inexpressible anguish, the destruction of many of his best troops, but was unable to relieve them.

1. *How did the action terminate?*

2. *What is said of Washington?*

24. [3]The American loss was stated by Washington at one thousand, in killed, wounded, and prisoners; and by the British general, at 3,300. Among the prisoners, were Generals Sullivan, Stirling, and Woodhull. The loss of the British was less than 400. [4]The consequences of the defeat were more alarming to the Americans than the loss of their men. The army was dispirited; and as large numbers of the militia were under short engagements of a few weeks, whole regiments deserted and returned to their homes.

3. *What losses were sustained on each side?*

4. *What were the consequences of this defeat?*

25. [5]On the following day[a] the enemy encamped in front of the American lines, designing to defer an attack until the fleet could co-operate with the land troops. [6]But Washington, perceiving the impossibility of sustaining his position, profited by the delay; and, on the night of the 29th, silently drew off his troops to New York; nor was it until the sun had dissipated the mist on the following morning, that the English discovered, to their surprise, that the Americans had abandoned their camp, and were already sheltered from pursuit. [7]A descent upon New York being the next design of the enemy, a part of their fleet doubled

a. Aug. 28.

5. *What was the next movements of the enemy?*

Aug. 29. 30.

6. *What is said of the retreat of the Americans?*

7. *What was next done by the enemy?*

1776. Long Island, and appeared in the Sound; while the main body, entering the harbor, took a position nearly within cannon shot of the city.

1 *What was determined in a council of war, and what was accordingly done?*

26. [1]In a council of war, held on the 12th of September, the Americans determined to abandon the city; and, accordingly, no time was lost in removing the military stores, which were landed far above, on the western shore of the Hudson.

2 *What positions did the Americans take?*

[2]The commander in-chief retired to the heights of Harlem,* and a strong force was stationed at Kingsbridge,† in the northern part of the island.

Sept. 15.

3 *When did the enemy advance upon New York, and what position did they take?*

27. [3]On the 15th, a strong detachment of the enemy landed on the east side of New York Island, about three miles above the city, and meeting with little resistance, took a position extending across the island at Bloomingdale,‡ five miles north of the city, and within two miles of the American lines.

a Sept. 16.

4 *What is said of the skirmish that followed?*

[4]On the following day[a] a skirmish took place between advanced parties of the armies, in which the Americans gained a decided advantage; although their two principal officers, Colonel Knowlton and Major Leitch, both fell mortally wounded.

5 *What was the effect upon the army?*

[5]Washington commended the valor displayed by his troops on this occasion, and the result was highly inspiriting to the army.

6 *What object did the British general now seek to gain?*

28. [6]General Howe, thinking it not prudent to attack the fortified camp of the Americans, next made a movement with the intention of gaining their rear, and cutting off their communication with the Eastern States.

7 *What course did he take to accomplish it?*

b Oct. 12.

[7]With this view, the greater part of the royal army left New York, and passing into the Sound, landed[b] in the vicinity of Westchester;§ while, at the same time, three frigates were despatched up the Hudson, to interrupt the American communications with New Jersey.

8 *How large was his army?*

[8]By the arrival of new forces, the British army now amounted to 35,000 men.

---

* *Harlem* is seven and a half miles above the city, (distance reckoned from the City Hall.)

† *Kingsbridge* is thirteen miles above the city, at the N. end of the island, near a bridge crossing Spuyten Devil Creek, the creek which leads from the Hudson to the Harlem River. (See Map, p. .)

‡ *Bloomingdale* is on the W. side of the island. Opposite, on the E. side, is Yorkville

§ The village of *Westchester* is situated on Westchester Creek, two miles from the Sound, in the southern part of Westchester County, fourteen miles N.E. from New York. The troops landed on Frog's Point, about three miles S.E. from the village (See Map, p 225.)

1776.

29. [1]Washington, penetrating the designs of the enemy, soon withdrew the bulk of his army from New York Island, and extended it along the western bank of Bronx River,* towards White Plains;† keeping his left in advance of the British right. [2]On the 28th, a partial action was fought at White Plains, in which the Americans were driven back with some loss. [3]Soon after, Washington changed his camp, and drew up[a] his forces on the heights of North Castle,‡ about five miles farther north.

1. *What position did Washington take?* Oct. 28.
2. *What occurred at White Plains?*
a. Nov. 1.
3. *What change did Washington then make?*

30. [4]The British general, discontinuing this pursuit, now directed his attention to the American posts on the Hudson, with the apparent design of penetrating into New Jersey. [5]Washington, therefore, having first secured the strong positions in the vicinity of the Croton§ River, and especially that of Peekskill,‖ crossed the Hudson with the main body of his army, and joined General Greene in his camp at Fort Lee;¶ leaving a force of three thousand men on the east side, under Colonel Magaw, for the defence of Fort Washington.**

4. *To what did the British general now direct his attention?*
5. *What were the next movements of Washington?*

---

* *Bronx* River rises in Westchester County, near the line of Connecticut, and after a course of twenty-five miles, nearly south, enters the Sound (or East River) a little S.W. from the village of Westchester. (See Map.)

† *White Plains* is in Westchester County, twenty-seven miles N.E. from New York. (See Map.)

‡ The *Heights of North Castle*, on which Washington drew up his army, are three or four miles S.W. from the present village of North Castle. (See Map.)

§ The *Croton* River enters Hudson River from the east, in the northern part of Westchester County, thirty-five miles north from New York. (See Map.) From this stream an aqueduct has been built, thirty-eight miles in length, by which the city of New York has been supplied with excellent water. The whole cost of the aqueduct, reservoirs, pipes, &c., was about twelve millions of dollars.

‖ *Peekskill* is on the E. bank of the Hudson, near the northwestern extremity of Westchester County, forty-six miles N. from New York. (See Map. p. 244.)

¶ *Fort Lee* was on the west side of Hudson River, in the town of Hackensack, New Jersey, three miles southwest from Fort Washington, and ten north from New York. It was built on a rocky summit, 300 feet above the river. The ruins of the fortress still exist, overgrown with low trees. (See Map.)

** *Fort Washington* was on the east bank of the Hudson, on Manhattan or New York Island, about eleven miles above the city. (See Map.)

WESTCHESTER COUNTY.

FORTS LEE AND WASHINGTON.

1776. 31. [1]On the 16th, this fort was attacked by a strong force of the enemy, and after a spirited defence, in which the assailants lost nearly a thousand men, was forced to surrender. [2]Lord Cornwallis crossed* the Hudson at Dobbs' Ferry,* with six thousand men, and proceeded against Fort Lee, the garrison of which saved itself by a hasty retreat; but all the baggage and military stores fell into the possession of the victors.

Nov. 16.

1. *What is said of the attack on Fort Washington?*

2. Nov. 18. *Of the attempt against Fort Lee, and the result?*

32. [3]The Americans retreated across the Hackensack,† and thence across the Passaic,‡ with forces daily diminishing by the withdrawal of large numbers of the militia, who, dispirited by the late reverses, returned to their homes, as fast as their terms of enlistment expired; so that, by the last of November, scarcely three thousand troops remained in the American army; and these were exposed in an open country, without intrenching tools, and without tents to shelter them from the inclemency of the season.

3. *What is said of the retreat of the Americans, and the condition of the army?*

33. [4]Newark,§ New Brunswick,‖ Princeton,¶ and Trenton, successively fell into the hands of the enemy, as they were abandoned by the retreating army; and finally, on the eighth of December, Washington crossed the Delaware, then the only barrier which prevented the British from taking possession of Philadelphia. So

4. *Give an account of the retreat through New Jersey, and the pursuit by the British.*

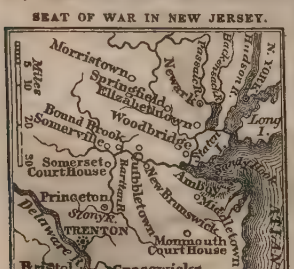
---

* *Dobbs' Ferry* is a well-known crossing-place on the Hudson, twenty-two miles N from New York City. There is a small village of the same name on the E. side of the river. (See Map, p. 225.)

† *Hackensack* River rises one mile west from the Hudson, in Rockland Lake, Rockland County, thirty-three miles N. from New York. It pursues a southerly course, at a distance of from two to six miles W. from the Hudson, and falls into the N. Eastern extremity of Newark Bay, five miles west from New York. (See Map.)

‡ The *Passaic* River rises in the central part of Northern New Jersey, flows an easterly course until it arrives within five miles of the Hackensack, whence its course is S. fourteen miles, until it falls into the N. Western extremity of Newark Bay. (See Map.)

SEAT OF WAR IN NEW JERSEY.



§ *Newark*, now a city, and the most populous in New Jersey, is situated on the W. side of Passaic River, three miles from its entrance into Newark Bay, and nine miles W. from New York. (See Map.)

‖ *New Brunswick* is situated on the S. bank of Raritan River, ten miles from its entrance into Raritan Bay at Amboy, and twenty-three miles S.W. from Newark. It is the seat of Rutger's College, founded in 1770. (See Map.)

¶ *Princeton* is thirty-nine miles S.W. from Newark. It is the seat of the "College of New Jersey," usually called Princeton College, founded at Elizabethtown in 1746, afterwards removed to Newark, and, in 1757, to Princeton. The Princeton Theological Seminary, founded in 1812, is also located here. (See Map.)

rapidly had the pursuit been urged, that the rear of the one army was often within sight and shot of the van of the other. **1776.**

34. [1]Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, adjourned[a] to Baltimore,* and soon after invested[b] Washington with almost unlimited powers, "To order and direct all things relating to the department and to the operations of war." [2]The British general, awaiting only the freezing of the Delaware to enable him to cross and seize Philadelphia, arranged about 4000 of his German troops along the river, from Trenton to Burlington. Strong detachments occupied Princeton and New Brunswick. The rest of the troops were cantoned about in the villages of New Jersey.

a. Dec. 12.
b. Dec. 20.
1. *What course was pursued by congress?*
2. *What disposition was made of the British troops?*

35. [3]On the very day that the American army crossed the Delaware, the British squadron, under Sir Peter Parker, took possession of the island of Rhode Island,[c] together with the neighboring islands, Prudence,[c] and Conanicut;[c] by which the American squadron, under Commodore Hopkins, was blocked up in Providence River, where it remained a long time useless. [4]On the 13th, General Lee, who had been left in command of the forces stationed on the Hudson, having incautiously wandered from the main body, was surprised and taken prisoner by the enemy. His command then devolving on General Sullivan, the latter conducted his troops to join the forces of Washington, which were then increased to nearly seven thousand men.

Dec. 8.
3. *How was the fleet of Commodore Hopkins blockaded?*
c. See Map, p. 112.
Dec. 13.
4. *What is said of Generals Lee and Sullivan?*

36. [5]In the state of gloom and despondency which had seized the public mind, owing to the late reverses of the army, Washington conceived the plan of suddenly crossing the Delaware, and attacking the advanced posts of the enemy, before the main body could be brought to their relief. [6]Accordingly, on the night of the 25th of December, preparations were made for crossing the river, in three divisions. General Cadwallader was to cross at Bristol,† and carry the post at

5. *What bold plan was formed by Washington?*
Dec. 25.
6. *In what manner was it to be carried into effect?*

* *Baltimore*, a city of Maryland, is situated on the N. side of the Patapsco River, fourteen miles from its entrance into Chesapeake Bay, and ninety-five miles S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 323.)

† *Bristol* is a village on the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware, two miles above Burlington. (See Map, p. 226.)

1776. Burlington;* General Ewing was to cross a little below Trenton,† and intercept the retreat of the enemy in that direction; while the commander-in-chief, with twenty-four hundred men, was to cross nine miles above Trenton, to make the principal attack.

1. What obstacles were encountered?

37. [1]Generals Ewing and Cadwallader, after the most strenuous efforts, were unable to cross, owing to the extreme cold of the night, and the quantity of floating ice that had accumulated in this part of the river. [2]Washington alone succeeded, but it was three o'clock in the morning[a] before the artillery could be carried over. The troops were then formed into two divisions, commanded by Generals Sullivan and Greene, under whom were Brigadiers Lord Stirling, Mercer, and St. Clair.

a. Dec. 26.

2. Give a particular account of the enterprise; the battle which followed; and the result.

38. Proceeding by different routes, they arrived at Trenton about eight o'clock in the morning, and commenced a nearly simultaneous attack upon the surprised Hessians, who, finding themselves hemmed in by the Americans on the north and west, and by a small creek and the Delaware River on the east and south, were constrained to lay down their arms, and surrender at discretion. About one thousand were made prisoners, and between thirty and forty were killed and wounded. About 600 of the enemy, who were out on a foraging party, escaped to Bordentown.‡ Among the killed was Colonel Rahl, the commanding officer.

3. Why did Washington immediately recross the Delaware?

4. How did this brilliant success affect the public mind?

39. [3]As the British had a strong force at Princeton, and likewise a force yet remaining on the Delaware, superior to the American army, Washington, on the evening of the same day, recrossed into Pennsylvania with his prisoners. [4]This unexpected and brilliant

* *Burlington* is on the E. bank of the Delaware, twelve miles S.W. from Trenton, and seventeen N.E. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 226.)

† *Trenton*, the capital of New Jersey, is situated on the E. bank of the Delaware River, ten miles S.W. from Princeton, and twenty-seven N.E. from Philadelphia. The Assumpink Creek separates the city on the S.E. from the borough of South Trenton. (See Map; and also p. 226.)

‡ *Bordentown* is on the E. bank of the Delaware, seven miles southeast from Trenton. (See Map, p. 226.)

success suddenly elevated the public mind from despondency to extreme confidence. About 1400 soldiers, whose terms of service were on the point of expiring, agreed to remain six weeks longer; and the militia from the neighboring provinces again began to join the army. **1776.**

40. [1]The British general, startled by this sudden reanimation of an enemy whom he had already considered vanquished, resolved, though in the depth of winter, to recommence operations. Lord Cornwallis, then in New York, and on the point of sailing for England, hastily returned to New Jersey, with additional troops, to regain the ground that had been lost.

1. *What was its effect upon the British general?*

41. [2]Nor was Washington disposed to remain idle. On the 28th of December he boldly returned into New Jersey, and took post at Trenton, where the other divisions of the army, which had passed lower down, were ordered to join him. General Heath, stationed at Peekskill, on the Hudson, was ordered to move into New Jersey with the main body of the New England forces, while the newly raised militia were ordered to harass the flank and rear, and attack the outposts of the enemy. [3]The British had fallen back from the Delaware, and were assembling in great force at Princeton—resolved to attack Washington in his quarters at Trenton, before he should receive new reenforcements.

Dec. 28.

2. *What new movements were made by the army of Washington?*

3. *What were the British doing in the mean time?*

42. [4]Such was the situation of the opposing armies at the close of the year. Only a week before, General Howe was leisurely waiting the freezing of the Delaware, to enable him to take quiet possession of Philadelphia, or annihilate the American army at a blow, should it not previously be disbanded by the desertion of its militia. But, to the astonishment of the British general, the remnant of the American army had suddenly assumed offensive operations; and its commander, although opposed by far superior forces, now indulged the hope of recovering, during the winter, the whole, or the greater part of New Jersey.

4. *What is remarked of the situation of the opposing armies at the close of the year.*

1777.

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS OF 1777.

Of what does Chapter III. treat?

Jan. 1.

1. *What occurred during the night of the first of January?*

a. Jan. 2.

2. *What occurred in the afternoon of the next day?*

b. See Map, p. 228.

1. [1]On the night of the first of January, Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader, with the forces which lay at Bordentown and Crosswicks,* joined Washington at Trenton, whose whole effective force did not then exceed five thousand men. [2]In the afternoon of the next day,[a] the van of the army of Lord Cornwallis reached Trenton; when Washington immediately withdrew to the east side of the creek[b] which runs through the town, where he drew up his army, and commenced intrenching himself.

2. The British attempted to cross in several places, when some skirmishing ensued, and a cannonading commenced, which continued until nightfall; but the fords being well guarded, the enemy thought it prudent to wait for the reenforcements which were near at hand, designing to advance to the assault on the following morning.

3. *To what dangers was the American army now exposed?*

3. [3]Washington again found himself in a very critical situation. To remain and risk a battle, with a superior and constantly increasing force, would subject his army, in case of repulse, to certain destruction; while a retreat over the Delaware, then very much obstructed with floating ice, would, of itself, have been a difficult undertaking, and a highly dangerous one to the American troops when pursued by a victorious enemy.

4. *What is remarked of the sagacity and boldness of Washington?*

[4]With his usual sagacity and boldness, Washington adopted another extraordinary but judicious scheme, which was accomplished with consummate skill, and followed by the happiest results.

5. *In what manner did he elude the enemy?*

c. Jan 3.

4. [5]Kindling the fires of his camp as usual, and having left a small guard and sentinels to deceive the enemy, he silently despatched his heavy baggage to Burlington; and then,[c] by a circuitous route, unperceived, gained the rear of the enemy, and pressed on

* *Crosswicks* is a small village on the S. side of a creek of the same name, four miles E. from Bordentown. The creek enters the Delaware just N. of Bordentown village (See Map, p. 226.)

rapidly towards Princeton; designing to attack, by surprise, the British force at that place, which was about equal to his own. **1777.**

5. [1]A part of the British, however, had already commenced their march, and were met by the Americans, at sunrise, a mile and a half from Princeton,* when a brisk conflict ensued, in which the American militia at first gave way; but Washington soon coming up with his select corps, the battle was restored. One division of the British, however, broke through the Americans; the others, after a severe struggle, and after losing nearly four hundred men in killed and wounded, retreated towards New Brunswick. The American loss was somewhat less than that of the British, but among the killed was the highly esteemed and deeply regretted General Mercer.

1. *Give an account of the battle of Princeton, and the losses sustained by each party.*

6. [2]When the dawn of day discovered to Lord Cornwallis the deserted camp of the Americans, he immediately abandoned his own camp, and marched with all expedition towards New Brunswick; fearing lest the baggage and military stores collected there should fall into the hands of the enemy. [3]As he reached Princeton almost at the same time with the American rear guard, Washington again found himself in imminent danger. His soldiers had taken no repose for the two preceding days, and they were likewise destitute of suitable provisions and clothing; while the pursuing enemy, besides the advantage of numbers, was supplied with all the conveniences, and even the luxuries of the camp.

2. *What course did Cornwallis then pursue?*

3. *What was the situation of each army at this time?*

7. [4]Not being in a situation to accomplish his designs on New Brunswick, Washington departed abruptly from Princeton, and moved with rapidity towards the upper and mountainous parts of New Jersey, and finally encamped at Morristown,† where he was able to afford shelter and repose to his suffering army. [5]Cornwallis proceeded directly to New Brunswick, where he found the commanding officer greatly alarm-

4. *What was next done by Washington?*

5. *By Cornwallis?*

* This battle was fought on the N.E. side of Stony Brook, one of the head waters of the Raritan, about a mile and a half S.W. from Princeton. (See Map, p. 226.)

† *Morristown* is a beautiful village, situated on an eminence, thirty-five miles N.E from Princeton, and eighteen west from Newark. (See Map, p. 226.)

1777. ed at the movements of Washington, and already engaged in the removal of the baggage and military stores.

1. *What success did Washington meet with soon after?*

8. [1]In a few days Washington entered the field anew,—overran the whole northern part of New Jersey,—and made himself master of Newark, of Elizabethtown, and finally of Woodbridge;* so that the British army, which had lately held all New Jersey in its power, and had caused even Philadelphia to tremble for its safety, found itself now restricted to the two posts, New Brunswick and Amboy;† and compelled to lay aside all thoughts of acting offensively, and study self-defence. [2]The people of New Jersey, who, during the ascendency of the British, had been treated with harshness, insult, and cruelty, especially by the mercenary Hessian troops, now rose upon their invaders, and united in the common cause of expelling them from the country.

2. *What is said of the situation and conduct of the people of New Jersey?*

3. *With what successes did they meet?*

9. [3]In small parties they scoured the country in every direction,—cutting off stragglers; and suddenly falling on the outposts of the enemy, and in several skirmishes gained considerable advantage. At Springfield,‡ between forty and fifty Germans were killed,[a] wounded, or taken, by an equal number of Jersey militia; and on the 20th of January, General Dickinson, with less than five hundred men, defeated a much larger foraging party of the enemy, near Somerset Court House.§ [4]As no important military enterprise took place on either side during the two or three months following the battle of Princeton, Washington seized the interval of repose for inoculating his whole army with the small-pox; a disease which had already commenced its dreadful ravages among his troops, but which was thus stripped of its terrors, and rendered harmless.

a. Jan. 7.

[a]Jan. 20.

4. *What measure did Washington take for the health of his army?*

---

* *Woodbridge* is a village near Staten Island Sound, fourteen miles S. from Newark (See Map, p. 226.)

† *Amboy* (now Perth Amboy) is situated at the head of Raritan Bay, at the confluence of Raritan River and Staten Island Sound, four miles S. from Woodbridge. It is opposite the southern point of Staten Island. (See Map, p. 226.)

‡ *Springfield* is a small village eight miles W. from Newark. (See Map, p. 226.)

§ *Somerset Court House* was then at the village of *Millstone*, four miles S. from Somerville, the present county seat, and eight miles W from New Brunswick (See Map p. 226.)

10. [1]Congress, in the mean time, had returned to Philadelphia, where it was busily occupied with measures for enlarging and supplying the army, and for obtaining aid from foreign powers. [2]So early as the beginning of the year 1776, Silas Deane, a member of congress from Connecticut, was sent to France, for the purpose of influencing the French government in favor of America. Although France secretly favored the cause of the Americans, she was not yet disposed to act openly; yet Mr. Deane found means to obtain supplies from private sources, and even from the public arsenals.

1777.

1. *How was congress engaged in the mean time?*

2. *What is said of Mr. Deane's embassy to France?*

11. [3]After the declaration of independence, Benjamin Franklin was likewise sent to Paris; and other agents were sent to different European courts. The distinguished talents, high reputation, and great personal popularity of Dr. Franklin, were highly successful in increasing the general enthusiasm which began to be felt in behalf of the Americans. [4]His efforts were in the end eminently successful: and although France delayed, for a while, the recognition of American independence, yet she began to act with less reserve; and by lending assistance in various ways,—by loans, gifts, supplies of arms, provisions, and clothing, she materially aided the Americans, and showed a disposition not to avoid a rupture with England.

3. *What is said of Dr. Franklin, and others?*

4. *What course was taken by France, and what aid was afforded by her?*

12. [5]The tardy action of the French court was outstripped, however, by the general zeal of the nation. Numerous volunteers, the most eminent of whom was the young Marquis de Lafayette, offered to risk their fortunes, and bear arms in the cause of American liberty. Lafayette actually fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and, in the spring of 1777, arrived in America. He at first enlisted as a volunteer in the army of Washington, declining all pay for his services; but congress soon after bestowed upon him the appointment of major-general.

5. *What is said of Lafayette, and other volunteers?*

13. [6]Although the main operations of both armies were suspended until near the last of May, a few previous events are worthy of notice. The Americans having collected a quantity of military stores at Peekskill, on the Hudson, in March, General Howe des-

6. *Give an account of the British expedition up the Hudson.*

1777. patched a powerful armament up the river to destroy them, when the American troops, seeing defence impossible, set fire to the stores, and abandoned[a] the place. The enemy landed—completed the destruction,—and then returned to New York. [1]On the 13th of April, General Lincoln, then stationed at Boundbrook,* in New Jersey, was surprised by the sudden approach of Lord Cornwallis on both sides of the Raritan.† With difficulty he made his retreat, with the loss of a part of his baggage, and about sixty men.

a. March 23.

April 13.

1. *Of the surprise of Gen. Lincoln.*

April 25.

2. *Of Gen. Tryon's expedition against Danbury.*

14. [2]On the 25th of April, 2000 of the enemy, under the command of General Tryon, late royal governor of New York, landed in Connecticut, between Fairfield‡ and Norwalk.§ On the next day they proceeded against Danbury,‖ and destroyed[b] the stores collected there,—burned the town,—and committed many atrocities on the unarmed inhabitants. [3]During their retreat they were assailed[c] by the militia, which had hastily assembled in several detachments, commanded by Generals Arnold, Silliman, and Wooster. Pursued and constantly harassed by the Americans, the enemy succeeded in regaining[d] their shipping; having lost, during the expedition, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, nearly three hundred men. [4]The loss of the Americans was much less; but among the number was the veteran General Wooster, then in his seventieth year.

b. April 26.

c. April 27.

3. *What occurred during the retreat of the enemy?*

d. April 28.

4. *What was the loss of the Americans?*

5. *Give an account of the expedition against Sag Harbor.*

15. [5]Not long afterwards, a daring expedition was planned and executed by a party of Connecticut militia, against a depôt of British stores which had been collected at Sag Harbor, a post at the eastern extremity of Long Island, and then defended by a detachment of infantry and an armed sloop. On the night of the 22d

May 22.

---

* *Boundbrook* is a small village about a mile in length, on the N. side of the Raritan, seven miles N.W. from New Brunswick. The northern part of the village is called *Middlebrook*. (See Map, p. 226.)

† *Raritan* River, N.J., is formed by several branches, which unite in Somerset County; whence, flowing east, it enters Raritan Bay at the southern extremity of Staten Island. (See Map, p. 226.)

‡ *Fairfield*. See p. 107. The troops landed at Campo Point, in the western part of the town of Fairfield.

§ *Norwalk* village is situated on both sides of Norwalk River, at its entrance into the Sound. It is about forty-five miles N.E. from New York, and ten miles S.W. from Fairfield.

‖ *Danbury* is twenty-one miles N. from Norwalk.

of May, Colonel Meigs crossed the Sound, and arriving before day, surprised[a] the enemy, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen vessels, and brought off ninety prisoners, without having a single man either killed or wounded. [1]Congress ordered an elegant sword to be presented to Colonel Meigs for his good conduct on this occasion. 1777.

a. May 26.

1. *How was the good conduct of Col. Meigs rewarded?*

16. [2]While these events were transpiring, Washington remained in his camp at Morristown, gradually increasing in strength by the arrival of new recruits, and waiting the development of the plans of the enemy; who seemed to be hesitating, whether to march upon Philadelphia, in accordance with the plan of the previous campaign, or to seize upon the passes of the Hudson, and thus co-operate directly with a large force under General Burgoyne, then assembling in Canada, with the design of invading the states from that quarter.

2. *Where was Washington at this time; and what is said of the plans of the enemy?*

17. [3]As a precaution against both of these movements, the northern forces having first been concentrated on the Hudson, and a large camp under General Arnold having been formed on the western bank of the Delaware, so that the whole could be readily assembled at either point, in the latter part of May Washington broke up his winter quarters, and advanced to Middlebrook,[b]—a strong position within ten miles of the British camp, and affording a better opportunity for watching the enemy and impeding his movements.

3. *What precautions were taken against these plans?*

b. See first Note on previous page

18. [4]General Howe soon after passed over from New York, which had been his head-quarters during the winter, and concentrated[c] nearly his whole army at New Brunswick; but after having examined the strength of the posts which Washington occupied, he abandoned the design of assaulting him in his camp.

4. *What were the first movements of General Howe?*

c. June 12.

[5]He next, with the design of enticing Washington from his position, and bringing on a general engagement, advanced[d] with nearly his whole body to Somerset Court House, with the apparent design of crossing the Delaware. Failing in his object, a few days afterwards he tried another feint, and made as rapid a retreat, first[e] to Brunswick and afterwards[f] to Amboy, and even sent over several detachments to Staten

5. *Describe his attempts to draw Washington from his position.*

d. June 14.

e. June 18.

f. June 22.

1777. Island, as if with the final intention of abandoning New Jersey.

1. What advances did Washington make?

19. [1]Washington, in the hope of deriving some advantage from the retreat, pushed forward strong detachments to harass the British rear, and likewise advanced his whole force to Quibbletown,* five or six miles from his strong camp at Middlebrook. [2]General Howe, taking advantage of the success of his maneuvre, suddenly recalled his troops on the night of the 25th, and, the next morning, advanced rapidly towards the Americans; hoping to cut off their retreat and bring on a general action.

2. In what manner did Gen. Howe attempt to take advantage of these movements?

June 25.

June 26.

3. How did Washington escape the danger?

20. [3]Washington, however, had timely notice of this movement, and discerning his danger, with the utmost celerity regained his camp at Middlebrook.

4. How far did the enemy succeed?

[4]The enemy only succeeded in engaging the brigade of Lord Stirling; which, after maintaining a severe action, retreated with little loss.

5. What is said of their retreat?

[5]Failing in this second attempt, the British again withdrew to Amboy, and, on the 30th, passed finally over to Staten Island; leaving Washington in undisturbed possession of New Jersey.

June 30.

6. Give an account of the capture of General Prescott.

21. [6]A few days later, the American army received the cheering intelligence of the capture of Major-general Prescott, the commander of the British troops on Rhode Island. Believing himself perfectly secure while surrounded by a numerous fleet, and at the head of a powerful army, he had taken convenient quarters at some distance from camp, and with few guards about his person. On the night of the 10th of July, Colonel Barton, with about forty militia, crossed over to the island in whale-boats, and having silently reached the lodgings of Prescott, seized him in bed, and conducted him safely through his own troops and fleet, back to the mainland. This exploit gave the Americans an officer of equal rank to exchange for General Lee.

July 10.

7. What movement was made by the British fleet?

22. [7]The British fleet, under the command of Admiral Howe, then lying at Sandy Hook, soon moved to Prince's Bay,† and thence to the northern part of

* *Quibbletown*, now called *New Market*, is a small village five miles E. from Middlebrook. (See Map, p. 226.)

† *Prince's Bay* is on the S.E. coast of Staten Island.

the island. [1]This movement, together with the circumstance that Burgoyne, with a powerful army, had already taken Ticonderoga, at first induced Washington to believe that the design of the British general was to proceed up the Hudson, and unite with Burgoyne. [2]Having taken about 18,000 of the army on board, and leaving a large force, under General Clinton, for the defence of New York, the fleet at length sailed from Sandy Hook on the 23d of July, and being soon after heard from, off the capes of Delaware, Washington put his forces in motion towards Philadelphia. **1777.**

1. *What appeared to be the design of the British general?*

2. *Whither did the fleet at length sail, and what course did Washington take?*

July 23.

23. [3]The fleet having sailed up the Chesapeake, the troops landed near the head of Elk* River, in Maryland, on the 25th of August, and immediately commenced their march towards the American army, which had already arrived and advanced beyond Wilmington. [4]The superior force of the enemy soon obliged Washington to withdraw across the Brandywine,† where he determined to make a stand for the defence of Philadelphia. [5]On the morning of the 11th of September, the British force, in two columns, advanced against the American position. The Hessians under General Knyphausen proceeded against Chad's Ford,‡ and commenced a spirited attack, designing to deceive the Americans with the belief that the whole British army was attempting the passage of the Brandywine at that point.

Aug. 25.

3. *What were the farther movements of the British fleet and army?*

4. *What did Washington determine?*

Sept. 11.

5. *What occurred on the morning of the 11th of September?*

6. *What more is said of the battle of Brandywine?*

24. [6]Washington, deceived by false intelligence respecting the movements of the enemy, kept his force concentrated near the passage of Chad's Ford; while, in the mean time, the main body of the British army, led by Generals Howe and Cornwallis, crossed the forks of the Brandywine above, and descended against

PLACES WEST OF PHILADELPHIA.

* *Elk River* is formed by the union of two small creeks at Elkton, half way between the Susquehanna and the Delaware, after which its course is S.W., thirteen miles, to the Chesapeake.

† *Brandywine Creek* rises in the northern part of Chester County, Pennsylvania, and flowing S.E., passes through the northern part of Delaware, uniting with Christiana Creek at Wilmington. (See Map; also Map, p. 121.)

‡ *Chad's Ford* is a passage of the Brandywine, twenty-five miles S W. from Philadelphia.

1777. the American right, then commanded by General Sullivan; which, being attacked before it had properly formed, soon gave way. The day terminated in the success of all the leading plans of the enemy.

a. Sept. 12.

1. *Of the retreat of the Americans, and the losses on each side?*

2. *What is said of Pulaski and Lafayette?*

25. [1]During the night, the American army retreated to Chester,* and the next day[a] to Philadelphia; having lost, during the action, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, more than a thousand men; while the British oss was not half that number. [2]Count Pulaski a brave Polander, who had joined the Americans, distinguished himself in this action; as did also the Marquis Lafayette, who was wounded while endeavoring to rally the fugitives. Congress soon after promoted Count Pulaski to the rank of brigadier, with the command of the cavalry.

3. *What did Washington next resolve, and what followed?*

b. Sept. 16.

4. *What happened to General Wayne?*

c. Sept. 20, 21.

26. [3]After a few days' rest, Washington resolved to risk another general action, before yielding Philadelphia to the enemy. He therefore recrossed the Schuylkill, and advanced against the British near Goshen;† but soon after the advanced parties had met,[b] a violent fall of rain compelled both armies to defer the engagement. [4]A few days after, General Wayne, who had been detached with 1500 men, with orders to conceal his movements and harass the rear of the enemy, was himself surprised at night,[c] near Paoli;‡ and three hundred of his men were killed.

5. *What were the next movements of the two armies?*

Sept. 23.

Sept. 26.

27. [5]On a movement of the British up the right bank of the Schuylkill, Washington, fearing for the safety of his extensive magazines and military stores deposited at Reading,§ abandoned Philadelphia, and took post at Pottsgrove.‖ Congress had previously adjourned to Lancaster. On the 23d, the British army crossed the Schuylkill; and on the 26th entered Phil-

---

* *Chester*, originally called *Upland*, is situated on the W. bank of Delaware River fourteen miles S.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 237.)

† *Goshen* is about eighteen miles W. from Philadelphia, and a short distance E. from Westchester. (See Map, p. 237.)

‡ *Paoli* is a small village nearly twenty miles N.W. from Philadelphia. Two miles S.W. from the village is the place where Gen. Wayne was defeated. A monument has been erected on the spot, and the adjoining field is appropriated to a military parade ground. (See Map, p. 237.)

§ *Reading* is a large and flourishing manufacturing village, on the N.E. branch of the Schuylkill, fifty miles (in a direct line) N.W. from Philadelphia.

‖ *Pottsgrove* is on the N.E. side of the Schuylkill, about thirty-five miles N.W from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 237.)

adelphia without opposition. The main body of the army encamped at Germantown,* six miles distant. **1777.**

28. [1]Washington now passed down the Schuylkill to Skippack† Creek, and soon after, learning that the British force had been weakened by the withdrawal of several regiments for the reduction of some forts on the Delaware, he attacked the remainder at Germantown, on the 4th of October; but after a severe action, the Americans were repulsed, with the loss of about 1200 men in killed, wounded, and prisoners; while that of the enemy was only about half that number. [2]Soon after this event, General Howe broke up his encampment at Germantown, and moved[a] his whole force to Philadelphia.

1. *Give an account of the battle of Germantown*

Oct. 4.

2. *Whither did Howe then remove his army?*

a. Oct. 19.

29. [3]No movement of importance was made by either army until the 22d of the month; previous to which time, important events had transpired in the north, resulting in the total defeat and capture of a powerful British army under General Burgoyne. A connected account of these transactions requires that we should now go back a few months in the order of time, to the beginning of the campaign in the north.

3. *What events does the history now proceed to narrate, and why?*

30. [4]Early in the spring of 1777, General Burgoyne, who had served under Governor Carleton in the previous campaign, arrived[b] at Quebec; having received the command of a powerful force, which was designed to invade the states by the way of Lake Champlain and the Hudson.

4. *What is said of Gen. Burgoyne?*

b. May 6.

31. On the 16th of June, Burgoyne, at the head of his army, which consisted of more than seven thousand British and German troops, and several thousand Canadians and Indians, left St. John's for Crown Point, where he established[c] magazines; and then proceeded to invest[d] Ticonderoga.‡ [5]At the same time a detachment of about two thousand men, mostly Canadians and Indians, proceeded by the way of Oswego,[e] against Fort Schuyler, on the Mohawk; hoping to make an

June 16.

Of his army?

c. Arrived June 30.

d. July 2.

5. *Of the expedition against Fort Schuyler?*

e N. p. 242.

---

* *Germantown* lies on a street three miles long, and is centrally distant six miles N W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 152.)

† *Skippack* Creek is an eastern branch of Perkiomen Creek, which it enters about twenty-three miles N.W. from Philadelphia. *Perkiomen* Creek enters the Schuylkill from the N., about twenty-two miles from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 237.)

‡ The important fortress of *Ticonderoga* was situated at the mouth of the outlet of

1777. easy conquest of that post, and afterwards to rejoin the main army on the Hudson.

1. *Of the course pursued by St. Clair?*

2. *Of the investment of Ticonderoga?*

3. *What design was St. Clair obliged to abandon, and why?*

32. [1]On the approach of the enemy, General St. Clair who commanded at Ticonderoga with a force of but little more than 3000 men, unable to defend all the outworks, withdrew to the immediate vicinity of the fort. [2]The British troops, now extending their lines in front of the peninsula, invested the place on the northwest; while their German allies took post on the opposite side of the lake, in the rear of Mount Independence, which had likewise been fortified, and was then occupied by the Americans. [3]St. Clair had at first contemplated the erection of fortifications on Mount Defiance, which commands the peninsula; but finding his numbers insufficient to garrison any new works, the design was abandoned.

4. *What arduous work did the British undertake and accomplish?*

a. July 5.

5. *Give an account of the evacuation of Ticonderoga.*

b. July 5, 6.

6. *Of the retreat and pursuit of the Americans.*

33. [4]The English generals, perceiving the advantage that would be gained if their artillery could be planted on the summit of Mount Defiance, immediately undertook the arduous work; and on the fifth[a] of the month the road was completed, the artillery mounted, and ready to open its fire on the following morning. [5]St. Clair, seeing no possibility of a longer resistance, immediately took the resolution to evacuate the works, while yet it remained in his power to do so. Accordingly, on the night[b] of the fifth of July, the fires were suffered to burn out, the tents were struck, and amid profound silence the troops commenced their retreat; but, unfortunately, the accidental burning of a building on Mount Independence, revealed their situation to the enemy.

34. [6]On the following day, the baggage, stores, and

Lake George, on a peninsula of about 500 acres, elevated 100 feet above Lake Champlain, and surrounded, on three sides, by rocks steep and difficult of access. The only approachable point to the fort was across the neck of the peninsula, a part of which was covered by a swamp, and the other part defended by a breastwork. It was, however, commanded by *Mount Defiance*, a hill 750 feet high, on the S. side of the outlet, and one mile distant. *Mount Independence* is an elevation half a mile distant, on the opposite side of the Lake. (See Map.)

provisions, which had been embarked on South River, or Wood Creek,[a] were overtaken and destroyed at Skeenesborough.[b] The rear division of the main body, which had retreated by way of Mount Independence, was overtaken at Hubbardton,* on the morning of the 7th, and, after an obstinate action, was routed with considerable loss. At length the remnants of the several divisions arrived[c] at Fort Edward, on the Hudson, the head-quarters of General Schuyler; having lost, in the late reverses, nearly two hundred pieces of artillery, besides a large quantity of warlike stores and provisions.

1777.

a. N. p. 190.

b. Note p. 209, and Map, p. 181

July 7.

c. July 12.

35. [1]Unable to retain Fort Edward with his small force, which then numbered but little more than four thousand men, General Schuyler soon after evacuated that post, and gradually fell back along the river until he had retired to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk. [2]Here, by the arrival of the New England militia under General Lincoln, and several detachments from the regular army, his number was increased, by the middle of August, to thirteen thousand men. [3]The celebrated Polish hero, Kosciusko, was in the army as chief engineer.

1. *What course did General Schuyler pursue?*

2. *What reinforcements did he receive?*

3. *Who was chief engineer?*

36. [4]General Schuyler, in his retreat, had so obstructed the roads, by destroying the bridges, and felling immense trees in the way, that Burgoyne did not reach Fort Edward until the 30th of July. [5]Here finding his army greatly straitened for want of provisions, and it being difficult to transport them from Ticonderoga, through the wilderness, he despatched[d] Colonel Baum, a German officer of distinction, with 500 men, to seize a quantity of stores which the Americans had collected at Bennington.†

4. *What difficulties had Burgoyne to encounter?*

July 30.

5. *How did he attempt to supply his army?*

d. Aug. 6.

37. [6]This party, being met[e] near Bennington by Colonel Stark, at the head of the New Hampshire militia, was entirely defeated; and a reenforcement which arrived the same day, after the discomfiture, was likewise defeated by Colonel Warner, who fortu-

e. Aug. .

6. *What is said of the defeat of his troops near Bennington?*

* *Hubbardton* is in Rutland Co., Vermont, about seventeen miles S.E. from Ticonderoga.

† *Bennington* village, in Bennington County, Vermont, is about thirty-five miles S.E. from Fort Edward. The battle was fought on the western border of the town of Bennington, and partly within the town of Hoosick, in the state of New York.

1777. nately arrived with a continental regiment at the same time. The loss of the enemy in the two engagements was about seven hundred men,—the greater part prisoners,—while that of the Americans was less than one hundred.

1. What was the effect of the battle of Bennington?

38. [1]The battle of Bennington, so fortunate to the Americans, caused a delay of the enemy at Fort Edward nearly a month; during which time news arrived of the defeat of the expedition against Fort Schuyler.* [2]This fortress, under the command of Colonel Gansevoort, being invested[a] by the enemy, General Herkimer collected the militia in its vicinity, and marched to its relief; but falling into an ambuscade, he was defeated[b] and slain. At the same time, however, a successful sortie from the fort penetrated the camp of the besiegers, killed many, and carried off a large quantity of baggage. Soon after, on the news of the approach of Arnold to the relief of the fort, the savage allies of the British fled, and St. Leger was forced to abandon[c] the siege.

2. Give an account of the siege and defence of Fort Schuyler.

a. Aug. 3.

b. Aug. 6.

c. Aug. 22.

3. What was the next movement of Burgoyne?

d. Sept. 13, 14.

39. [3]About the middle of September Burgoyne crossed[d] the Hudson with his whole army, and took a position on the heights and plains of Saratoga.†

* *Fort Schuyler* was situated at the head of navigation of the Mohawk, and at the carrying place between that river and Wood Creek, whence boats passed to Oswego. In 1758 *Fort Stanwix* was erected on this spot, but in 1776 it was repaired and named *Fort Schuyler*. The Fort occupied a part of the site of the present village of Rome, in Oneida County. It has been confounded by some with a Fort Schuyler which was built, in the French wars, near the place where Utica now stands, but which, at the time of the revolution, had gone to decay. (See Map.)

† *Saratoga* is a town on the west bank of the Hudson, from twenty-six to thirty-two miles north from Albany. Fish Creek runs through the northern part of the town. On the north side of its entrance into the Hudson is the village of Schuylerville, immediately south of which, on the ruins of Fort Hardy, which was built during the French and Indian wars, occurred the surrender of Burgoyne. The place then called Saratoga was a small settlement on the south side of Fish Creek.—(The Map on the left shows the towns of Saratoga and Stillwater; that on the right, the camps of Gates and Burgoyne, at the time of the surrender.)

General Gates, who had recently been appointed to the command of the northern American army, had moved forward from the mouth of the Mohawk, and was then encamped near Stillwater.* Burgoyne continued to advance, until, on the 18th, he had arrived within two miles of the American camp. [2]On the 19th of September some skirmishing commenced between scouting parties of the two armies, which soon brought on a general battle, that continued three hours without any intermission. Night put an end to the contest. The Americans withdrew to their camp, while the enemy passed the night under arms on the field of battle. Both parties claimed the victory, but the loss of the enemy was the greatest. **1777.**

1. *What did General Gates do?*

Sept. 19.

2. *Give an account of the first battle of Stillwater.*

41. [3]Burgoyne now intrenched himself for the purpose of awaiting the expected co-operation of General Clinton from New York. His Canadian and Indian forces began to desert him, and, cut off in a great measure from the means of obtaining supplies of provisions, he was soon obliged to curtail his soldiers' rations. [4]On the 7th of October, an advance of the enemy towards the American left wing, again brought on a general battle, which was fought on nearly the same ground as the former, and with the most desperate bravery on both sides; but at length the British gave way, with the loss of some of their best officers, a considerable quantity of baggage, and more than four hundred men, while the loss of the Americans did not exceed eighty.

3. *What then did Burgoyne do, and what was the situation of his army?*

Oct. 7.

4. *Give an account of the battle of the 7th of October.*

42. [5]On the night[a] after the battle the enemy fell back to a stronger position, and the Americans instantly occupied their abandoned camp. [6]Soon after, Burgoyne retired[b] to Saratoga, and endeavored to retreat to Fort Edward; but finding himself surrounded, his provisions reduced to a three days' supply, and despairing of relief from General Clinton, he was reduced to the humiliating necessity of proposing terms of capitulation; and, on the 17th of October, he surrendered his army prisoners of war.

a. Oct. 7, 8.

5. *What were the next movements of the two armies?*

b. Oct. 8, 9.

6. *What circumstances at length compelled Burgoyne to surrender?*

Oct. 17.

* The town of *Stillwater* is on the W. bank of the Hudson, from eighteen to twenty-six miles N. from Albany. The village of the same name adjoins the river, about twenty-one miles N. from Albany. In this town, three or four miles N. from the village, were fought the battles of Sept. 19th and Oct. 7th. (See Map, previous page.)

1777.

1. *What were the advantages and happy effects of this victory?*

43. [1]The Americans thereby acquired a fine train of brass artillery, nearly five thousand muskets, and an immense quantity of other ordinary implements of war. The news of this brilliant victory caused the greatest exultation throughout the country, and doubts were no longer entertained of the final independence of the American colonies.

2. *What was the next object of Gen. Gates?*

44. [2]The army of Gates was immediately put in motion to stop the devastations of General Clinton, who had proceeded up the Hudson with a force of 3000 men, with the hope of making a diversion in favor of Burgoyne. [3]Forts Clinton* and Montgomery, after a severe assault, fell[a] into his hands,—and the village of Kingston[b] was wantonly burned,[c]—but on hearing the news of Burgoyne's surrender, Clinton immediately withdrew to New York. [4]At the same time, Ticonderoga and all the forts on the northern frontier were abandoned by the British, and occupied by the Americans. [5]In the latter part of October, 4000 of the victorious troops of the north proceeded to join the army of Washington; and we now return[d] to the scene of events in the vicinity of Philadelphia.

3. *What is said of the movements of General Clinton?*

a. Oct. 6.

b. N. p. 124.

c. Oct. 13.

4. *Of the northern posts?*

5. *Of the destination of the troops of the north?*

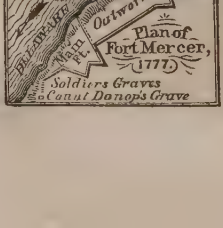
d. See p. 239.

6. *How did the Americans retain command of the Delaware?*

7. *Give an account of the defence and abandonment*

45. [6]A short distance below Philadelphia, the Americans had fortified Forts Mifflin† and Mercer,‡ on opposite sides of the Delaware, by which they retained the command of the river, and thus prevented any communication between the British army and their fleet, then moored at the head of Delaware Bay.

FORTS ON THE HUDSON.



46. [7]Both these forts were attacked by the enemy on the 22d of October. The at-

* *Fort Clinton* was on the W. side of Hudson River, at the northern extremity of Rockland County, and on the S. side of Peploaps Kill. On the north side of the same stream, in Orange County, was *Fort Montgomery*. (See Map.)

† *Fort Mifflin* was at the lower extremity of Mud Island, near the Pennsylvania side of the Delaware, seven or eight miles below Philadelphia. It is still kept in repair, and is garrisoned by U. S. troops.

‡ *Fort Mercer*, now in ruins, was a little above, at Red Bank, on the New Jersey side, and little more than a mile distant from Fort Mifflin. It was then, and is now, enshrouded by a gloomy pine forest. (See Map.)

tack on Fort Mercer, then garrisoned by less than 500 men, was made by nearly 2000 Hessian grenadiers, who, after forcing an extensive outwork, were finally compelled to retire with a loss of nearly 400 of their number. The Hessian general, Count Donop, was mortally wounded, and fell into the hands of the Americans. The attack on Fort Mifflin was at first alike unsuccessful; but after a series of attacks, the fort was at length abandoned,[a] —the garrison retiring to Fort Mercer. In a few days Fort Mercer was abandoned,[b] and the navigation of the Delaware was thus opened to the enemy's shipping.

1777.

of Forts Mercer and Mifflin

a. Nov. 16.

b. Nov. 18.

47. [1]Soon after these events, Washington advanced to White Marsh,* where numerous unsuccessful attempts[c] were made by Howe to draw him into an engagement; after which, the British general retired[d] to winter quarters in Philadelphia. [2]Washington encamped[e] at Valley Forge,† where his troops passed a rigorous winter, suffering extreme distress, from the want of suitable supplies of food and clothing. [3]Many officers, unable to obtain their pay, and disheartened with the service, resigned their commissions; and murmurs arose in various quarters, not only in the army, but even among powerful and popular leaders in congress.

1. *What other movements of the two armies are mentioned?*

c. From the 2d to the 8th of Dec.

d. Dec. 8.

e. Dec. 11.

2. *What is said of the distresses of the Americans?*

3. *Of resignations; murmurs, &c.?*

48. [4]The brilliant victory at Saratoga was contrasted with the reverses of Washington in New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania; and a plot was originated for placing General Gates at the head of the armies. Washington, however, never relaxed his exertions in the cause of his country; and the originators of the plot at length received the merited indignation of the army and the people.

4. *Of the design to supplant Gen. Washington?*

49. [5]After the colonies had thrown off their allegiance to the British crown, and had established separate governments in the states, there arose the farther necessity for some common bond of union, which would better enable them to act in concert, as one nation.

5. *What is said of the necessity of some bond of union among the states?*

* *White Marsh* is situated on Wissahickon Creek, eleven miles N.W. from Philadelphia. (See Map, p. 152.)

† *Valley Forge* is a deep and rugged hollow, on the S.W. side of the Schuylkill, twenty miles N.W. from Philadelphia. Upon the mountainous flanks of this valley and upon a vast plain which overlooks it and the adjoining country, the army of Washington encamped. Through the valley flows Valley Creek. At its junction with the Schuylkill is now the small village of Valley Forge. (See Map, p. 237)

1777.

1. Of the proposition of Dr. Franklin?

[1]In the summer of 1775, Benjamin Franklin had proposed to the American congress articles of confederation and union among the colonies; but the majority in congress not being then prepared for so decisive a step, the subject was for the time dropped, but was resumed again shortly before the declaration of independence, in the following year.

a. 1776.

2. Of the action of Congress respecting a plan of confederation?

3. Of the ratification of the articles of confederation by the states?

50. [2]On the 11th of June,[a] congress appointed a committee to prepare a plan of confederation. A plan was reported by the committee in July following, and, after various changes, was finally adopted by congress on the 15th of November, 1777. [3]Various causes, the principal of which was a difference of opinion with respect to the disposition of the vacant western lands, prevented the immediate ratification of these articles by all the states; but at length those states which claimed the western lands having ceded them to the Union, for the common benefit of the whole, the articles of confederation were ratified by Maryland, the last remaining state, on the first of March, 1781; at which time they became the constitution of the country.

4. What was the character of the confederation?

5. What led to a revision of the system?

51. [4]The confederation, however, amounted to little more than a mere league of friendship between the states; for although it invested congress with many of the powers of sovereignty, it was defective as a permanent government, owing to the want of all means to enforce its decrees. [5]While the states were bound together by a sense of common danger, the evils of the plan were little noticed; but after the close of the war they became so prominent as to make a revision of the system necessary.[b]

b. See p. 283.

CHAPTER IV.

Of what does Chapter IV. treat?

EVENTS OF 1778.

6. What had the British ministry confidently expected, and how were they sustained in their policy?

1. [6]PREVIOUS to the defeat of Burgoyne, the British ministry had looked forward, with confidence, to the speedy termination of the war, by the conquest of the rebellious colonies. The minority in parliament en-

deavored, in vain, to stay the course of violent measures, and the warlike policy of the ministers was sustained by powerful majorities in both houses. [1]But the unexpected news of the surrender of the entire northern British army, produced a great change in the aspect of affairs, and plunged the nation into a dejection as profound as their hopes had been sanguine, and the promises of ministers magnificent.

1778.

1. *What effect did the surrender of the northern army produce?*

2. [2]Lord North, compelled by the force of public opinion, now came forward[a] with two conciliatory bills, by which England virtually conceded all that had been the cause of controversy between the two countries, and offered more than the colonies had asked or desired previous to the declaration of independence. These bills passed rapidly through parliament, and received the royal assent.[b]

a. Feb.

2. *What bills were then brought forward by Lord North, and how were they received?*

b. March 11.

3. [3]Commissioners were then sent to America, with proposals for an amicable adjustment of differences; but these were promptly rejected by the congress, which refused to treat with Great Britain until she should either withdraw her fleets and armies, or, in positive and express terms, acknowledge the independence of the states. [4]One of the commissioners then attempted to gain the same ends by private intrigue and bribery, —which coming to the knowledge of congress, that body declared it incompatible with their honor to hold any correspondence or intercourse with him.

3. *What proposals were made to congress, and what was the result?*

4. *What unworthy act is mentioned, and what did congress resolve?*

4. [5]Soon after the rejection of the British terms of accommodation, congress received the news of the acknowledgment of American independence by the court of France, and the conclusion of a treaty of alliance and commerce between the two countries. [6]The treaty was signed the sixth of February, by Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, on the part of America, and was ratified by congress on the fourth of May following.

5. *What gratifying intelligence did congress soon after receive?*

Feb. 6

6. *By whom was the treaty signed, and when ratified?*

5. [7]In the second part of the treaty it was stipulated, that, should war occur between France and England, the two parties should assist each other with counsel and with arms, and that neither should conclude truce or peace with Great Britain without the consent of the other. [8]This treaty was considered equivalent to a

7. *What were the stipulations of the treaty?*

8. *How was this treaty regarded?*

1778. declaration of war by France against Great Britain; and the two European powers made the most active preparations for the approaching contest.

8. April 18.

1. *What were the first hostile measures of France?*

6. [1]A French fleet, under the command of Count D'Estaing, was despatched* to America, with the design of blockading the British fleet in the Delaware, while Washington should hold the land forces in check in New Jersey. [2]But Admiral Howe had already anticipated the scheme, and, before the arrival of D'Estaing, had sailed for New York, where all the British forces had been ordered to concentrate. General Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe in the command of the land forces, evacuated Philadelphia on the 18th of June, and with about eleven thousand men, and an immense quantity of baggage and provisions, commenced his retreat towards New York.

2. *What were the movements of Admiral Howe and Gen. Clinton?*

June 18.

3. *Of Washington?*

7. [3]Washington, whose numbers exceeded those of Clinton, followed cautiously with the main body of his army, while detachments were sent forward to cooperate with the Jersey militia in harassing the enemy, and retarding their march. [4]The commander-in-chief was anxious to try a general engagement, but his opinion was overruled in a council of officers.

4. *What prevented a general engagement?*

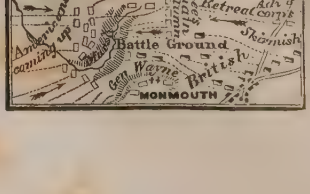
5. *Nevertheless, what orders did Lee receive?*

[5]Nevertheless, when the British had arrived at Monmouth,* Washington, unwilling to permit them to reach the secure heights of Middletown† without a battle, ordered General Lee, who had been previously exchanged, to attack their rear.

6. *What events occurred on the morning of the 28th?*

8. [6]On the morning of the 28th, the light-horse of Lafayette advanced against the enemy, but, being briskly charged by Cornwallis and Clinton, was forced to fall back. Lee, surprised by the sudden charge of the enemy, ordered a retreat across a morass in his rear for the purpose of gaining a more favorable position; but part of his troops, mistaking the order, contin-

BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.



* *Monmouth*, now the village of *Freehold*, in Monmouth County, is about eighteen miles S.E. from New Brunswick. The principal part of the battle was fought about a mile and a half N.W. from the village, on the road to Englishtown. (See Map; also Map, p. 226.)

† *Middletown* is a small village twelve miles N.E. from Monmouth, on the road to Sandy Hook. The *Heights* mentioned are the *Navesink Hills*, bordering Sandy Hook Bay on the south. (See Map, p. 226.)

ued to retreat, and Lee was compelled to follow, briskly pursued by the enemy. At this moment, Washington, coming up, and both surprised and vexed at observing the retreat, or rather flight of the troops, addressed Lee with some warmth, and ordered him to rally his troops and oppose the enemy. **1778.**

9. [1]Stung by the reproaches of his general, Lee made extreme exertions to rally, and, having disposed his troops on more advantageous ground, opposed a powerful check to the enemy, until at length, overpowered by numbers, he was forced to fall back, which he did, however, without any confusion. The main body soon coming up in separate detachments, the battle became general, and was continued until night put an end to the contest. [2]Washington kept his troops under arms during the night, designing to renew the battle on the coming morning; but Clinton, in the mean time, silently drew off his troops, and proceeded rapidly on his route towards New York.

1. *Relate the progress and end of the contest*

2. *What occurred the following night?*

10. [3]The British left upon the field of battle about three hundred killed; while the loss of the Americans was less than seventy. On both sides many died of the intense heat of the weather, added to the fatigue of the day. [4]General Lee, who had been deeply irritated by the reprimand of Washington on the day of battle, addressed to him two haughty and offensive letters, demanding reparation. [5]The result was the arrest of Lee, and his trial, by a court-martial, on the charges of disobedience of orders, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief. He was found guilty, and was suspended from his command one year. He never rejoined the army, but died in seclusion at Philadelphia, just before the close of the war.

3. *What losses were sustained?*

4. *What was next done by Gen. Lee?*

5. *What farther is said of him?*

11. [6]After the battle of Monmouth, the British proceeded without farther molestation to Sandy Hook, whence they were taken on board the British fleet, and transported[a] to New York. Washington proceeded to White Plains, where he remained until late in autumn, when he retired to winter quarters at Middlebrook,[b] in New Jersey. [7]On the 11th of July the fleet of Count D'Estaing appeared off Sandy Hook.

6. *What were the subsequent movements of the two armies?*

a. July 5.

b. N. p. 234.

7. *What is said of the fleet of Count D'Estaing?*

1778. but being unable to pass the bar at the entrance of New York Bay, was forced to abandon the design of attacking the British fleet, and, by the advice of Washington, sailed for Newport, in Rhode Island. [1]Soon after the departure of D'Estaing, several vessels arrived at New York, and joined the British fleet; when Admiral Howe, although his squadron was still inferior to that of the French, hastened to Rhode Island for the relief of General Pigot.

1. *Of the British fleet?*

12. [2]In the mean time General Sullivan, with a detachment from Washington's army, and with reenforcements from New England, had arrived at Providence, with the design of co-operating with the French fleet in an attack on the British force stationed at Newport. Sullivan was subsequently joined by Generals Greene and Lafayette, and the army took post at Tiverton,[a] whence, on the 9th of August, it crossed the eastern passage of the bay, and landed on the northern part of Rhode Island.[b]

2. *What were the movements of Generals Sullivan, Greene, and Lafayette?*

a. N. p. 85, and Map, p. 112.

Aug. 9.

b. N. p. 214.

13. [3]A simultaneous attack by land and sea had been planned against the British; but, on the morning of the tenth, the fleet of Lord Howe appeared in sight, and D'Estaing immediately sailed out to give him battle. [4]While each commander was striving to get the advantage of position, and at the very moment when they were about to engage, a violent storm arose, which parted[c] the combatants, and greatly damaged the fleets.

3. *What prevented an attack?*

Aug. 10.

4. *What events followed?*

c. Aug. 12.

Aug. 20.

14. [5]On the 20th, D'Estaing returned to Newport, but soon sailed[d] to Boston to repair damages, contrary to the strong remonstrances of the Americans. The British fleet returned to New York. [6]General Sullivan, in the mean time, had advanced to the siege of Newport, but seeing the allied fleet retire, he was forced to withdraw his army. The English pursued, and attacked[e] him in the northern part of the island, but were repulsed with considerable loss. On the night of the 30th Sullivan regained the mainland, narrowly escaping being intercepted by General Clinton, who arrived the next[f] day, with a force of four thousand men and a light squadron, for the relief of Newport.

5. *Whither did the fleets then sail?*

d. Aug. 22.

6. *What happened to the army of Sullivan in the mean time?*

e. Aug. 29.

Aug. 30.

f. Aug. 31.

15. [7]Finding Newport secure, General Clinton returned to New York, and soon after detached General

7. *Give an account of the expeditions of Gen. Grey and Capt. Ferguson.*

Grey, on an expedition against the southern shores of Massachusetts, and the adjoining islands. Arriving[a] in Buzzard's Bay,* a place of resort for American privateers, he burned about 70 sail of shipping,—destroyed a large amount of property in New Bedford† and Fair Haven, and made a descent[b] upon Martha's Vineyard. A similar expedition,[c] under the command of Captain Ferguson, was soon after undertaken against Little Egg Harbor,‡ in New Jersey, by which a considerable amount of stores fell into the hands[d] of the enemy. **1778.**

a. Sept. 5.

b. Sept. 7.

c. Sailed Sept. 30.

d. Oct. 6.

16. [1]In the early part of the summer, a force of about 1600 tories and Indians, under the command of Col. John Butler and the Indian chieftain Brandt, appeared near the flourishing settlements in the valley of Wyoming,§ situated on the banks of the Susquehannah. About 400 of the settlers, who marched out to meet the enemy, were defeated[e] with the loss of nearly their whole number. The fort at Wyoming was then besieged, but the garrison, being drawn out to hold a parley with the besiegers, was attacked, and nearly the whole number was slain.[f]

1. *Give an account of the attack on Wyoming*

e. July 3.

f. July 4.

17. [2]The remnant in the fort, having sent a flag of truce to know what terms must be expected, received in reply, "The hatchet." When compelled to surrender at last, their women and children were shut up in the houses and barracks, and consumed in one general conflagration. The last fort offered no resistance, and shared the same fate. All the settlements were then ravaged and desolated by fire and sword, with the most cold-blooded and remorseless barbarity. The tories appeared to vie with, and even to surpass the savages in these scenes of horror.

2. *Relate the farther cruelties of the assailants*

18. [3]A retaliatory expedition was undertaken in October, against the Indians on the upper branches of

3. *What retaliatory expeditions were undertaken?*

---

* *Buzzard's Bay* lies on the S. coast of Massachusetts, E. from Rhode Island. The distance from the head of this bay across the peninsula of Cape Cod is only five miles.

† *New Bedford* is a large village on the W. side of an arm of the sea that sets up from Buzzard's Bay. A bridge near the centre of the village connects it with *Fair Haven* on the E. side of the stream.

‡ *Little Egg Harbor* Bay, River, and Town, lie at the southeastern extremity of Burlington Co., about sixty-five miles S. from Sandy Hook. The British troops passed about fifteen miles up the river.

§ The name *Wyoming* was applied to a beautiful valley on both sides of the Susquehanna in the present county of Luzerne, Pennsylvania. The small village of Wyoming is on the W. side of the Susquehanna, nearly opposite Wilkesbarre.

1778. the Susquehannah; and one early in the following year, by Colonel Clark, against the settlements established by the Canadians west of the Alleghanies. [1]The tory settlers, filled with dismay, hastened to swear allegiance to the United States; and the retreats of the hostile tribes on the Wabash* were penetrated, and their country desolated.

1. *With what success?*

2. *What is said of the attack on Cherry Valley?*

19. [2]In November, a repetition of the barbarities of Wyoming was attempted by a band of tories, regulars, and Indians, who made an attack[a] upon the Cherry Valley† settlement in New York. Many of the inhabitants were killed, and others were carried into captivity; but the fort, containing about 200 soldiers, was not taken. [3]These excursions were the only events, requiring notice, which took place in the middle and northern sections of the country during the remainder of the year 1778. The scene of events was now changed to the south, which henceforth became the principal theatre on which the British conducted offensive operations.

a. Nov. 11, 12.

3. *Of the remainder of the year 1778?*

20. [4]Early in November the Count D'Estaing sailed[b] for the West Indies, for the purpose of attacking the British dependencies in that quarter. On the same day, the British admiral Hotham sailed[c] from Sandy Hook; and in December, he was followed by Admiral Byron, who had superseded Admiral Howe in the command of the British fleet. [5]In November Colonel Campbell was despatched[d] from New York, by General Clinton, with a force of about 2000 men, against Georgia, the most feeble of the southern provinces.

b. Nov. 3.

4. *What were the movements of the hostile fleets?*

c. Nov. 3.

5. *What other event occurred in November?*

d. Nov. 27.

21. [6]Late in December the troops landed[e] near Savannah, which was then defended by the American general, Robert Howe, with about 600 regular troops, and a few hundred militia. General Howe had recently returned from an unsuccessful expedition against East Florida, and his troops, still enfeebled by disease, were in a poor condition to face the enemy. Being

e. Dec. 29.

6. *Give an account of the loss of Savannah.*

* The *Wabash* River rises in the western part of Ohio, and after running a short distance N.W. into Indiana, passes S.W. through that state, and thence south to Ohio River, forming about half the western boundary of Indiana.

† *Cherry Valley*, town and village, is in Otsego Co., N. Y., fifty-two miles W. from Albany, and about fifteen S. from the Mohawk River. It was first settled in 1740. The luxuriant growth of Wild Cherry gave it the name of *Cherry Valley*, which was for a long time applied to a large section of country S. and W. of the present village.

attacked[a] near the city, and defeated, with the broken remains of his army he retreated up the Savannah, and took shelter by crossing into South Carolina. **1779.**

a. Dec. 29.

22. [1]Thus the capital of Georgia fell into the hands of the enemy;—the only important acquisition which they had made during the year. The two hostile armies at the north, after two years' maneuvering, had been brought back to nearly the same relative positions which they occupied at the close of 1776; and the offending party in the beginning, now intrenching himself on New York Island, was reduced to the use of the pickaxe and the spade for defence. [2]In the language of Washington, "The hand of Providence had been so conspicuous in all this, that he who lacked faith must have been worse than an infidel; and he, more than wicked, who had not gratitude to acknowledge his obligations."

1. *What is said of the result of the campaign, and the relative positions of the two armies at its close?*

2. *How was this result viewed by Washington?*

CHAPTER V.

Of what does Chapter V. treat?

EVENTS OF 1779.

1. [3]The military operations during the year 1779, were carried on in three separate quarters. The British force at the south was engaged in prosecuting the plan of reducing Georgia and South Carolina; the forces of Washington and Clinton were employed in the northern section of the Union; and the fleets of France and England contended for superiority in the West Indies.

3. *How were the operations of the year 1779 conducted?*

2. [4]Soon after the fall of Savannah, General Prevost, with a body of troops from East Florida, captured[b] the fort at Sunbury,* the only remaining military post in Georgia; after which, he united his forces with those of Colonel Campbell, and took the chief command of the southern British army. An expedition which he sent against Port Royal,[c] in South Carolina, was at-

b. Jan. 9

4. *What events succeeded the fall of Savannah?*

c. Note and Map, p. 35.

* *Sunbury* is on the S. side of Medway River, at the head of St. Catharine's Sound, about twenty eight miles S.W. from Savannah.

1779. tacked by the Carolinians under General Moultrie, and defeated with severe loss.

1. *Why did the British advance to Augusta?*

2. *What is related of a body of tories under Col. Boyd?*

3. [1]In order to encourage and support the loyalists, large numbers of whom were supposed to reside in the interior and northern portions of the province, the British advanced to Augusta. [2]A body of tories, having risen in arms, and having placed themselves under the command of Colonel Boyd, proceeded along the western frontiers of Carolina in order to join the royal army, committing great devastations and cruelties on the way. When near the British posts, they were encountered* by Colonel Pickens at the head of a party of Carolina militia, and, in a desperate engagement, were totally defeated.[a] Colonel Boyd was killed, and seventy of his men were condemned to death, as traitors to their country,—but only five were executed.

a. Feb. 14.

3. *What expedition did Gen. Lincoln send across the Savannah?*

4. [3]Encouraged by this success, General Lincoln, who had previously been placed in command of the southern department, and who had already advanced to the west bank of the Savannah, sent a detachment of nearly 2000 men, under General Ash, across the river, for the purpose of repressing the incursions of the enemy, and confining them to the low country near the ocean.

b. March 3.

4. *Give an account of the defeat of Gen. Ash.*

5. [4]Having taken a station on Brier Creek,† General Ash was surprised and defeated[b] by General Prevost, with the loss of nearly his whole army. Most of the militia, who fled at the first fire of the enemy, were either drowned in the river, or swallowed up in the surrounding marshes. [5]The subjugation of Georgia was complete; and General Prevost now busied himself in securing the farther co-operation of the loyalists, and in re-establishing, for a brief period, a royal legislature.

5. *With what did General Prevost next busy himself?*

6. *What is said of the situation and farther designs of Gen. Lincoln?*

6. [6]Although, by the repulse at Briar Creek, General Lincoln had lost one-fourth of his army, yet, by the extreme exertions of the Carolinians, by the middle of April he was enabled to enter the field anew, at the head of more than five thousand men. Leaving Gen

* At Kettle Creek, on the S.W. side of the Savannah River.

† *Brier Creek* enters the Savannah from the west, fifty-three miles N. from Savannah. The battle was fought on the N. bank, near the Savannah.

eral Moultrie to watch the movements of General Prevost, he commenced[a] his march up the left bank of the Savannah, with the design of entering Georgia by the way of Augusta. **1779.**

a. April 23.

7. [1]General Prevost, in the mean time, had marched upon Charleston, before which he appeared on the 11th of May, and, on the following day, summoned the town to surrender; but the approach of Lincoln soon compelled him to retreat. On the 20th of June the Americans attacked[b] a division of the enemy advantageously posted at the pass of Stono Ferry,* but, after a severe action, were repulsed with considerable loss. The British soon after established a post at Beaufort,[c] on Port Royal Island, after which the main body of the army retired to Savannah. The unhealthiness of the season prevented, during several months, any farther active operations of the two armies.

1. *What were the next movements of the two armies?*

b. June 20.

c. See Map, p. 35.

8. [2]While these events were transpiring at the South, the forces of Clinton, at the North, were employed in various predatory incursions;—ravaging the coasts, and plundering the country, with the avowed object of rendering the colonies of as little avail as possible to their new allies the French.

2. *How were the forces of Clinton employed in the mean time?*

9. [3]In February, Governor Tryon, at the head of about 1500 men, proceeded from Kingsbridge,[d] as far as Horse Neck, in Connecticut, where he destroyed some salt works, and plundered the inhabitants, but otherwise did little damage. General Putnam, being accidentally at Horse Neck,[e] hastily collected about a hundred men, and having placed them, with a couple of old field-pieces, on the high ground near the meeting-house, continued to fire upon the enemy until the British dragoons were ordered to charge upon him; when, ordering his men to retreat and form on a hill at a little distance, he put spurs to his steed, and plunged down the precipice at the church; escaping uninjured by the many balls that were fired at him in his descent.

d. N. p. 224.

3. *Give an account of Gov. Tryon's expedition to Connecticut, and of Putnam's escape.*

e. N. p. 122 and Map, p. 225.

10. [4]In an expedition against Virginia, public and private property, to a large amount, was destroyed[f] at

4. *What is said of the expedition against Virginia?*

f. May 14.

* *Stono Ferry*, ten miles W. from Charleston, is the passage across *Stono River*, leading from John's Island to the mainland.

1779. Norfolk, Portsmouth,* and the neighboring towns and villages,—the enemy every where marking their route by cruelty and devastation. [1]In an expedition up the Hudson, conducted by General Clinton himself, Stony Point† was abandoned,[a] and the garrison at Verplank's Point‡ was forced to surrender[b] after a short but spirited resistance. Both places were then garrisoned by the enemy.

1. *Of the expedition of Clinton up the Hudson?*

a. May 31.
b. June 1.

11. [2]Early in July, Governor Tryon, with about 2600 men, was despatched against the maritime towns of Connecticut. In this expedition New Haven[c] was plundered,[d] and East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk, were reduced to ashes.[e] Various acts of cruelty were committed on the defenceless inhabitants; and yet the infamous Tryon boasted of his clemency, declaring that the existence of a single house on the coast was a monument of the king's mercy.

2. *Of the second expedition of Gov. Tryon against Connecticut?*

c. See p. 107.
d. July 5.
e. 7th—12th.

12. [3]While Tryon was desolating the coasts of Connecticut, the Americans distinguished themselves by one of the most brilliant achievements which occurred during the war. This was the recapture of Stony Point, on the Hudson. [4]On the 15th of July General Wayne advanced against this fortress, and arrived at the works in the evening, without being perceived by the enemy. Dividing his force into two columns, both marched in order and silence, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets.

3. *What brilliant achievement occurred about this time?*

July 15.

4. *What was the time and what the plan of the attack?*

13. [5]As they were wading through a deep morass, which was covered by the tide, the English opened upon them a tremendous fire of musketry, and of cannon loaded with grape shot; but nothing could check the impetuosity of the Americans. They opened their way with the bayonet,—scaled the fort,—and the two columns met in the centre of the works. [6]The British lost upwards of six hundred men in killed and prisoners, besides a large amount of military stores. The American loss was about 100.

5. *Give an account of the success of the enterprise.*

15th, 16th.

6. *What were the losses on each side?*

* *Portsmouth*, Virginia, is on the west side of Elizabeth River, opposite to, and one mile distant from Norfolk. (See *Norfolk*, p. 213.)

† *Stony Point* is a high rocky promontory at the head of Haverstraw Bay, on the W bank of Hudson River, about forty miles N. from New York. A light-house has been erected on the site of the old fort. (See Map, p. 244.)

‡ *Verplank's Point* is on the E. side of the Hudson River, nearly opposite Stony Point. (See Map, p. 244.)

14. [1]Soon after the taking of Stony Point, Major Lee surprised[a] a British garrison at Paulus Hook,*—killed thirty, and took one hundred and sixty prisoners. [2]These successes, however, were more than counterbalanced by an unsuccessful attempt on a British post which had recently been established on the Penobscot River. [3]A flotilla of 37 sail, fitted out by Massachusetts, proceeded against the place.[b] After a useless delay, during a siege of 15 days, the Americans were on the point of proceeding to the assault, when a British fleet suddenly made its appearance, and attacked[c] and destroyed the flotilla. Most of the soldiers and sailors who escaped made their way back by land, through pathless forests, enduring the extremes of hardship and suffering. **1779.**

a. July 19.
1. *What occurred at Paulus Hook?*
2. *By what were these successes counterbalanced?*
b. Arrived July 25.
3. *Give an account of this enterprise.*
c. Aug. 13.

15. [4]The Six Nations, with the exception of the Oneidas, incited by British agents, had long carried on a distressing warfare against the border settlements. [5]To check their depredations, a strong force, under the command of General Sullivan, was sent against them during the summer of this year. Proceeding[d] up the Susquehanna, from Wyoming, with about three thousand men, at Tioga Point† he was joined[e] by General James Clinton, from the banks of the Mohawk, with an additional force of 1600.

4. *What is said of the hostilities of the Six Nations?*
5. *Of the expedition sent against them?*
d. July 31.
e. Aug. 22.

16. [6]On the 29th of August they found a body of Indians and tories strongly fortified at Elmira,‡ where was fought the "Battle of the Chemung," in which the enemy were defeated with such loss that they abandoned all thoughts of farther resistance. [7]Sullivan then laid waste the Indian country as far as the Genesee River,§ burned forty villages, and destroyed more than one hundred and fifty thousand bushels of corn. The Indians were greatly intimidated by this

Aug. 29.
6. *Of the "battle of the Chemung?"*
7. *Of the next measures of Gen. Sullivan?*
Aug., Sept.

* *Paulus Hook*, now Jersey City, is a point of land on the W. side of the Hudson, opposite New York City. (See Map, p. 117.)

† *Tioga Point* is at the confluence of the Tioga River and the Susquehannah, in the northern part of Pennsylvania. The village of Athens now occupies the place of Sullivan's encampment.

‡ *Elmira*, formerly called *Newtown*, is situated on the N. side of the Chemung o Tioga River, about twenty miles N.W. from Tioga Point.

§ The *Genesee* River rises in Pennsylvania, and running N. through New York, en ers Lake Ontario seven miles north of Rochester

1779. expedition, and their future incursions became less formidable, and less frequent.

1. The effect of the expedition?

17. [1]Early in September, the Count D'Estaing, returning from the West Indies, appeared[a] with his fleet on the coast of Georgia, and soon after, in concert with the American force under General Lincoln, laid siege to Savannah. After the expiration of a month, an assault was made[b] on the enemy's works, but the assailants were repulsed with the loss of nearly a thousand men in killed and wounded. Count Pulaski, a celebrated Polish nobleman, who had espoused the cause of the states, was mortally wounded.

a. Sept. 9.

1. What is said of Count D'Estaing, and of the siege of Savannah?

b. Oct. 9.

2. What events followed the repulse from Savannah?

18. [2]The repulse from Savannah was soon followed by the abandonment of the enterprise—Count D'Estaing again departing[c] with his whole fleet from the American coast, and General Lincoln retreating[c] into South Carolina. Late in October, Sir Henry Clinton, fearing an attack from the French fleet, ordered his forces in Rhode Island to withdraw to New York. The retreat[d] was effected with so much haste, that the enemy left behind them all their heavy artillery, and a large quantity of stores.

c. Oct. 18.

d. Oct. 25.

3. Why did Spain declare war?

19. [3]During the summer of this year, Spain, anxious to recover Gibraltar,* Jamaica, and the two Floridas, seized the favorable opportunity for declaring[e] war against Great Britain. [4]An immense French and Spanish armada soon after appeared[f] on the coasts of Britain, with the evident design of invading the kingdom; but a variety of disasters defeated the project.

e. June 16.

4. What is said of an attempt to invade Gt. Britain?

f. Aug.

5. What defeated the project?

20. [5]At the very time when a landing was designed at Plymouth, a violent gale[g] from the northeast drove the combined fleet from the channel into the open sea. Added to this, a violent epidemic, raging among the soldiers, swept off more than five thousand of their number. [6]The important post of Gibraltar, however, was soon after besieged by the combined fleets of France and Spain, and the siege was vigorously carried on, but without success, during most of the remaining three years of the war.

g. Aug.

6. What is said of the siege of Gibraltar?

Sept. 23. What battle was

21. [7]On the 23d of September, one of the most

* *Gibraltar* is a well known, high and narrow promontory, in the S. of Spain, on the strait which connects the Atlantic with the Mediterranean.

bloody naval battles ever known was fought on the coast of Scotland, between a flotilla of French and American vessels under the command of Paul Jones, and two English frigates that were convoying a fleet of merchantmen. [1]At half past seven in the evening, the ship of Jones, the Bon Homme Richard,[a] of 40 guns, engaged the Serapis, a British frigate of 44, under command of Captain Pearson. The two frigates coming in contact, Jones lashed them together, and in this situation, for two hours, the battle raged with incessant fury, while neither thought of surrendering. **1779.**

fought on the coast of Scotland in September?

a. Good Man Richard.

1. *Give an account of the events of the battle*

22. While both ships were on fire, and the Richard on the point of sinking, the American frigate Alliance came up, and, in the darkness of the night, discharged her broadside into the Richard. Discovering her mistake, she fell with augmented fury on the Serapis, which soon surrendered. Of three hundred and seventy-five men that were on board the vessel of Jones, three hundred were killed or wounded. The Richard sunk soon after her crew had taken possession of the conquered vessel. At the same time the remaining English frigate, after a severe engagement, was captured.

23. [2]Thus terminated the most important military events of 1779. The flattering hopes inspired in the minds of the Americans, by the alliance with France in the former year, had not been realized; and the failure of every scheme of co-operation on the part of the French fleet, had produced a despondency of mind unfavorable to great exertions. [3]The American army was reduced in number, and badly clothed; the national treasury was empty; congress was without credit; and the rapidly diminishing value of the paper currency of the country, brought distress upon all classes,—occasioned the ruin of thousands,—and even threatened the dissolution of the army.

2. *What is said of the result of the military events of 1779?*

3. *Of the condition of the American army and the people?*

24 [4]On the part of Britain, a far different scene was presented. Notwithstanding the formidable combination of enemies which now threatened her, she displayed the most astonishing resources, and made renewed exertions for the conquest of the colonies. Par-

4. *Of the resources of Gt. Britain, and her renewed exertions for the conquest of the colonies?*

1780. liament voted for the service of the year 1780, eighty five thousand seamen, and thirty-five thousand troops in addition to those already abroad; and, for the service of the same year, the House of Commons voted the enormous sum of one hundred millions of dollars.

CHAPTER VI.

EVENTS OF 1780.

Of what does Chapter VI. treat?

1. What is said of the scene of military operations for the year 1780?

1. [1]During the year 1780, military operations were mostly suspended in the North, in consequence of the transfer of the scene of action to the Carolinas. [2]Late in December of the previous year, Sir Henry Clinton, leaving General Knyphausen at New York, sailed[a] with the bulk of his army to the South, under convoy of Admiral Arbuthnot, and arrived on the coast of Georgia late in January. On the 10th of February he departed from Savannah for the siege of Charleston, then defended by General Lincoln, and after taking possession[b] of the islands south of the city, crossed[c] the Ashley River with the advance of the army, and on the first of April commenced erecting batteries within eight hundred yards of the American works.

a. Dec. 26, 1779.

2. What were the movements of Gen. Clinton previous to the commencement of the siege of Charleston?

b. Feb. 11.

c. March 29.

April 1.

April 9.

3. What is said of Admiral Arbuthnot?

4. Of the summons to surrender?

d. April 9.

5. What is said of Gen. Huger, and of the detachment sent against him?

2. [3]On the 9th of April, Admiral Arbuthnot, favored by a strong southerly wind and the tide, passed Fort Moultrie with little damage, and anchored his fleet in Charleston harbor, within cannon shot of the city. [4]A summons[d] to surrender being rejected, the English opened[d] their batteries upon the town. [5]The Americans, in the mean time, in order to form a rallying point for the militia, and, possibly, succor the city, had assembled a corps under the command of General Huger on the upper part of Cooper River, at a place called Monk's Corner.* Against this post Clinton sent a detachment of fourteen hundred men, commanded by Webster, Tarleton, and Ferguson, which succeeded in surprising[e] the party,—putting the whole to flight,—

e April 14.

---

* *Monk's Corner* is on the W. side of Cooper River, thirty miles N. from Charleston (See Map, next page.)

and capturing a large quantity of arms, clothing, and ammunition. **1780.**

3. [1]Soon after, an American corps was surprised[a] on the Santee,* by Colonel Tarleton. The enemy overran the country on the left side of the Cooper River,—Fort Moultrie surrendered on the 6th of May,—and Charleston thus found itself completely enclosed by the British forces, with no prospect of relief, either by land or by sea. In this extremity, the fortifications being mostly beaten down, and the enemy prepared for an assault, on the 12th of May the city surrendered. General Lincoln and the troops under his command became prisoners of war.

a. May 6.

1. *What were the successes of the British soon after?*

May 6.

May 12.

4. [2]Having possession of the capital, General Clinton made preparations for recovering the rest of the province, and for re-establishing royal authority. Three expeditions which he despatched into the country were completely successful. One seized the important post of Ninety-six;† another scoured the country bordering on the Savannah; while Lord Cornwallis passed the Santee, and made himself master of Georgetown.‡ [3]A body of about 400 republicans, under Colonel Buford, retreating towards North Carolina, being pursued by Colonel Tarleton, and overtaken[b] at Waxhaw Creek,§ was entirely cut to pieces. [4]Many of the inhabitants now joined the royal standard; and Clinton, seeing the province in tranquillity, left Lord Cornwallis in com-

2. *What preparations did General Clinton next make, and what is said of the expeditions sent into the country?*

3. *What happened to Col. Buford?*

b. May 29.

4. *What is said of the success of the royal cause, and the departure of Clinton?*

SEAT OF WAR IN SOUTH CAROLINA.

* *Santee River*, the principal river of South Carolina, is formed by the confluence of the Wateree from the E. and the Congaree from the W., eighty-five miles N.W. from Charleston.—Running S.E. it enters the Atlantic, about fifty miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map.)

† The post of *Ninety-six* was near the boundary line between the present Edgefield and Abbeville Counties, S. Carolina, five miles S.W. from the Saluda River, and 150 miles N.W. from Charleston. (See Map.)

‡ *Georgetown* is on the W. bank of the Pedee, at its entrance into Winyaw Bay, about sixty miles N.E. from Charleston. (See Map.)

§ *Waxhaw Creek*, rising in N. Carolina, enters the Wateree or the Catawba from the E., 155 miles N.W. from Charleston. (See Map.)

1780. mand of the southern forces; and, early in June, with a large body of his troops, embarked[a] for New York.

a. June 5.

How were the British much annoyed?

5. [1]But notwithstanding the apparent tranquillity which prevailed at the time of Clinton's departure, bands of patriots, under daring leaders, soon began to collect on the frontiers of the province, and, by sudden attacks, to give much annoyance to the royal troops. [2]Colonel Sumpter, in particular, distinguished himself in these desultory excursions. In an attack[b] which he made on a party of British at Rocky Mount* he was repulsed, but not disheartened. He soon after surprised and completely defeated[c] a large body of British regulars and tories posted at Hanging Rock.† [3]This partisan warfare restored confidence to the republicans,—disheartened the loyalists,—and confined to more narrow limits the operations of the enemy.

2. *What is said of Col. Sumpter?*

b. July 30.

c. Aug. 6.

3. *The effects of this partisan warfare?*

4. *What, in the mean time, were the movements of Gates and Rawdon?*

6. [4]In the mean time a strong force from the North, under General Gates, was approaching for the relief of the southern provinces. The British general, Lord Rawdon, on receiving tidings of the approach of Gates, concentrated his forces at Camden‡, where he was soon after joined[d] by Lord Cornwallis from Charleston. On the night of the 15th of August, Gates advanced from Clermont,§ with the view of surprising the British camp. At the same time Cornwallis and Rawdon were advancing from Camden, with the design of surprising the Americans.

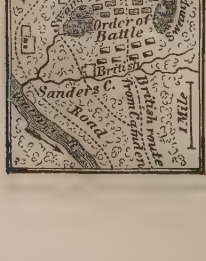
d. Aug. 13, 14.

5. *Give an account of the battle of Sanders' Creek.*

7. [5]The two vanguards met in the night near Sanders' Creek, when some skirmishing ensued, and in the morning a general engagement commenced[e] between the two armies. The first onset decided the fate of the battle. The Virginia and Carolina militia wavering, the

e. Aug. 16.

BAT. OF SANDERS' CREEK.



* *Rocky Mount* is at the northern extremity of the present Fairfield County, on the W. bank of the Wateree, thirty-five miles N.W. from Charleston. (Map, p. 261.)

† *Hanging Rock* is a short distance E. from the Catawba or Wateree River, in the present Lancaster County and about thirty-five miles N. from Camden. (Map, p. 261.)

‡ *Camden* is on the E. bank of the Wateree, 110 miles N.W. from Charleston. The battle of the 16th took place a little N. from Sanders' Creek, about eight miles N from Camden. (See Map; also Map, p. 261.)

§ *Clermont* is about thirteen miles N. from Camden (See Map p. 261.)

British charged them with fixed bayonets, and soon put them to flight; but the Maryland and Delaware regiments sustained the fight with great gallantry, and several times compelled the enemy to retire. At length, being charged in the flank by Tarleton's cavalry,—surrounded,—and overwhelmed by numbers, they were forced to give way, and the rout became general. **1780.**

8. [1]The Americans lost in this unfortunate engagement, in killed, wounded, and captured, about a thousand men, besides all their artillery, ammunition wagons, and much of their baggage.* The Baron De Kalb, second in command, was mortally wounded. The British reported their loss at three hundred and twenty-five. [2]With the remnant of his forces Gates rapidly retreated to Hillsboro',† in North Carolina.

1. *What losses did each party sustain in this action?*

2. *Whither did Gates retreat?*

9. [3]The defeat of Gates was soon followed by the surprise and dispersion of Sumpter's corps. This officer, who had already advanced between Camden and Charleston, on learning the misfortune of his superior, retired promptly to the upper parts of Carolina, but at Fishing Creek‡ his troops were surprised by Tarleton's cavalry, and routed[a] with great slaughter.

3. *What befell Sumpter's corps soon after?*

a. Aug. 18.

10. [4]Cornwallis, again supposing the province subdued, adopted measures of extreme severity, in order to compel a submission to royal authority. Orders were given to hang every militia man who, having once served with the British, had afterwards joined the Americans; and those who had formerly submitted, but had taken part in the recent revolt, were imprisoned, and their property was taken from them or destroyed. [5]But these rigorous measures failed to accomplish their object; for although the spirit of the people was overawed, it was not subdued. The cry of vengeance arose from an exasperated people, and the British standard became an object of execration.

4. *What severe measures did Cornwallis adopt?*

5. *What was the effect of these measures?*

11. [6]In September, Cornwallis detached Colonel

* [The British accounts, Stedman, ii. 210, Andrews iv. 30, &c., estimate the American loss at about 2000.]

† *Hillsboro'*, in N. Carolina, is situated on one of the head branches of the Neuse River thirty-five miles N.W. from Raleigh.

‡ *Fishing Creek* enters the Wateree from the W., about thirty miles N.W. from Camden. (See Map, p. 261.)

1780. Ferguson to the frontiers of North Carolina, for the purpose of encouraging the loyalists to take arms. A considerable number of the most profligate and abandoned repaired to his standard, and, under the conduct of their leader, committed excesses so atrocious, that the highly exasperated militia collected to intercept their march, and arming themselves with whatever chance threw in their way, attacked the party in the post which they had chosen at King's Mountain.*

5. *What is said of Col. Ferguson and his party?*

a. Oct. 7.

1. *Of the battle of King's Mountain?*

[1]The attack[a] was furious, and the defence exceedingly obstinate; but after a bloody fight, Ferguson himself was slain, and three hundred of his men were killed or wounded. Eight hundred prisoners were taken, and amongst the spoil were fifteen hundred stands of arms. The American loss was about twenty.

2. *What successes of Gen. Sumpter soon followed?*

12. [2]Notwithstanding the defeat of General Sumpter, he had again collected a band of volunteers, with which he continued to harass the enemy; and although many plans were laid for his destruction, they all failed in the execution. In an attack[b] which was made on him by Major Wemys, the British were defeated, and their commanding officer taken prisoner.† On the 20th of November he was attacked by Colonel Tarleton, at Blackstocks,‡ but after a severe loss Tarleton was obliged to retreat, leaving Sumpter in quiet possession of the field.

b. Nov. 12, at Broad River.

3. *What is said of Gen. Marion?*

13. [3]Another zealous officer, General Marion, likewise distinguished himself in this partisan warfare, and by cutting off straggling parties of the enemy, and keeping the tories in check, did the American cause valuable service.

4. *Of events during the remainder of the year?*

[4]No farther events of importance took place in the South during the remainder of the year, and we now return to notice the few which occurred during the summer in the northern provinces.

c. June 7.

5. *What occurred du-*

14. [5]Early in June, five thousand men, under General Knyphausen, passed[c] from Staten Island into New

---

* *King's Mountain* is an eminence near the boundary between N Carolina and S Carolina, W. of the Catawba River. (See Map p. 261.)

† This occurred on the eastern bank of Broad River (a northern branch of the Congaree), at a place called *Fishdam Ferry*, 52 miles N.W. from Camden. (See Map, p. 261.)

‡ *Blackstocks* is on the southern bank of Tiger River (a western branch of Broad River), in the western part of Union County, seventy-five miles N.W. from Camden (See Map, p. 261.) (There is another place called Blackstocks in Chester County, forty miles E. from this.)

Jersey,—occupied Elizabethtown,—burned Connecticut Farms,*—and appeared before Springfield; but the advance of a body of troops from Morristown, induced them to withdraw. Soon after, the enemy again advanced into New Jersey, but they were met and repulsed by the Americans at Springfield. **1780.**

ring General Knyphausen's expedition into New Jersey?

15. [1]On the 10th of July the Admiral de Ternay arrived at Newport,[a] with a French fleet, having on board six thousand men, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. Although high expectations had been indulged from the assistance of so powerful a force against the enemy, yet no enterprise of importance was undertaken, and the operations of both parties, at the North, were mostly suspended during the remainder of the season.

a. In Rhode Island.

1. *What is said of the arrival of Admiral de Ternay, and of military operations during the remainder of the season?*

16. [2]While defeat at the South, and disappointment at the North, together with the exhausted state of the finances, and an impoverished country, were openly endangering the American cause, domestic treachery was secretly plotting its ruin. [3]The traitor was Arnold;—one of the first to resist British aggression, and, hitherto, one of the most intrepid defenders of American liberty. In recompense for his distinguished services, congress had appointed him commandant at Philadelphia, soon after the evacuation of that city by the English.

2. *What dangers were at this time threatening the American cause?*

3. *Who was the traitor, and what is said of him?*

17. [4]Here he lived at great expense, indulged in gaming, and, having squandered his fortune, at length appropriated the public funds to his own uses. Although convicted by a court-martial, and reprimanded by Washington, he dissembled his purposes of revenge, and having obtained the command of the important fortress of West Point,† he privately engaged to deliver it into the hands of the enemy, for 10,000 pounds sterling, and a commission as brigadier in the British army.

4. *What is said of his habits, character, and the treason that he meditated?*

18. [5]To Major Andre, aid-de-camp to Sir Henry Clinton, and adjutant-general of the British army, a young and amiable officer of uncommon merit, the

5. *What business was intrusted to Major Andre?*

* *Connecticut Farms*, now called *Union*, is six miles S.W. from Newark, on the road from Elizabethtown to Springfield.

† The important fortress of West Point is situated on the W. bank of the Hudson, fifty-two miles from New York City. It is the seat of the United States Military Academy, established by act of Congress in 1802. (See Map, p. 244.)

1780. business of negotiating with Arnold was intrusted.

1. What were the circumstances under which he was made prisoner?

[1]Having passed up the Hudson, near to West Point, for the purpose of holding a conference with the traitor, and being obliged to attempt a return by land; when near Tarrytown* he was stopped[a] by three militia soldiers,—John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wert; who, after searching their prisoner, conducted him to Colonel Jameson, their commanding officer. [2]Andre was incautiously suffered to write to Arnold; when the latter, taking the alarm, immediately escaped on board the Vulture, a British vessel lying in the river.

a. Sept. 23.

2. How did Arnold escape?

3. What was the fate of Andre?

19. [3]The unfortunate Andre was tried by a court-martial; upon his own confession he was declared a *spy*, and, agreeably to the laws and usages of nations, was condemned to death. [4]Arnold received the stipulated reward of his treason; but even his new companions viewed the traitor with contempt, and the world now execrates his name and memory. [5]Each of the captors of Andre received the thanks of congress, a silver medal, and a pension for life.

4. What more is said of Arnold?

5. Of the captors of Andre?

6. What were the circumstances under which England declared war against Holland?

20. [6]In the latter part of this year, another European power was added to the open enemies of England. Holland, jealous of the naval superiority of Britain, had long been friendly to the American cause; she had given encouragement and protection to American privateers, and had actually commenced the negotiation of a treaty with congress, the discovery of which immediately called forth a declaration[a] of war on the part of England.

a. Dec. 20.

7. What remarks are made upon the situation of England at this period?

21. [7]Thus the American Revolution had already involved England in war with three powerful nations of Europe, and yet her exertions seemed to increase with the occasions that called them forth. Parliament again granted a large amount of money for the public service of the coming year, and voted the raising of immense armaments by sea and land.

* *Tarrytown* is on the E. bank of the Hudson, twenty-eight miles N. from New York (See Map, p. 225.) Andre was arrested about a quarter of a mile N. from the village. He was executed and buried on the W. side of the river, a quarter of a mile west from the village of Tappan, a few rods south of the New Jersey line.

SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS. (See p. 278.)

1781.

CHAPTER VII.

EVENTS OF 1781.

Of what does Chapter VII. treat?

1. [1]THE condition of the army of Washington, at the beginning of the year 1781, was widely different from that of the royal forces under the command of Clinton. While the latter were abundantly supplied with all the necessaries and comforts which their situation required, the former were suffering privations arising from want of pay, clothing, and provisions, which at one time seriously threatened the very existence of the army.

1. Whatwere the relative situations of the two armies at the beginning of this year?

2. [2]So pressing had the necessities of the soldiers become, that, on the first of January, the whole Pennsylvania line of troops, to the number of one thousand three hundred, abandoned their camp at Morristown,—declaring their intention of marching to the place where congress was in session, in order to obtain a redress of their grievances.

2. To what course was a portion of the American army driven by necessity?

3. [3]The officers being unable to quell the sedition, the mutineers proceeded in a body to Princeton, where they were met by emissaries from Sir Henry Clinton,

3. What course was taken by the mutineers?

1781. who sought to entice them into the British service. Indignant at this attempt upon their fidelity, they seized the British agents, and delivered them to General Wayne, to be treated as spies.

1. What events followed?

4. [1]A committee from congress, and also a deputation from the Pennsylvania authorities met them, first, at Princeton, and afterwards at Trenton; and after liberal concessions, and relieving their necessities in part, induced those whose terms of service had not expired, to return to their duties, after a short furlough.

2. How did these men reply to an offer of reward?

[2]Being offered a reward for apprehending the British emissaries, they nobly refused it; saying, that their necessities had forced them to demand justice from their own government, but they desired no reward for doing their duty to their country against her enemies.

3. What was the effect of this mutiny, and one in the Jersey line?

5. [3]This mutiny, and another in the Jersey line which was instantly suppressed, aroused the attention of the states, and of congress, to the miserable condition of the troops, and called forth more energetic measures for their relief.

4. By what means were the wants of the army supplied?

[4]Taxation was resorted to, and readily acquiesced in; and money, ammunition, and clothing, were obtained in Europe; but the most efficient aid was derived from the exertions of Robert Morris, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia, whom congress had recently appointed superintendent of the treasury.

5. What was done by Robert Morris, and what benefits have been attributed to his aid?

6. [5]He assumed the collection of taxes, contracted to furnish flour for the army, and freely used his own ample means and personal credit to sustain the government. In the course of the year the Bank of North America was established under his care, which exerted a highly beneficial influence upon the currency, and upon public credit. It has been asserted, that to the financial operations of Robert Morris it was principally owing that the armies of America did not disband, and that congress was enabled to continue the war with vigor and success.

6. Give an account of Arnold's depredations in Virginia.

7. [6]Early in January of this year, General Arnold, then a brigadier in the royal army, made a descent upon Virginia, with a force of 1600 men, and such a number of armed vessels as enabled him to commit extensive ravages on the unprotected coasts. Having

a. Jan. 5. destroyed[a] the public stores in the vicinity of Rich

mond,[a] and public and private property to a large amount, in different places, he entered[b] Portsmouth,[c] which he fortified, and made his head-quarters; when a plan was formed by Washington to capture him and his army. **1781.**

a. N. p. 49.
b. Jan. 20.
c. N. p. 256.

8. [1]Lafayette, with a force of 1200 men, was sent into Virginia; and the French fleet, stationed at Rhode Island, sailed[d] to co-operate with him; but the English being apprized of the project, Admiral Arbuthnot sailed from New York,—attacked[e] the French fleet, and compelled it to return to Rhode Island. Thus Arnold escaped from the imminent danger of falling into the hands of his exasperated countrymen. [2]Soon after, the British general Philips arrived[f] in the Chesapeake, with a reenforcement of 2000 men. After joining Arnold he took the command of the forces, and proceeded to overrun and lay waste the country with but little opposition.

1. *Of the attempt to seize him, and its failure.*
d. March 8.
e. March 16.
f. March 26.
2. *What is said of Gen. Philips?*

9. [3]After the unfortunate battle near Camden, mentioned in the preceding chapter,[g] congress thought proper to remove General Gates, and to appoint General Greene to the command of the southern army. [4]Soon after taking the command, although having a force of but little more than two thousand men, he despatched General Morgan to the western extremity of South Carolina, in order to check the devastations of the British and loyalists in that quarter. [5]Cornwallis, then on the point of advancing against North Carolina, unwilling to leave Morgan in his rear, sent Colonel Tarleton against him, with directions to "push him to the utmost."

g. See p. 262
3. *What change of officers was made after the battle of Camden?*
4. *What was the first measure taken by General Greene?*
5. *What did Cornwallis do?*

10. [6]Morgan at first retreated before the superior force of his enemy, but being closely pursued, he halted at a place called the Cowpens,* and arranged his men in order of battle. [7]Tarleton, soon coming up, confident of an easy victory, made an impetuous attack[h] upon the militia, who at first gave way. The British cavalry likewise dispersed a body of the regular troops, but while they were engaged in the pursuit, the Americans rallied, and in one general charge entirely routed

6. *What course was pursued by Morgan?*
h. Jan. 17.
7. *Give an account of the battle of the Cowpens.*

* *Cowpens* is near the northern boundary of S. Carolina, in Spartanburg district, five miles S. from Broad River. (See Map, p. 261.)

1781. the enemy, who fled in confusion. [1]The British lost three hundred in killed and wounded; while five hundred prisoners, a large quantity of baggage, and one hundred dragoon horses, fell into the hands of the conquerors. The Americans had only twelve men killed and sixty wounded.

1. *What loss was sustained by each party?*

2. *What did Cornwallis do, on hearing of Tarleton's defeat?*

11. [2]On receiving the intelligence of Tarleton's defeat, Cornwallis, then on the left bank of the Broad River,* destroyed his heavy baggage, and commenced a rapid march towards the fords of the Catawba,† hoping to arrive in time to intercept the retreat of Morgan before he could pass that river. [3]After a toilsome march, Morgan succeeded in reaching the fords, and crossed[a] the river in safety; but only two hours later the van of the enemy appeared on the opposite bank. It being then in the evening, Cornwallis halted and encamped; feeling confident of overtaking his adversary in the morning. During the night a heavy rain raised the waters of the river, and rendered it impassable for two days.

3. *What events followed?*

a. Jan. 29.

4. *What is said of Gen. Greene,—of the pursuit by Cornwallis, and of his second disappointment?*

12. [4]At this time General Greene, who had left the main body of his army on the left bank of the Pedee,‡ opposite Cheraw,§ arrived[b] and took the command of Morgan's division, which continued the retreat, and which was soon followed again in rapid pursuit by Cornwallis. Both armies hurried on to the Yadkin, which the Americans reached first; but while they were crossing,[c] their rear-guard was attacked by the van of the British, and part of the baggage of the retreating army was abandoned. Again Cornwallis encamped, with only a river between him and his enemy; but a sudden rise in the waters again retarded him, and he was obliged to seek a passage higher up the stream. [5]The rise of the waters, on these two occasions, was regarded by many as a manifest token

b. Jan. 31.

c. Feb. 2, 3.

5. *What is said of this singular rise of the waters on two occasions?*

* *Broad River* rises in the western part of N. Carolina, and flowing S. into S. Carolina, receives Pacolet and Tiger Rivers from the W., and unites with the Saluda two miles N. from Columbia to form the Congaree. (See Map, p. 261.)

† *Catawba* is the name given to the upper part of the Wateree. Cornwallis crossed at *Gowan's Ford*, 30 miles N. from the northern boundary of S. Carolina. (Map, p. 261.

‡ The *Great Pedee* River rises in the Blue Ridge, in the northwestern part of N. Carolina, and flowing S.E. through S. Carolina, enters the Atlantic through Winyaw Bay sixty miles N.E. from Charleston. In N. Carolina it bears the name of *Yadkin* River.

§ *Cheraw* is on the W. bank of the Pedee, ten miles S. from the N. Carolina line (See Map, p. 261.) The Americans crossed the Yadkin near Salisbury.

of the protection which Heaven granted to the justice of the American cause. **1781.**

13. [1]After crossing the Yadkin, General Greene proceeded to Guilford Court House, and after being joined[a] by the remainder of his army,[b] continued his retreat towards Virginia, still vigorously pursued by Cornwallis, who a third time reached[c] the banks of a river,[d] just as the American rear-guard had crossed safely to the other side. [2]Mortified at being repeatedly disappointed after such prodigious efforts, Cornwallis abandoned the pursuit, and turning slowly to the South, established himself at Hillsboro'.[e]

1. *Describe the retreat after crossing the Yadkin.*
a. Feb. 7.
b. See 12th verse.
c. Feb. 15.
d. The Dan.
2. *How did the pursuit terminate?*
e. N. p. 263.

14. [3]Soon after, General Greene, strengthened by a body of Virginians, recrossed[f] the Dan* into Carolina. Learning that Tarleton had been sent into the district between Haw† and Deep Rivers, to secure the cooperation of a body of loyalists who were assembling there, he sent Col. Lee with a body of militia to oppose him. On the march, Lee fell in with the loyalists, three hundred and fifty in number, who, thinking they were meeting Tarleton, were easily surrounded.[g] While they were eager to make themselves known by protestations of loyalty, and cries of "Long live the king," the militia fell upon them with fury, killed the greater portion, and took the remainder prisoners.

f. Feb. 21, 22.
3. *What were the next movements of General Greene; and what befell a company of loyalists?*
g. Feb. 23

15. [4]Having received additional reenforcements, which increased his number to 4400 men, Greene no longer avoided an engagement, but advancing to Guilford Court House,‡ posted his men on advantageous ground, and there awaited the enemy. Here, on the 15th of March, he was attacked by Cornwallis in person. At the first charge, the Carolina militia retreated in disorder. The regular troops, however, sustained the battle with great firmness; but after an obstinate contest a general retreat was ordered, and the Americans fell

4. *Give an account of the battle of Guilford Court House.*
March 15.

BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT HOUSE.

* *Dan River*, rising in the Blue Ridge, in the southern part of Virginia, and flowing E., unites with the Staunton to form the Roanoke.

† *Haw River* from the N.W., and *Deep River* from the W., unite in Chatham County, thirty miles S.W. from Raleigh, to form Cape Fear River.

‡ *Guilford Court House*, now Greensboro', the capital of Guilford County, is between the sources of Haw and Deep Rivers, about eighty miles N.W. from Raleigh. (See Map.)

1781. back several miles, leaving the field in the possession of the enemy. [1]The American loss, in killed and wounded, was about 400; but the number of fugitives, who returned to their homes, increased the total loss to 1300. The British loss was about 500 among whom were several valuable officers.

1. *What were the losses of each party?*

16. [2]The result of the battle was little less than a defeat to Cornwallis, who was unable to profit by the advantage which he had gained. He soon retired to Wilmington,[a] and, after a halt of nearly three weeks, directed his march[b] upon Virginia. [3]General Greene, in the mean time, defiling to the right, took the daring resolution of re-entering South Carolina; and, after various changes of position, encamped on Hobkirk's Hill,* little more than a mile from Lord Rawdon's post at Camden.

2. *What is said of the result of the battle, and the next movements of Cornwallis?*

a. April 7.

b. April 25.

3. *What course was taken by General Greene?*

April 25.

17. [4]Here he was attacked on the 25th of April, and so strongly did victory for a time incline to the side of the Americans, that Greene despatched a body of cavalry to intercept the enemy's retreat. A Maryland regiment, however, vigorously charged by the enemy, fell into confusion; and in spite of the exertions of the officers, the rout soon became general. The killed, wounded, and missing, on both sides, were nearly equal.

4. *Describe the battle of Hobkirk's Hill.*

c. May 10.

18. [5]Soon after, Lord Rawdon evacuated[c] Camden, and retired with his troops beyond the Santee River; when, learning that Fort Watson† had surrendered, and that Fort Mott,‡ together with the posts at Granby§ and Orangeburg,‖ were closely invested, he retreated still farther, and encamped at Eutaw Springs.¶ [6]These posts,

5. *What is said of the retreat of Lord Rawdon?*

BAT. OF HOBKIRK'S HILL.

* *Hobkirk's Hill.* (See Map.)

† *Fort Watson* was on the E. bank of the Santee, in the S.W. part of Sumpter County, about fifty-five miles from Camden. (See Map, p. 261.)

‡ *Fort Mott* was on the S. bank of the Congaree, near its junction with the Wateree, about forty miles S. from Camden. (See Map, p. 261.)

§ *Granby* is on the S. bank of the Congaree, thirty miles above Fort Mott. (See Map, p. 261.)

‖ *Orangeburg* is on the E. bank of the North Edisto twenty-five miles S.W. from Fort Mott. (See Map, p. 261.)

¶ *Eutaw Springs* is the name given to a small stream that enters the Santee from the S., at the N.W. extremity of Charleston district, about fifty miles from Charleston. (See Map, p. 261.)

together with Augusta, soon fell into the hands of the Americans; and by the 5th of June the British were confined to the three posts—Ninety-six, Eutaw Springs, and Charleston. **1781.**

19. [1]After the retreat of Lord Rawdon from Camden, General Greene proceeded to Fort Granby, and thence against Ninety-six, a place of great natural strength, and strongly fortified. After prosecuting the siege of this place nearly four weeks, and learning that Lord Rawdon was approaching with reenforcements, General Greene determined upon an assault, which was made on the 18th of June; but the assailants were beaten off, and the whole army raised the siege, and retreated, before the arrival of the enemy.

1. *What is said of the siege, and the assault of Ninety-six?*

June 18.

20. [2]After an unsuccessful pursuit of the Americans, again Lord Rawdon retired, closely followed by the army of Greene, and took post at Orangeburg, where he received a reinforcement from Charleston, under the command of Col. Stewart. Finding the enemy too strong to be attacked, General Greene now retired,[a] with the main body of his army, to the heights* beyond the Santee, to spend the hot and sickly season, while expeditions under active officers were continually traversing the country, to intercept the communications between Orangeburg and Charleston. [3]Lord Rawdon soon after returned to England, leaving Colonel Stewart in command of his forces.

2. *What were the movements of the two armies after the repulse at Ninety-six?*

a. July.

3. *What change of British commanders occurred?*

21. [4]Before his departure, a tragic scene occurred at Charleston, which greatly irritated the Carolinians, and threw additional odium on the British cause. This was the execution of Colonel Isaac Hayne, a firm patriot, who, to escape imprisonment, had previously given in his adhesion to the British authorities. When the British were driven from the vicinity of his residence, considering the inability to protect, as a discharge of the obligation to obey, he took up arms against them, and, in this condition, was taken prisoner.

4. *What account is given of the fate of Col. Hayne?*

22. He was brought before Col. Balfour, the commandant of Charleston, who condemned him to death, although numerous loyalists petitioned in his favor.

* The *Santee Hills* are E. of the Wateree River, about twenty miles south from Camden. (See Map, p. 261.)

1781. [1]Lord Rawdon, a man of generous feelings, after having in vain exerted his influence to save him, finally gave his sanction to the execution. [2]The British strongly urged the justice of the measure, while the Americans condemned it as an act of unwarrantable cruelty.

1. *What is said of Lord Rawdon on this occasion?*
2. *Of the justice of the measure?*

23. [3]Early in September, General Greene again advanced upon the enemy, then commanded by Colonel Stewart, who, at his approach, retired to Eutaw Springs.[a] On the 8th the two armies engaged, with nearly equal forces. The British were at first driven in confusion from the field, but at length rallying in a favorable position, they withstood all the efforts of the Americans, and after a sanguinary conflict, of nearly four hours, General Greene drew off his troops, and returned to the ground he had occupied in the morning. During the night, Colonel Stewart abandoned his position, and retired to Monk's Corner.[b] [4]The Americans lost, in this battle, in killed, wounded, and missing, about 300 men. The loss sustained by the enemy was somewhat greater.

3. *Give an account of the battle of Eutaw Springs.*
a. N. p. 272.
b. N. p. 260.
4. *What were the losses of each party?*

24. [5]Shortly after the battle of Eutaw Springs, the British entirely abandoned the open country, and retired to Charleston and the neighboring islands. These events ended the campaign of 1781, and, indeed, the revolutionary war, in the Carolinas. [6]At the commencement of the year, the British were in possession of Georgia and South Carolina; and North Carolina was thought to be at their mercy. At the close of the year, Savannah and Charleston were the only posts in their possession, and to these they were closely confined by the regular American troops, posted in the vicinity and by the vigilant militia of the surrounding country.

5. *What is said of the close of the campaign in the Carolinas?*
6. *Of the change of circumstances that had occurred during the year?*

25. [7]Though General Greene was never decisively victorious, yet he was still formidable when defeated, and every battle which he fought resulted to his advantage. To the great energy of character, and the fertility of genius which he displayed, is, principally to be ascribed, the successful issue of the southern campaign.

7. *What is remarked of General Greene?*

26. [8]Having followed, to its termination, the order of the events which occurred in the southern department, we now return to the movements of Cornwallis

8. *Give an account of the movements of Cornwallis since April.*

who, late in April, left Wilmington,[a] with the avowed object of conquering Virginia. Marching north by the way of Halifax,* and crossing, with little opposition, the large and rapid rivers that flow into Roanoke and Albemarle Sounds, in less than a month he reached[b] Petersburg,† where he found the troops of General Philips, who had died a few days before his arrival. [1]The defence of Virginia was at that time intrusted principally to the Marquis de Lafayette, who, with a force of only three thousand men, mostly militia, could do little more than watch the movements of the enemy, at a careful distance.

1781.

a. See p. 272.

b. May 20.

1. *To whom was the defence of Virginia at that time intrusted?*

27. [2]Unable to bring Lafayette to an engagement, Cornwallis overran the country in the vicinity of James River, and destroyed an immense quantity of public and private property. [3]An expedition under Tarleton penetrated to Charlottesville,‡ and succeeded in making prisoners of several members of the Virginia House of Delegates, and came near seizing the governor of the state, Thomas Jefferson. [4]After taking possession of Richmond and Williamsburg, Cornwallis was called to the seacoast by Sir Henry Clinton; who, apprehensive of an attack by the combined French and American forces, was anxious that Cornwallis should take a position from which he might reenforce the garrison of New York, if desirable.

2. *What course did Cornwallis adopt?*

3. *What is said of Tarleton's expedition?*

4. *Why was Cornwallis called to the seacoast?*

28. [5]Proceeding from Williamsburg to Portsmouth, when on the point of crossing James River he was attacked[c] by Lafayette, who had been erroneously informed that the main body had already crossed. General Wayne, who led the advance, on seeing the whole British army drawn out against him, made a sudden charge with great impetuosity, and then hastily retreated with but little loss. Cornwallis, surprised at this bold maneuver, and perhaps suspecting an ambuscade, would not allow a pursuit.

5. *What occurred during the march of Cornwallis*

c. July 6.

---

* *Halifax*, in N. Carolina, is situated on the W. bank of Roanoke River, at the head of sloop navigation, about 150 miles N. from Wilmington.

† *Petersburg*, Virginia, is on the S. bank of Appomattox River, twelve miles above its entrance into James River.

‡ *Charlottesville* is about sixty-five miles N.W. from Richmond. It is the seat of the University of Virginia, an institution planned by Mr. Jefferson. The residence of Mr. Jefferson was at *Monticello*, three miles S.E. from Charlottesville.

1781.

29. [1]After crossing James River he proceeded to Portsmouth; but not liking the situation for a permanent post, he soon evacuated the place, and concentrated[a] his forces at Yorktown,* on the south side of York River, which he immediately commenced fortifying. Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the river, was held by a small force under Colonel Tarleton.

a. From Aug. 1—22.

1. *What were the next movements of Cornwallis, and where did he finally concentrate his forces?*

30. [2]In the mean time, General Washington had formed the plan of attacking Sir Henry Clinton; and late in June, the French troops from Rhode Island, under Count Rochambeau, marched to the vicinity of New York, for the purpose of aiding in the enterprise. [3]The intention was abandoned, however, in August, in consequence of large reenforcements having been received by Clinton,—the tardiness with which the continental troops assembled,—and the fairer prospect of success which was opened by the situation of Cornwallis.

2. *What plan had Washington formed in the mean time, and what movement was made by the French troops?*

3. *Why was the plan abandoned?*

31. [4]A French fleet, commanded by the Count de Grasse, was expected soon to arrive in the Chesapeake; and Washington, having effectually deceived Clinton until the last moment, with the belief that New York was the point of attack, suddenly drew off the combined French and American army, and, after rapid marches, on the 30th of September appeared before Yorktown.

4. *What is said of the sudden departure of the combined armies?*

Sept. 30.

32. [5]The Count de Grasse had previously entered[b] the Chesapeake, and, by blocking up James and York Rivers, had effectually cut off the escape of Cornwallis by sea; while a force of two thousand troops, under the Marquis St. Simon, landed from the fleet, and joined Lafayette, then at Williamsburg, with the design of effectually opposing the British, should they attempt to retreat upon the Southern States. [6]A British fleet from New York, under Admiral Graves, made an attempt to relieve Cornwallis, and to intercept the French fleet bearing the heavy artillery and

b. Aug. 28, 30.

5. *How was the retreat of Cornwallis cut off, both by sea and by land?*

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

* *Yorktown*, the capital of York County, Virginia, is on the S. side of York River, about seven miles from its entrance into the Chesapeake. (See Map.)

military stores, from Rhode Island. A partial action took place[a] off the capes, but the French avoided a general battle, and neither party gained any decided advantage. The object of the British, however, was defeated. **1781.**

a. Sept. 5.

6. *What is said of the attempt to relieve Cornwallis?*

33. [1]After General Clinton had learned the destination of the army of Washington, hoping to draw off a part of his forces, he sent Arnold on a plundering expedition against Connecticut. [2]Landing[b] at the mouth of the river Thames, Arnold proceeded in person against Fort Trumbull, a short distance below New London,* which was evacuated[c] on his approach. New London was then burned,[c] and public and private property to a large amount destroyed.

1. *What expedition did Clinton send to Connecticut, and why?*

b. Sept. 6.

2. *What did Arnold accomplish in person?*

34. [3]In the mean time a party had proceeded against Fort Griswold, on the east side of the river, which, after an obstinate resistance, was carried by assault.[c] When Colonel Ledyard, the commander of the fort, surrendered his sword, it was immediately plunged into his bosom; and the carnage was continued until the greater part of the garrison was killed or wounded. [4]This barbarous inroad did not serve the purpose of Clinton in checking the advance of Washington against Cornwallis.

3. *Give an account of the capture of Fort Griswold.*

c. Sept. 6

4. *What is said of the purpose of this barbarous inroad?*

35. [5]In the siege of Yorktown the French were posted in front, and on the right of the town, extending from the river above, to the morass in the centre, where they were met by the Americans, who extended to the river below.[d] [6]On the evening of the ninth of October, the batteries were opened against the town, at a distance of 600 yards; and so heavy was the fire, that many of the guns of the besieged were soon dismounted, and silenced, and the works in many places demolished. Shells and red hot balls reached the British ships in the harbor, several of which were burned. [7]On the evening of the 11th the besiegers advanced to within three hundred yards of the British lines.

5. *How were the combined forces arranged at the siege of Yorktown?*

d. See the Map.

6. *When were the batteries opened, and with what effect?*

7. *What advance was made on the 11th?*

New London, in Connecticut, is situated on the W. bank of the River Thames, three miles from its entrance into Long Island Sound. *Fort Trumbull* is situated on a projecting point, about a mile below the city. *Fort Griswold* is situated opposite Fort Trumbull, on an eminence in the town of Groton. (See Map.)

1781.

Oct. 14.

1. *What occurred on the 14th; and what is said of the progress of the siege?*

36. [1]On the 14th, two redoubts, in advance and on the left of the besieged, were carried by assault; the one by an American, and the other by a French detachment. These were then included in the works of the besiegers. On the 16th, nearly a hundred pieces of heavy ordnance were brought to bear on the British works and with such effect that the walls and fortifications were beaten down, and almost every gun dismounted.

2. *Of the attempt of the British to retreat?*

37. [2]No longer entertaining any hopes of effectual resistance, on the evening of the same day Cornwallis attempted to retreat by way of Gloucester Point; hoping to be able to break through a French detachment posted in the rear of that place, and, by rapid marches, to reach New York in safety. [3]Frustrated in this attempt by a violent storm, which dispersed his boats after one division had crossed the river, he was reduced to the necessity of a capitulation; and, on the 19th, the posts of Yorktown and Gloucester, containing more than seven thousand British soldiers, were surrendered to the army of Washington, and the shipping in the harbor to the fleet of De Grasse.

3. *Of the surrender of Yorktown?*

Oct. 19.

a. Oct. 24.

4. *What occurred five days after the surrender?*

38. [4]Five days after the fall of Yorktown, Sir Henry Clinton appeared[a] at the mouth of the Chesapeake, with an armament of 7000 men; but learning that Cornwallis had already surrendered, he returned to New York. [5]The victorious allies separated soon after the surrender. The Count de Grasse sailed[b] for the West Indies; Count Rochambeau cantoned his army, during the winter, in Virginia; and the main body of the Americans returned to its former position on the Hudson, while a strong detachment under General St. Clair was despatched to the South, to reenforce the army of General Greene.

b. Nov. 5.

5. *What disposition was made of the allied forces?*

6. *What was the effect of this important victory?*

39. [6]By the victory over Cornwallis, the whole country was, in effect, recovered to the Union—the British power was reduced to merely defensive measures—and was confined, principally, to the cities of New York, Charleston, and Savannah. At the news of so important a victory, transports of exultation broke forth, and triumphal celebrations were held throughout the Union. [7]Washington set apart a particular day for the performance of divine service in the army; recom

7. *What religious appointment did Washington*

mending that "all the troops should engage in it with serious deportment, and that sensibility of heart which the surprising and particular interposition of Providence in their favor claimed." 1781.

make, and what did he recommend?

40. [1]Congress, on receiving the official intelligence, went in procession to the principal church in Philadelphia, "To return thanks to Almighty God for the signal success of the American arms," and appointed the 13th of December as a day of public thanksgiving and prayer.

1. *What was done by congress on this occasion?*

CHAPTER VIII.

Of what does Chapter VIII. treat?

CLOSE OF THE WAR, AND ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

1. [2]When intelligence of the defeat and capture of Cornwallis reached London, the king and ministry evinced a determination still to continue the war for the reduction of the "rebellious colonies;" but, fortunately, the war had become almost universally unpopular with the British nation. [3]From the 12th of December to the 4th of March, repeated motions were made in the House of Commons for terminating the war; and on this latter day[a] the House resolved, that those who should advise the king to continue the war on the continent of North America, should be declared enemies of the sovereign and of the country.

2. *How did the king and ministry receive the news of the capture of Cornwallis?*

3. *What was done in the House of Commons?*

1782.

a. March 4.

2. [4]On the 20th of March the administration of Lord North was terminated, and the advocates of peace immediately came into power. Early in May, Sir Guy Carleton, who had been appointed to succeed Sir Henry Clinton in the command of all the British forces, arrived at New York, with instructions to promote the wishes of Great Britain for an accommodation with the United States. In accordance with these views, offensive war mostly ceased on the part of the British, and Washington made no attempts on the posts of the enemy. The year 1782 consequently passed without furnishing any military operations of importance; although the hostile

March 20.

4. *What events, and what state of things followed the retirement of Lord North?*

1782. array of armies, and occasional skirmishes, still denoted the existence of a state of war.

Nov. 30.

1. *What articles and treaties were signed in this, and in the following year?*

3. [1]On the 30th of November, 1782, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Paris, by Mr. Oswald a commissioner on the part of Great Britain, and John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurens, on the part of the United States. Preliminary articles of peace between France and England were likewise signed on the 20th of January following; and on the 3d of September, of the same year, definitive treaties of peace were signed by the commissioners of England, with those of the United States, France, Spain, and Holland.

1783.

Jan. 20.

Sept. 3.

2. *What were the terms of the treaty between England and the United States?*

4. [2]By the terms of the treaty between England and the United States, the independence of the latter was acknowledged in its fullest extent; ample boundaries were allowed them, extending north to the great lakes, and west to the Mississippi,—embracing a range of territory more extensive than the states, when colonies, had claimed; and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was conceded. [3]The two Floridas, which had long been held[a] by England, were restored to Spain.

3. *What was done with the Floridas?*

a. Since 1763.

April 19, 1783.

4. *What were the remaining events of the year 1783?*

5. [4]On the 19th of April, the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington, a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the American army; and on the 3d of November, the army was disbanded by general orders of congress. Savannah was evacuated by the British troops in July, New York in November, and Charleston in the following month.

5. *What is said of the difficulties attending the disbanding of the army?*

6. [5]Notwithstanding all had looked forward with joyful hope to the termination of the war, yet the disbanding of the American army had presented difficulties and dangers, which it required all the wisdom of congress and the commander-in-chief to overcome. Neither officers nor soldiers had, for a long time, received any pay for their services; and although in 1780 congress had adopted a resolution promising half pay to the officers, on the conclusion of peace, yet the state of the finances now rendered the payment impossible. The disbanding of the army would, therefore, throw thousands out of the service, without compen

sation for the past, or substantial provision for the future. **1783.**

7. [1]In this situation of affairs, it was feared that an open insurrection would break out, and that the army would attempt to do itself the justice which the country was slow to grant. [2]In the midst of the excitement, an anonymous address, since ascertained to have been written by Major John Armstrong,—composed with great ingenuity, and recommending an appeal to the fears of congress, and the people, was circulated[a] through the army; calling a meeting of the officers, for the purpose of arranging the proper measures for obtaining redress. Such was the state of feeling in the army, that a war between the civil and the military powers appeared inevitable.

1. *In this situation of affairs what was feared?*

2. *What is said of an address circulated through the army?*

a March 11

8. [3]The firmness and prudence of Washington, however, succeeded in averting the danger. Strong in the love and veneration of the people and the army, and possessing an almost unbounded influence over his officers, he succeeded in persuading the latter to disregard the anonymous call, and to frown upon all disorderly and illegal proceedings for obtaining redress. [4]In a subsequent meeting, called by Washington himself, General Gates presiding, the officers unanimously declared, that "No circumstances of distress or danger should induce a conduct that might tend to sully the reputation and glory which they had acquired at the price of their blood, and eight years faithful services," and that they still had "unshaken confidence in the justice of congress and their country."

3. *What was effected by the influence of Washington?*

4. *What was done in a subsequent meeting called by him?*

9. [5]Not long after, congress succeeded in making the proper arrangements for granting the officers, according to their request, five years full pay, in place of half pay for life; and four months full pay to the army, in part payment for past services. [6]Their work completed,—their country independent,—the soldiers of the revolution returned peaceably to their homes; bearing with them the public thanks of congress, in the name of their grateful country.

5. *What arrangements were made by congress?*

6. *What is said of the return of the soldiers to their homes?*

10. [7]Washington, having taken leave of his officers and army, repaired to Annapolis, where congress was then in session; and there, on the 23d of December,

7. *Relate the circumstances of Washington's resignation.*

1783. before that august body of patriots and sages, and a large concourse of spectators,—in a simple and affectionate address, after commending the interests of his country to the protection of Heaven, he resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the American army.

1. *What is said of his retirement?*

11. [1]After an eloquent and affecting reply by General Mifflin, then president of the congress, Washington withdrew. He then retired to his residence at Mount Vernon,* exchanging the anxious labors of the camp, for the quiet industry of a farm, and bearing with him the enthusiastic love, esteem, and admiration of his countrymen.

2. *To what was the attention of congress now directed?*

12. [2]Independence and peace being now established, the public mind, relieved from the excitement incident to a state of war, was turned to examine the actual condition of the country. In addition to a foreign debt of eight millions of dollars, a domestic debt of more than thirty millions, due to American citizens, and, principally, to the officers and soldiers of the revolution, was strongly urged upon congress for payment.

3. *Why could not congress discharge the debts?*

[3]But by the articles of confederation congress had not the power to discharge debts incurred by the war; it could merely recommend to the individual states to raise money for that purpose.

4. *For what were the states called upon?*

5. *What prevented their compliance?*

13. [4]The states were therefore called upon for funds to discharge, in the first place, the arrears of pay due to the soldiers of the revolution. [5]The states listened to these calls with respect, but their situation was embarrassing;—each had its local debts to provide for, and its domestic government to support,—the country had been drained of its wealth, and taxes could not be collected; and, besides, congress had no binding power to compel the states to obedience.

6. *What caused an insurrection in Massachusetts?*

[6]Some of the states attempted, by heavy taxes upon the people, to support their credit, and satisfy their creditors. In Massachusetts, an insurrection was the consequence, and an armed force of several thousand men was necessary to suppress it.[a]

a. In 1787.

* *Mount Vernon*, in Virginia, the former residence of Washington, is on the W. bank of the Potomac, six miles below Alexandria. It contains the mansion and the tomb of the Father of his country, and many a citizen and traveller have made a pilgrimage to this hallowed spot.

14. [1]With evils continually increasing, the necessity of a closer union of the states, and of an efficient general government, became more and more apparent. [2]A convention of commissioners from six states, held at Annapolis, in September, 1786, for the purpose of establishing a better system of commercial regulations, led to a proposition for revising the articles of confederation. Accordingly, a convention of delegates, from all the states, except Rhode Island, met[a] at Philadelphia for this purpose in 1787. [3]Finding the articles of confederation exceedingly defective as a form of government, the convention rejected their former purpose of revising them, and proceeded to the consideration of a new constitution.—[4]In July of this year, a large extent of territory north of the Ohio River was formed into a territorial government by the general congress, and called the Northwestern Territory.*

1786.

1. *What now became apparent?*

2. *What convention was held at Annapolis in 1786?*

1787.

a. May.

3. *What is said of the convention that assembled at Philadelphia in 1787?*

4. *What new government was formed in July?*

15. [5]After four months' deliberation a constitution was agreed[b] on, which, after being presented to congress, was submitted to conventions of the people in the several states for their ratification. Previous to, and during the year 1788, majorities of the people in eleven of the states adopted the constitution, although not without strong opposition; as many believed that the extensive powers, which the new government gave to the rulers, would be dangerous to the liberties of the people.

b. Sept. 17.

5. *What is said of the new constitution, and of its adoption?*

1788.

16. [6]The supporters of the constitution, who advocated a union of the several states under a strong government, were denominated *Federalists*, and their opposers *anti-Federalists*. [7]Provision having been made for the election of officers under the new government, George Washington was unanimously elected[c] President of the United States for the term of four years, and John Adams Vice-president.

6. *What party names now arose?*

7. *What election of officers was made under the new government?*

c. Votes counted April 6.

* The *Northwestern Territory* then embraced the present states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin Territory. See chart, p. 10, for the several changes since made in the N.W. Territory

MAP
OF THE COUNTRY
EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI,
AT THE CLOSE OF
THE REVOLUTION.

The white portions of the Map show the extent of settlements at this period.

PART IV.

THE UNITED STATES,

FROM THE ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT UNDER THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, IN 1789, TO THE YEAR 1845.

What period is embraced in Part IV.?

CHAPTER I.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM APRIL 30, 1789, TO MARCH 4, 1797.

Of what does Chapter I. treat?

1789.

1. [1]On the 30th of April, 1789, Washington appeared before congress, then assembled in the city of New York, and taking the oath of office required by the constitution, was proclaimed President of the United States.* [2]In an impressive address to both houses of congress, he expressed his distrust in his own qualifications for the important office to which the partiality of his country had called him,—offered his "supplications to that Almighty Being who rules over the universe, and presides in the councils of nations," that He would "consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States a government instituted by themselves,"—and that He would enable all "employed in its administration, to execute, with success, the functions allotted to their charge."

1. *When and where did Washington enter upon the duties of president?*

2. *What account is given of his address on that occasion?*

2. [3]Adhering to the principles upon which he had acted while commander-in-chief, he now likewise declined all pecuniary compensation for his presidential duties, and closed by requesting congress to accompany him, in humble supplication, to the benign Parent of the human race, for the divine blessing on all those measures upon which the success of the government

3. *To what principles did he still adhere, and how did he close his address?*

---

* Washington was inaugurated in the gallery of the old City Hall, which stood on the site of the present Custom House, in Wall Street.

1789. depended. [1]Immediately after the address, both houses of congress, with the president, attended divine service and with this public acknowledgment of a Supreme Being as the ruler of the universe, and controller of human actions and human destiny, the government under the new constitution was commenced.

1. *What is said of the manner in which the new government was commenced?*

a. Ending Sept. 29.

2. *In what was the legislature occupied during its first session?*

3. *What measures were taken for providing a revenue, and for encouraging American shipping?*

3. [2]The legislature, during its first session,[a]* was principally occupied in providing revenues for the long exhausted treasury; in organizing the executive departments; in establishing a judiciary; and in framing amendments to the constitution. [3]For providing a revenue, duties were levied on the tonnage of vessels, and likewise on foreign goods imported into the United States. For the purpose of encouraging American shipping, these duties were made unequal; being the heaviest on the tonnage of foreign vessels, and on goods introduced by them.

4. *What departments were established to aid the president?*

4. [4]To aid the president in the management of the affairs of government, three executive departments were established,—styled department of foreign affairs, or of state; department of the treasury, and department of war; with a secretary at the head of each. [5]The heads of these departments had special duties assigned them; and they were likewise to constitute a council, which might be consulted by the president, whenever he thought proper, on subjects relating to the duties of their offices. [6]The power of removing from office the heads of these departments, was, after much discussion, left with the president alone. [7]Thomas Jefferson was appointed secretary of state, Hamilton of the treasury, and Knox of the war department.

5. *What duties were required of the heads of these departments?*

6. *Who had the power of removal?*

7. *What appointments were made?*

8. *What is said of the national judiciary, and of amendments to the constitution?*

5. [8]A national judiciary was also established during this session of congress; consisting of a supreme court, having one chief justice, and several associate judges; and circuit and district courts, which have jurisdiction over certain cases specified in the constitution. John Jay was appointed chief justice of the United States, and Edmund Randolph attorney-general. Several

* A *Session* of Congress is one sitting, or the time during which the legislature meets daily for business. Congress has but one session annually, but as the existence of each congress continues during two years, each congress has two sessions. Thus we speak of the 1st session of the 20th congress;—the 2d session of the 25th congress, &c

amendments to the constitution were proposed by congress, ten of which were subsequently ratified by the constitutional majority of the states. [1]In November North Carolina adopted the constitution, and Rhode Island in the May following, thus completing the number of the thirteen original states. 1789.

1. *What two states last adopted the constitution?*

6. [2]Early in the second session, the secretary of the treasury brought forward,[a] at the request of congress, a plan for maintaining the public credit. He proposed, as a measure of sound policy and substantial justice, that the general government should assume, not only the public foreign and domestic debt, amounting to more than fifty-four millions of dollars, but likewise the debts of the states, contracted during the war, and estimated at twenty-five millions. 1790.

a. Jan. 15.

2. *What is said of Hamilton's plan for maintaining public credit?*

7. [3]Provision was made for the payment of the foreign debt without opposition; but respecting the assumption of the state debts, and also the full payment of the domestic debt,—in other words, the redemption of the public securities, then, in a great measure, in the hands of speculators who had purchased them for a small part of their nominal value, much division prevailed in congress; but the plan of the secretary was finally adopted.

3. *What was the success of the plan?*

8. [4]During this year a law was passed, fixing the seat of government, for ten years, at Philadelphia; and afterwards, permanently, at a place to be selected on the Potomac. [5]In 1790, the "Territory southwest of the Ohio," embracing the present Tennessee, was formed into a territorial government.

4. *What was enacted relating to a permanent seat of government?*

5. *What territorial government was formed in 1790?*

9. [6]During the same year, an Indian war broke out on the northwestern frontiers; and pacific arrangements having been attempted in vain, an expedition, under General Harmar, was sent into the Indian country, to reduce the hostile tribes to submission. Many of the Indian towns were burned, and a large quantity of corn destroyed; but in two battles,[b] near the confluence of the rivers St. Mary's* and St. Joseph's in Indiana, between successive detachments of the army

6. *What account is given of the Indian war on the northwestern frontiers?*

b. Oct. 17 and 22.

* The *St. Mary's* from the S. and St. Joseph's from the N. unite at Fort Wayne, in the N.E. part of Indiana, and form the *Maumee*, which flows into the west end of Lake Erie

1790. and the Indians, the former were defeated with considerable loss.

1791. 10. [1]Early in 1791, in accordance with a plan proposed by the secretary of the treasury, an act was passed by congress, for the establishment of a national bank, called the Bank of the United States; but not without the most strenuous opposition; on the ground, principally, that congress had no constitutional right to charter such an institution.

1. *What is said of the establishment of a national bank?*

a. Feb. 18. 11. [2]During the same year, Vermont,* the last settled of the New England States, adopted the constitution, and was admitted[a] into the Union. The territory of this state had been claimed both by New York and New Hampshire;—each had made grants of land within its limits; but in 1777 the people met in convention, and proclaimed Vermont, or *New Connecticut*, an independent state. Owing to the objections of New York, it was not admitted into the confederacy; nor was the opposition of New York withdrawn until 1789, when Vermont agreed to purchase the claims of New York to territory and jurisdiction by the payment of 30,000 dollars.

2. *What is here related of Vermont?*

3. *What occurred after the defeat of General Harmar in 1790?*

12. [3]After the defeat of General Harmar in 1790, another expedition, with additional forces, was planned against the Indians, and the command given to General St. Clair, then governor of the Northwestern Territory. [4]In the fall of 1791, the forces of St. Clair, numbering about 2000 men, marched[b] from Fort Washington,† northward, about eighty miles, into the Indian country, where, on the 4th of November, they were surprised in camp,‡ and defeated with great slaughter. Out of 1400 men engaged in the battle, nearly 600 were killed. Had not the victorious In-

b. Sept. and Oct.

4. *Give an account of the expedition and the defeat of General St. Clair.*

* VERMONT, one of the Eastern or New England States, contains an area of about 8000 square miles. It is a hilly country, and is traversed throughout nearly its whole length by the Green Mountains, the loftiest points of which are a little more than 4000 feet high. The best lands in the state are W. of the mountains, near Lake Champlain: but the soil generally, throughout the state, is better adapted to grazing than to tillage The first settlement in the state was at Fort Dummer, now Brattleboro'. A fort was erected here in 1723, and a settlement commenced in the following year.

† *Fort Washington* was on the site of the present Cincinnati, situated on the N. side of the Ohio River, near the S.W. extremity of the state of Ohio. The city is near the eastern extremity of a pleasant valley about twelve miles in circumference.

‡ The camp of St. Clair was in the western part of Ohio, at the N.W. angle of Dark County. Fort Recovery was afterwards built there. Dark County received its name from Colonel Dark, an officer in St. Clair's army.

dians been called from the pursuit to the abandoned camp in quest of plunder, it is probable that nearly the whole army would have perished. **1791.**

13. [1]On the 1st of June, 1792, Kentucky,* which had been previously claimed by Virginia, was admitted into the Union as a state. The first settlement in the state was made by Daniel Boone and others, at a place called Boonesboro',† in the year 1775. During the early part of the revolution, the few inhabitants suffered severely from the Indians, who were incited by agents of the British government; but in 1779 General Clarke, as before mentioned,[a] overcame the Indians, and laid waste their villages; after which, the inhabitants enjoyed greater security, and the settlements were gradually extended. 1792.

1. What is related of the early history of Kentucky?

See p. 258

14. [2]In the autumn of 1792 General Washington was again elected president of the United States, and John Adams vice-president. [3]At this time the revolution in France was progressing, and early in 1793 news arrived in the United States of the declaration of war by France against England and Holland. [4]About the same time Mr. Genet arrived[b] in the United States, as minister of the French republic, where he was warmly received by the people, who remembered with gratitude the aid which France had rendered them in their struggle for independence, and who now cherished the flattering expectation that the French nation was about to enjoy the same blessings of liberty and self-government.

2. What re-election was made in 1792?

3. What events were at this time transpiring in France?

1793.

b. In April.

4. What is said of Mr. Genet, and of the gratitude of the Americans to France?

15. [5]Flattered by his reception, and relying on the partiality manifested towards the French nation, Mr. Genet assumed the authority of fitting out privateers in the ports of the United States, to cruise against the vessels of nations hostile to France; and likewise attempted to set on foot expeditions against the Spanish settle-

5. What course was pursued by Mr. Genet, and what had the president declared?

* KENTUCKY, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 42,000 square miles. The country in the western parts of the state is hilly and mountainous. A narrow tract along the Ohio River, through the whole length of the state, is hilly and broken, but has a good soil. Between this tract and Greene River is a fertile region, frequently denominated the garden of the state. The country in the S.W. part of the state, between Greene and Cumberland Rivers, is called "The Barrens," although it proves to be excellent grain land.

† *Boonesboro'* is on the S. side of Kentucky River, about eighteen miles S.E. from Lexington.

1793. ments in Florida and on the Mississippi, although the president had previously issued[a] a proclamation, declaring it to be the duty and interest of the United States to preserve the most strict neutrality towards the contending powers in Europe.

a. May 9.

1. Why did the president request his recall, and what is said of his successor?

16. [1]As Mr. Genet persisted in his endeavors, in opposition to the efforts and remonstrances of the president, and likewise endeavored to excite discord and distrust between the American people and their government, the president requested[b] his recall; and in the following year his place was supplied by Mr. Fauchet,[c] who was instructed to assure the American government that France disapproved the conduct of his predecessor.

b. July.

c. Pronounced, Po-shā.

d. See p. 288.

2. What events occurred at the west after the defeat of St. Clair in 1791?

17. [2]After the defeat of St. Clair in 1791,[d] General Wayne was appointed to carry on the Indian war. In the autumn of 1793 he built Fort Recovery near the ground on which St. Clair had been defeated, where he passed the winter. In the following summer he advanced still farther into the Indian country, and built Fort Defiance;* whence he moved down the Maumee,[e] and, on the 20th of August, at the head of about 3000 men, met the Indians near the rapids,† completely routed them, and laid waste their country.

1794.

e. N. p. 287. Aug. 20.

3. What troubles arose from taxation?

18. [3]An act, passed in 1791, imposing duties on domestic distilled spirits, the first attempt at obtaining a revenue from internal taxes, had, from the beginning, been highly unpopular in many parts of the country, and especially with the anti-federal or democratic party. During this year, the attempts to enforce the act led to open defiance of the laws, in the western counties of Pennsylvania. After two ineffectual proclamations[f] by the president, the display of a large military force was necessary in order to quell the insurgents.

f. Aug. 7, and Sept 25.

4. What is said of the complaints between Gt. Britain and the United States?

19. [4]Since the peace of 1783, between Great Britain and the United States, each party had made frequent complaints that the other had violated the stipulations contained in the treaty. [5]The former was accused of

---

* *Fort Defiance* was situated at the confluence of the River Au Glaize with the Maumee, in the N.W. part of Ohio, and at the S.E. extremity of Williams County.

† The rapids of the Maumee are about eighteen miles from the mouth of the river. The British then occupied Fort Maumee, at the rapids, on the N. side of the river, a short distance above which, in the present town of *Waynesfield*, the battle was fought

having carried away negroes at the close of the war, of making illegal seizures of American property at sea, and of retaining possession of the military posts on the western frontiers. [1]The latter was accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts contracted before the commencement of hostilities. [2]To such an extent had the complaints been carried, that, by many, another war between the two countries was thought to be inevitable. **1794.**

5. *Of what was the former accused?*
1. *The latter?*
2. *What result was feared?*

20. [3]For the purpose of adjusting the difficulties, and preventing a war, if possible, Mr. Jay was sent to England; where he succeeded in concluding[a] a treaty, which, early in the following year, was laid before the senate for ratification. [4]After a long debate, and a violent opposition by the democratic party, and the friends of France throughout the country, the treaty was ratified[b] by the senate, and signed by the president. By the terms of the treaty, the western posts were to be surrendered* to the United States; compensation was to be made for illegal captures of American property; and the United States were to secure to British creditors the proper means of collecting debts, which had been contracted before the war of the revolution.

3. *What measure was taken for adjusting difficulties?*
a. Nov. 19. 1795.
4. *What is said of the ratification of this treaty, and what were its terms?*
b. June.

21. [5]During the same year, a treaty was concluded[c] at Fort Greenville,† with the western Indians; by which the various tribes ceded to the United States a large tract of country in the vicinity of Detroit, and west of Ohio. [6]In October, a treaty was concluded with Spain; by which the boundaries between the Spanish possessions of Louisiana and Florida, and the United States, were settled; the right of navigating the Mississippi, from its source to the ocean, was secured to the United States; and New Orleans‡ was granted to them, as a place of deposit, for ten years.

b. Aug. 3
5. *What is said of the treaty concluded at Fort Greenville?*
6. *Of the treaty with Spain?*

The British retained possession of Michigan, by means of their post at Detroit, until 1796.

† *Fort Greenville* was built by General Wayne in 1793, on a western branch of the Miama, and on the site of the present town of Greenville, the capital of Dark County, Ohio. *Fort Jefferson* was six miles S.W. of it, and *Fort Recovery* twenty-two miles N.E.

‡ *New Orleans*, long the capital of the state of Louisiana, is on the E. bank of the Mississippi River, 105 miles from its mouth, by the river's course. It was first settled by the French in 1717. The level

VICINITY OF NEW ORLEANS.

1795.

22. [1]Peace was also established[a] with Algiers; and American captives were redeemed by the payment of an annual tribute to the dey, in accordance with the long established practice of European nations. [2]In June, 1796, the "Territory southwest of the Ohio" was erected into an independent state, by the name of Tennessee,* and admitted into the Union.

a. Nov. 28.

1. *Of the peace established with Algiers?*

1796.

2. *What occurred in 1796?*

23. [3]As the second term of Washington's administration would expire in the spring of 1797, Washington previously made known his intention to retire from public life. His farewell address,[b] on that occasion, to the people of the United States, abounds with maxims of the highest political importance, and sentiments of the warmest affection for his country. [4]On the retirement of the man on whom alone the people could unite, the two great parties in the United States brought forward their prominent leaders for the executive office of the nation.

3. *What is said of Washington's retiring from office, and of his farewell address?*

b Sept.

4. *On his retirement what was done?*

24. [5]The federalists, dreading the influence of French sentiments and principles,—attached to the system of measures pursued by Washington, and desiring its continuance in his successor, made the most active efforts to elect John Adams; while the republicans, believing their opponents too much devoted to the British nation, and to British institutions, made equal exertions to elect Thomas Jefferson. [6]The result was the election of Mr. Adams as president, and Mr. Jefferson as vice-president. The inauguration of the former took place on the 4th of March, 1797.

5. *What is said of the principles of the two parties?*

6. *What was the result of the election?*

---

of the city is from three to nine feet *below* the level of the river, at the highest water To protect it from inundation, an embankment, called the *Levee*, has been raised on the border of the river, extending from forty-three miles below the city, to 120 miles above it. (See Map, previous page.)

* TENNESSEE, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 43,000 square miles. The Cumberland Mountains, crossing the state in the direction of N.E. and S.W., divide it into two parts, called East Tennessee and West Tennessee. The western part of the state has a black, rich soil: in the eastern part the valleys only are fertile The first settlement in Tennessee was made at Fort Loudon (see Note, p. 192) in 1757

CHAPTER II.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1797, TO MARCH 4, 1801.

What is the subject of Chapter II?

1. [1]During the administration of Washington, the condition of the country had been gradually improving. A sound credit had been established, funds had been provided for the gradual payment of the national debt, treaties had been concluded with the western Indian tribes, and with England, Spain, and the Barbary powers, and the agricultural and commercial wealth of the nation had increased beyond all former example. But, in the mean time, difficulties with France had arisen, which threatened to involve the country in another war.

1. What had been accomplished during Washington's administration?

2. What difficulties had arisen?

2. [3]On the breaking out of the war between France and England, consequent upon the French revolution, the anti-federal or republican party warmly espoused the cause of the French; while the government, then in the hands of the federal party, in its attempts to preserve a strict neutrality towards the contending powers, was charged with an undue partiality for England. [4]The French ministers, who succeeded Mr. Genet, finding themselves, like their predecessor, supported by a numerous party attached to their nation, began to remonstrate with the government, and to urge upon it the adoption of measures more favorable to France.

3. How did the different parties regard the war between France and England?

4. What is said of the course adopted by the French ministers?

3. [5]The French Directory, failing in these measures, and highly displeased on account of the treaty recently concluded between England and the United States, adopted regulations highly injurious to American commerce; and even authorized, in certain cases, the capture and confiscation of American vessels and their cargoes. [6]They likewise refused to receive the American minister, Mr. Pinckney, until their demands against the United States should be complied with. Mr. Pinckney was afterwards obliged, by a written mandate, to quit the territories of the French republic.

5. What was done by the French Directory?

6. How was the American minister treated?

4. [7]In this state of affairs, the president, by procla-

7. What course did the president pursue?

1797. mation, convened congress on the 15th of June; and, in a firm and dignified speech, stated the unprovoked outrages of the French government. [1]Advances were again made, however, for securing a reconciliation; and, for this purpose, three envoys, at the head of whom was Mr. Pinckney, were sent to France.

1. What advances were made towards a reconciliation?

2. What was the result of the embassy?

5. [2]But these, also, the Directory refused to receive; although they were met by certain unofficial agents of the French minister, who explicitly demanded a large sum of money before any negotiation could be opened. To this insulting demand a decided negative was given. Two of the envoys, who were federalists, were finally ordered to leave France; while the third, who was a republican, was permitted to remain.

1798.

3. How were these events viewed, and what preparations were made for war?

6. [3]These events excited general indignation in the United States; and vigorous measures were immediately adopted[a] by congress, for putting the country in a proper state of defence, preparatory to an expected war. Provision was made for raising a small standing army, the command of which was given[b] to General Washington, who cordially approved the measures of the government. A naval armament was decided upon, captures of French vessels were authorized, and all treaties with France were declared void.

a. In May.

b. July.

4. How far did these difficulties proceed, and what measures were taken for settling them?

7. [4]The land forces, however, were not called into action; and after a few encounters at sea, in which an American armed schooner was decoyed into the power of the enemy, and a French frigate captured, the French Directory made overtures of peace. The president, therefore, appointed[c] ministers, who were authorized to proceed to France, and settle, by treaty, the difficulties between the two countries.

c 1799.

5. What is said of the death of Washington?

8. [5]Washington did not live to witness a restoration of peace. After a short illness, of only a few hours, he died at his residence at Mount Vernon, in Virginia, on the 14th of December, at the age of sixty-eight years.

Dec. 14.

6. What was done by congress on receiving intelligence of this event?

[6]When intelligence of this event reached Philadelphia, congress, then in session, immediately adjourned. On assembling the next day, the house of representatives resolved, "That the speaker's chair should be shrouded in black, that the members should wear black during the session, and that a joint com

mittee, from the senate and the house, should be appointed to devise the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the man first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." **1799.**

9 [1]In accordance with the report of the committee, and the unanimous resolves of congress, a funeral procession moved from the legislative hall to the German Lutheran church, where an impressive and eloquent oration was delivered by General Lee, a representative from Virginia. The people of the United States were recommended to wear crape on the left arm, for thirty days. This recommendation was complied with, and a whole nation appeared in mourning. In every part of the republic, funeral orations were delivered; and the best talents of the nation were devoted to an expression of the nation's grief.

1. In what public manner did congress and the people express their grief on this occasion?

10. [2]Washington was above the common size; his frame was robust, and his constitution vigorous, and capable of enduring great fatigue. His person was fine; his deportment easy, erect, and noble; exhibiting a natural dignity, unmingled with haughtiness, and conveying the idea of great strength, united with manly gracefulness. His manners were rather reserved than free; he was humane, benevolent, and conciliatory; his temper was highly sensitive by nature, yet it never interfered with the coolness of his judgment, nor with that prudence which was the strongest feature in his character. His mind was great and powerful, and though slow in its operations, was sure in its conclusions. He devoted a long life to the welfare of his country; and while true greatness commands respect, and the love of liberty remains on the earth, the memory of Washington will be held in veneration.

2. Describe the personal appearance, manners, and character of Washington

11. [3]During the summer of 1800, the seat of government was removed from Philadelphia to Washington, in the District of Columbia.* During the same year the territory between the western boundary of Georgia and the Mississippi River, then claimed by **1800.**

3. What events occurred in 1800 and 1802?

* The *District of Columbia* was originally a tract of country ten miles square, on both sides of the Potomac river, about 120 miles from its mouth, by the river's course. In 1790 it was ceded to the United States by Virginia and Maryland, for the purpose of becoming the seat of government. It included the cities of Washington, Alexandria, and

1800. Georgia, and called the Georgia western territory, was erected into a distinct government, and called the Mississippi Territory. Two years later, Georgia ceded to the United States all her claims to lands within those limits.

a. Sept. 30. [1]In September,[a] a treaty was concluded at Paris, between the French government, then in the hands of Bonaparte, and the United States; by which the difficulties between the two countries were happily terminated.

1. What is said of the treaty with France?

2. Of the efforts of parties towards the close of Adams's administration?

3. Of the unpopularity of the federal party?

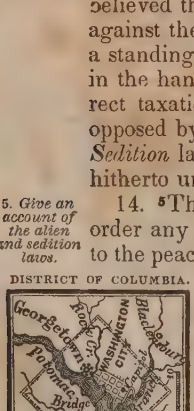
12. [2]As the term of Mr. Adams's administration drew towards its close, each of the great parties in the country made the most strenuous efforts,—the one to retain, and the other to acquire the direction of the government. [3]Mr. Adams had been elected by the predominance of federal principles, but many things in his administration had tended to render the party to which he was attached unpopular with a majority of the nation.

4. What were the principal causes of public discontent?

13. [4]The people, ardently attached to liberty, had viewed with a jealous eye those measures of the government which evinced a coldness towards the French revolution, and a partiality for England; because they believed that the spirit of liberty was here contending against the tyranny of despotism. The act for raising a standing army, ever a ready instrument of oppression in the hands of kings, together with the system of direct taxation by internal duties, had been vigorously opposed by the democratic party; while the *Alien* and *Sedition* laws increased the popular ferment to a degree hitherto unparalleled.

5. Give an account of the alien and sedition laws.

14. [5]The "alien law," authorized the president to order any foreigner, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, to depart out of the country, upon penalty of imprisonment. The "sedition law," designed to punish the abuse of speech and of the press, im-



Georgetown. WASHINGTON CITY stands on a point of land between the Potomac River and a stream called the Eastern Branch. The *Capitol*, probably the finest senate house in the world, the cost of which has exceeded two millions of dollars, stands on an eminence in the eastern part of the city. In 1846 that portion of the District west of the Potomac was ceded back to Virginia. (See Map.)

posed a heavy fine and imprisonment for "any false, scandalous, and malicious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of congress, or the president." [1]These laws were deemed, by the democrats, highly tyrannical; and their unpopularity contributed greatly to the overthrow of the federal party. **1800**

1. How were these laws regarded, and what was their effect?

15. [2]In the coming election, Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr were brought forward as the candidates of the democratic party, and Mr. Adams and Mr. Pinckney by the federalists. After a warmly contested election, the federal candidates were left in the minority. Jefferson and Burr had an equal number of votes; and as the constitution provided that the person having the greatest number should be president, it became the duty of the house of representatives, voting by states, to decide between the two. After thirty-five ballotings, the choice fell upon Mr. Jefferson, who was declared to be elected President of the United States, for four years, commencing March 4th, 1801. Mr. Burr, being then the second on the list, was consequently declared to be elected vice-president.

2. Give an account of the presidential election that followed

CHAPTER III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1801, TO MARCH 4, 1809.

What period is included in Jefferson's administration?

1801.

1. [3]On the accession of Mr. Jefferson to the presidency, the principal offices of government were transferred to the republican party. The system of internal duties was abolished, and several unpopular laws, passed during the previous administration, were repealed.

3. What changes followed the accession of Mr. Jefferson?

2. [4]In 1802, Ohio,* which had previously formed a part of the Northwestern Territory, was erected into a

4. What is said of Ohio; the treaty with Spain, and its violation?

* OHIO, the northeastern of the Western States, contains an area of about 40,000 square miles. The interior of the state, and the country bordering on Lake Erie, are generally level, and in some places marshy. The country bordering on the Ohio River is generally hilly, but not mountainous. The most extensive tracts of rich and level lands in the state, border on the Sciota, and the Great and Little Miami. On the 7th of April, 1788, a company of forty-seven individuals landed at the spot where Marietta now stands, and there commenced the first settlement in Ohio.

1802. state,[a] and admitted into the Union. During the same year, the Spanish governor of Louisiana, in violation of a recent treaty,[b] closed[c] the port of New Orleans against the United States. This caused great excitement, and a proposition was made in congress, to take possession of all Louisiana.

a. Constitution adopted in November.

b. Concluded in 1795. See page 291.

c. Oct.

1. By what more pacific course was Louisiana obtained?

3. [1]A more pacific course, however, was adopted. In 1800, Louisiana had been secretly ceded to France; and a negotiation was now opened with the latter power, which resulted in the purchase[d] of Louisiana for fifteen millions of[e] dollars. In December,[e] 1803, possession was taken by the United States. [2]That portion of the territory embracing the present state of Louisiana, was called the "Territory of Orleans;" and the other part, the "Dist. of Louisiana," embracing a large tract of country extending westward to Mexico and the Pacific Ocean.

1803.

d. April 30.

e. Dec. 20.

2. How was it divided and named?

1. War declared by the Bashaw, June 10, 1801.

3. What events are related in the war with Tripoli?

4. [3]Since 1801 war had existed[f] between the United States and Tripoli, one of the piratical Barbary powers. In 1803, Commodore Preble was sent into the Mediterranean, and after humbling the emperor of Morocco, he appeared before Tripoli with most of his squadron. The frigate Philadelphia, under Captain Bainbridge, being sent into the harbor to reconnoitre, struck upon a rock, and was obliged to surrender[g] to the Tripolitans. The officers were considered prisoners of war, but the crew were treated as slaves. This capture caused great exultation with the enemy; but a daring exploit of lieutenant, afterwards Commodore Decatur, somewhat humbled the pride which they felt in this accession to their navy.

f. Oct. 31, 1803.

1804.

h. Feb. 3.

4. Give an account of the recapture of the frigate Philadelphia.

5. [4]Early in February[h] of the following year, Lieutenant Decatur, under the cover of evening, entered the harbor of Tripoli in a small schooner, having on board but seventy-six men, with the design of destroying the Philadelphia, which was then moored near the castle, with a strong Tripolitan crew. By the aid of his pilot, who understood the Tripolitan language, Decatur succeeded in bringing his vessel in contact with the Philadelphia; when he and his followers leaped on board, and, in a few minutes, killed twenty of the Tripolitans, and drove the rest into the sea.

6. Under a heavy cannonade from the surrounding vessels and batteries, the Philadelphia was set on fire, and not abandoned until thoroughly wrapped in flames; when Decatur and his gallant crew succeeded in getting out of the harbor, without the loss of a single man. [1]During the month of August, Tripoli was repeatedly bombarded by the American squadron under Commodore Preble, and a severe action occurred[a] with the Tripolitan gun-boats, which resulted in the capture of several, with little loss to the Americans. **1804.**

1. *Continue the account of the war with Tripoli.*

a. Aug. 3.

7. [2]In July, 1804, occurred the death of General Hamilton, who fell in a duel fought with Colonel Burr, vice-president of the United States. Colonel Burr had lost the favor of the republican party, and being proposed for the office of governor of New York, was supported by many of the federalists, but was openly opposed by Hamilton, who considered him an unprincipled politician. A dispute arose, and a fatal duel[b] was the result.* [3]In the fall of 1804, Jefferson was re-elected president. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

2. *What is said of the death of Hamilton?*

b. July 11.

3. *Of the election of 1804?*

8. [4]At the time of Commodore Preble's expedition to the Mediterranean, Hamet, the legitimate sovereign of Tripoli, was an exile; having been deprived of his government by the usurpation of a younger brother. Mr. Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, concerted,[c] with Hamet, an expedition against the reigning sovereign, and obtained of the government of the United States permission to undertake it.

4. *What is said of Hamet, and the expedition planned by him and Eaton?*

1805.

c. Feb. 23

9. [5]With about seventy seamen from the American squadron, together with the followers of Hamet and some Egyptian troops, Eaton and Hamet set out[d] from Alexandria† towards Tripoli, a distance of a thousand miles, across a desert country. After great fatigue and suffering, they reached[e] Derne,‡ a Tripolitan city on the Mediterranean, which was taken[f] by assault. After two successful engagements[g] had occurred with the

5. *Give an account of that expedition.*

d. March 6.

e. April 26.

f. April 27.

g. May 13, and June 10.

---

* Hamilton fell at Hoboken, on the New Jersey side of the Hudson River, opposite the city of New York.

† *Alexandria*, the ancient capital of Egypt, founded by Alexander the Great in the year 331, A. C., is situated at the N.W. extremity of Egypt, on a neck of land between the Mediterranean Sea and Lake Mareotis.

‡ *Derne* is about 650 miles E. from Tripoli

1805. Tripolitan army, the reigning bashaw offered terms of peace; which being considered much more favorable than had before been offered, they were accepted[a] by Mr. Lear, the authorized agent of the United States.

a. Treaty concluded June 3, 1805.

1. *What is said of Michigan?*

10. [1]In 1805, Michigan became a distinct territorial government of the United States. Previous to 1802 it formed, under the name of Wayne County, a part of the Northwestern Territory. From 1802 until 1805 it was under the jurisdiction of Indiana Territory.

1806.

2. *Of the conspiracy and trial of Col. Burr?*

11. [2]In 1806 Col. Burr was detected in a conspiracy the design of which was to form, west of the Alleghany Mountains, an independent empire, of which he was to be the ruler, and New Orleans the capital; or, failing in this project, it was his design to march upon Mexico, and establish an empire there. He was arrested, and brought to trial in 1807, on the charge of treason, but was released for want of sufficient evidence to convict him.

3. *Of the wars produced by the French Revolution?*

12. [3]The wars produced by the French revolution still continued to rage, and at this time Napoleon, emperor of France, triumphant and powerful, had acquired control over nearly all the kingdoms of Europe. [4]England alone, unsubdued and undaunted, with unwavering purpose waged incessant war against her ancient rival; and though France was victorious on land, the navy of England rode triumphant in every sea. [5]The destruction of the ships and commerce of other nations was highly favorable to the United States, which endeavored to maintain a neutrality towards the contending powers, and peaceably to continue a commerce with them.

4. *Of the relative positions of England and France?*

5. *The position of the United States?*

6. *What was done by England in 1806?*

b. May 16.

13. [6]In May, 1806, England, for the purpose of injuring the commerce of her enemy, declared[b] the continent from Brest* to the Elbe† in a state of blockade, although not invested by a British fleet; and numerous American vessels, trading to that coast, were captured and condemned.

7. *How did Bonaparte retaliate?*

c. Nov. 21.

[7]Bonaparte soon retaliated, by declaring[c] the British isles in a state of blockade; and

* *Brest* is a town at the northwestern extremity of France.

† The *Elbe*, a large river of Germany, enters the North Sea or German Ocean between Hanover and Denmark, 750 miles N.E. from Brest.

American vessels, trading thither, became a prey to French cruisers. [1]Early in the following year, the coasting trade of France was prohibited[a] by the British government. These measures, highly injurious to American commerce, and contrary to the laws of nations and the rights of neutral powers, occasioned great excitement in the United States, and the injured merchants loudly demanded of the government redress and protection. **1807.**

1. *What then did England do, and what was the effect of these measures?*
a. Jan. 7.

4. [2]In June, an event of a hostile character occurred, which greatly increased the popular indignation against England. That power, contending for the principle that whoever was born in England always remained a British subject, had long claimed the right, and exercised the power of searching American ships, and taking from them those who had been naturalized in the United States, and who were, therefore, claimed as American citizens.

2. *What is said of the pretensions and claims of the British government?*

15. [3]On the 22d of June, the American frigate Chesapeake, then near the coast of the United States, having refused to deliver up four men claimed by the English as deserters, was fired upon by the British ship of war Leopard. Being unsuspicious of danger at the time, and unprepared for the attack, the Chesapeake struck her colors, after having had three of her men killed, and eighteen wounded. The four men claimed as deserters were then transferred to the British vessel. Upon investigation it was ascertained that three of them were American citizens, who had been impressed by the British, and had afterwards escaped from their service.

June 22.
3. *Give an account of the attack on the frigate Chesapeake.*

16. [4]This outrage upon a national vessel was followed by a proclamation of the president, forbidding British ships of war to enter the harbors of the United States, until satisfaction for the attack on the Chesapeake should be made by the British government, and security given against future aggression. [5]In November, the British government issued[b] the celebrated "*orders in council*," prohibiting all trade with France and her allies; and in December following, Bonaparte issued[c] the retaliatory Milan decree,* forbidding all

4. *What was done in relation to this outrage?*
5. *What further hostile measures did France and England adopt against each other, and what was their effect on American commerce?*
b. Nov. 11.
c. Dec. 17.

* So called from *Milan*, a city in the N. of Italy, whence the decree was issued.

1807. trade with England or her colonies. Thus almost every American vessel on the ocean was liable to be captured by one or the other of the contending powers.

a. Dec. 22.

1. *What is said of the American embargo act from its passage to its repeal?*

17. [1]In December, congress decreed[a] an embargo, the design of which was, not only to retaliate upon France and England, but also, by calling home and detaining American vessels and sailors, to put the country in a better posture of defence, preparatory to an expected war. The embargo failing to obtain, from France and England, an acknowledgment of American rights, and being likewise ruinous to the commerce of the country with other nations, in March,[b] 1809, congress repealed it, but, at the same time, interdicted all commercial intercourse with France and England.

1809.

b. March 1.

2. *Of the close of Jefferson's administration, and the ensuing election?*

18. [2]Such was the situation of the country at the close of Jefferson's administration. Following and confirming the example of Washington, after a term of eight years Jefferson declined a re-election, and was succeeded[c] in the presidency by James Madison. George Clinton was re-elected vice-president.

c. March 4, 1809.

CHAPTER IV.

What period is embraced in Madison's administration, and by what important event is it distinguished?

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1809, TO MARCH 4, 1817.

WAR WITH ENGLAND.

Of what does Section I. treat?

SECTION I.—EVENTS OF 1809, '10, '11.

3. *What events soon followed Mr. Madison's accession?*

1. [3]Soon after the accession of Mr. Madison to the presidency, he was assured by Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, that the British "orders in council,"[d] so far as they affected the United States, should be repealed by the 10th of June. The president, therefore, proclaimed that commercial intercourse would be renewed with England on that day. The British government, however, disavowed the acts of its minister; the orders in council were not repealed; and non-intercourse with England was again proclaimed[e]

d See p. 301.

e. Aug. 10.

2. [1]In March, 1810, Bonaparte issued[a] a decree of a decidedly hostile character, by which all American vessels and cargoes, arriving in any of the ports of France, or of countries occupied by French troops, were ordered to be seized and condemned; but in November of the same year, all the hostile decrees of the French were revoked, and commercial intercourse was renewed between France and the United States. **1810.**

a. March 23.

1. *What decree was issued, and what ones revoked by Bonaparte in 1810?*

3. [2]England, however, continued her hostile decrees; and, for the purpose of enforcing them, stationed before the principal ports of the United States, her ships of war, which intercepted the American merchantmen, and sent them to British ports as legal prizes. On one occasion, however, the insolence of a British ship of war received a merited rebuke.

2. *What course was still pursued by England?*

4. [3]Commodore Rogers, sailing in the American frigate President, met,[b] in the evening, a vessel on the coast of Virginia. He hailed, but instead of a satisfactory answer, received a shot, in return, from the unknown vessel. A brief engagement ensued, and the guns of the stranger were soon nearly silenced, when Commodore Rogers hailed again, and was answered that the ship was the British sloop of war Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. The Little Belt had eleven men killed and twenty-one wounded, while the President had only one man wounded. 1811.

b. May 16.

3. *What encounter at sea is described?*

5. [4]At this time the Indians on the western frontiers had become hostile, as was supposed through British influence; and in the fall of 1811, General Harrison, then governor of Indiana Territory,* marched against the tribes on the Wabash. On his approach to the town of the Prophet, the brother of the celebrated Tecumseh, the principal chiefs came out and proposed[c] a conference, and requested him to encamp for the night. Fearing treachery, the troops slept on their arms in order of battle. Early on the following morning[d] the camp was furiously assailed, and a bloody and doubtful contest ensued; but after a heavy loss on both sides, the Indians were finally repulsed.†

4. *Give an account of the Indian war at the west, and the "Battle of Tippecanoe."*

c. Nov. 6.

d. Nov. 7.

* *Indiana Territory*, separated from the Northwestern Territory in 1800, embraced the present states of Indiana and Illinois.

† This battle, called the *Battle of Tippecanoe*, was fought near the W. bank of Tippecanoe River, at its junction with the Wabash, in the northern part of Tippecanoe County, Indiana.

1812.

SECTION II.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1812.

Of what does Section II. treat?

DIVISIONS.

What are its Divisions?

I. Declaration of War, and Events in the West.—II. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—III. Naval Events.

I. DECLARATION OF WAR, AND EVENTS IN THE WEST.

a. April 4.

1. What is said of the embargo of 1812, and of the declaration of war?

—1. [1]Early in April, 1812, congress passed[a] an act laying an embargo, for ninety days, on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. On the 4th of June following, a bill declaring war against Great Britain passed the house of representatives; and on the 17th, the senate; and, on the 19th, the president issued a proclamation of war.[b]

b. Act declaring war adopted by both houses June 18th.

2. What preparations were made for the war?

2. [2]Exertions were immediately made to enlist 25,000 men; to raise 50,000 volunteers; and to call out 100,000 militia for the defence of the seacoast and frontiers. Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an officer of the revolution, was appointed major-general and commander-in-chief of the army.

3. Give an account of the movements of Gen. Hull.

3. [3]At the time of the declaration of war, General Hull, then governor of Michigan Territory, was on his march from Ohio to Detroit, with a force of two thousand men, with a view of putting an end to the Indian hostilities on the northwestern frontier. Being vested with an authority to invade the Canadas, "if consistent with the safety of his own posts," on the 12th of July he crossed the river Detroit,* and encamped at Sandwich,† with the professed object of marching upon the British post at Malden.‡

4. What losses were sustained by the Americans?

VICINITY OF DETROIT.

4. [4]In the mean time, the American post at Mackinaw§ was surprised, and a

* *Detroit River* is the channel or strait that connects Lake St. Clair with Lake Erie. (See Map.)

† *Sandwich* is on the E bank of Detroit River, two miles below Detroit. (See Map.)

‡ *Fort Malden* is on the E. bank of Detroit River, fifteen miles S. from Detroit, and half a mile N. from the village of Amherstburg. (See Map.)

§ *Mackinaw* is a small island a little E. from the strait which connects Lake Michigan with Lake Huron, about 270 miles N.W. from Detroit. The fort and village of Mackinaw are on the S.E. side of the island.

surrender demanded; which was the first intimation of the declaration of war that the garrison had received. The demand was precipitately complied with,[a] and the British were thus put in possession of one of the strongest posts in the United States. Soon after, Major Van Horne, who had been despatched by General Hull to convoy a party approaching his camp with supplies, was defeated[b] by a force of British and Indians near Brownstown.* **1812.**

a. July 17.

b. Aug. 5.

5. [1]General Hull himself, after remaining inactive nearly a month in Canada, while his confident troops were daily expecting to be led against the enemy, suddenly recrossed, in the night of the 7th of August, to the town and fort of Detroit, to the bitter vexation and disappointment of his officers and army, who could see no reason for thus abandoning the object of the expedition. [2]He now sent[c] a detachment of several hundred men, under Colonel Miller, to accomplish the object previously attempted by Major Van Horne. In this expedition a large force of British and Indians, the latter under the famous Tecumseh, was met[d] and routed with considerable loss, near the ground on which Van Horne had been defeated.

1. *What is said of the retreat of Gen. Hull?*

Aug. 7.

c. Aug. 8.

2. *Of the expedition of Colonel Miller?*

d. Aug. 9

6. [3]On the 16th of August General Brock, the British commander, crossed the river a few miles above Detroit, without opposition, and with a force of about 700 British troops and 600 Indians, immediately marched against the American works. While the American troops, advantageously posted, and numbering more than the combined force of the British and Indians, were anxiously awaiting the orders to fire, great was their mortification and rage, when all were suddenly ordered within the fort, and a white flag, in token of submission, was suspended from the walls. Not only the army at Detroit, but the whole territory, with all its forts and garrisons, was thus basely surrendered[e] to the British.

Aug. 16.

3. *Give an account of the surrender of Detroit.*

e. Aug. 16.

7. [4]The enemy were as much astonished as the Americans, at this unexpected result. General Brock, in writing to his superior officer, remarked, "When I

4. *How was the event regarded by the British?*

* *Brownstown* is situated at the mouth of Brownstown Creek, a short distance N. from the mouth of Huron River, about twenty miles S.W. from Detroit. (Map, p. 304.)

1812. detail my good fortune you will be astonished." [1]General Hull was afterwards exchanged for thirty British prisoners, when his conduct was investigated by a court martial. The court declined giving an opinion upon the charge of treason, but convicted him of cowardice and unofficerlike conduct. He was sentenced to death, but was pardoned by the president; but his name was ordered to be struck from the rolls of the army.

1. *What is said of Gen. Hull's trial?*

II. EVENTS ON THE NIAGARA FRONTIER.—1. [2]During the summer, arrangements were made for the invasion of Canada from another quarter. A body of troops, consisting mostly of New York militia, was collected on the Niagara frontier, and the command given to General Stephen Van Rensselaer. Early on the morning of the 13th of October, a detachment of two hundred and twenty-five men, under Col. Solomon Van Rensselaer, crossed the river, gained possession of the heights of Queenstown,* and took a small battery near its summit. Van Rensselaer was wounded at the landing, and the assault was led by Captains Ogilvie and Wool.

a. See Map, below.

2. *Give an account of the preparations for invading Canada, and of the attack on Queenstown.*

2. [3]At the very moment of success, the enemy received a reenforcement of several hundred men under General Brock. These attempted to regain possession of the battery, but were driven back by an inferior force under Captain Wool, and their leader, General Brock, was killed. In the afternoon, the British received a strong reenforcement from Fort George,† while all the exertions of General Van Rensselaer, during the day, could induce only about one thousand of his troops to cross the river. These were attacked by a far superior force, and nearly all were killed or taken prisoners, in the very sight of twelve or fifteen hundred of their brethren in arms on the opposite shore, who positively refused to embark.

3. *Describe the remaining events that occurred at Queenstown.*

NIAGARA FRONTIER.

3. [4]While these men asserted that they were willing to defend their country when

* *Queenston*, in Upper Canada, is on the W. bank of Niagara River, at the foot of Queenstown Heights, seven miles from Lake Ontario. (See Map.)

† *Fort George* was on the W. bank of Niagara River, nearly a mile from Lake Ontario. (See Map.)

attacked, they professed to entertain scruples about carrying on offensive war by invading the enemy's territory. [1]Unfortunately, these principles were entertained, and the conduct of the militia on this occasion defended by many of the federal party, who were, generally, opposed to the war. **1812.**

4. What reason was offered by the men for refusing to embark?

1. How extensive were these principles?

4. [2]Soon after the battle of Queenstown, General Van Rensselaer retired from the service, and was succeeded[a] by General Alexander Smyth, of Virginia. [3]This officer issued an address,[b] announcing his resolution of retrieving the honor of his country by another attack on the Canadian frontier, and invited the young men of the country to share in the danger and glory of the enterprise. But after collecting between four and five thousand men, sending a small party across[c] at Black Rock,* and making a show of passing with a large force, the design was suddenly abandoned, to the great surprise of the troops. Another preparation for an attack was made, and the troops were actually embarked, when they were again withdrawn, and ordered to winter quarters.

2. What change of officers occurred soon after?

a. Oct. 14.

b. Nov. 10.

3. Give an account of the proceedings of Gen. Smyth.

c. Nov. 28.

Dec.

III. NAVAL EVENTS.—1. [4]Thus far the events of the war, on the land, had been unfavorable to the Americans; but on another element, the national honor had been fully sustained, by a series of unexpected and brilliant victories. [5]On the 19th of August, the American frigate Constitution, of forty-four guns, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, engaged the British frigate Guerriere, of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Captain Dacres; and after an action[d] of thirty minutes, compelled her to surrender. The Guerriere was made a complete wreck. Every mast and spar was shot away, and one-third of her crew was either killed or wounded.

4. What is said of the events of the war thus far?

Aug. 19.

5. What is related of the Constitution and Guerriere?

d. Off the coast of Massachusetts.

2. [6]In October, an American sloop of war, the Wasp, of eighteen guns, Captain Jones commander, while off the coast of North Carolina, captured[e] the brig Frolic, of twenty-two guns, after a bloody conflict of three quarters of an hour. On boarding the enemy, to the surprise of the Americans, only three officers and one

6. Of the Wasp and the Frolic?

e. Oct. 18.

* *Black Rock* is on the E. bank of Niagara River, two and a half miles N. from Buffalo, of which it may be considered a suburb. (See Map, p. 306.)

1812. seaman were found on the forecastle; while the other decks, slippery with blood, were covered with the dead and the dying. The loss of the Frolic was about eighty, in killed and wounded, while that of the Wasp was only ten. On the same day the two vessels were captured by a British seventy-four.

a. Oct. 25.
1. *Of the frigates United States and Macedonian?*
b. West of the Canary Islands.

3. [1]A few days later,[a] the frigate United States, of forty-four guns, commanded by Commodore Decatur, engaged[b] the British frigate Macedonian, of forty-nine guns. The action continued nearly two hours, when the Macedonian struck her colors, being greatly injured in her hull and rigging, and having lost, in killed and wounded, more than 100 men. The United States was almost entirely uninjured. Her loss was only five killed and seven wounded. The superiority of the American gunnery in this action was remarkably conspicuous.

2. *Of the Constitution and Java?*
c. Dec. 29.

4. [2]In December, the Constitution, then commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, achieved a second naval victory; capturing[c] the British frigate Java, carrying forty-nine guns and 400 men. The action occurred off St. Salvador,* and continued more than three hours. Of the crew of the Java, nearly 200 were killed and wounded; of the Constitution, only thirty-four. The Java, having been made a complete wreck, was burned after the action.

3. *What is said of other naval successes?*

5. [3]In addition to these distinguished naval victories, others, less noted, were frequently occurring. Numerous privateers covered the ocean, and during the year 1812, nearly three hundred vessels, more than fifty of which were armed, were captured from the enemy and more than three thousand prisoners were taken. Compared with this, the number captured by the enemy was but trifling. The American navy became the pride of the people, and in every instance it added to the national renown.

* *St. Salvador* is a large city on the eastern coast of Brazil.

SECTION III.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1813

DIVISIONS.

Of what does Section III. treat, and what are its Divisions?

I. Events in the West and South.—II. Events in the North.—III. Naval Events.

I. EVENTS IN THE WEST AND SOUTH.—1. [1]In the beginning of 1813, the principal American forces were arranged in three divisions. *The army of the West* was commanded by General Harrison; *the army of the cent. e*, under General Dearborn, was on the southern shore of Lake Ontario, and on the Niagara frontier; and *the army of the North*, under General Hampton, on the shores of Lake Champlain.

1. *How were the principal American forces arranged in 1813?*

2. [2]Shortly after the disaster which befell the army under General Hull, the militia of the Western States, promptly obedient to the calls of their country, assembled in great numbers at different and distant points, for the defence of the frontier, and the recovery of the lost territory. [3]It was the design of General Harrison to collect these forces at some point near the head of Lake Erie, from which a descent should be made upon the British posts at Detroit and Malden.

2. *What occurred at the west, soon after Hull's surrender?*

3. *What is said of Harrison's design?*

3. [4]On the 10th of January, General Winchester, with about 800 men, arrived at the rapids[a] of the Maumee. Learning[b] that a body of British and Indians was about to concentrate at the village of Frenchtown,* thirty miles in his advance, on the river Raisin;† at the earnest solicitation of the inhabitants he detached[c] a small party under Colonels Lewis and Allen for their protection. This party, finding the enemy already in possession of the town, successfully attacked[d] and routed them; and having encamped on the spot, was soon after joined[e] by the main body under General Winchester.

Jan. 10.

a. N. p. 290.

4. *What is related of the force under Gen. Winchester?*

b. Jan. 13.

c. Jan. 17.

d. Jan. 18.

e. Jan. 20.

---

* *Frenchtown* is on the north bank of the River Raisin, near its mouth, about twenty-five miles S.W. from Detroit. The large village that has grown up on the S. side of the stream at this place is now called *Monroe*. (See Map, p. 304.)

† The River *Raisin*, so named from the numerous grape-vines that formerly lined its banks, enters Lake Erie from the W. two and a half miles below the village of Monroe. (See Map, p 304.)

1813.

1. *Give an account of the battle of Frenchtown.*

4. [1]Here, early on the morning of the 22d, the Americans were attacked by General Proctor, who had marched suddenly from Malden with a combined force of fifteen hundred British and Indians. The Americans made a brave defence against this superior force, and after a severe loss on both sides, the attack on the main body was for a time suspended; when General Proctor, learning that General Winchester had fallen into the hands of the Indians, induced him, by a pledge of protection to the prisoners, to surrender the troops under his command.

a. Jan. 22.

2. *How were the wounded prisoners treated by the Indians?*

b. Jan. 23.

5. [2]The pledge was basely violated. General Proctor marched back[a] to Malden, leaving the wounded without a guard, and in the power of the savages, who wantonly put to death[b] those who were unable to travel, —carried some to Detroit for ransom at exorbitant prices,—and reserved others for torture. If the British officers did not connive at the destruction of the wounded prisoners, they at least showed a criminal indifference about their fate.

3. *What were the movements of Gen. Harrison at this time?*

c. Jan. 23.

d. Feb. 1.

6. [3]General Harrison, who had already arrived at the rapids of the Maumee, on hearing of the fate of General Winchester, at first fell back,[c] expecting an attack from Proctor, but soon advanced[d] again with about 1200 men, and began a fortified camp; which, in honor of the governor of Ohio, he named Fort Meigs.* [4]On the first of May the fort was besieged by General Proctor, at the head of more than 2000 British and Indians.

May 1.

4. *Of Gen. Proctor?*

May 5.

5. *What is related of Gen. Clay?*

7. [5]Five days afterwards, General Clay, advancing to the relief of the fort, at the head of 1200 Kentuckians, attacked and dispersed the besiegers; but a large body of his troops, while engaged in the pursuit, were themselves surrounded and captured. [6]On the eighth of May, most of the Indians, notwithstanding the entreaties of their chief, Tecumseh, deserted their allies; and on the following day, General Proctor abandoned the siege, and again retired to Malden.

May 8.

6. *Of the abandonment of the siege?*

May 9.

7. *What was done by the*

8. [7]In the latter part of July, about 4000 British and

* *Fort Meigs* was erected at the rapids of the Maumee, on the S. side of the river nearly opposite the former British post of Maumee, and a short distance S.W. from the present village of Perrysburg

Indians, the former under General Proctor, and the latter under Tecumseh, again appeared[a] before Fort Meigs, then commanded by General Clay. Finding the garrison prepared for a brave resistance, General Proctor, after a few days' siege, withdrew[b] his forces, and with 500 regulars and 800 Indians, proceeded against the fort at Lower Sandusky,* then garrisoned by only 150 men under Major Croghan, a youth of twenty-one. [1]A summons demanding a surrender, and accompanied with the usual threats of indiscriminate slaughter in case of refusal, was answered by the young and gallant Croghan, with the assurance that he should defend the place to the last extremity.

1813.

British and Indians in July?

a. July 21.

b. July 28.

1. *What is said of the summons to surrender?*

9. [2]A cannonade from several six-pounders and a howitzer was opened upon the fort, and continued until a breach had been effected, when about 500 of the enemy attempted to carry the place by assault.[c] They advanced towards the breach under a destructive fire of musketry, and threw themselves into the ditch, when the only cannon in the fort, loaded with grape shot, and placed so as to rake the ditch, was opened upon them with terrible effect. The whole British force, panic struck, soon fled in confusion, and hastily abandoned the place, followed by their Indian allies. The loss of the enemy was about 150 in killed and wounded, while that of the Americans was only one killed and seven wounded.

2. *Of the attack on Fort Sandusky, and of its defence?*

c. Aug. 2.

10. [3]In the mean time, each of the hostile parties was striving to secure the mastery of Lake Erie. By the exertions of Commodore Perry, an American squadron, consisting of nine vessels carrying fifty-four guns, had been prepared for service; while a British squadron of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns, had been built and equipped under the superintendence of Commodore Barclay.

3. *What efforts were made for the mastery of Lake Erie?*

11. [4]On the tenth of September the two squadrons met near the western extremity of Lake Erie. In the beginning of the action the fire of the enemy was directed principally against the Lawrence, the flag-ship of Commodore Perry, which in a short time became

Sept. 10.

4. *Give an account of the battle on Lake Erie.*

* *Lower Sandusky* is situated on the W. bank of Sandusky River, about fifteen miles S. from Lake Erie.

1813. an unmanageable wreck, having all her crew, except four or five, either killed or wounded. Commodore Perry, in an open boat, then left her, and transferred his flag on board the Niagara; which, passing through the enemy's line, poured successive broadsides into five of their vessels, at half pistol shot distance. The wind favoring, the remainder of the squadron now came up, and at four o'clock every vessel of the enemy had surrendered.

1. What events followed that action?

12. [1]Intelligence of this victory was conveyed to Harrison in the following laconic epistle: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." The way to Malden being now opened, the troops of Harrison were

a. Sept. 27.

embarked,[a] and transported across the lake; but General Proctor had already retired with all his forces.

Oct. 5.

He was pursued, and on the 5th of October was overtaken on the river Thames,* about eighty miles from Detroit.

2. Give an account of the battle of the Thames.

13. [2]His forces were found advantageously drawn up across a narrow strip of woodland, having the river on the left, and on the right a swamp—occupied by a large body of Indians under Tecumseh. On the first charge, the main body of the enemy in front was broken; but on the left the contest with the Indians raged for some time with great fury. Animated by the voice and conduct of their leader, the Indians fought with determined courage, until Tecumseh himself was slain The victory was complete; nearly the whole force of Proctor being killed or taken. By a rapid flight Proctor saved himself, with a small portion of his cavalry.

3. What were the effects of the victory?

14. [3]This important victory effectually broke up the great Indian confederacy of which Tecumseh was the head; recovered the territory which Hull had lost;

4. What had been done by the influence of Tecumseh?

and terminated the war on the western frontier. [4]But before this, the influence of Tecumseh had been exerted upon the southern tribes, and the Creeks had taken up the hatchet, and commenced a war of plunder and devastation.

e. Aug. 30.

15. [5]Late in August,[b] a large body of Creek Indians

* The *Thames*, a river of Upper Canada, flows S.W., and enters the southeastern extremity of Lake St. Clair The battle of the Thames was fought near a place called the Moravian village

surprised Fort Mims,* and massacred nearly three hundred persons; men, women, and children. On the receipt of this intelligence, General Jackson, at the head of a body of Tennessee militia, marched into the Creek country. A detachment of nine hundred men under General Coffee surrounded a body of Indians at Tallushatchee,† east of the Coosa River, and killed about two hundred, not a single warrior escaping.

1813.

5. *What is said of the attack on Fort Mims, and what was done in consequence?*

a. Nov. 3.

16. [1]The battles[b] of Talladega,‡ Autossee,§ Emucfau,‖ and others, soon followed; in all which the Indians were defeated, although not without considerable loss to the Americans. The Creeks made their last stand at the great bend of the Tallapoosa; called by the Indians Tohopeka,¶ and by the whites Horse Shoe Bend.

b. Nov. 8, Nov. 29: and Jan. 22, 1814.

1. *What battles followed between the Americans and the Indians?*

17. [2]Here about one thousand of their warriors, with their women and children, had assembled in a fort strongly fortified. To prevent escape, the bend was encircled by a strong detachment under General Coffee, while the main body, under General Jackson, advanced against the works in front. These were carried by assault; but the Indians, seeing no avenue of escape, and disdaining to surrender, continued to fight, with desperation, until nearly all were slain. Only two or three Indian warriors were taken prisoners. In this battle[c] the power of the Creeks was broken, and their few remaining chiefs soon after sent in their submission.

2. *Give an account of the battle of Tohopeka, or Horse Shoe Bend*

c. March 27, 1814.

18. [3]With the termination of the British and Indian war in the West, and the Indian war in the South, the latter extending into the spring of 1814, we now re-

3. *To what events do we now return?*

* *Fort Mims*, in Alabama, was on the E. side of Alabama River, about ten miles above its junction with the Tombigbee, and forty miles N.E. from Mobile. (See Map.)

† *Tallushatchee* was on the S. side of Tallushatchee Creek, near the present village of Jacksonville, in Benton County. (See Map.)

‡ *Talladega* was a short distance E. from the Coosa River, in the present county of Talladega, and nearly thirty miles south from Fort Strother at Ten Islands. (Map.)

§ *Autossee* was situated on the S. bank of the Tallapoosa, twenty miles from its junction with the Coosa. (Map.)

‖ *Emucfau* was on the W. bank of the Tallapoosa, at the mouth of Emucfau Creek, about thirty-five miles S.E. from Talladega. (See Map.)

¶ *Tohopeka*, or *Horse Shoe Bend*, is about forty miles S.E. from Talladega, near the N.E. corner of the present Tallapoosa County. (See Map.)

SEAT OF THE CREEK WAR.

1813 turn to resume the narrative of events on the northern frontier.

1. *What expedition was undertaken by Gen. Dearborn in April?*

II. EVENTS IN THE NORTH.—1. [1]On the 25th of April, General Dearborn, with 1700 men, embarked at Sackett's Harbor,* on board the fleet of Commodore Chauncey, with the design of making an attack on York,† the capital of Upper Canada, the great depository of British military stores, whence the western posts were supplied. [2]On the 27th the troops landed, although opposed at the water's edge by a large force of British and Indians, who were soon driven back to the garrison, a mile and a half distant.

2. *What occurred at the landing?*

3. *Give an account of the events which attended the capture of York.*

2. [3]Led on by General Pike, the troops had already carried one battery by assault, and were advancing against the main works, when the enemy's magazine blew up, hurling immense quantities of stone and timber upon the advancing columns, and killing and wounding more than 200 men. The gallant Pike was mortally wounded, and the troops were, for a moment, thrown into confusion; but recovering from the shock, they advanced upon the town, of which they soon gained possession. General Sheaffe escaped with the principal part of the regular troops, but lost all his baggage, books, and papers, and abandoned public property to a large amount.

4. *Whither did the squadron next sail?*

5. *Give an account of the attack on Sackett's Harbor.*

3. [4]The object of the expedition having been attained, the squadron returned to Sackett's Harbor, but soon after sailed for the Niagara frontier. [5]The British on the opposite Canadian shore, being informed of the departure of the fleet, seized the opportunity of making an attack on Sackett's Harbor. On the 27th of May, their squadron appeared before the town, and

May 29. on the morning of the 29th, one thousand troops, commanded by Sir George Prevost, effected a landing.

6. *The result.*

4. [6]While the advance of the British was checked by a small body of regular troops, General Brown rallied the militia, and directed their march towards the landing; when Sir George Prevost, believing that his

---

* *Sackett's Harbor* is on the S. side of Black River Bay, at the mouth of Black River and at the eastern extremity of Lake Ontario.

† *York*, which has now assumed the early Indian name of *Toronto*, is situated on the N.W. shore of Lake Ontario, about thirty-five miles N. from Niagara.

retreat was about to be cut off, re embarked his troops so hastily, as to leave behind most of his wounded. **1813.**

5. [1]On the very day of the appearance of the British before Sackett's Harbor, the American fleet and land troops made an attack on Fort George, on the Niagara frontier; which, after a short defence, was abandoned[a] by the enemy. The British then retreated to the heights at the head of Burlington Bay,* closely pursued by Generals Chandler and Winder at the head of a superior force. In a night attack[b] on the American camp, the enemy were repulsed with considerable loss; although in the darkness and confusion, both Generals Chandler and Winder were taken prisoners.

1. *What events occurred on the Niagara frontier about this time?*

a. May 27.

b June 6.

6. [2]During the remainder of the summer few events of importance occurred on the northern frontier. Immediately after the battle of the Thames, General Harrison, with a part of his regular force, proceeded to Buffalo,† where he arrived on the 24th of October. Soon after, he closed his military career by a resignation of his commission. General Dearborn had previously withdrawn from the service, and his command had been given to General Wilkinson.

2. *What is said of the remainder of the summer, and of the change of officers?*

7. [3]General Armstrong, who had recently been appointed secretary of war, had planned another invasion of Canada. The army of the centre, under the immediate command of General Wilkinson, and that of the North, under General Hampton, were to unite at some point on the St. Lawrence, and co-operate for the reduction of Montreal.

3. *What is said of the plans of Gen. Armstrong?*

8. [4]After many difficulties and unavoidable delays, late in the season the scattered detachments of the army of the centre, comprising about 7000 men, embarked[c] from French Creek,‡ down the St. Lawrence. [5]The progress of the army being impeded by numerous parties of the enemy on the Canada shore, General Brown was landed and sent in advance to disperse them. On

4. *Of the assembling and embarkation of the troops:*

c. Nov. 5.

5. *Give an account of the progress and result of the expedition.*

---

* *Burlington Bay* is at the western extremity of Lake Ontario, thirty-five miles W from Niagara.

† *Buffalo City*, N. Y., is situated at the northeastern extremity of Lake Erie, near the outlet of the lake, and on the N. side of Buffalo Creek, which constitutes its harbor.

‡ *French Creek* enters the St. Lawrence from the S. in Jefferson County, twenty miles N. from Sackett's Harbor.

1813. the 11th an engagement occurred near Williamsburg,* in which the Americans lost more than 300 in killed and wounded. The British loss was less than 200 On the next day the army arrived at St. Regis,† when General Wilkinson, learning that the troops expected from Plattsburg‡ would be unable to join him, was forced to abandon the project of attacking Montreal. He then retired with his forces to French Mills,§ where he encamped for the winter.

1. *What events occurred on the Niagara frontier in the latter part of the year?*

a. Dec. 12.

b. Dec 10.

c. Dec. 19.

9. [1]In the latter part of the year, a few events deserving notice occurred on the Niagara frontier. In December, General McClure, commanding at Fort George, abandoned[a] that post on the approach of the British; having previously reduced the Canadian village of Newark‖ to ashes.[b] A few days later, a force of British and Indians surprised and gained possession[c] of Fort Niagara; and in revenge for the burning of Newark, the villages of Youngstown,¶ Lewiston,** Manchester,†† and the Indian Tuscarora village‡‡ were reduced to ashes. On the 30th, Black Rock and Buffalo were burned.

Dec. 30.

2. *What is said of the naval conflicts of the year 1813?*

3. *Give an account of the affair between the Hornet and the Peacock.*

d. Off the coast of Demarara.

III. NAVAL EVENTS, AND EVENTS ON THE SEACOAST. —1. [2]During the year 1813, the ocean was the theatre of many sanguinary conflicts between separate armed vessels of England and the United States. [3]On the 24th of February, the sloop of war Hornet, commanded by Captain Lawrence, engaged[d] the British brig Peacock, of about equal force. After a fierce conflict of only fifteen minutes, the Peacock struck her colors, displaying, at the same time, a signal of distress. She

---

* *Williamsburg* is on the northern shore of the St. Lawrence, ninety miles from Lake Ontario, and about the same distance S.W. from Montreal.

† *St. Regis* is on the S. bank of the St. Lawrence, at the northwestern extremity of Franklin County, N. Y., twenty-five miles N.E. from Williamsburg.

‡ *Plattsburg*, the capital of Clinton County, N. Y., is situated mostly on the N. side of Saranac River, at its entrance into Cumberland Bay, a small branch of Lake Champlain. It is about 145 miles, in a direct line, from Albany.

§ The place called *French Mills*, since named *Fort Covington*, from General Covington, who fell at the battle of Williamsburg, is at the fork of Salmon River, in Franklin County, nine miles E. from St. Regis.

‖ *Newark*, now called *Niagara*, lies at the entrance of Niagara River into Lake Ontario, opposite Fort Niagara. (See Map, p. 306.)

¶ *Youngstown* is one mile S. from Fort Niagara.

** *Lewiston* is seven miles S. from Fort Niagara. (See Map, p. 306.)

†† The village of *Manchester*, now called *Niagara Falls*, is on the American side of the "Great Cataract," fourteen miles from Lake Ontario. (Map, p. 306, and p. 319.)

‡‡ The *Tuscarora Village* is three or four miles E. from Lewiston. (See Map, p. 306

was found to be sinking rapidly, and although the greatest exertions were made to save her crew, she went down in a few minutes, carrying with her nine British seamen, and three brave and generous Americans. **1813.**

2. [1]The tide of fortune, so long with the Americans, now turned in favor of the British. On the return of Captain Lawrence to the United States, he was promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbor. With a crew of newly enlisted men, partly foreigners, he hastily put to sea on the 1st of June, in search of the British frigate Shannon; which, with a select crew, had recently appeared off the coast, challenging any American frigate of equal force to meet her. On the same day the two vessels met, and engaged with great fury. In a few minutes every officer who could take command of the Chesapeake was either killed or wounded; the vessel, greatly disabled in her rigging, became entangled with the Shannon; the enemy boarded, and, after a short, but bloody struggle, hoisted the British flag.

1. What account is given of the action between the Chesapeake and the Shannon?

June 1.

3. [2]The youthful and intrepid Lawrence, who, by his previous victory and magnanimous conduct, had become the favorite of the nation, was mortally wounded early in the action. As he was carried below, he issued his last heroic order, "*Don't give up the ship*;" words which are consecrated to his memory, and which have become the motto of the American navy. The bodies of Captain Lawrence and Lieutenant Ludlow—the second in command—were conveyed to Halifax, where they were interred with appropriate civil and military honors; and no testimony of respect that was due to their memories was left unpaid.

2. What is said of Capt. Lawrence, and Lieutenant Ludlow?

4. [3]On the 14th of August, the American brig Argus, after a successful cruise in the British Channel, in which she captured more than twenty English vessels, was herself captured, after a severe combat, by the brig Pelican, a British vessel of about equal force. [4]In September following, the British brig Boxer surrendered[a] to the American brig Enterprise, near the coast of Maine, after an engagement of forty minutes. The commanders of both vessels fell in the action, and were

Aug. 14.

3. What is said of the vessels Argus and Pelican?

4. Of the Enterprise and the Boxer, and their commanders?

a. Sept. 5.

1813. interred beside each other at Portland, with military honors.

1. *What is related of Capt. Porter, and the frigate Essex?*

5. [1]During the summer, Captain Porter, of the frigate Essex, after a long and successful cruise in the Atlantic, visited the Pacific Ocean, where he captured a great number of British vessels. Early in the following year, the Essex was captured[a] in the harbor of Valparaiso,* by a British frigate and sloop of superior force.

a. March 28, 1814.

2. *What of American privateers?*

[2]The numerous privateers, which, during this year, as well as the former, visited all parts of the world, and seriously annoyed the British shipping, in general sustained the high character which the American flag had already gained for daring and intrepidity, and generous treatment of the vanquished.

3. *Give an account of the war on the seacoast.*

6. [3]Meanwhile, on the seacoast, a disgraceful war of havoc and destruction was carried on by large detachments from the British navy. Most of the shipping in Delaware Bay was destroyed. Early in the season, a British squadron entered the Chesapeake, and plundered and burned several villages. At Hampton,† the inhabitants were subjected to the grossest outrages from the brutal soldiery. The blockade of the northern ports fell into the hands of Commodore Hardy, a brave and honorable officer, whose conduct is pleasingly contrasted with that of the commander of the squadron in the Chesapeake.

SECTION IV.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS OF 1814.

Of what does Section IV. treat, and what are its Divisions?

DIVISIONS.

I. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—II. Events in the Vicinity of Lake Champlain.—III. Events on the Atlantic Coast.—IV. Events in the South, and Close of the War.

1814.

4. *What is remarked of some events of Indian warfare?*

I. Events on the Niagara Frontier.—1. [4]A few events of Indian warfare, which occurred in the early part of this year, have already been narrated[b] in the

b. See p. 313.

* *Valparaiso*, the principal port of Chili, is on a bay of the Pacific Ocean, sixty miles N.W from Santiago.

† *Hampton*, in Virginia, is situated north of James River, near its mouth, and on the W. side of Hampton River, about a mile from its entrance into Hampton Roads

previous section. [1]Early in the season, 2000 men, under General Brown, were detached from the army of General Wilkinson, and marched to Sackett's Harbor, but were soon after ordered to the Niagara frontier, in contemplation of another invasion of Canada. **1814.**

1. *Of the movements of General Brown?*

2. [2]Early on the morning of the 3d of July, Generals Scott and Ripley, at the head of about 3000 men, crossed the Niagara River, and surprised and took possession of Fort Erie* without opposition. On the following day, General Brown advanced with the main body of his forces to Chippeway;† where the enemy, under General Riall, were intrenched in a strong position. On the morning of the 5th, General Riall appeared before the American camp, and the two armies met in the open field; but after a severe battle, the enemy withdrew to their intrenchments, with a loss in killed, wounded, and missing, of about 500 men. The total American loss was 338.

July 3.

2. *Give an account of the events that occurred on the 3d, 4th, and 5th of July?*

July 5.

3. [3]General Riall, after his defeat, fell back upon Queenstown, and thence to Burlington Heights,‡ where he was strongly reenforced by General Drummond, who assumed the command. The Americans advanced and encamped near the Falls of Niagara.§ About sunset on the evening of the 25th, the enemy again made their appearance, and the two armies engaged at Lundy's Lane,‖ within a short distance of the Falls, where was fought the most obstinate battle that occurred during the war.

3. *Of the subsequent events which preceded the battle of Lundy's Lane.*

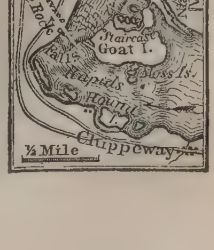
July 25

---

* *Fort Erie* is on the Canada side of Niagara River, nearly opposite Black Rock (See Map, p. 306.)

† *Chippeway Village* is on the W. bank of Niagara River, at the mouth of Chippeway Creek, two miles S. from the falls, and sixteen miles N. from Fort Erie. The battle of July 5th was fought in the plain on the S. side of the creek. (See Map; also Map, p. 306.)

VIC. OF NIAGARA FALLS.



‡ *Burlington Heights* lie W. and S. of Burlington Bay. (See Note, p. 316.)

§ *The Falls of Niagara*, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, are probably the greatest natural curiosity in the world. The mighty volume of water which forms the outlet of Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, and Erie, is here precipitated over a precipice 160 feet high, with a roar like that of thunder, which may be heard, at times, to the distance of fifteen or twenty miles. The Falls are about twenty miles N. from Lake Erie, and fourteen S. from Lake Ontario. (See Map: also Map, p. 306.)

‖ *Lundy's Lane*, then an obscure road, is about half a mile N.W. from the Falls. (See Map.)

1814. 4 [1]General Scott, leading the advance, first engaged the enemy, and contended for an hour against a force greatly his superior; when both parties were reenforced by the main bodies of the two armies, and the battle was renewed with increased fury. Major Jessup, in the mean time, had fallen upon the flank and rear of the enemy; and, in the darkness, General Riall and his suite were made prisoners. As the British artillery, placed on an eminence, sorely annoyed the Americans in every part of the field, it became evident that the victory depended upon carrying the battery.

1. Give an account of the early part of the action.

5. [2]Colonel Miller was asked if he could storm the battery. "I can try, sir," was the laconic answer. Placing himself at the head of his regiment, he advanced steadily up the ascent,[a] while every discharge of the enemy's cannon and musketry rapidly thinned his ranks. But nothing could restrain the impetuosity of his men, who, in a desperate charge gained possession of the battery; and the American line was immediately formed upon the ground previously occupied by the enemy.

2. Of the taking of the British battery.

6. [3]The attention of both armies was now directed to this position; and three desperate and sanguinary efforts were made by the whole British force to regain it, but without success. In the third attempt General Drummond was wounded, when his forces, beaten back with a heavy loss, were withdrawn; and the Americans were left in quiet possession of the field. The British force engaged in this action was about 5000 men, nearly one-third greater than that of the American. The total loss of the former was 878 men, of the latter 858.

3. What farther account is given of the battle, and of the losses on each side?

7. [4]Generals Brown and Scott having been wounded, the command devolved upon General Ripley, who deemed it prudent to retire to Fort Erie; where, on the 4th of August, he was besieged by General Drummond, at the head of 5000 men. Soon after, General Gaines arrived at the fort, and being the senior officer, took the command. Early on the morning of the 15th, the enemy made an assault upon the fort, but were repulsed with a loss of nearly a thousand men.

4. What change of officers took place, and what events followed, on the Niagara frontier, up to the close of the campaign?

8. On the 17th of September, General Brown having

previously resumed the command, a successful sortie was made from the fort, and the advanced works of the besiegers were destroyed. The enemy soon after retired to Fort George, on learning that General Izard was approaching from Plattsburg, with reinforcements for the American army. In November, Fort Erie was abandoned[a] and destroyed, and the American troops, recrossing the river, went into winter quarters at Buffalo,[b] Black Rock,[c] and Batavia.*

1814.

a. Nov. 5.

b. N. p. 315.
c. N. p. 307.

II. EVENTS IN THE VICINITY OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.—1. [1]Late in February, General Wilkinson broke up his winter quarters at French Mills,[d] and removed his army to Plattsburg. In March, he penetrated into Canada, and attacked[e] a body of the enemy posted at La Colle,† on the Sorel; but being repulsed with considerable loss, he again returned to Plattsburg, where he was soon after superseded in command by General Izard.

1. *What were the movements of Gen. Wilkinson early in the season?*

d. See p. 316.
e. March 30.

2. [2]In August, General Izard was despatched to the Niagara frontier with 5000 men, leaving General Macomb in command at Plattsburg with only 1500. The British in Canada having been strongly reinforced by the veterans who had served under Wellington, in Europe, early in September Sir George Prevost advanced against Plattsburg, at the head of 14,000 men, and at the same time an attempt was made to destroy the American flotilla on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore MacDonough.

2. *What events followed the appointment of Gen. Izard?*

3. [3]On the 6th of September, the enemy arrived at Plattsburg. The troops of General Macomb withdrew across the Saranac;[f] and, during four days, withstood all the attempts of the enemy to force a passage. About eight o'clock on the morning of the 11th, a general cannonading was commenced on the American works; and, soon after, the British fleet of Commodore Downie bore down and engaged that of Commodore MacDonough, lying in the harbor. After an action of two

3. *Give an account of the attack on the American army and fleet at Plattsburg.*

f. N. p. 316. Sept. 11.

* *Batavia*, the capital of Genesee County, N. Y., is situated on Tonawanda Creek, about forty miles N.E. from Buffalo.

† *La Colle*, on the W. bank of the Sorel, is the first town in Canada N. of the Canada line. La Colle Mill, where the principal battle occurred, was three miles N. from the village of Odeltown.

1814. hours, the guns of the enemy's squadron were silenced and most of their vessels captured.

1. *What more is related of the progress and result of the action on the land?*

4. [1]The battle on the land continued until nightfall. Three desperate but unsuccessful attempts were made by the British to cross the stream, and storm the American works. After witnessing the capture of the fleet, the efforts of the enemy relaxed, and, at dusk, they commenced a hasty retreat; leaving behind their sick and wounded, together with a large quantity of military stores. The total British loss, in killed, wounded, prisoners, and deserters, was estimated at 2500 men.

2. *What events occurred on the coast on the return of spring?*

III. EVENTS ON THE ATLANTIC COAST.—1. [2]On the return of spring the British renewed their practice of petty plundering on the waters of the Chesapeake, and made frequent inroads on the unprotected settlements along its borders.

Aug. 19.

[3]On the 19th of August, the British general, Ross, landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent,* with 5000 men, and commenced his march towards Washington.

3. *What is said of the landing and march of Gen. Ross?*

4. *Of the American flotilla?*

[4]The American flotilla, under Commodore Barney, lying farther up the river was abandoned and burned.

5. *Give an account of the route of the enemy? and the events that occurred at Bladensburg and at Washington.*

2. [5]Instead of proceeding directly to Washington, the enemy passed higher up the Patuxent, and approached the city by the way of Bladensburg.† Here a stand was made,[a] but the militia fled after a short resistance; although a body of seamen and marines, under Commodore Barney, maintained their ground until they were overpowered by numbers, and the commodore taken prisoner. The enemy then proceeded to Washington, burned the capitol, president's house, and many other buildings, after which they made a hasty retreat to their shipping.

a. Aug. 24.

6. *What was done, in the mean time, by another portion of the fleet?*

3. [6]In the mean time, another portion of the fleet ascended the Potomac, and, on the 29th, reached Alexandria;‡ the inhabitants of which were obliged to purchase the preservation of their city from pillage and burning, by the surrender of all the merchandise in the town, and the shipping at the wharves.

---

* The *Patuxent* River enters the Chesapeake from the N.W., twenty miles N. from the mouth of the Potomac. *Benedict* is on the W. bank of the Patuxent, twenty-five miles from its mouth, and thirty-five miles S.E. from Washington.

† *Bladensburg* is six miles N.E. from Washington. (See Map, p. 296.)

‡ *Alexandria*, included in the District of Columbia until 1846, is on the W. bank of the Potomac, seven miles below Washington. (See Map, p. 296.)

4. [1]After the successful attack on Washington, General Ross sailed up the Chesapeake; and, on the 12th of September, landed at North Point,[a] fourteen miles from Baltimore; and immediately commenced his march towards the city. In a slight skirmish General Ross was killed, but the enemy, under the command of Colonel Brooke, continued the march, and a battle of one hour and twenty minutes was fought with a body of militia under General Stricker. The militia then retreated in good order to the defences of the city, where the enemy made their appearance the next morning.[b] **1814.**

1. *What farther is related of Gen. Ross, and what events followed his death?*

a. See Map, below.

b. Sept. 13.

5. [2]By this time, the fleet had advanced up the Patapsco,* and commenced a bombardment on Fort McHenry,† which was continued during the day, and most of the following night, but without making any unfavorable impression, either upon the strength of the work, or the spirit of the garrison. [3]The land forces of the enemy, after remaining all day in front of the American works, and making many demonstrations of attack, silently withdrew early the next morning,[c] and during the following night, embarked on board their shipping.

2. *Give an account of the attack on Fort McHenry.*

Sept. 13, 14.

3. *What is said of the retreat?*

c. Sept. 14

6. [4]In the mean time, the coasts of New England did not escape the ravages of war. Formidable squadrons were kept up before the ports of New York, New London, and Boston; and a vast quantity of shipping fell into the hands of the enemy. In August, Stonington‡ was bombarded[d] by Commodore Hardy, and several attempts were made to land, which were successfully opposed by the militia.

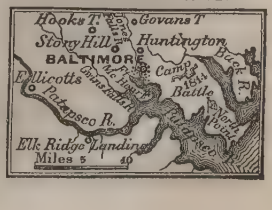
4. *What is related of the war on the coast of New England?*

d. Aug. 9, 10 11, 12.

5. *What were the first movements of the British at the south, during this year?*

IV. EVENTS IN THE SOUTH, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR. —1. [5]During the month of August, several British ships of war arrived at the Spanish port of Pensacola, took possession of the forts, with the

VICINITY OF BALTIMORE.



* The *Patapsco* River enters Chesapeake Bay from the N.W., about eighty-five miles N. from the mouth of the Potomac. (See Map.)

† *Fort McHenry* is on the W. side of the entrance to Baltimore Harbor, about two miles below the city. (See Map.)

‡ The village of *Stonington*, attacked by the enemy, is on a narrow peninsula extending into the Sound, twelve miles E. from New London.

1814. consent of the authorities, and fitted out an expedition against Fort Bowyer,* commanding the entrance to the bay and harbor of Mobile.† After the loss of a ship of war, and a considerable number of men in killed and wounded,[a] the armament returned to Pensacola.

a. Fort attacked September 15.

1. What was done by General Jackson?

2. [1]General Jackson, then commanding at the South, after having remonstrated in vain with the governor of Pensacola, for affording shelter and protection to the enemies of the United States, marched against the place, stormed[b] the town, and compelled the British to evacuate[c] Florida. Returning to his head-quarters at Mobile, he received authentic information that preparations were making for a formidable invasion of Louisiana, and an attack on New Orleans.

b. Nov. 7.

c. Nov. 8.

3. [2]He immediately repaired[d] to that city, which he found in a state of confusion and alarm. By his exertions, order and confidence were restored; the militia were organized; fortifications were erected; and, finally, martial law was proclaimed; which, although a violation of the constitution, was deemed indispensable for the safety of the country, and a measure justified by necessity.

d. Dec. 2.

2. What is said of his arrival in New Orleans, and of the measures adopted by him?

4. [3]On the 5th of December a large British squadron appeared off the harbor of Pensacola, and on the 10th entered Lake Borgne,‡ the nearest avenue of approach to New Orleans. Here a small squadron of American gun-boats, under Lieutenant Jones, was attacked, and after a sanguinary conflict, in which the killed and wounded of the enemy exceeded the whole number of the Americans, was compelled to surrender.[e]

3. Of the arrival of the British squadron, and the engagement on Lake Borgne?

e. Dec. 14.

5. [4]On the 22d of December, about 2400 of the enemy reached the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans,§ where, on the following night, they were surprised by an unexpected and vigorous attack upon their camp, which they succeeded in repelling, after a loss of 400 men in killed and wounded.

4. What occurred on the day and night of Dec. 22d?

---

* *Fort Bowyer*, now called *Fort Morgan*, is on Mobile Point, on the E. side of the entrance to Mobile Bay, thirty miles S. from Mobile.

† *Mobile*, in Alabama, is on the W. side of the river of the same name, near its entrance into Mobile Bay. (See Map, p. 313.)

‡ The entrance to this lake or bay is about sixty miles N.E. from New Orleans. See also Notes on p. 193.)

§ For a description of *New Orleans* see Note, page 291.

6. [1]Jackson now withdrew his troops to his intrenchments, four miles below the city. On the 28th of December and 1st of January, these were vigorously cannonaded by the enemy, but without success. On the morning of the 8th of January, General Packenham, the commander-in-chief of the British, advanced against the American intrenchments with the main body of his army, numbering more than 12,000 men. **1815.**

1. *What several attacks were made on the American works?*

7. [2]Behind their breastworks of cotton bales, which no balls could penetrate, 6000 Americans, mostly militia, but the best marksmen in the land, silently awaited the attack. When the advancing columns had approached within reach of the batteries, they were met by an incessant and destructive cannonade; but closing their ranks as fast as they were opened, they continued steadily to advance, until they came within reach of the American musketry and rifles. The extended American line now presented one vivid stream of fire, throwing the enemy into confusion, and covering the plain with the wounded and the dead. Jan. 8.

2. *Continue the account of the battle of the 8th of January.*

8. [3]In an attempt to rally his troops, General Packenham was killed; General Gibbs, the second in command, was mortally wounded, and General Keene severely. The enemy now fled in dismay from the certain death which seemed to await them; no one was disposed to issue an order, nor would it have been obeyed had any been given. General Lambert, on whom the command devolved, being unable to check the flight of the troops, retired to his encampment, leaving 700 dead, and more than 1000 wounded, on the field of battle. The loss of the Americans was only seven killed and six wounded. The whole British army hastily withdrew and retreated to their shipping.

3. *What is said of the losses and the retreat of the enemy?*

9. [4]This was the last important action of the war on the land. The rejoicings of victory were speedily followed by the welcome tidings that a treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain had been concluded in the previous December. A little later the war lingered on the ocean, closing there, as on the land, with victory adorning the laurels of the republic. In February, the Constitution captured the Cyane and the Levant off the Island of Madeira;[a] and in March, a. M. p. 31.

4. *What events followed the battle of New Orleans, and in what manner did the war close?*

1815. the Hornet captured the brig Penguin, off the coast of Brazil. The captured vessels, in both cases, were stronger in men and in guns than the victors.

1814.

10. [1]The opposition of a portion of the federal party to the war has already been mentioned.[a] The dissatisfaction prevailed somewhat extensively throughout the New England States; and, finally, complaints were made that the general government, looking upon the New England people with uncalled-for jealousy, did not afford them that protection to which their burden of the expenses of the war entitled them. They likewise complained that the war was badly managed, and some of the more zealous opponents of the administration proposed, that not only the militia, but the revenue also, of the New England States, should be retained at home for their own defence.

a. See p. 307.

1. *What is said of the opposition of the federal party to the war, and of the complaints of many of the New England people?*

11. [2]Finally, in December, 1814, a convention of delegates appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, and a partial representation from Vermont and New Hampshire, assembled at Hartford, for the purpose of considering the grievances of which the people complained, and for devising some measures for their redress.

2. *What convention was assembled at Hartford, and for what purpose?*

12. [3]The convention was denounced in the severest terms, by the friends of the administration, who branded it with odium, as giving encouragement to the enemy, and as being treasonable to the general government. [4]The proceedings of the convention, however, were not as objectionable as many anticipated; its most important measure being the recommendation of several amendments to the constitution, and a statement of grievances, many of which were real, but which necessarily arose out of a state of war. [5]As the news of peace arrived soon after the adjournment of the convention, the causes of disquiet were removed; but party feelings had become deeply imbittered, and, to this day, the words, "Hartford Convention," are, with many, a term of reproach.

3. *How was the convention regarded by the friends of the administration?*

4. *What is said of the proceedings of the convention?*

5. *Of party feelings?*

13. [6]In the month of August, 1814, commissioners from Great Britain and the United States assembled at Ghent,

6. *What is said of the treaty of peace?*

* *Ghent*, the capital of E. Flanders, in Belgium, is on the River Scheldt, about thirty miles N.W. from Brussels. Numerous canals divide the city into about thirty islands

in Flanders, where a treaty of peace was concluded, and signed on the 24th of December following. [1]Upon the subjects for which the war had been professedly declared,—the encroachments upon American commerce, and the impressment of American seamen under the pretext of their being British subjects, the treaty, thus concluded, was silent. The causes of the former, however, had been mostly removed by the termination of the European war; and Great Britain had virtually relinquished her pretensions to the latter.

1814. Dec. 24.

1. *Of the causes which led to the war?*

WAR WITH ALGIERS.—1. [2]Scarcely had the war with England closed, when it became necessary for the United States to commence another, for the protection of American commerce and seamen against Algerine piracies. [3]From the time of the treaty with Algiers, in 1795, up to 1812, peace had been preserved to the United States by the payment of an annual tribute. [4]In July of the latter year, the dey, believing that the war with England would render the United States unable to protect their commerce in the Mediterranean, extorted from the American consul, Mr. Lear, a large sum of money, as the purchase of his freedom, and the freedom of American citizens then in Algiers, and then commenced a piratical warfare against all American vessels that fell in the way of his cruisers. The crews of the vessels taken were condemned to slavery.

2. *What led to a war with Algiers?*

3. *How had peace been preserved?*

4. *What advantage had the Dey taken on account of the war with England?*

2. [5]In May, 1815, a squadron under Commodore Decatur sailed for the Mediterranean, where the naval force of the dey was cruising for American vessels. On the 17th of June, Decatur fell in with the frigate of the admiral of the Algerine squadron, of forty-six guns, and after a running fight of twenty minutes, captured her, killing th ty, among whom was the admiral, and taking more than 400 prisoners. Two days later, he captured a frigate of twenty-two guns and 180 men, after which he proceeded[a] with his squadron to the bay of Algiers. Here a treaty[b] was dictated to the dey, who found himself under the humiliating necessity of releasing the American prisoners in his possession; and of relinquishing all future claims to tribute from the United States.

1815.

5. *What was the success of Com. Decatur?*

a. Arrived June 28.

b. Treaty concluded June 30.

1815. 3. [1]Decatur then proceeded to Tunis, and thence to Tripoli, and from both of these powers demanded and obtained the payment of large sums of money, for violations of neutrality during the recent war with England. [2]The exhibition of a powerful force, and the prompt manner in which justice was demanded and enforced from the Barbary powers, not only gave future security to American commerce in the Mediterranean, but increased the reputation of the American navy, and elevated the national character in the eyes of Europe.

July, Aug. 1. *What did Decatur obtain from Tunis and Tripoli?*

2. *What was the effect of these proceedings of Decatur?*

1816. 4. [3]The charter of the former national bank having expired in 1811, early in 1816 a second national bank, called the Bank of the United States, was incorporated,[a] with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars, and a charter to continue in force twenty years. [4]In December, Indiana* became an independent state, and was admitted into the Union. In the election held in the autumn of 1816, James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen president, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, vice-president of the United States.

3. *What is said of a national bank?*

a. April 10. Commenced operations Jan. 1, 1817.

4. *What other events are related as occurring in 1816?*

CHAPTER V.

What period is embraced in Monroe's administration?

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4, 1817, TO MARCH 4, 1825.

1817. 1. [5]During the war, the prices of commodities had been high; but at its close they fell to their ordinary level, causing serious pecuniary embarrassments to a large class of speculators and traders, and likewise to all who had relied upon the continuance of high prices to furnish means for the payment of their debts. While foreign goods were attainable only in small quantities and at high prices, numerous manufacturing establishments had sprung up; but at the close of the war the

5. *What causes produced embarrassments in trade and commerce?*

* INDIANA, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 36,000 square miles. The southeastern part of the state, bordering on the Ohio, is hilly, but the southwestern is level, and is covered with a heavy growth of timber. N.W. of the Wabash the country is generally level, but near Lake Michigan are numerous sand hills, some of which are bare, and others covered with a growth of pine. The prairie lands on the Wabash and other streams have a deep and rich soil. Indiana was first settled at Vincennes, by the French, about the year 1730.

country was inundated with foreign goods, mostly of British manufacture, and the ruin of most of the rival establishments in the United States was the consequence. **1817.**

2. [1]But although the return of peace occasioned these serious embarrassments to the mercantile interests, it at once gave a new impulse to agriculture. Thousands of citizens, whose fortunes had been reduced by the war, sought to improve them where lands were cheaper and more fertile than on the Atlantic coast; the numerous emigrants who flocked to the American shores, likewise sought a refuge in the unsettled regions of the West; and so rapid was the increase of population, that within ten years from the peace with England, six new states had grown up in the recent wilderness.

1. *What is said of agriculture and the settlement of the country?*

3. [2]In December, 1817, the Mississippi Territory[a] was divided, and the western portion of it admitted into the Union, as the State of Mississippi.* The eastern portion was formed into a territorial government, and called Alabama Territory. During the same month, a piratical establishment that had been formed on Amelia Island,† by persons claiming to be acting under the authority of some of the republics of South America, for the purpose of liberating the Floridas from the dominion of Spain, was broken up by the United States. A similar establishment at Galveston,‡ on the coast of Texas, was likewise suppressed.

a. See p. 296.

2. *What events occurred in December, 1817?*

4. [3]In the latter part of 1817, the Seminole Indians, and a few of the Creeks, commenced depredations on the frontiers of Georgia and Alabama. General Gaines was first sent out to reduce the Indians; but his force being insufficient, General Jackson was ordered[b] to take the field, and to call on the governors of the adjacent states for such additional forces as he might deem requisite.

3. *What account is given of difficulties with the Creeks and Seminoles in 1817?*

b. Dec. 28.

---

* MISSISSIPPI, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 48,000 square miles. The region bordering on the Gulf of Mexico is mostly a sandy, level pine forest. Farther north the soil is rich, the country more elevated, and the climate generally healthy. The margin of the Mississippi River consists of inundated swamps covered with a large growth of timber. The first settlement in the state was formed at Natches by the French, in 1716.

† *Amelia Island* is at the northeastern extremity of the coast of Florida.

‡ *Galveston* is an island on which is a town of the same name, lying at the mouth of Galveston Bay, seventy-five miles S.W. from the mouth of the Sabine River.

1818. 5. [1]General Jackson, however, instead of calling on the governors, addressed a circular to the patriots of West Tennessee; one thousand of whom immediately joined him. At the head of his troops, he then marched into the Indian territory, which he overran without opposition. Deeming it necessary to enter Florida for the subjugation of the Seminoles, he marched upon St. Mark's,[a] a feeble Spanish post, of which he took possession, removing the Spanish authorities and troops to Pensacola. A Scotchman and an Englishman, Arbuthnot and Ambrister, having fallen into his hands, were accused of inciting the Indians to hostilities, tried by a court-martial, and executed.

1. *Give an account of the course adopted by Gen. Jackson, his invasion of the Indian territory, capture of St. Mark's, and the fate of Arbuthnot, and Ambrister.*

a. N. p. 24.

6. [2]He afterwards seized[b] Pensacola itself; and, having reduced[c] the fortress of the Barancas,* sent the Spanish authorities and troops to Havanna. [3]The proceedings of General Jackson, in the prosecution of this war, have been the subject of much animadversion. The subject was extensively debated in congress, during the session of 1818–19, but the conduct of the general met the approbation of the president; and a resolution of censure, in the house, was rejected by a large majority.

b. Mar. 24.

c. May 27.

2. *Of the capture of Pensacola.*

3. *How were the proceedings of Gen. Jackson regarded?*

1819. 7. [4]In February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, by which Spain ceded to the United States East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. After a vexatious delay, the treaty was finally ratified by the king of Spain in October, 1820. [5]In 1819, the southern portion of Missouri territory was formed into a territorial government, by the name of Arkansas; and in December of the same year, Alabama† territory was formed into a state, and admitted into the Union.

4. *Give an account of the cession of Florida to the United States.*

5. *What territorial and state governments were formed in 1819 and 1820?*

1820. Early in 1820, the province of Maine,‡ which had been connected with Massachusetts since 1652, was separated from it, and became an independent state.

---

* This fortress is on the W. side of the entrance into Pensacola Bay, opposite Santa Rosa Island, and eight miles S.W. from Pensacola.

† ALABAMA, one of the Southern States, contains an area of about 50,000 square miles. The southern part of the state which borders on the Gulf of Mexico is low and level, sandy and barren; the middle portions of the state are somewhat hilly, interspersed with fertile prairies; the north is broken and somewhat mountainous. Through out a large part of the state the soil is excellent.

‡ For a description of *Maine*, see Note, p. 81.

8. [1]Missouri had previously applied for admission. A proposition in congress, to prohibit the introduction of slavery into the new state, arrayed the South against the North, the slaveholding against the non-slaveholding states, and the whole subject of slavery became the exciting topic of debate throughout the Union. [2]The Missouri question was finally settled by a compromise, which tolerated slavery in Missouri, but otherwise prohibited it in all the territory of the United States north and west of the northern limits of Arkansas; and in August, 1821, Missouri* became the twenty-fourth state in the Union. **1820.**

1. *What is said of the debate on the Missouri question?*

1821.

2. *How was the question settled?*

9. [3]At the expiration of Mr. Monroe's term of office, he was re-elected with great unanimity. Mr. Tompkins was again elected vice-president. [4]An alarming system of piracy having grown up in the West Indies, during the year 1822 a small naval force was sent there, which captured and destroyed upwards of twenty piratical vessels, on the coast of Cuba. In the following year, Commodore Porter, with a larger force, completely broke up the retreats of the pirates in those seas; but many of them sought other hiding places, whence, at an after period, they renewed their depredations.

3. *What is said of the presidential election of 1820?*

4. *Of piracies in the West Indies?*

1822.

1823.

10. [5]The summer of 1824 was distinguished by the arrival of the venerable Lafayette, who, at the age of nearly seventy, and after the lapse of almost half a century from the period of his military career, came to revisit the country of whose freedom and happiness he had been one of the most honored and beloved founders. His reception[a] at New York, his tour through all the states of the Union, embracing a journey of more than five thousand miles, and his final departure[b] from Washington, in an American frigate prepared for his accommodation, were all signalized by every token of

1824.

5. *Give an account of the visit of Lafayette to the United States.*

a. Aug. 1824

b. Sept. 1825

* MISSOURI, one of the Western States, contains an area of about 64,000 square miles. This state presents a great variety of surface and of soil. The southeastern part of the state has a very extensive tract of low, marshy country, abounding in lakes, and liable to inundations. The hilly country, N. and W. of this, and south of the Missouri River, is mostly a barren region, but celebrated for its numerous mineral treasures, particularly those of lead and of iron. In the interior and western portions of the state, barren and fertile tracts of hill and prairie land, with heavy forests and numerous rivers, present a diversified and beautiful landscape. The country N. of the Missouri is delightfully rolling, highly fertile, and has been emphatically styled "the garden of the West."

1825. respect that could be devised for doing honor to the "Nation's Guest."

1. What is said of the presidential election of 1824?

11. [1]The election of a successor to Mr. Monroe was attended with more than usual excitement, owing to the number of candidates in the field. Four were presented for the suffrages of the people: Adams in the East, Crawford in the South, Jackson and Clay in the West. As no candidate received a majority of the electoral votes, the choice of president devolved upon the house of representatives, which decided in favor of Mr. Adams. Mr. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been chosen vice-president, by the people.

CHAPTER VI.

What period is embraced in Adams's administration?

J. Q. ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1825, TO MARCH 4, 1829.

2. What was the state of the country during that period?

1. [2]During the period of Mr. Adams's administration, peace was preserved with foreign nations; domestic quiet prevailed; the country rapidly increased in population and wealth; and, like every era of peace and prosperity, few events of national importance occurred, requiring a recital on the page of history.

3. What is said of the controversy with Georgia?

2. [3]A controversy between the national government and the state of Georgia, in relation to certain lands held by the Creek nation, at one time occasioned some anxiety, but was finally settled without disturbing the peace of the Union. After several attempts on the part of Georgia, to obtain possession of the Creek territory, in accordance with treaties made with portions of the tribe, the national government purchased the residue of the lands for the benefit of Georgia, which settled the controversy.

1826. *4. What events occurred on the 4th of July, 1826?*

5. What remarks are

3. [4]On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of American independence, occurred the deaths of the two venerable ex-presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. [5]Both had been among the first to resist the high-handed measures of Great Britain; both were members of the early colonial congresses; the former

nominated Washington as the commander-in-chief of the army, and the latter drew up the celebrated Declaration of Independence. **1826.**

What is said upon the characters of the two ex-presidents?

4. Each had served his country in its highest station; and although one was at the head of the federal, and the other of the anti-federal party, both were equally sincere advocates of liberty, and each equally charitable towards the sentiments of the other. The peculiar circumstances of their death, added to their friendship while living, and the conspicuous and honorable parts which they acted in their country's history, would seem to render it due to their memories, that the early animosities, and now inappropriate distinctions of their respective parties, should be buried with them.

1828.

1. What is said of the election of 1828?

5. [1]The presidential election of 1828 was attended with an excitement and zeal in the respective parties, to which no former election had furnished a parallel. The opposing candidates were Mr. Adams and General Jackson. In the contest, which, from the first, was chiefly of a personal nature, not only the public acts, but even the private lives of both the aspirants were closely scanned, and every error, real or supposed, placed in a conspicuous view. [2]The result of the contest was the election of General Jackson, by a majority far greater than his most sanguine friends had anticipated. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was a second time chosen vice-president.

2. What was the result of the contest?

3. What is remarked of our presidential elections, as periods of political excitement?

6. [3]Our warmly contested presidential elections are often looked upon by foreigners, just arrived in the country, with much anxiety for the consequences. As the crisis of the election approaches, the excitement becomes intense; but, tempered by reason, it seldom rises beyond a war of words and feelings; and a scene of strife, which, in Europe, would shake a throne to its foundations, is viewed with little alarm in the American republic. A decision of the controversy at once allays the angry elements of discord, and the waves of party strife again sink back to their ordinary level, again to rise harmless, and again subside, at every new election.

1829.

CHAPTER VII.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1829, TO MARCH 4, 1837.

What period is embraced in Jackson's administration?

1. What is said in relation to frequent removals from office?

1. [1]THE first distinguishing feature in Jackson's administration, was the numerous removals from office, and the appointment of the political friends of the president to fill the vacancies thereby occasioned. This measure, in direct opposition to the policy of the previous administration, excited some surprise, and was violently assailed as an unworthy proscription for opinion's sake; but was defended by an appeal to the precedent afforded by Mr. Jefferson, who pursued a similar course, though to a much smaller extent.

1832.

2. What was the result of the attempt to recharter the national bank?

2. [2]Early in 1832, a bill was brought forward in congress for rechartering the United States Bank. After a long and animated debate, the bill passed both houses of congress, but was returned by the president, with his objections, and not being repassed by the constitutional majority of two-thirds, the bank ceased to be a national institution on the expiration of its charter in 1836.

3. What account is given of the war with the Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes?

3. [3]In the spring of 1832, a portion of the Sacs, Foxes, and Winnebagoes, in Wisconsin Territory, commenced hostilities, under the famous chief Black Hawk. After numerous skirmishes, most of the Indians were driven west of the Mississippi. Black Hawk surrendered himself a prisoner, and peace was concluded by a treaty,—the Indians relinquishing a large tract of their territory.

4. What is said of the tour of Black Hawk?

[4]Black Hawk and a few other chiefs, after having visited Washington, were taken through several other cities, on their way homeward, in order to convince them of the vast power and resources of their white neighbors.

5. How was the tariff of 1832 regarded at the South?

4. [5]A tariff bill, imposing additional duties on foreign goods, having passed congress during the session which terminated in the summer of 1832, caused, as on several previous occasions, great excitement in the southern portions of the Union.

6. What was declared by

[6]In South Carolina, where the excitement was the greatest, a state convention de

clared[a] that the tariff acts were unconstitutional, and therefore null and void; that the duties should not be paid; and that any attempt on the part of the general government to enforce the payment, would produce the withdrawal of South Carolina from the Union, and the establishment of an independent government. **1832**

a. Nov. 24. the convention of South Carolina?

5. [1]This novel doctrine of the right of a state to declare a law of congress unconstitutional and void, and to withdraw from the Union, was promptly met by a proclamation[b] of the president, in which he seriously warned the ultra advocates of "State rights" of the consequences that must ensue if they persisted in their course of treason to the government. He declared that, as chief magistrate of the Union, he could not, if he would, avoid the performance of his duty; that the laws must be executed; and that any opposition to their execution must be repelled; by force, if necessary.

1. How were these declarations met by the president?

b. Dec. 10

6. [2]The sentiments of a proclamation met with a cordial response from all the friends of the Union, and party feelings were for the time forgotten in the general determination to sustain the president in asserting the supremacy of the laws. [3]South Carolina receded from her hostile position, although she still boldly advanced her favorite doctrine of the supremacy of state rights, and, in the person of her distinguished senator, Mr. Calhoun, who had recently resigned the office of vice-president, asserted it even in the halls of congress. 1833.

2. How was the proclamation generally regarded?

3. What course did South Carolina still pursue?

7. [4]Fortunately for the public peace, this cause of discord and contention between the North and the South was in a great measure removed, by a "Compromise bill," introduced[c] by Mr. Clay, of Kentucky. This bill provided for a gradual reduction of duties until the year 1843, when they were to sink to the general level of twenty per cent. [5]On the 4th of March, 1833, General Jackson entered upon the second term of his presidency. Martin Van Buren, of New York, had been chosen vice-president.

4. How was the cause of discord removed?

c. Feb. 12. Became a law March 3.

5. What occurred in March, 1833

8. [6]In 1833, considerable excitement was occasioned on account of the removal, by the president, from the Bank of the United States, of the government funds deposited in that institution, and their transfer to certain state banks. [7]The opponents of the administration

6. What is said of the removal of the government funds from the Bank of the U. States?

1833. censured this measure as an unauthorized and dangerous assumption of power by the executive, and the want of confidence which soon arose in the moneyed institutions of the country, followed by the pecuniary distresses of 1836 and 1837, were charged upon the hostility of the president to the Bank of the United States. On the other hand, these distresses were charged to the management of the bank, which the president declared to have become "the scourge of the people."

7. Of the different views taken of this measure?

1. What mention is made of the Cherokee Indians, and of their condition?

9. [1]A few events concerning the Cherokees, require notice in this portion of our history. These Indians had long been involved in the same difficulties as those which had troubled their Creek neighbors. They were the most civilized of all the Indian tribes,—had an established government, a national legislature, and written laws. [2]During the administration of Mr. Adams, they were protected in their rights against the claims of the state of Georgia, but in the following administration, the legislature of Georgia extended the laws of the state over the Indian territory, annulling the laws which had been previously established, and among other things, declaring[a] that "no Indian or descendant of an Indian, residing within the Creek or Cherokee nations of Indians, should be deemed a competent witness or party to any suit in any court where a white man is a defendant."

2. What oppressive measures were taken in relation to them?

a. Dec. 20, 1829.

3. What is said of the decision of the supreme court, and of the course taken by the president?

10. [3]Although the supreme court of the United States declared the acts of the legislature of Georgia to be unconstitutional, yet the decision of that tribunal was disregarded, and the president of the United States informed the Cherokees that he "had no power to oppose the exercise of the sovereignty of any state over all who may be within its limits;" and he therefore advised them "to abide the issue of such new relations without any hope that he will interfere." Thus the remnant of the Cherokees, once a great and powerful people, were deprived of their national sovereignty, and delivered into the hands of their oppressors.

4. What further is said in relation to the Cherokees?

11. [4]Yet the Cherokees were still determined to remain in the land of their fathers. But at length, in 1835, a few of their chiefs were induced to sign a treaty for a sale of their lands, and a removal west of the

Mississippi. Although this treaty was opposed by a majority of the Cherokees, and the terms afterwards decided upon at Washington rejected by them, yet as they found arrayed against them the certain hostility of Georgia, and could expect no protection from the general government, they finally decided upon a removal; but it was not until towards the close of the year 1838 that the business of emigration was completed. **1835.**

12. [1]Near the close of the year 1835, the Seminole Indians of Florida commenced hostilities against the settlements of the whites in their vicinity. The immediate cause of the war was the attempt of the government to remove the Indians to lands west of the Mississippi, in accordance with the treaty of Payne's Landing,* executed[a] in 1832, which, however, the Indians denied to be justly binding upon them. [2]Micanopy, the king of the nation, was opposed to the removal; and Osceola, their most noted chief, said he "Wished to rest in the land of his fathers, and his children to sleep by his side."

1. *What is said of the Seminole war, and its cause?*

a. May 9.

2. *Of the sentiments of Micanopy and Osceola?*

13. [3]The proud bearing of Osceola, and his remonstrances against the proceedings of General Thompson, the government agent, displeased the latter, and he put the chieftain in irons. Dissembling his wrath, Osceola obtained his liberty, gave his confirmation to the treaty of removal, and, so perfect was his dissimulation, that he dissipated all the fears of the whites. So confident was General Thompson that the cattle and horses of the Indians would be brought in according to the terms of the treaty, that he even advertised them for sale in December, but the appointed days[b] passed, when it was discovered that the Indians were already commencing the work of slaughter and devastation.

3. *Of the treatment of Osceola, and of Indian treachery?*

b. Dec. 1, 15.

14. [4]At this time, General Clinch was stationed at Fort Drane,† in the interior of Florida. Being supposed to be in imminent danger from the Indians, and also in great want of supplies, Major Dade was despatched[c] from Fort Brooke, at the head of Tampa

4. *What is related of Major Dade and his detachment?*

c. Dec. 24.

* *Payne's Landing* is on the Ocklawaha River, a branch of the St. John's, about forty-five miles S.W. from St. Augustine. (See Map, next page.)

† *Fort Drane* is about seventy miles S.W. from St. Augustine. (See Map, next page)

1835. Bay, with upwards of one hundred men,[a] to his assistance. He had proceeded about half the distance, when he was suddenly attacked[b] by the enemy, and he and all but four of his men were killed; and these four horribly mangled, afterwards died of their wounds. One of them, supposed to be dead, was thrown into a heap of the slain, about which the Indians danced, in exultation of their victory.

a. 8 officers and 102 men.
b. Dec. 28.

15. [1]At the very time of Dade's massacre, Osceola, with a small band of warriors, was prowling in the vicinity of Fort King.* While General Thompson and a few friends were dining at a store only 250 yards from the fort, they were surprised by a sudden discharge of musketry, and five out of nine were killed.[c] The body of General Thompson was found pierced by fifteen bullets. Osceola and his party rushed in, scalped the dead, and retreated before they could be fired upon by the garrison. The same band probably took part in the closing scene of Dade's massacre on the same day.

1. *Give an account of the death of General Thompson.*

c. Dec. 28.

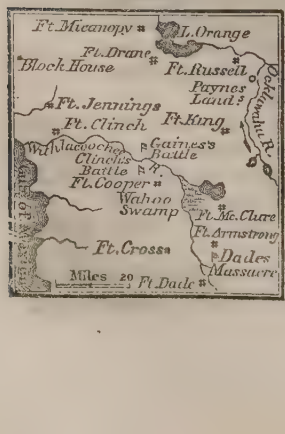
16. [2]Two days later, General Clinch engaged[d] the Indians on the banks of the Withlacoochee;† and in February of the following year, General Gaines was attacked[e] near the same place. [3]In May, several of the Creek towns and tribes joined the Seminoles in the war. Murders and devastations were frequent,—the Indians obtained possession of many of the southern mail routes in Georgia and Alabama, attacked steamboats, destroyed stages, burned several towns, and compelled thousands of the whites who had settled in their territory, to flee for their lives. [4]A strong force, however, joined by many friendly Indians, being sent against them, and several of the hostile chiefs having been taken, the Creeks submitted;

d. Dec. 31.
2. *What is said of Generals Clinch and Gaines?*

1836.

e. Feb. 29.
3. *What account is given of the part which the Creeks took in this war?*

SEAT OF THE SEMINOLE WAR IN FLORIDA.



* *Fort King* is twenty miles S.W. from Payne's Landing, and sixty-five miles from St. Augustine. (See Map.)

† *Withlacoochee River* enters the Gulf of Mexico, on the west coast of Florida, about ninety five miles N. from Tampa Bay. (See Map.)

and during the summer several thousands of them were transported west of the Mississippi. **1836.**

4. *What is said of the submission of the Creeks?*

17. [1]In October, Governor Call took command of the forces in Florida, and with nearly 2000 men marched into the interior. At the Wahoo swamp, a short distance from Dade's battle-ground, 550 of his troops encountered a greater number of the enemy, who, after a fierce contest of half an hour, were dispersed, leaving twenty-five of their number dead on the field. In a second engagement, the whites lost nine men killed and sixteen wounded. In none of the battles could the actual loss of the Indians be ascertained, as it is their usual practice to carry off their dead.

1. *What is related of Governor Call's expedition into the interior?*

CHAPTER VIII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4, 1837, TO MARCH 4, 1841.

What period is embraced in Van Buren's administration?

1. [2]In the election of 1836, Martin Van Buren, of New York, had been chosen president of the United States, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, vice-president. As Mr. Van Buren was a prominent leader of the party which had secured the election of General Jackson, no change in the general policy of the government was anticipated. [3]Soon after the accession of Mr. Van Buren, the pecuniary and mercantile distresses of the country reached their crisis. 1837.

2. *What is said of the election of 1836, and of the anticipated policy of the government?*

2. During the months of March and April the failures in the city of New York alone amounted to nearly one hundred millions of dollars. The great extent of the business operations of the country at that time, and their intimate connection with each other, extended the evil throughout all the channels of trade; causing, in the first place, a general failure of the mercantile interests,—affecting, through them, the business of the mechanic and the farmer, nor stopping until it had reduced the wages of the humblest day laborer.

3 *Of the condition of the country—the extensive failures at that period, and of the consequences?*

4. *What requests were made of the president by a committee from New York?*

3 [4]Early in May, a large and respectable committee

1837. from the city of New York, solicited of the president his intervention for such relief as might be within his power; requesting the rescinding of the "specie circular," a delay in enforcing the collection of the revenue duties, and the call of an extra session of congress at an early day, that some legislative remedies might be adopted for the alarming embarrassments of the country. [1]The "specie circular" was a treasury order which had been issued during the previous administration, the principal object of which was to require the payment of gold and silver, for the public lands, in place of bank bills, or other evidences of money.

1. *What was the specie circular?*

4. [2]To the second request the president acceded, but declined to repeal the specie circular, or to call an extra session of Congress. [3]Two days after the decision of the president became known, all the banks in the city of New York suspended specie payments, and this was followed by a similar suspension on the part of the banks throughout the whole country. [4]The people were not the only sufferers by this measure; for as the deposit banks had likewise ceased to redeem their notes in specie, the government itself was embarrassed, and was unable to discharge its own obligations.

2. *What course was taken by the president?* 3. *By what events was the decision of the president followed?*

4. *Who were sufferers by the suspension?*

5. [5]The accumulated evils which now pressed upon the country, induced the president to call an extra session of congress, which he had before declined doing. Congress met early in September, and during a session of forty days passed several bills, designed for the relief of the government; the most important of which was a bill authorizing the issue of treasury notes, not exceeding in amount ten millions of dollars. [6]A bill called the *Sub-treasury* bill[a] designed for the safe keeping of the public funds, and intended as the prominent measure of the session, passed the senate; but in the house of representatives it was laid upon the table, after a long and animated discussion.

5. *What is said of the call of congress, and of the bills passed during the session?*

6. *What is said of the sub-treasury bill?*

a. The legal term is Independent Treasury Bill.

6. [7]The Seminole war still continued in Florida, occasioning great expense to the nation, while the sickly climate of a country abounding in swamps and marshes, proved, to the whites, a foe far more terrible than the Indians themselves. After several encounters in the early part of the season, in March a num-

7. *What is said of the continuance of the Seminole war, and of the treaty concluded by General Jesup?*

ber of chiefs came to the camp of General Jessup, and signed[a] a treaty, purporting that hostilities should immediately cease, and that all the Seminoles should remove beyond the Mississippi. **1837.**

a. At Fort Dade, March 6

7. [1]For a time the war appeared to be at an end, but the treaty was soon broken through the influence of Osceola. During the summer, several chiefs were captured, and a few surrendered voluntarily. In October, Osceola and several principal chiefs, with about seventy warriors, who had come to the American camp under protection of a flag, were seized[b] and confined by the orders of General Jessup.

1. *What is said of the violation of the treaty, and of the events that followed during the summer and fall?*

b. At Fort Peyton, October 21.

8. [2]This was the most severe blow the Seminoles had received during the war. By many, the conduct of General Jessup, in seizing Osceola, has been severely censured; but the excuse offered was, that the Indians had grossly deceived him on a former occasion, that Osceola was treacherous, that no blood was shed by the act, and that a very important service was thereby performed. [3]Osceola was subsequently placed in confinement at Fort Moultrie,[c] where he died of a fever in January of the following year.

2. *How has the capture of Osceola and his warriors been regarded?*

3. *What was the subsequent fate of Osceola?*

c. In South Carolina.

9. [4]On the 1st of December, the army in Florida, stationed at the different posts, was estimated to number nearly nine thousand men. Yet against this numerous force the Indians still held out with hopes of effectual resistance. On the 25th of the month, Colonel Taylor, at the head of about six hundred men, encountered the Indians on the northern side of the Big Water Lake,* in the southern part of the peninsula. After a severe battle of more than an hour, in which twenty-eight of the whites were killed and one hundred and eleven wounded, the enemy was forced to retire, but with what loss is unknown.

4. *What is said of the continuance of the war, and of the battle near Big Water Lake?*

10. [5]During the years 1837 and 1838, frequent encounters were had with the Indians, although but little appeared to be accomplished towards bringing the war to a close. [6]In 1839, General Macomb, who had received[d] the chief command of the army, induced a number of the chiefs in the southern part of the penin-

1838.

5. *What occurred in 1838?*

1839.

d. Ap—

6. *What is said of th*

* The Indian name is Kee-cho-bee, or O-kee-cho-bee. On some maps it is call Lake Macaco.

1839. sula to sign[a] a treaty of peace. The Indians were to remain in the country until they could be assured of the prosperous condition of their friends who had emigrated. [1]The general then left Florida. But numerous murders, which occurred immediately after the treaty, destroyed all confidence in its utility; and in June the government of the territory offered a reward of two hundred dollars for every Indian killed or taken.

treaty concluded by General Macomb?

a. May.

What soon followed this treaty?

1840. 11. [2]The year 1840 passed with numerous murders by the Indians, and frequent contests between small parties of them and the whites. In December, Colonel Harney, who, by his numerous exploits in Indian warfare, had become the terror of the Seminoles, penetrated into the extensive everglades in Southern Florida, long supposed to be the head-quarters of the enemy, where he succeeded in capturing a band of forty, nine of whom he caused to be executed for some previous massacre in which they were supposed to be engaged.

2. *What is said of the events of 1840, and of the expedition of Col. Harney?*

12. [3]During the session of congress which terminated in the summer of 1840, the Sub-treasury bill, which had been rejected at the extra session of 1837, and which was regarded as the great financial measure of Mr. Van Buren's administration, passed[b] both houses of congress and became a law.

3. *What further is said of the sub-treasury bill?*

b. Jan. 23 and June 30.

13. [4]The presidential election of 1840 was probably the most exciting election that had ever occurred in the United States. The trying scenes of financial embarrassment through which the country was then passing, together with what was called "*the experiments* of the government upon the currency," furnished the opponents of the administration with abundant exciting topics for popular party harangues, in the approaching political contest. During several months preceding the election, the whole country was one great arena of political debate, and in the numerous assemblages of the people the ablest men of both parties engaged freely in the discussion.

4. *Give an account of the president at election of 1840.*

14. [5]The whigs concentrated their whole strength upon William Henry Harrison, the "Hero of the Thames, and of Tippecanoe," while the administration party united with equal ardor in favor of Mr. Van

5. *Who were the respective candidates, and what was the result of the election?*

Buren. The result was a signal defeat of the latter, and a success of the whigs by a majority altogether unexpected by them. General Harrison received two hundred and thirty-four of the electoral votes, while Mr. Van Buren received only sixty. John Tyler of Virginia was elected vice-president. 1840.

CHAPTER IX.

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. [1]On the 4th of March, 1841, William Henry Harrison, in the presence of an unusually large assemblage of the people convened at the capitol in Washington, took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the office of president of the United States. 1841.

1. What is said of the inauguration of Gen. Harrison?

2. [2]His inaugural address was a plain, but able and comprehensive document, expressing his approval of the leading principles of the party which had selected him for the highest office in the gift of the people, and pledging his best endeavors to administer the government according to the constitution, as understood by its framers and early administrators.

2. Of his inaugural address?

3. [3]In conclusion, the president expressed his profound reverence for the Christian religion, and his thorough conviction that sound morals, religious liberty, and a just sense of religious responsibility, are essentially connected with all true and lasting happiness. "Let us unite then," said he, "in commending every interest of our beloved country to that good Being who has blessed us by the gifts of civil and religious freedom; who watched over and prospered the labors of our fathers; and who has hitherto preserved to us institutions far exceeding in excellence those of any other people."

3. What sentiments were expressed in the conclusion of the address?

4. [4]The senate was immediately convened for the purpose of receiving the usual nominations, and a new and able cabinet was formed, at the head of which was placed Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, as secretary

4. What were the first acts of the new administration?

1841. of state. [1]But while every thing promised an administration honorable to the executive and useful to the country, rumors of the sudden illness of the president spread through the land; and scarcely had they reached the limits of the Union, when they were followed by the sad intelligence of his death.

1. *What events soon followed?*

2. *What concluding remarks are made?*

5. [2]Just one month from the day of his inauguration, the aged president was a pallid corpse in the national mansion. The event was calculated to make a deep impression upon the people, who had witnessed and taken part in the recent scenes of excitement which had preceded the elevation of one of their number to be the nation's ruler. The hand of Almighty power was acknowledged in the bereavement, teaching that "the Lord alone ruleth."

CHAPTER X.

TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION,

EXTENDING FROM APRIL 4, 1841, TO MARCH 4, 1845.

What period is embraced in Tyler's administration?

3. *Give an account of the extra session that had been called by Harrison.*

1. [3]On the death of General Harrison, Mr. Tyler, the vice-president, became the acting president of the United States. During an extra session[a] of congress which had been called by General Harrison, several important measures of exciting interest to the country were brought forward. The sub-treasury bill was repealed; a general bankrupt law was passed; and two separate bills, chartering a bank of the United States, were rejected[b] by the executive veto. The course pursued by the president caused him to be denounced generally, by the whig party, which had elected him to office, and occasioned the resignation of his entire cabinet, with one exception.[c]

a. From May 31, to Sept. 13, 1841.

b. Aug. 16, and Sept. 9.

c. Mr. Webster.

1842.

4. *What events occurred in 1842?*

2. [4]In 1842, an important treaty, adjusting the dispute in relation to the northeastern boundary of the United States, was negotiated[d] at Washington, between Mr. Webster, on the part of the United States, and Lord Ashburton on the part of Great Britain. The same year was signalized by the commencement of

d. July. Ratified by U. S. Aug. 20. By G. B. Oct. 14.

domestic difficulties in Rhode Island, which at one time threatened serious consequences. **1842.**

3. [1]A movement having been made to set aside the ancient charter under which the government of the colony and state had so long been administered,[a] parties were formed with respect to the proper mode of adopting a new constitution. The "suffrage party," having formed and adopted a constitution, in a manner declared by their opponents to be in violation of law, chose[b] Thomas W. Dorr governor, and elected a legislature. About the same time the "law and order party," as it was called, chose Samuel W. King governor. In May, 1843, both parties [c]met and organized their respective governments.

1. *Give an account of the Commencement of the difficulties in Rhode Island.*

a. Since 1663. See p. 115.

1843.

b. April 18.

c. May 3, 4.

4. [2]The adherents of the "law and order party" then took active measures to put down what they denominated the rebellion. Great commotion ensued, and several arrests were made. Dorr left the state, but soon returning,[d] a bloody struggle appeared inevitable; but his associates finally dispersed, on the appearance of the government forces, and Dorr, to avoid arrest, fled from the state.

2. *What violent measures followed?*

d. May 16

5. [3]In June, however, considerable numbers of the "suffrage party" made their appearance[e] under arms, and were joined[f] by Dorr, but a body of troops being sent against them, they dispersed without any effectual resistance. [4]Dorr again fled, but, returning after a few months, was arrested, tried[g] for treason, convicted, and sentenced to be imprisoned during life. In the mean time a constitution for the state had been adopted according to the prescribed forms of law. In June, 1845, Dorr was released, although he had refused to accept a pardon on condition of taking the oath of allegiance to the state government.

e. At Chepachet.

f. June 25.

3. *What is said of the second rising, and the dispersion of the suffrage party?*

1844.

g. June.

4. *What was the fate of Dorr?*

6. [5]During the last year of Mr. Tyler's administration, considerable excitement prevailed on the subject of the annexation of Texas to the American Union, a measure first proposed by the government of the former country. [6]Texas, formerly a province of Mexico, but settled mostly by emigrants from the United States, had previously withdrawn from the Mexican Republic,

5. *What is said of the last year of Tyler's administration?*

6. *Of the history of Texas?*

1844. and by force of arms had nobly sustained her independence, although unacknowledged by Mexico.

1. Of the opposition to annexation, and the arguments against the measure?

7. [1]The proposition for annexation to the United States was strongly resisted at the North, and by the whig party generally throughout the Union. The impolicy of extending our limits by accessions of foreign territory; the danger of a war with Mexico; the encouragement given to slavery by the admission of an additional slave state; and the increase of power that the South and southern institutions would thereby gain in the national councils, were urged against the measure.

2. April 12.

1845.

2. How did the American government dispose of the measure?

3. What bills passed congress?

4. What is said of the election of 1844?

March 4.

8. [2]A treaty of annexation, signed[a] by the president, was rejected by congress, but early in the following year a bill was passed, authorizing the president, under certain restrictions, to negotiate with Texas the terms of annexation. [3]During the same sessions of congress bills were passed providing for the admission of Iowa and Florida, as states, into the Union. [4]The opposing candidates in the election of 1844 were Mr. Clay of Kentucky and James K. Polk of Tennessee. The contest resulted in the choice of the latter, who entered on the duties of his office on the 4th of March of the following year.

CHAPTER XI.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4, 1845 TO MARCH 4, 1849.

WAR WITH MEXICO.

What period is embraced in Polk's administration, and by what important event is it distinguished?

5. What occurred soon after Mr. Polk had taken his seat?

6. What is said of the views and declarations of Mexico?

1. [5]SCARCELY had Mr. Polk taken his seat as president of the United States, when decided indications of a rupture with Mexico became apparent. [6]Mexico had long viewed the conduct of the American government, in relation to the acquisition of Texas, with exceeding jealousy and distrust: still claiming

that country as a part of her own territory, she had declared that she would regard annexation as a hostile act, and that she was resolved to declare war as soon as she received intimation of the completion of the project. [1]In accordance with this policy, immediately after the resolution of annexation had passed the American Congress, and received the sanction of the President, Mr. Almonte,[a] the Mexican Minister at Washington, protesting against the measure as an act of warlike aggression, which he declared Mexico would resist with all the means in her power, demanded his passports and returned home. **1845.**

1. *What was done by the Mexican Minister Almonte?*

a. Pronounced Al-monta.

2. [2]On the fourth of July following, Texas assented to the terms of the resolution of annexation, and two days later, fearing that Mexico would carry her threats of war into execution, requested the President of the United States to occupy the ports of Texas, and send an army to the defence of her territory. [3]Accordingly, an American squadron was sent into the Gulf of Mexico, and General Taylor, then in command at Camp Jessup,* was ordered by the American government to move with such of the regular forces as could be gathered from the western posts, to the southern frontier of Texas, to act as circumstances might require. [4]By the advice of the Texan authorities he was induced to select for the concentration of his troops the post of Corpus Christi,† a Texan settlement on the bay of the same name, where, by the beginning of August, 1845, he had taken his position, and at which place he had assembled, in the November following, an army of little more than four thousand men.

2. *What was done by Texas?*

3. *By the American Government?*

4. *What is said of the movements of General Taylor?*

1846.

3. [5]On the 13th of January, 1846, when it was believed that the Mexicans were assembling troops on their northern frontiers with the avowed object of reconquering Texas, and when such information had been received from Mexico as rendered it probable, if not certain, that she would refuse to receive the

5. *Circumstances that led to the executive order of 13th January, 1846, and the consequent movements of General Taylor?*

* *Camp Jessup* is in the western part of Louisiana, a few miles southwest from Natchitoches, (Natch-i-tosh.)

† *Corpus Christi* is at the mouth of the Nueces River, on the western shore of Corpus Christi Bay, a branch of the Aranzas Bay, about 100 miles from the Rio Grande. (See Map *Cor.* p. 351.)

1846. envoy[a] whom the United States had sent to negotiate a settlement of the difficulties between the two countries, the American president ordered General Taylor to advance his forces to the Rio Grande,* the most southern and western limits of Texas, as claimed by herself: on the 8th of March following the advance column of the army, under General Twiggs, was put in motion for that purpose, and on the 28th of the same month General Taylor, after having established a depôt at Point Isabel,† twenty-one miles in his rear, took his position on the northern bank of the Rio Grande, where he hastily erected a fortress, called Fort Brown, within cannon shot of Matamoras.‡

a. Mr. Slidell.

1. *What is said of the notice given by General Ampudia, and the commencement of actual hostilities?*

4. [1]On the 26th of April, the Mexican general, Ampudia, gave notice to General Taylor that he considered hostilities commenced, and should prosecute them; and on the same day an American dragoon party of sixty-three men, under command of Captain Thornton, was attacked on the east side of the Rio Grande, thirty miles above Matamoras, and after the loss of sixteen men in killed and wounded, was compelled to surrender. This was the commencement of actual hostilities—the first blood shed in the war.

2. *Of the farther movements of the enemy—General Taylor's march, and the battle of Palo Alto?*

5. [2]The movements of the enemy, who had crossed the river above Matamoras, seeming to be directed towards an attack on Point Isabel, for the purpose of cutting off the Americans from their supplies, on the first of May General Taylor marched to the relief of that place, with his principal force, leaving a small command in defence of Fort Brown. After having garrisoned the depôt, on the 7th of May General Taylor set out on his return. At noon of the next day the Mexican army, numbering about six thousand men, with seven pieces of artillery, was discovered near *Palo Alto*, drawn up in battle array across the prairie through which the advance led. The Americans, al-

* The *Rio Grande*, (Ree-o-Grahn-dā,) or Rio del Norte, (Ree-o-del-Nor-tā), meaning *Great River*, or *River of the North*, rises in the Rocky Mountains north of Santa Fe, and flowing southeast, a distance of nearly 1800 miles, enters the Gulf of Mexico below Matamoras. (See Map.)

† *Point Isabel* is 21 miles N. E. of Matamoras, near the Gulf. The entrance to the *Lagoon*, on the shore of which the village stands, is called *Brazos Santiago*.

‡ *Matamoras* is about 20 miles from the mouth of the Rio Grande, by the windings of the stream. (See map *m*.)

though numbering but twenty-three hundred, advanced to the attack, and after an action of about five hours, which was sustained mostly by the artillery, drove the enemy from their position, and encamped upon the field of battle. The Mexican loss was about one hundred killed,—that of the Americans but four killed and forty wounded, but among those mortally wounded was the lamented Major Ringgold, of the artillery. **1846.**

6. [1]At two o'clock in the afternoon of the next day the American army again advanced, and after a march of two hours came in sight of the enemy, who had taken up a strong position near a place called *Resaca de la Palma*, three miles from Fort Brown, on the borders of a ravine which crossed the road. The action was commenced on both sides by the artillery, but the Mexican guns, managed by General La Vega, were better served than on the former occasion, and their effect soon began to be severely felt. An order to dislodge them was gallantly executed by Captain May, at the head of a squadron of dragoons, which, charging through a storm of grape shot, broke the ranks of the enemy, killed or dispersed the Mexican artillerymen, and took General La Vega prisoner. The charge was supported by the infantry—the whole Mexican line was routed, and the enemy fled in confusion, abandoning his guns and a large quantity of ammunition; and when night closed over the scene, not a Mexican soldier was to be found east of the Rio Grande. [2]On the day following the battle the American army took up its former position at Fort Brown, which had sustained, with little loss, an almost uninterrupted bombardment of seven days from the Mexican batteries in Matamoras.

1. *Give an account of the battle of Resaca de la Palma.*

2. *What is said of Fort Brown?*

7. [3]The news of the capture of Captain Thornton's party produced the greatest excitement throughout the Union; it was not doubted that Mexico would receive a severe chastisement; and a war spirit, unknown before to exist, heralded, in anticipation, a series of victories and conquests, terminating only in the "Halls of the Montezumas."* [4]The President, in a message

3. *Of the effect produced throughout the Union by the news of the capture of Thornton's party?*

4. *What was done by the American government?*

* The expression, "*Halls of the Montezumas*," is applied to the palace of the ancien Mexican kings, of the race of the Montezumas

1846. to Congress,[a] declared that Mexico had "invaded our territory, and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil," and Congress, adopting the spirit of the message, after declaring that war existed "by the act of the republic of Mexico," authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers, and placed ten millions of dollars at his disposal. [1]The news of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, arriving a few days later, fanned anew the flame of war; an anticipated march to the Mexican capital, in the ranks of a conquering army, seemed to be viewed but as a pleasant pastime, or a holiday excursion, and the call for volunteers was answered by the prompt tender of the services of more than three hundred thousand men.

a. May 11th, 1846

1. *What is said of the effect produced by the news of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma?*

2. *Of the preparations for the invasion of Mexico?*

8. [2]Most of the summer of 1847 was occupied by the government in preparations for the invasion of Mexico, from several quarters at the same time. A force of about 23,000 men was sent into the field, the largest portion of which, placed under the command of General Taylor, was to advance from Matamoras into the enemy's country in the direction of Monterey:* General Wool, at the head of about 2,900 men, concentrated at San Antonio de Bexar,† was to march upon Chihuahua;‡ while General Kearney, with a force of about 1,700, was to march from Fort Leavenworth,§ in Missouri, upon Santa Fe,‖ the capital of New Mexico.

3. *Of the forward movement of General Taylor, and his arrival at Monterey?*

9. [3]Owing to the difficulties experienced in transporting supplies, and the necessity of drawing them mostly from the United States, by way of New Orleans, General Taylor was unable to commence a forward movement until the latter part of August; and it was the 19th of September when he appeared before Monterey, with an army then numbering only

---

* For the situation of *Monterey* (Mon-ter-ā) see Map, letter *t*

† *San Antonio de Bexar*, the oldest Spanish town in Texas. (See Map. *Bexar.*)

‡ *Chihuahuah* (Chee-ooah-ooah) is nearly 700 miles N. W. from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

§ *Fort Leavenworth* is a military post of the United States on the west side of Missouri River. (See Map.)

‖ *Santa Fe*, the capital of the former Mexican state of New Mexico, is a town of about 4000 inhabitants, 15 miles east of the Rio Grande, and about 1100 miles N. W from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

MAP OF MEXICO;
INCLUDING ALSO
OREGON, TEXAS,
AND
CENTRAL AMERICA.
FOR THE YEAR 1845,
REFERENCES.
Z. State of Zacatecas.
P. State of San Luis Potosi.
G. State and City of Guanaxuato.
Q. State and City of Queretaro.
M. Matamoras.
T. Monterey.
South eastern Part of MEXICO; with CENTRAL-AMERICA
INDIAN TRIBES
NEW MEXICO
TEXAS
AUSTIN
MISSOURI TERRITORY
IOWA
WISCONSIN
Lake Superior
Mississippi R.
Missouri R.
Arkansas R.
Red R.
Sabine R.
Louisiana
Fort Gibson
Fort Leavenworth
Fort Hall
Salt Lake
Santa Fe
Colorado R.
Rio Grande
Monterey
St. Francisco
Columbia R.
Fort Vancouver
Willamette R.
Fort Walla Walla
Lewis R.
Columbia R.
Oregon
Frazer R.
Canada
Chihuahua
Coahuila
Durango
Zacatecas
Guadalaxara
Jalisco
Valladolid
Mexico
Puebla
Oaxaca
Vera Cruz
Tampico
Gulf of Mexico
Sonora
Sinaloa
Old California
Gulf of California
Merida
Yucatan
Campeche
Tabasco
Hermoso
Chiapas
Guatimala
Honduras
Comayagua
New Guatimala
St. Salvador
Nicaragua
Costa Rica
Gulf of Panama
Acapulco
CENTRAL AMERICA

1846. 6,600 men, after having garrisoned several towns on the Rio Grande, through which his route lay. [1]Monterey, the capital of New Leon, was at this time a city of about 15,000 inhabitants, strong in its natural defences, and garrisoned by seven thousand regular and about three thousand irregular troops, under the command of General Ampudia.

1. *Situation of Monterey at this time?*

2. *Give an account of the attack on Monterey,—continuation of the fight, and final surrender of the place.*

10. [2]On the morning of the 21st of September the attack was commenced, which was continued with great spirit during the day, but without any important results, except the carrying of several fortified heights in the rear of the town. The assault was continued during the 22d, when the Bishop's Palace, a strong position, and the only remaining fortified height in the rear of the town, was gallantly carried by the troops under General Worth. On the morning of the 23d the lower part of the city was stormed by General Quitman, the troops slowly advancing by digging through the stone walls of the houses. In this way the fight continued during the day, and by night the enemy were confined chiefly to the Citadel, and the Plaza, or central public square of the city. Early on the following morning the Mexican general submitted propositions which resulted in the surrender and evacuation of Monterey—and an armistice of eight weeks, or until instructions to renew hostilities should be received from either of the respective governments.

Sept. 22d.

Sept. 23d.

Sept. 24th.

3. *Of the farther advance of General Taylor, and captures by the Americans?*

11. [3]On the 13th of October the War Department ordered General Taylor to terminate the armistice and renew offensive operations; and about the middle of November, Saltillo,* the capital of the state of Coahuila, was occupied by the division of General Worth; and late in December General Patterson took possession of Victoria,† the capital of Tamaulipas; while, about the same time, the port of Tampico‡ was captured by Commodore Perry. [4]In the mean

4. *What is said of Generals Wool and Kearney?*

* *Saltillo* is about 70 miles S. W. from Monterey, in the southern part of the state of Coahuila.

† *Victoria* is at the western extremity of Tamaulipas, (Tam-aw-leé-pas) near the boundary of San Luis Potosi, and on the northern bank of the river Santander.

‡ *Tampico* (Tam-pé-co) is at the southeastern extremity of Tamaulipas, on the north side of the river Panuco. The *old town* of that name is on the south side of the river (See Map.)

time General Wool, after crossing the Rio Grande, finding his march to Chihuahua, in that direction, impeded by the lofty and unbroken ranges of the Sierra Madre, had turned south and joined General Worth at Saltillo, while General Kearney, somewhat earlier in the season, after having performed a march of nearly a thousand miles across the wilderness, had made himself master of Santa Fe, and all New Mexico, without opposition. **1846.**

1. Of General Kearney's march to California?

12. [1]After General Kearney had established a new government in New Mexico, on the 25th of September he departed from Santa Fe, at the head of four hundred dragoons, for the California settlements of Mexico, bordering on the Pacific Ocean; but after having proceeded three hundred miles, and learning that California* was already in possession of the Americans, he sent back three quarters of his force, and with only one hundred men pursued his way across the continent.

2. Give an account of Colonel Doniphan's expedition?

13. [2]In the early part of December a portion of General Kearney's command, that had marched with him from Missouri, set out from Santa Fe on a southern expedition, expecting to form a junction with General Wool at Chihuahua. This force, numbering only nine hundred men, was commanded by Colonel Doniphan, and its march of more than a thousand miles, through an enemy's country, from Santa Fe to Saltillo, is one of the most brilliant achievements of the war. During the march this body of men fought two battles against vastly superior forces, and in each defeated the enemy. [3]The Battle of Bracito,† fought on Christmas day, opened an entrance into the town of El Paso,‡ while that of Sacramento,§ fought on the 28th of February, 1847, secured the surrender

3 What is said of the battles of Bracito and Sacramento?

* Most of *Upper* or *New California*, which is separated from New Mexico by the Colorado river, is an elevated, dry, and sandy desert. The inhabitable portion extends along the shore of the Pacific about 500 miles, with an average breadth of 40 miles. (See Map.)

† The battle of *Bracito*, so called from the "Little Arm," or bend in the river near the place, was fought on the east bank of the Rio Grande, about 200 miles north of Chihuahua.

‡ The town of *El Paso* is situated in a rich valley on the west side of the Rio Grande, 30 miles south from the Bracito.

§ The battle of *Sacramento* was fought near a small stream of that name, about 20 miles north of the city of Chihuahua.

1846. of Chihuahua, a city of great wealth, and containing a population of more than forty thousand inhabitants.

1. *Of events on the Pacific coast?*

14. [1]While these events were transpiring on the eastern borders of the Republic, the Pacific coast had become the scene of military operations, less brilliant,

2. *Of the proceedings of Captain Fremont?*

but more important in their results. [2]In the early part of June, 1846, Captain Fremont, of the Topographical Corps of Engineers, while engaged at the head of about sixty men in exploring a southern route to Oregon, having been first threatened with an attack by De Castro, the Mexican governor on the California coast, and learning afterwards that the governor was preparing an expedition against the American settlers near San Francisco,* raised the standard of opposition to the Mexican government in California.

3. *Of further events, terminating in the conquest of California?*

15. [3]After having defeated, in several engagements, greatly superior Mexican forces, on the 4th of July Fremont and his companions declared the independence of California. A few days later, Commodore Sloat, having previously been informed of the commencement of hostilities on the Rio Grande, hoisted the American flag at Monterey.† In the latter part of July, Commodore Stockton assumed the command of the Pacific squadron, soon after which he took possession of San Diego,‡ and, in conjunction with Captain Fremont, entered the city of Los Angelos§ without opposition; and on the 22d of August, 1846, the whole of California, a vast region bordering on the Pacific Ocean, was in the undisputed military

4. *What occurred after the arrival of General Kearney?*

possession of the United States. [4]In December following, soon after the arrival of General Kearney from his overland expedition, the Mexican inhabitants of California attempted to regain possession of the government, but the insurrection was soon suppressed.

5. *What was the situation of General*

16. [5]We have stated that after the close of the armistice which succeeded the capture of Monterey,

* *San Francisco*, situated on the bay of the same name, possesses probably the best harbor on the west coast of America. (See Map.)

† *Monterey*, (Mon-ter-ā) a town of Upper California, on a bay of the same name, 82 miles south of San Francisco, contained in 1847 a population of about 1000 inhabitants (See Map.)

‡ *San Diego* is a port on the Pacific nearly west of the head of the Gulf of California.

§ *Los Angelos*, or the city of the Angels, is about 100 miles north of San Diego.

the American troops under General Taylor spread themselves over Coahuila and Tamaulipas. In the mean time the plan of an attack on Vera Cruz, the principal Mexican post on the Gulf, had been matured at Washington, and General Scott sent out to take the chief command of the army in Mexico. By the withdrawal of most of the regulars under General Taylor's command for the attack on Vera Cruz, the entire force of the Northern American army, extending from Matamoras to Monterey and Saltillo, was reduced to about ten thousand volunteers, and a few companies of the regular artillery, while at the same time the Mexican General Santa Anna was known to be at San Luis Potosi,* at the head of 22,000 of the best troops in Mexico, prepared to oppose the farther progress of General Taylor, or to advance upon him in his own quarters. **1846.**

Taylor's army soon after the close of the armistice of Monterey—and by what army of the enemy was he opposed?

17. [1]In the early part of February, 1847, General Taylor, after leaving adequate garrisons in Monterey and Saltillo, proceeded with about five thousand men to Agua Nueva,† where he remained until the 21st of the month, when the advance of Santa Anna with his whole army induced him to fall back to Buena Vista,‡ a very strong position a few miles in advance of Saltillo. [2]Here the road runs north and south through a narrow defile, skirted on the west by impassable gullies, and on the east by a succession of rugged ridges and precipitous ravines which extend back nearly to the mountains. On the elevated plateau or table-land formed by the concentration of these ridges, General Taylor drew up his little army, numbering in all only 4,759 men, of whom only 453 were regular troops; and here, on the 22d of February, he was confronted by the entire Mexican array, then numbering, according to Santa Anna's official report, about 17,000 men, but believed to exceed 20,000. **1847.**

1. *Of General Taylor's movements in February, 1847?*

2. *Describe the position of General Taylor's army at Buena Vista.*

18. [3]On the morning of the next day, the 23d of

3. *The battle of Buena Vista.*

* *San Luis Potosi*, the capital of the state of the same name, is situated in a pleasant valley, about 240 miles northwest from the city of Mexico, and more than 300 miles from Saltillo. (See Map.)

† *Agua Nueva* (Ah-goo-ah Noo-ā-vah) is about 14 miles south from Saltillo.

‡ *Buena Vista* (Boo-ā-nah Vees-tah) is about three miles south from Saltillo.

1847. February, the enemy began the attack with great impetuosity; but the resistance was as determined as the assault, and after a hard-fought battle, which was continued during the greater part of the day, the Mexican force was driven in disorder from the field, with a loss of more than fifteen hundred men. The American loss in killed, wounded, and missing, was seven hundred and forty-six; and, among these, twenty-eight officers were killed on the field. [1]This important victory broke up the army of Santa Anna, and, by effectually securing the frontier of the Rio Grande, allowed the Americans to turn their whole attention and strength to the great enterprise of the campaign, the capture of Vera Cruz, and the march thence to the Mexican capital.

1. What were the immediate effects of this victory?

2. Give an account of the movements of General Scott—the investment of Vera Cruz—bombardment—and capture of the city.

19. [2]On the 9th of March, 1847, General Scott, at the head of twelve thousand men, landed without opposition a short distance south of Vera Cruz,* in full view of the city and the renowned castle of San Juan d'Ulloa. On the 12th the investment of the city was completed; on the 18th the trenches were opened, and on the 22d the first batteries began their fire, at the distance of 800 yards from the city. From the 22d until the morning of the 26th, almost one continued roar of artillery prevailed, the city and castle batteries answering to those of the besiegers, and shells and shot were rained upon the devoted town with terrible activity, and with an awful destruction of life and property. At length, just as arrangements had been made for an assault, the governor of the city made overtures of surrender; on the night of the 27th the articles of capitulation were signed, and on the 29th the American flag was unfurled over the walls of the city and castle.

3. Of the march from Vera Cruz, and the battle of Cerro Gordo.

20. [3]The way was now open for the march towards the Mexican capital, and on the 8th of April General Twiggs was sent forward, leading the advance, on the Jalapa road. But Santa Anna, although defeated at Buena Vista, had raised another army, and with 15,000

* *Vera Cruz*, the principal sea-port of Mexico, is built on the spot where Cortez first landed within the realms of Montezuma. The city is defended by the strong fortress of San Juan d' Ulloa, built on an island, or reef, of the same name, about 400 fathoms from the shore. (See Map.)

men had strongly intrenched himself on the heights of Cerro Gordo,* which completely command the only road that leads through the mountain fastnesses into the interior. General Twiggs reached this position on the 12th, but it was not until the morning of the 18th, when the commander-in-chief and the whole army had arrived, that the daring assault was made. Before noon of that day every position of the enemy had been stormed in succession, and three thousand prisoners had been taken, together with forty-three pieces of bronze artillery, five thousand stand of arms, and all the munitions and materials of the army of the enemy. **1847.**

21. [1]On the day following the battle, the army entered Jalapa,† and on the 22d the strong castle of Perote‡ was surrendered without resistance, with its numerous park of artillery, and a vast quantity of the munitions of war. On the 15th of May the advance under General Worth entered the ancient and renowned city of Puebla;§ and when the entire army had been concentrated there, in the very heart of Mexico, so greatly had it been reduced by sickness, deaths, and the expiration of terms of enlistment in the volunteer service, that it was found to number only five thousand effective men. [3]With this small force it was impossible to keep open a communication with Vera Cruz, and the army was left for a time to its own resources, until the arrival of further supplies and reënforcements enabled it to march forward to the Mexican capital.

1. *Continued advance of the American army, and its situation at Puebla.*

2. *What was the effect of the smallness of its force?*

22. [2]At length, on the 7th of August, General Scott, having increased his effective force to nearly eleven thousand men, in addition to a moderate garrison left at Puebla, commenced his march from the latter place for the capital of the republic. The pass over the

3. *Describe the advance of the army, from Puebla—until its arrival at San Augustin.*

---

* The pass of *Cerro Gordo* is about 45 miles, in a direct line, northwest from Vera Cruz.

† *Jalapa*, a city of about 15,000 inhabitants, is 55 miles northwest from Vera Cruz. See map.) The well-known medicinal herb *jalap*, a species of the convolvulus, grows abundantly in the vicinity of this town, to which it is indebted for its name.

‡ *Perote* (Per-o-tâ) is about 90 miles, in a direct line, northwest from Vera Cruz. The fortress is about half a mile north from the town of the same name.

§ *Puebla*, a city of about 60,000 inhabitants, and the capital of the state of the same name, is about 85 miles southeast from the city of Mexico. (See Map.)

1847. mountains, by Rio Frio, where the army anticipated resistance, was found abandoned; a little further on the whole valley of Mexico burst upon the view; and
Aug. 11th. on the 11th the advance division under General Twiggs reached Ayotla,* only fifteen miles from Mexico. A direct march to the capital, by the national road, had been contemplated, but the route in that direction presented, from the nature of the ground and the strength of the fortifications, almost insurmountable obstacles, and an approach by way of Chalco and San Augustin, by passing around Lake Chalco, to the south, was
Aug. 18th thought more practicable, and by the 18th the entire army had succeeded in reaching San Augustin, ten miles from the city, where the arrangements were made for final operations.

1. *What is said of the situation* 23. [1]The city of Mexico,† situated near the western bank of Lake Tezcuco, and surrounded by numerous

* For the location of the places *Ayotla, Chalco, San Augustin, Chapultepec, Churubusco, Contreras, and San Antonio*, see the accompanying map.

† See description of Mexico, page 19.

canals and ditches, could be approached only by long narrow causeways, leading over impassable marshes, while the gates to which they conducted were strongly fortified. [1]Beyond the causeways, commanding the outer approaches to the city, were the strongly fortified posts of Chapultepec and Churubusco, and the batteries of Contreras and San Antonio, armed with nearly one hundred cannon, and surrounded by grounds either marshy, or so covered by volcanic rocks that they were thought by the enemy wholly impracticable for military operations. [2]Six thousand Mexican troops under General Valencia held the exterior defences of Contreras, while Santa Anna had a force of nearly 25,000 men in the rear, prepared to lend his aid where most needed. **1847.**

of Mexico, and the approaches to the city?

1. Of the posts which defended these approaches?

2. Of the army of the enemy?

24. [3]In the afternoon of the 19th some fighting occurred in the vicinity of Contreras, and early on the morning of the next day the batteries of that strong position were carried by an impetuous assault, which lasted only seventeen minutes. In this short space of time less than four thousand American troops had captured the most formidable entrenchments, within which were posted seven thousand Mexicans. The post of San Antonio, being now left in part unsupported, was evacuated by its garrison, which was terribly cut up in the retreat.

3. Of the capture of Contreras and San Antonio?

25. [4]The fortified post of Churubusco, about four miles northeast from the heights of Contreras, was the next point of attack. Here nearly the entire army of the enemy was now concentrated, and here the great battle of the day was fought; but on every part of the field the Americans were victorious, and the entire Mexican force was driven back upon the city, and upon the only remaining fortress of Chapultepec. [5]Thus ended the battles of the memorable 20th of August, in which nine thousand Americans, assailing strongly fortified positions, had vanquished an army of 30,000 Mexicans.

4. Of the capture of Churubusco?

5. The result of the battles of the 20th of August?

26. [6]On the morning of the 21st, while General Scott was about to take up battering positions, preparatory to summoning the city to surrender, he re-

6. What is said of the armistice with the enemy?

1847. ceived from the enemy propositions which terminated in the conclusion of an armistice for the purpose of negotiating a peace. With surprising infatuation the enemy demanded terms that were due only to conquerors, and on the 7th of September hostilities were recommenced. [1]On the morning of the 8th the Molino del Rey, or "King's Mill," and the Casa de Mata, the principal outer defences of the fortress of Chapultepec, were stormed and carried by General Worth, after a desperate assault in which he lost one fourth of his entire force.

1. *What occurred on the 8th of September?*

27. [2]The reduction of the castle of Chapultepec itself, situated on an abrupt, rocky height, one hundred and fifty feet above the surrounding grounds, was a still more formidable undertaking. Several batteries were opened against this position on the 12th, and on the 13th the citadel and all its outworks were carried by storm, but not without a very heavy loss to the American army. [3]The battle was continued during the day, on the lines of the great causeways before mentioned, and when night suspended the dreadful conflict, one division of the American army rested in the suburbs of Mexico, and another was actually within the gates of the city. [4]During the night which followed, the army of Santa Anna, and the officers of the national government abandoned the city, and at seven o'clock on the following morning the flag of the American Union was floating proudly to the breeze above the walls of the national palace of Mexico.

2. *Give an account of the reduction of the castle of Chapultepec.*

3. *The continuation of the battle during the 13th.*

4. *Capture of the city.*

5. THE RESULT. [5]The American army had fulfilled its destination; our soldiers had gained the object of their toils and sufferings; and, as the fruit of many victories, were at last permitted to repose on their laurels, in the far-famed "Halls of the Montezumas."

1848. 28. [6]The conquest of the Mexican capital was the finishing stroke of the war, and on the 2d of February following the terms of a treaty of peace were concluded upon by the American commissioner and the Mexican government. [7]This treaty, after having received some modifications from the American Senate, was adopted by that body on the 10th of March, and subse-

6. *What is said of the conclusion of the war?*

7. *Ratification of the treaty with Mexico?*

quently ratified by the Mexican Congress at Queretaro,* on the 30th of May of the same year. **1848.**

29. [1]The most important provisions of this treaty are those by which the United States obtains from her late enemy a large increase of territory, embracing all New Mexico and Upper California. [2]The boundary between the two countries is to be the Rio Grande from its mouth to the southern boundary of New Mexico, thence westward along the southern and western boundary of New Mexico to the River Gila,† thence down said river to the Colorado,‡ thence westward to the Pacific Ocean. The free navigation of the Gulf of California, and of the River Colorado up to the mouth of the Gila, is guarantied to the United States. [3]For the territory and privileges thus obtained, the United States surrendered to Mexico "all castles, forts, territories, places and possessions," not embraced in the ceded territory,—agreed to pay Mexico fifteen millions of dollars, and assumed the liquidation of all debts due American citizens from the Mexican government.

1. *Its most important provisions?*

2. *What boundary was agreed upon, and what other concessions were made by Mexico?*

3. *What did the United States agree to, in return for the territory and privileges thus obtained?*

30. [4]Such was the conclusion of the Mexican war,—a war opposed as impolitic and unjust by one portion of the American people, and as cordially approved by the other, but admitted by all to have established for our nation, by the unbroken series of brilliant victories won by our army, a character for martial heroism which knows no superior in the annals of history, and which fears no rival in the pathway of military glory. [5]But war is seldom without its alloy of bitterness; and in this instance it was not alone its ordinary calamities of suffering, and wretchedness, and death,—the "sighs of orphans, and widows' tears,"—that moderated our exultations; but with our very rejoicings were mingled the deep and sullen notes of discord; and with the laurels of victory, with which fame had encircled

4. *What is said of the policy and justice of the war, and the character it has established for the American people?*

5. *Of the alloy that mingles with our rejoicings?*

* *Querétaro*, the capital of the state of the same name, is about 101 miles northwest from the city of Mexico.

† The river *Gila* enters the Colorado from the east. (See Map.)

‡ The *Colorado* river, the largest stream in Mexico west of the Cordilleras or Rocky Mountains, rises in the high table-lands of Northern Mexico, and flowing southwest falls into the head of the Gulf of California. (See Map.)

1848. the brow of our nation's glory, were entwined the cypress and the yew—emblems of mourning.

1. What is said of the territory acquired by the contest, and the character of the controversy that has arisen between the North and the South?

31. [1]The vast extent of unoccupied territory which we had acquired as the result of the conquest, proved an apple of discord in our midst; and the question of the final disposal of the prize was a problem which our profoundest statesmen found it difficult to solve The South and the North took issue upon it—the former claiming the right of her citizens to remove, with their property in slaves, on to any lands purchased by the common treasure of the republic, and the latter demanding that territory free from slavery at the time of its acquisition, should forever remain so.

2. What is said of the Presidential election of 1848?

32. [2]The opposing principles of slavery extension and slavery restriction entered largely, as elements of party zeal and political controversy, into the presidential election of 1848; but although the South advocated one line of policy, and the North another, the citizens of neither section were united in the support of either of the three presidential candidates, who were Martin Van Buren, of New York; Lewis Cass, of Michigan; and Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana. [3]General Cass, the regular democratic candidate, and General Taylor, the whig nominee, both claimed by their respective parties as favoring Southern interests, while the same parties in the North advocated their election for reasons directly opposite, received the principal support of the whig and democratic parties; [4]while Mr. Van Buren, first nominated by a division of the democratic party of New York, and afterwards renominated by a northern "Free Soil" convention held at Buffalo, was urged upon the people by his partisans as the peculiar exponent of the free-soil principles so generally professed by the northern section of the Union. [5]After an exciting political canvass, the election resulted in the choice of Zachary Taylor, by one hundred and sixty-three electoral votes, out of a total of two hundred and ninety. Millard Filmore, o New York, was chosen vice-president.

3. Of the support given to Generals Cass and Taylor?

4. Of Mr. Van Buren?

5. What was the result of the canvass?

CHAPTER XII.

1849.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION.

What period is embraced in Taylor's administration?

FROM MARCH 4, 1849; TO JULY 9, 1850.

1. [1]At the time of the accession of General Taylor to the presidency, California, embracing the western portion of the newly-acquired territory of the United States, had already begun to attract a large share of public attention. [2]The importance which this country has subsequently attained, in the rapid growth of its population—in its vast mineral resources—its already extensive commerce—and its rapid advancement to the position of a state in the great American confederacy, demands a brief account of both its early and its recent history.

1. What is said of California?

2. Of its history?

2. [3]The principal Spanish settlements of California were missionary establishments, twenty-one in number; the earliest of which, that of San Diego, was founded in 1769. [4]Established to extend the domain of the Spanish crown, and to propagate the Roman faith by the conversion of the untutored natives, they formed a line of religious posts along the whole western frontier, each a little colony within itself, and, being exclusive in their character, absorbing the lands, the capital, and the business of the country, they suppressed all enterprise beyond their limits, and discouraged emigration.

3. Of the principal Spanish settlements?

4. Their object and character?

3. [5]California remained thus under ecclesiastical sway until, in 1833, the Mexican government converted the missionary establishments into civil institutions, subject to the control of the state. [6]During the long period of anarchy and discord which followed in Mexico, the missions were plundered by successive governors, and, with few exceptions, their lands were granted away, until scarcely anything but their huge stone buildings remained. [7]Yet the result proved beneficial to the country at large. As the lands were distributed, agriculture increased; the attention of for-

5. What change was made in 1833?

6. What is said of the period of anarchy and discord which followed?

7. What was the result of these changes?

1849. eigners began to be turned to the country; and from 1833, when scarcely any but native born inhabitants were found there, up to 1845, the foreign population had increased to more than five thousand.

1. What occurred in 1846?

4. [1]Still, the unsettled condition of the government prevented anything like systematic enterprise; nor was it until 1846, when Fremont and his companions hoisted the American flag and declared California independent of Mexican rule, that the natural capacities of the country for a numerous agricultural population began to be developed. [2]With the belief that California had become, inseparably, a portion of the American Union, emigrants came pouring in, mostly from the United States, to seek their fortunes in a new country under their own flag. [3]Grazing and agriculture were the chief occupations of the people; many little villages sprung up; and everything promised fair for the steady growth of this distant territory on our western borders.

2. What is said of emigration to the country?

3. Of the favorable prospects thus opened?

4. Of the first report of the discovery of gold?

5. [4]In this tranquil state of affairs the announcement was made in the latter part of February, 1848, that a mechanic, employed in cutting a mill-race on the "American Fork" of the Sacramento, about fifty miles above New Helvetia, or Sutter's Fort, had found numerous particles of gold, and some pieces of considerable size, in the sands of the stream. [5]The report spread with rapidity; examinations were made at other points along the stream, and almost everywhere with success; and in a few weeks the newly-discovered gold region was crowded with adventurers, tempted by the glittering prize.

5. Of the effects produced by it?

6. The effects upon labor;—rise of prices, &c?

6. [6]Laborers in the settlements, carried away by the excitement, struck for higher wages, and left their employers: sailors abandoned their vessels in the harbors: the villages were nearly deserted; and, as provisions were scarce, flour and pork arose to forty, and even a hundred, dollars per barrel at the mines, butter to a dollar per pound, and common shoes sold for ten or twelve dollars per pair. [7]At first, workmen at the mines ordinarily gathered gold to the amount of from twenty to forty dollars per day; and in some instances they obtained from $500 to $1000 a day for each man.

7. Of the amount of gold first gathered?

1849.

7. [1]The gold was gathered by washing the earth in pans, or other shallow vessels,—the particles of earth being washed away, while the gold, gravel, and sand, settled at the bottom. The gravel was then picked out by the hand, and the residue was dried on a board or cloth, when the sand was blown away by a common bellows or the mouth; the greater weight of the gold causing it to remain behind. In the mountains the gold was picked out of the rocks in pieces varying from the finest particles to those of five or six ounces in weight. [2]The mining operations have since been carried on in a more scientific manner. The richest gold is now found imbedded in rock quartz, which is broken, and ground down, and the gold is then separated by the process of amalgamation with quicksilver.

1. *Describe the process of obtaining the gold?*

2. *How are the mining operations now carried on?*

8. [3]Already, at the time of the discovery of the mineral wealth of California, the population embraced many enterprising Americans; and now, citizens from the states crowded there in great numbers, carrying with them an ardent attachment to the political institutions of their country, and desiring to see the same established over the land of their adoption. [4]For some time they petitioned Congress in vain, as that body, divided on the subject of permitting or prohibiting slavery there, were unable to agree upon the details of a form of government for the new territory.

3. *What is said of the population, and the desires of the people?*

4. *Of their petitions to Congress, and the result?*

9. [5]General Taylor, on his accession to the presidency, assured the Californians of his earnest desire to grant them all the protection and assistance in the power of the executive, and advised them to form for themselves, in the meantime, a state government, afterwards to be submitted to Congress for approval.

5. *How did Gen. Taylor treat the subject?*

10. [6]Acting upon this advice, and encouraged by General Mason, who succeeded General Riley as military governor in April 1849, the people chose delegates who met at Monterey in September of the same year, for the purpose of forming a constitution for a state government. [7]The result of their deliberations was the adoption of a state constitution, by which slavery was excluded from the country, in accordance with the decision of a special convention previously held at San Francisco. The new constitution was

6. *Give an account of the proceedings of the people in establishing a government?*

1849. adopted by the people with great unanimity. Peter H. Burnet was elected chief magistrate, and the first legislature assembled at San José on the 20th of December, 1849.

1. What is said of the conduct of the legislature of California?

11. [1]While California was a prey to anarchy and misrule, incident to the mixed character of its population,—while the project of an independent republic was by some openly avowed,—and while the interests of the people were neglected by the Congress of the United States, which was violently agitated by the clause in the new constitution prohibiting slavery, the legislature of California manifested, throughout, a noble spirit of devotion to the public good, and a faithful attachment to the American Union.

2. Give an account of the difficulties which arose between Texas and New Mexico.

12. [2]In the meantime, long standing animosities between Texas and New Mexico were involving those countries, and the general government, in a complication of difficulties. Texas had ever claimed, since she gained her independence of Mexico, that her territory extended to the Rio Grande; and she was determined to extend her authority there also, although the inhabitants of the valley of Santa Fe had ever rejected her pretensions, and resisted her rule. [3]In February,

1850.

3. What measures were taken by Texas, and what was the result?

1850, Texas sent her commissioner to organize counties in New Mexico, and enforce her jurisdiction over the disputed territory; but the United States civil and military governor at Santa Fe, disregarding the claims of Texas, and acting in accordance with instructions from Washington, favored the views of the people of New Mexico, who met in convention, and formed a constitution for a state government, which they transmitted to Washington for the approval of the American Congress. The agent of Texas was unable to accomplish his mission.

4. What is said of the Mormon petition,—and the Mormon people?

13. [4]While California and New Mexico were petitioning for admission as states into the American Union, a similar petition was sent up to Congress by a strange people from the very centre of the vast American wilderness. A few years before, a band of Mormons, or, as they style themselves, "Latter Day Saints," had collected at Nauvoo, in the state of Illinois, under the guidance of Joe Smith, their pretended

124
122
120
118
Ft. Umpquah
Umpquah R.
R. Klamath
OREGON
Lat. of Boston
42
Trinity
Humbolt
Mt. Shasta
Shasta
Sacramento River
Feather R.
Humbolt R.
C. MENDOCINO
HUMBOLDT L.
PYRAMID L.
40
Mt. Linn
Hamilton
Yuba
Springfield
Vernon
Sacramento
CARSON R.
MOUNTAIN L.
Lat. of Washington
WALKER L.
Yallo Bo
Sutterville
San Rafael
Benicia
38
San New York
Pablo
Stockton
Calaveras R.
San Francisco
Stanislaus
Santa Cruz
San Jose
Jamestown
Lat. of Richmond Va.
San Juan
Monterey
OWENS L.
36
San Miguel
San Luis Obispo
KERN L.
La Purissima
S. Barbara
Buenaventura
Pueblo de los Angelos
PT CONCEPTION
San Pedro
34
Santa Anna
SANTA CRUZ I.
CALIFORNIA
San Juan
I. CATALINA
San Luis
San Diego
S. Miguel
32
WELLS
47
45
43
41
MINTON & BRO.

1849. prophet and leader; but as serious dissensions arose between them and the neighboring people, they set out, like the Israelites of old, with "their flocks, their herds, and their little ones," to seek a refuge in the wilderness, far away from those who, while they pitied their fanaticism, hated them, and despised their religion.

1. Of their establishment in California—and the success of this strange imposture?

14. [1]Passing beyond the Rocky Mountains, they found, in the valley of the Great Salt Lake, in Northern California, a delightful and fertile region, which they chose for their future home, and the seat of a new religion, which, in its infancy, has been little less successful than that of the Arabian impostor. Not from the states only, but even from Europe, the Mormon missionaries brought in their proselytes by hundreds and by thousands: their thrifty settlements rapidly increased; and while they were scarcely thought of by "the world's people" but as a band of outcasts, **1850.** we find them, in the year 1850, asking to be enumerated as a member of our confederacy, and the American Congress gravely discussing the terms of the admission of the new territory of "Utah!"

2. What is said of the death of General Taylor?

15. [2]While Congress was still in session, engaged in acrimonious debate on the various subjects which arose out of the connection of slavery with the new territories, the country was called to mourn the sudden loss of its chief magistrate. Zachary Taylor died at Washington on the 9th of July, after an illness of less than a week. Among his last words were, "I have endeavored to do my duty. I am not afraid to die." His memory will ever be cherished by his countrymen as that of an able and good man. [3]In the language of an eminent political opponent,[a] "The integrity of his motives was never assailed nor assailable. He had passed through a long and active life, neither meriting nor meeting reproach, and, in his last hour, the conviction of the honest discharge of his duty was present to console, even when the things of this life were fast fading away."

3. Of the character attributed to him by General Cass?

a. General Cass.

CHAPTER XIII.

FILMORE'S ADMINISTRATION.

What period is embraced in Filmore's administration?

FROM JULY 10, 1850, TO MARCH 4, 1853.

1. [1]On the day following the decease of the president, the vice-president, Millard Filmore, proceeded to the Hall of the House of Representatives, and there, in accordance with the constitution, and in the presence of both Houses of Congress, took the oath of office as President of the United States. Without commotion, without any military parade, but with republican simplicity, the legitimate successor to the presidency was installed in office, and the wheels of government moved on as harmoniously as ever; presenting to the world a sublime spectacle of the beauty and perfection of self-government.

1. What is said of Mr Filmore's accession to the presidency?

2. [2]The first session of the 31st Congress, which opened on the 3d of Nov. 1849, and closed on the 30th of September, 1850,—was one of the longest and most exciting ever held. [3]The great subjects of discussion were, the admission of California with the constitution she had adopted, and the Texas boundary question. [4]With these was involved the long agitated question of slavery, in all its various phases—respecting the extension of slavery to new territory—its abolition in the District of Columbia, and the restoration of fugitive slaves to their owners.

2. What was the character of the 1st session of the 31st Congress?

3. What were the great subjects of discussion?

4. What was involved with these?

3. [5]Early in the session, before the death of General Taylor, Mr. Clay, at the head of a committee of thirteen, had reported to the Senate a bill providing for the admission of California with the constitution she had adopted—for the organization of the territories of New Mexico and Utah, and for the adjustment of the Texas boundary. [6]This project, which received the name of the "Omnibus bill," was strongly contested, and crippled by various amendments, until nothing remained

5. What is said of Mr. Clay's bill?

6. What was the fate of this bill?

1850. but the sections organizing Utah as a separate territory, which passed both houses, and became a law.

1. What, however, was the general result of the discussion?

4. [1]After much discussion, however, the California admission bill, the New Mexico Territorial bill, and the Texas boundary, all subsequently passed as separate propositions, very much as they had been proposed by the committee of which Mr. Clay was chairman. By this result, 1st. [2]The vast territory of California, with a sea-board corresponding in latitude to the entire Atlantic coast from Boston to Charleston, became a state of the American Union, with a constitution excluding domestic slavery: 2d. [3]The Mormon territory of Utah, embracing the great central basin of the country between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, was erected into a territorial government, with the declaration that, when admitted as a state, "said territory, or any portion of the same, shall be received into the Union with or without slavery,—as its constitution shall prescribe at the time of the admission:" 3d. [4]New Mexico was erected into a territorial government with the same provision respecting slavery as in the case of Utah: 4th. [5]The Texas Boundary bill (with the consent of Texas afterwards obtained), established the dividing line between Texas and New Mexico four degrees east of Santa Fe; and in consideration that Texas relinquished her claims to the territory east of the Rio Grande thus included in New Mexico, the United States agreed to pay her the sum of ten millions of dollars: 5th. [6]An act called the "Fugitive Slave Law," was passed, providing for the more effectual and speedy delivery, to their masters, of fugitive slaves escaping into the free states: and 6th. [7]An act providing for the suppression of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia, which declares that "if any slave shall be brought into the District of Columbia for the purpose of being sold, or placed in depot there to be sold as merchandise, such slave shall thereupon become liberated and free."

2. Respecting California in particular?

3. The Mormon territory?

4. New Mexico?

5. Respecting the Texas Boundary bill?

6. The fugitive slave law?

7. The slave-trade in the District of Columbia?

8. Of what were these bills the results?

5. [8]These various bills were the results of a compromise of opposing views on the subject of slavery, and in this spirit they were advocated by their supporters; but, as was to be expected, they failed to give entire

satisfaction either to the North or to the South. [1]A portion of the South, complaining of the injustice of excluding their citizens from territory purchased by their blood and by the common treasure of the Union, would have rejected California until she struck from her constitution the clause prohibiting slavery; while at the North there was much bitterness of feeling against the fugitive slave law, which exhibited itself in conventions of the people, and in the aid afforded to fugitive slaves escaping to Canada. 1850. 1851-2.

1. *How were they regarded in different sections of the Union?*

6. [2]During the remainder of President Filmore's administration, little occurred to disturb the quiet tenor of our country's history. [3]At peace with foreign nations, and blessed with almost unexampled prosperity in the various departments of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures, our course is steadily onward in the march of national greatness. [4]The presidential election of 1852, although following closely upon the violent sectional and political contentions of the 31st Congress, was one of unusual quiet, and great moderation of party feeling:—a harbinger of good—a bow of promise spanning the political horizon after the storm has passed away. The result of the political canvass was the election of the democratic candidate, General Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, over General Winfield Scott, the candidate of the whig party. 1852.

2. *What is said of the remainder of Filmore's administration?*

3. *State of the country, &c.?*

4. *Character and results of the presidential election of 1852?*

CONCLUSION. [5]At this period in our history—at the beginning of the last half of the nineteenth century—it is wise to review the past, while with feelings of mingled fear and hope we contemplate the future.

5. *At what period have we now arrived in our history?*

1. [6]Little more than two centuries have elapsed since the first permanent settlement by civilized man was made within the limits of the present United States. [7]During more than two thirds of that period, while the colonies remained under the government of Great Britain, the English settlements were confined to the Atlantic coast; and at the close of the Revolution the population numbered only three millions of souls.

6. *How long since the first settlement in the U. States?*

7. *State of the country during more than two thirds of that period?*

2. [8]The separation, perfected by the Revolution, at once opened new fields for exertion and enterprise;—a great change was suddenly made in the character of the American people; and, under the fostering care

8. *Changes that immediately followed the Revolution?*

1852. of republican institutions, the tide of population has rolled rapidly inland, crossing the Alleghanies—sweeping over the vast valley of the Mississippi, and the plains of California—looking down from the heights of the Sierra Nevada—nor resting in its onward course until it has settled on the waters of the Columbia, and the shores of the Pacific. [2]During the last sixty years of our country's history, the population has increased, in a ratio hitherto unprecedented, from three millions to more than twenty millions of souls.

Progress of population westward.

1. Rapid increase of population.

2. Progress in the arts, &c.

3. Power and resources.

4. Extent of our commerce.

Manufactures.

Agriculture.

3. [2]Nor has our progress been less rapid in the various arts of civilized life. Our transition has been sudden from the weakness of youth to the vigor of manhood. [3]In power and resources we already sustain a proud rivalry with the time-honored nations of the Old World, and we rank the first among the republics of the New. [4]Our busy commerce has extended over every sea, and entered every port; and from the Arctic circle to the opposite regions of Polar cold, our canvass whitens in every breeze. Our domestic manufactures, in the amount of capital employed, and in the quality and value of their fabrics, are already competing successfully with those of France and England, while the rewards of agriculture are shedding their blessings on millions of our happy people.

5. Facilities of communication.

6. Religion.

Education.

4. [5]Our numerous railroads, telegraphs, and canals, navigable rivers and inland seas, by the facilities of communication which they open, bring closely together the most distant sections of the Union, and do much to harmonize that diversity of feelings and of interests which would otherwise arise. [6]The Bible, and the institutions of Christianity, shed their blessings upon us; and the education of youth, upon which the well-being of society, and the perpetuity of our republican institutions, so greatly depend, is receiving that share of attention which its importance demands.

7. Gratitude due for these blessings.

[7]For all these blessings we are bound to acknowledge and adore the invisible hand of Almighty power that has directed and sustained us; for every step in our progress has been distinguished by manifest tokens of providential agency.

LARGE TOWNS.

a. Portland.
b. Portmouth.
c. Newburyport.
d. Newport
e. Rochester.
f. Buffalo.
g. Sackett's Har.
h. Oswego.
i. Utica.
j. Newark.
k. Philadelphia.
l. Pittsburg
m. Baltimore.
n. Norfolk.
o. New York.
p. Wilmington.
q. Georgetown.
r. Charleston.
s. Savannah.
t. St. Augustine.
u. Pensacola.
v. Mobile.
w. Natches.
x. Louisville.
y. Cincinnati
z. Sandusky.
1. St. Louis.
2. Chicago.
3. Milwaukie.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES

CAPITALS.

A. Augusta.
B. Concord.
C. Montpelier.
D. Boston.
E. Providence.
F. Harrford.
G. New Haven.
H. Albany.
I. Trenton.
J. Harrisburg.
K. Dover.
L. Annapolis.
M. Richmond.
N. Raleigh.
O. Columbia.
P Milledgeville.
Q. Tallahassee.
R. Tuscaloosa.
S. Jackson.
T. New Orleans.
U. Nashville.
V. Frankfort.
W. Columbus.
X. Indianapolis.
Y. Springfield.
Z. Madison City.

1853.

1. The sentiments and hopes we should cherish.

'Let our prayer then be that the same God who brought our fathers out of bondage, into a strange land, to found an empire in the wilderness, may continue his protection to their children. Let us indulge the hope, that in this Western World freedom has found a congenial clime; that the tree of liberty which has been planted here may grow up in majesty and beauty, until it shall overshadow the whole land; and that beneath its branches the nations may ever dwell together in unity and love. Let us endeavor to cultivate a spirit of mutual concession and harmony in our national councils; and remembering that the monarchies of the Old World are looking upon us with jealousy, and predicting the day of our ruin, let us guard with sacred faith the boon that has been bequeathed us, and amid all the turmoils of political strife by which we may be agitated, let us ever bear aloft the motto, "*The Union; one and inseparable.*"

APPENDIX.

EXPLANATORY NOTE.—It has been our object, in the foregoing pages, to give a connected history of the United States, from the earliest discovery of the North American continent to the present time. In order to preserve the chain of events unbroken, we have seldom digressed to consider the histories of other American states, except where they were intimately connected with our own. But as our relations with the British Possessions on our north, and the Mexican States on our southwest, are daily becoming more and more intimate, a knowledge of the past history and present condition of those countries is becoming additionally important to our people. Besides, Texas, New Mexico, and California, recently brought into our confederacy, have thus made their history our own, and rendered it additionally desirable in a work designed for our schools, to give some account of their past annals, and of the country from which they have been separated. For these reasons we annex, in the following pages, a brief history of the Canadas, both under French and under English rule, the history of Mexico, and the history of Texas down to the time when the "lone star" became one in our glorious constellation.

APPENDIX.

CHAPTER I.

I. History of Canada under the French.—II. History of Canada under the English.

I. History of Canada under the French.—1. The proper introduction to the history of the Canadas is to be found in the brief account, already given, of the voyages of Cartier, Roberval, and Champlain, the latter of whom, sailing as the lieutenant of De Monts, became the founder of Quebec in 1608, about a year after the English settlement of Jamestown in Virginia.

2. The history of Champlain is one of undaunted courage and resolution, and like that of the celebrated Captain John Smith, of Virginia, is filled with thrilling accounts of romantic adventure among the Indians. On his first arrival in the country, Champlain found the powerful Algonquin and Iroquois tribes, the former on the northern bank of the St. Lawrence, and the latter south and west of Lake Ontario, engaged in deadly wars with each other. Champlain at once entered into alliance with the Algonquins, who promised to assist him in exploring the country of their enemies the Iroquois.

3. In the spring of 1609, Champlain, with two of his countrymen, and a band of his Indian allies, crossed the St. Lawrence, and discovered the lake which bears his name. On the banks of Lake George they had an encounter with the Iroquois, who were soon routed, being struck with terror at the havoc made by the unknown instruments of destruction in the hands of the French.

4. Soon after this expedition, Champlain found it necessary to revisit France, but in 1610 he was enabled to return with a considerable reinforcement and fresh supplies. Again he accompanied his Algonquin allies in an expedition into the territory of their enemies, and again the Iroquois fled before the destruction which followed in the path of the white stranger. Being recalled to France, Champlain persuaded his allies to

allow one of their young men to accompany him, while at the same time a Frenchman remained to learn the language of the Indians. After a brief absence he returned, in 1611, with the Indian youth, whom he designed to employ as interpreter between the French and their allies.

5. While Champlain was awaiting an appointment which he had made with his savage allies, he passed the time in selecting a place for a new settlement, higher up the river than Quebec. After a careful survey, he fixed upon a spot on the southern border of a beautiful island inclosed by the divided channel of the St. Lawrence, cleared a considerable space, surrounded it by an earthen wall, and sowed some grain. From an eminence in the vicinity, which he named Mont Royal, the place has since been called Montreal.

6. In the year 1612 the government of New France, or Canada, was placed in the hands of a French nobleman, the Count de Soissons, who delegated to Champlain all the functions of his high office. The count dying soon after, the Prince of Condé succeeded to all the privileges of the deceased, and transferred them to Champlain on the most liberal terms. As his commission included a monopoly of the fur trade, Champlain was now able to engage the merchants in his projects of discovery and settlement.

7. Like many others at that period, Champlain was enthusiastic in the belief of the existence of a north-western passage to China. A Frenchman who had spent a winter among the northern savages, imposed upon the credulity of Champlain by reporting that the river of the Algonquins (the Ottawa) issued from a lake which was connected with the North Sea; that he had visited its shores, had there seen the wreck of an English vessel, and that one of the crew was still living with the Indians.

8. Eager to ascertain the truth of this statement, Champlain determined to devote a season to the prosecution of this grand object, and with only four of his countrymen, among whom was the author of the report, and one native, he commenced his voyage by the dangerous and almost impassable route of the Ottawa River. The party continued their course until they came within eight days' journey of the lake on whose shores the shipwreck was said to have occurred.

9. Here the falsity of the Frenchman's report was made apparent by the opposing testimony of the friendly tribe with whom he had resided, and he himself, in fear of merited pun-

ishment, confessed that all he had said was a complete untruth. He had hoped that the difficulties of the route would earlier have induced his superior to relinquish the enterprise, and that his statement would still be credited, which would give him notoriety, and perhaps lead to his preferment to some conspicuous station. Thus the season was passed in a series of useless labors and fatigues, while no object of importance was promoted.

10. Champlain, having again visited France, and returned with additional recruits,—ever ready to engage in warlike enterprises with his Indian allies, next planned an expedition against the Iroquois, whom it was now proposed to assail among the lakes to the westward. Setting out from Montreal, he accompanied his allies in a long route, first up the Ottawa, then overland to the northern shores of Lake Huron, where they were joined by some Huron bands, who likewise considered the Iroquois as enemies.

11. Accompanied by their friends, after passing some distance down Lake Huron, they struck into the interior, and came to a smaller expanse of water, on the banks of which they discovered the Iroquois fort, strongly fortified by successive palisades of trees twined together, and with strong parapets at top. The Iroquois at first advanced, and met their assailants in front of the fortifications; but the whizzing balls from the fire-arms soon drove them within the ramparts, and, finally, from all the outer defences. They continued, however, to pour forth showers of arrows and stones, and fought with such bravery that, in spite of all the exertions of the few French and their allies, it was found impossible to drive them from their stronghold. The Iroquois bitterly taunted the allied Hurons and Algonquins as unable to cope with them in a fair field, and obliged to seek the odious aid of this strange and unknown race.

12. The enterprise being finally abandoned, and a retreat commenced, Champlain, wounded, but not dispirited, claimed the completion of the promise of his allies to convey him home after the campaign. But delays and excuses prolonged the time of his departure. First guides were wanting, then a canoe, and he soon found that the savages were determined to detain him and his companions, either to accompany them in their future expeditions, or to aid in their defence in case of an attack from the Iroquois: and he was obliged to pass the winter in the country of the Hurons. In the spring of the following year he was enabled to take leave of his savage allies, soon

after which he repaired to Tadoussac, whence he sailed, and arrived in France in the September following.

13. The interests of the colony were now for some time much neglected, owing to the unsettled state of France during the minority of Louis XIII.; and it was not until 1620 that Champlain was enabled to return, with a new equipment, fitted out by an association of merchants. During his absence, the settlements had been considerably neglected, and, after all that had been done for the colony, there remained, when winter set in, not more than sixty inhabitants of all ages.

14. The progress of the colony was also checked by the appointment of an unqualified governor, De Caen, in the place of Champlain, and, after the restoration of the latter, by dissensions in the mother country, caused chiefly by the opposing sentiments of the Catholics and the Protestants, and the attempts of the former to diffuse the Catholic religion throughout the New World. In 1629, during a brief war between England and France, Port Royal, Quebec, and the other French settlements, fell an easy prey to a small English squadron commanded by Sir David Kirk, a Protestant refugee from France. England, however, placed little value on these distant conquests, and by the treaty of March, 1632, France obtained the restitution,—not of New France or Canada only, but of Cape Breton and the undefined Acadia.

15. On the restoration of Canada, Champlain was reinvested with his former jurisdiction, which he retained until his death, which occurred early in 1636 During more than sixty years after his death, the colonists were engaged in almost constant warfare with the powerful tribes of the Iroquois. In 1648, after a brief interval of repose, their settlements were attacked with almost fatal precision, and the inhabitants, without distinction of age or sex, involved in indiscriminate slaughter. The Huron allies of the French were almost everywhere defeated, and their country, lately so peaceable and flourishing, became a land of horror and of blood. The whole Huron nation, with one consent, dispersed, and fled for refuge in every direction. A few afterwards reluctantly united with their conquerors; the greater number sought an asylum among the Chippewas of Lake Superior,—while a small remnant sought the protection of the French at Quebec.

16. The Iroquois now rapidly extended their conquests over the western Huron tribes, and also over the Algonquins of New

England, while the French, shut up in their fortified posts, beheld the destruction of their allies without daring to venture to their relief. In 1665, however, the power of the French was augmented by an increase of emigrants, and the addition of a regiment of soldiers. Three forts were erected on the river Richelieu, (now the Sorel,) and several expeditions were made into the territory of the Iroquois, which checked their insolence, and for a time secured the colony from the inroads of these fierce marauders.

17. During the administration of De Courcelles, who succeeded De Tracy as governor in 1667, a settlement of Hurons, under the direction of the Jesuit Marquette, was established on the island of Mackinaw, between lakes Huron and Michigan,—a situation very favorable for the fur trade. The site of a fort was also selected at Cataraqui, on Lake Ontario, near the present village of Kingston, an advantageous point for the protection of the trading interests, and for holding the Five Nations in awe. Count Frontenac, who succeeded De Courcelles in 1672, caused the fort at Cataraqui to be completed; and it has often, from him, been called Fort Frontenac.

18. In 1684, M. De la Barre, the successor of Frontenac, crossed Lake Ontario, and marched into the country of the Iroquois to subdue them; but a mortal sickness having broken out in the French army, De la Barre thought it best to yield to the terms of the enemy and withdraw his forces. In the following year De la Barre was recalled, and the Marquis Denonville was appointed in his stead.

19. Denonville professed to the Iroquois a wish to maintain peace, while the opposite course was intended by him. Having, under various pretexts, allured a number of chiefs to meet him on the banks of Lake Ontario, he secured them and sent them to France as trophies; and afterwards they were sent as slaves to the galleys. This base stratagem kindled anew the flame of war, and each party prepared to carry it on to the utmost extremity. Denonville made an inroad into the country of the Senecas, who burned their villages on his approach. In return the enemy attacked the two forts Niagara and Cataraqui, the former of which was abandoned after nearly all the garrison had perished of hunger. Lake Ontario was covered with the canoes of the enemy; the allies of the French began to waver; and had the savages understood the art of siege, they would probably have driven the French entirely from Canada. In

this critical situation, Denonville was obliged to accept the most humiliating terms from the enemy, and to request back from France the chiefs whom he had so unjustly entrapped and sent thither.

20. The treaty, however, was interrupted by an unexpected act of treachery on the part of the principal chief of the Hurons, who, fearing that the remnant of his tribe might now be left defenceless, captured and killed a party of the Iroquois deputies who were on their way to Montreal; and as he had the address to make the Iroquois believe that the crime had been committed at the instigation of the French Governor, the flame of war again broke out, and burned more fiercely than ever. The Iroquois soon after made a descent on the island of Montreal, which they laid waste, and carried off 200 prisoners.

21. In this extremity, when the very existence of the colony was threatened, Denonville was recalled, and the administration of the government was a second time intrusted to Count Frontenac. At this period, the war, called by the French and English colonies, "King William's War," broke out between France and England. It was during this war that the French and their allies attacked and destroyed Schenectady, Salmon Falls, and Casco in Maine, and that the British colonies sent unsuccessful expeditions against Quebec and Montreal. Frontenac made a successful irruption by way of Lake Ontario and the river Oswego, into the Iroquois country, laying waste the villages of the Cayugas and Onondagas; but the enemy rallied, and severely harassed him in his retreat.

22. The war between the French and the Iroquois continued three years after the peace between France and England in 1697. At length, in the year 1700, this long Indian war was brought to a close, and the numerous prisoners on both sides were allowed to return. The natives, prisoners to the French, availing themselves of the privilege, eagerly sought their homes, but the greater part of the French captives were found to have contracted such an attachment to the wild freedom of the woods, that nothing could induce them to quit their savage associates

23. During Queen Anne's war, from 1702 to 1713, the Iroquois preserved a kind of neutrality between the French and the English, while each party endeavored to secure their cooperation in its favor. After the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, Canada enjoyed a long period of uninterrupted tranquillity. The extent of settled territory, however, was still small, chiefly

embraced in a narrow strip on the St. Lawrence, between Quebec and Montreal. At Fort Frontenac and Niagara a few soldiers were stationed; a feeble settlement was formed at Detroit; and at Mackinaw a fort surrounded by an Indian village. In 1731 the French erected Fort Frederic, (now Crown Point,) on the western shore of Lake Champlain, but surrendered it to the English under General Amherst, in 1759. In 1756, they erected the fortress of Ticonderoga, at the mouth of the outlet of Lake George; and in 1754 the Marquis du Quesne erected, at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela, the memorable fort which bore his name.

24. The French were likewise encroaching upon Nova Scotia, which had been ceded to England by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713; and in the west they were attempting to complete a line of forts which should confine the British colonists to the territory east of the Alleghanies. These encroachments were the principal cause which led to the "French and Indian war," a war which resulted in the overthrow of the power of France in America, and the transfer of her possessions to a rival nation. An account of that war has already been given in a former part of this work, to which we refer for a continuation of the history of Canada during that eventful period.

II. HISTORY OF CANADA UNDER THE ENGLISH.—1. The history of Canada subsequent to the peace of 1763, is so intimately connected with that of the United States, and so much of it has been embraced in former pages of this work, that we shall pass briefly over those portions common to both, and shall dwell on such events only as are necessary to preserve the history of Canada entire.

2. During the American Revolution, the French Canadians maintained their allegiance to the British crown, and united with the English in the war against the colonies. The issue of the war was attended with considerable advantage to Canada. A large number of disbanded British soldiers, and loyalists from the United States, who had sought refuge in the British territories, received liberal grants of land bordering on the St. Lawrence and Lake Ontario; and at this period are dated the first permanent settlements in "Canada West," or Upper Canada. The new settlers founded Kingston, on the site of Fort Frontenac; and a few years later a number of emigrants, under the direction of General Simcoe, founded York, since called Toronto.

3. In 1791, the repeated requests of the people for a repre-

sentative government were granted, and Canada was divided into two provinces, Upper and Lower, over which representative governments were established, on a basis resembling that of the British constitution. In the year 1803, slavery was declared to be inconsistent with the laws of the country, and the few individuals held in bondage received a grant of freedom.

4. Soon after the close of the war of 1812, the principal events of which, so far as they belong to Canadian history, have been related in another part of this work, internal dissensions began to disturb the quiet of the two provinces, but more particularly that of Lower Canada. The controversy began in the Lower Province, between the governor and the assembly, the former demanding a large annual grant for the uses of government, without specifying the particular objects to which it was to be applied, and the latter demanding that the estimates should be given in detail, while the assembly should be the judge of their necessity and propriety.

5. During a long controversy with successive governors, most of these points were, one after another, yielded to the representatives of the people; but with each concession the demands of the assembly increased, until, in 1831, it declared that "under no circumstances, and upon no considerations whatever, would it abandon or compromise its claim over the whole public revenue." The British government partially yielded to this demand by transferring to the assembly all control over the most important revenues of the province, but, in return, claimed that certain casual revenues arising from the sale of lands, the cutting of timber, &c., should be considered as belonging to the crown, and should be appropriated chiefly to the payment of the stipends of the clergy of the established church. The crown also demanded permanent salaries for the judges, the governor, and a few of the chief executive officers.

6. While these royal claims, which greatly irritated the people, were still unsettled, the assembly next demanded that the legislative council, hitherto appointed by the crown, should be abolished, and a new one, similar to the American senate, substituted in its place, with members elected by the people. To this demand the British ministry gave a peremptory refusal, declaring it inconsistent with the very existence of monarchical institutions; and early in 1837 the British parliament, by a vote of 318 to 56, strongly reaffirmed the position assumed by the ministry.

7. Intelligence of this vote occasioned violent commotions in the Canadas; various meetings of the people were held to consider the state of the country, and a recommendation was made to discontinue the use of British manufactures, and of all articles paying taxes. Meetings of the loyalists also were held in Quebec and Montreal, condemning the violent proceedings of the assembly, and deprecating both the objects and the measures of the so-called patriot party.

8. A recourse to arms appears now to have been resolved upon by the popular leaders, foremost of whom was Papineau, speaker of the assembly, whose avowed object was an entire separation of the Canadas from the parent state. A central committee was formed at Montreal: an association called "The Sons of Liberty" paraded the streets in a hostile manner; and a proclamation was issued by them denouncing the "wicked designs of the British government," and calling upon all friends of their country to rally around the standard of freedom.

9. In many places the people deposed the magistrates, and reorganized the militia under officers of their own selection. Loyalist associations, however, were formed in opposition to these movements; and the Catholic clergy, headed by the bishop of Montreal, earnestly exhorted the people to take no part in the violent proceedings of the "Patriot party." In Montreal, the "Sons of Liberty" were attacked in the streets and dispersed by the loyalists; the office of the Vindicator newspaper was destroyed, and the house of Papineau, the great agitator, was set on fire by the victors, but rescued from the flames. Exaggerated reports of this affair spread through the country, increasing the general ferment, and giving new strength to the cause of the disaffected. It being announced that resistance was assuming a more organized form, the government issued warrants for the arrest of twenty-six of the most active of the patriot leaders, of whom seven were members of the assembly, including Papineau, the speaker of that body.

10. Several were apprehended, but Papineau could not be found. A body of militia, sent to make some arrests in the vicinity of St. Johns, on the Sorel, succeeded in their purpose, but on their return they were attacked by a party of the insurgents, and the prisoners were rescued. In the latter part of November, strong detachments of government troops, commanded by Colonels Gore and Wetherall, were sent to attack armed bodies of the insurgents, assembled under Papineau,

Brown, and Neilson, in the villages of St. Denis and St. Charles, on the Sorel. After considerable bloodshed, the insurrection was suppressed in that quarter; Neilson was taken prisoner; and Brown and Papineau sought safety by escaping to the United States. In December, thirteen hundred regular and volunteer troops were sent against the districts of Two Mountains and Terrebonne. At St. Eustache an obstinate stand was made by the insurgents, who were finally defeated with severe loss; the village of Benois was reduced to ashes, and several of the patriot leaders were taken. At the close of the year 1837, the whole province of Lower Canada was again in a state of tranquillity.

11. In the meantime Upper Canada had become the theatre of important events. A discontented party had arisen there, demanding reforms similar to those which had been the cause of dissensions in the lower province, and especially urging the necessity of rendering the legislative council elective by the people. On the breaking out of the insurrection in the lower province, the leaders of the popular party, who had long desired a separation from Great Britain, seized the opportunity for putting their plans in execution, but after a few skirmishes the patriot leaders disappeared, their followers laid down their arms, and tranquillity was restored throughout the province.

12. Mackenzie, however, one of the promoters of the insurrection, having fled to Buffalo, succeeded in kindling there a great enthusiasm for the cause of the "Canadian Patriots." A small corps was quickly assembled; Van Rensselaer, Sutherland, and others, presented themselves as military leaders; possession was taken of Navy Island, situated in the Niagara channel; and fortifications were there commenced which were defended by thirteen pieces of cannon. Recruits flocked to this post until their numbers amounted to about a thousand. Colonel M'Nab soon arrived with a large body of government troops, but without the materials for crossing the channel, or successfully cannonading the position of the insurgents.

13. Much excitement prevailed along the American frontier, and volunteers from the states began to flock in considerable numbers to aid the cause of the "Patriots." But the American president, Mr. Van Buren, issued two successive proclamations, warning the people of the penalties to which they would expose themselves by engaging in hostilities with a friendly

power, and also appointed General Scott to take command of the disturbed frontier, and enforce a strict neutrality.

14. In the meantime a small steamer, named the Caroline, had been employed by the insurgents in conveying troops and stores from Fort Schlosser, on the American shore, to Navy Island. Captain Drew, having been instructed by Colonel M'Nab to intercept her return, but not being able to meet the boat in the channel, attacked her at night, while moored at the American shore. At least one of the crew was killed, and the vessel, after being towed to the middle of the stream, was set on fire and abandoned, when the burning mass was borne downward by the current, and precipitated over the Falls.

15. This act, occurring within the waters of the United States, occasioned much excitement throughout the Union, and led to an angry correspondence between the British and the American minister. After the arrival of General Scott on the frontier, effective measures were taken to prevent farther supplies and recruits from reaching Navy Island, when, the force of the assailants continually increasing, and a severe cannonade having been commenced by them, the insurgents evacuated their position on the 14th of January. Van Rensselaer and Mackenzie, escaping to the United States, were arrested by the American authorities, but admitted to bail. A number of the fugitives fled to the west, and under their leader, Sutherland, formed an establishment on an island in the Detroit channel. After meeting with some reverses, this party also voluntarily disbanded.

16. Tranquillity was now, for a short time, restored to both Canadas,—parliament made some changes in the constitution of the lower province—and in May 1838 the Earl of Durham arrived at Quebec, as governor-general of all British America; but the opening of his administration meeting with some censure in the British parliament, he resigned his commission, and on the 1st of November sailed for England.

17. On the 3d of November, only two days after the departure of the Earl of Durham, a fresh rebellion, which had been organizing during the summer along the whole line of the American frontier, broke out in the southern counties of Montreal District. At Napierville, west of the Sorel, Dr. Neilson and other leaders had collected about 4000 men, several hundred of whom were detached to open a communication with their friends on the American side of the line. These were attacked and repulsed by a party of loyalists, who afterwards posted

themselves in Odelltown chapel, where they were in turn attacked by a large body of the insurgents, headed by Neilson himself; but after a severe engagement the latter were obliged to retreat with considerable loss.

18. In the meantime seven regiments of the line, under the command of Sir James McDonnell, crossed the St. Lawrence and marched upon Napierville, but on their approach the insurgents dispersed. So rapid were the movements of the government troops, that the insurrection in Lower Canada was entirely suppressed at the expiration of only one week after the first movement. A few days after these events several hundred Americans sailed from the vicinity of Sackett's Harbor, and landed near Prescott, where they were joined by a number of the Canadians. On the 13th of November they were attacked by the government troops, but the latter were repulsed. On the 16th they were attacked by a superior force, when nearly the whole party surrendered.

19. Notwithstanding the ill success of all the invasions hitherto planned on the American side of the line in aid of the Canadian insurgents, on the 4th of December a party of about two hundred crossed from Detroit, and landing a few miles above Sandwich, dispersed a party of British, and burned the barracks and a British steamer, but being attacked by a larger party of the British on the same day, they were defeated and dispersed. A number of the prisoners were ordered to be shot by the Canadian authorities immediately after the engagement.

20. These events, occurring in the latter part of 1838, closed the "Canadian Rebellion." Throughout the disturbances, the American government, acting upon the principles of strict neutrality, had zealously endeavored, as in duty bound, to prevent its citizens from organizing within its borders, for the purpose of invading the territory of a friendly power; yet doubtless a majority of the American people sympathized with the Canadians, and wished success to their cause. The exceedingly defective organization of the insurgents, their want of concert, their irresolution, and the want of harmony among their leaders, show that the Canadian people, however great may have been the grievances of which they complained, were at that time totally unprepared to effect a forcible separation from the mother country.

21. As the last great event in Canadian history, on the 23d of July 1840, the British parliament, after much discussion,

passed an act by which the provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united into one, under the name of the Province of Canada. The form of government adopted was similar to that previously existing in each province,—consisting of a governor appointed by her majesty, a legislative council summoned by the governor, and a representative assembly elected by the people.

22. As a concluding statement to this brief sketch of Canadian history, it may be remarked, that only a few of the evils so long complained of have been removed, and the great mass of the people have yet but little share either in the choice of their rulers, or in the free enactment of the laws by which the province is governed.

CHAPTER II.

HISTORY OF MEXICO AND TEXAS.

I. Aboriginal Mexico.—II. Colonial History of Mexico.—III. Mexico during the first Revolution.—IV. Mexico from the close of the first Revoluiton to the adoption of the Federal Constitution of 1824.—*V. Mexico from the adoption of the Federal Constitution in* 1824 *to the commencement of the Texan Revolution in* 1835.—*VI. Texan Revolution.—VII. Mexico from the close of the Texan Revolution in* 1836 *to the commencement of the war with the United States in* 1846.

I. ABORIGINAL MEXICO.—1. At the time of the discovery of America, nearly the whole continent was occupied by barbarous and wandering tribes, of whose history little that is authentic can now be learned. The aboriginal Mexicans, however, differed essentially from the great mass of the race to which they apparently belonged. They had made considerable advances in civilization—were an agricultural people—had built flourishing cities—and were united under a regular system of government.

2. The Toltecas or Toltecs, are the most ancient Mexican nation of which history and fable combined furnish us any accounts. The symbolical representations, or hieroglyphics, from which their history is obtained, and which were found among the Mexicans, represent that in the year 472 of the Christian era, they were expelled from their own country, called Tollan, situated somewhere to the north of Mexico, and that, for some

time after, they led a migratory and wandering life; but, at the expiration of 104 years, they reached a place about fifty miles to the eastward of the city of Mexico, where they remained twenty years. Thence they proceeded a short distance westward, where they founded a city, called from the name of their original country, *Tollan*, or *Tula*.

3. The Toltecas, during their journeys, were conducted by chiefs; but after their final settlement, in the year 667, their government was changed to a monarchy, which lasted nearly four centuries. At the expiration of this time, they had increased very considerably in numbers, and had built many cities; but when in the height of their prosperity, almost the whole nation was destroyed by a famine and a pestilence.

4. The hieroglyphical symbols from which the account of this event is derived, represent that, at a certain festive ball made by the Toltecas, the *Sad Looking Devil* appeared to them, of a gigantic size, with immense arms, and, in the midst of their entertainments, embraced and suffocated them; that then he appeared in the form of a child with a putrid head, and brought the plague; and finally, at the persuasion of the same devil, they abandoned the country Tula, and dispersed themselves among the surrounding nations, where they were well received on account of their superior knowledge and civilization.

5. About a hundred years after the dispersion of the Toltecs, their country was occupied by the Chichemecas, who also came from the north, and were eighteen months on their journey. Although less civilized than the Toltecs, they had a regular form of monarchical government, and were less disgusting in their manners than some of the neighboring nations. They formed an alliance with the remnant of the Toltecs, and intermarried with them; the consequence of which was the introduction of the arts and knowledge of the Toltecs, and a change in the Chichemecas, from a hunting to an agricultural people. The Chichemecas were soon after joined by the Acolhuans, likewise from the north; after which the history of the two nations is filled with uninteresting accounts of petty conquests, civil wars, and rebellions, until the appearance of the Aztecs, or Mexicans, also of Indian origin.

6. The latter are represented to have left their own country, a great distance to the north of the Gulf of California, in the year 1160, by the command of one of their deities; and, after

wandering fifty-six years, to have arrived at the city of Zumpango, in the valley of Mexico. During their journey they are supposed to have stopped some time on the banks of the river Gila, an eastern branch of the Colorado, where may still be seen remains of the massive stone buildings which they are said to have constructed.

7. Thence they proceeded until they came to a place about two hundred and fifty miles northwest from Chihuahua, and now known by the name of *Casa Grande*, on account of a very large building still extant there at the time of the Spanish conquest, and universally attributed to the Aztecs, by the traditions of the country. Thence they proceeded southward to Culiacan, on a river of the same name, which flows into the Gulf of California, about the 24th degree of north latitude. Here they made a wooden image of their god, and a chair of reeds and rushes to support it, and also appointed four priests, called the "Servants of God," to carry it on their shoulders during their subsequent wanderings.

8. When the Aztecs left their original habitations, they consisted of six tribes; but at Culiacan, the *Mexicans* separated from the other five, and taking their deity with them, continued their journey alone. In the year 1216, they arrived in the valley of Mexico, where they were at first well received, but they were afterwards enslaved by a neighboring prince, who claimed the territory, and who was unwilling to have them remain without paying tribute.

9. They were finally, however, released from bondage, when they resumed their wanderings, which they continued until the year 1325, when they came to a place on the borders of a lake, where the eagle that had guided them in their journeys rested upon a nopal, where it shortly afterwards died. This was the sign given them by their oracle, designating the place where they were finally to settle; and as soon as they had taken possession of the spot, they erected an altar to the god who had conducted them in their wanderings. The city which they built here was first called Tenochtitlan, and afterwards *Mexico*, signifying the place of *Mexitli*, the Mexican god of war.

10. During the time which intervened from the founding of Mexico to the conquest by the Spaniards, a period of nearly two hundred years, the Mexicans went on gradually increasing in power and resources, and, by conquest and alliances, they extended their dominion, not only over the other Aztec tribes,

which had accompanied them during most of their wanderings, and which afterwards settled around them, but also over other tribes or nations that spoke languages different from the Aztec or Mexican.

11. Previous to their settlement in the valley of Mexico, the Mexicans continued unacquainted with regal dominion, and were governed in peace, and conducted in war, by such as were entitled to pre-eminence by their wisdom or their valor; but after their power and territories became extensive, the supreme authority finally centered in a single individual; and when the Spaniards, under Cortez, invaded the country, Montezuma was the ninth monarch in order who had swayed the Mexican sceptre, not by hereditary right, but by election. The accounts given of all this history, in the hieroglyphic writings of the Mexicans, and which have been faithfully translated by Spanish writers, are minute and circumstantial; but the details would possess little interest for us.

II. Colonial History of Mexico.—1. The conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards, an account of which has already been given, vested the sovereignty of the country in the crown of Spain, which guaranteed that, on no account should it be separated, wholly or in part, from the Spanish monarchy.

2. The establishment of a Spanish colonial government in Mexico was followed by the bondage of the natives, who were at first reduced to the most cruel and humiliating form of slavery. About the middle of the sixteenth century, the wretchedness of their situation was somewhat alleviated by the labors and influence of the worthy Las Casas, but they were not allowed to leave the districts in which they were settled; their lands were retained by the Spaniards; and they were still obliged to labor for their oppressors. This indirect slavery was eventually abolished about the beginning of the eighteenth century, but the Indians were still deprived of all privileges as citizens, and the government seemed to aim at keeping the native population in poverty and barbarism.

3. The colonial government was not much better calculated to promote the interests and prosperity of the native Spanish population. For nearly three centuries, down to the year 1810, Mexico was governed by viceroys appointed by the court of Spain; all of whom, with one exception, were European Spaniards. Every situation in the gift of the crown was bestowed upon a European; nor is there an instance, for many years

before the revolution, either in the church, the army, or the law, in which the door of preferment was opened to a Spaniard Mexican born. Through this policy a privileged *caste* arose, distinct from the Mexican Spaniards in feelings, habits, and interests,—the paid agents of a government whose only aim was to enrich itself, without any regard to the abuses perpetrated under its authority.

4. The complaints of the Creoles (the name given to the white inhabitants, of European descent, born in America) were unheeded by the Spanish government. During the reign of Charles V. in the latter part of the 18th century, it is said that "Every office was publicly sold, with the exception of those that were bestowed upon court minions as the reward of disgraceful service. Men destitute of talent, education, and character, were appointed to offices of the greatest responsibility in church and state; and panders and parasites were forced upon America, to superintend the finances, and preside in the supreme courts of appeal. For the colonists there was no respite from official blood-suckers. Each succeeding swarm of adventurers, in the eagerness to indemnify themselves for the money expended in purchasing their places, increased the calamities of provinces already wasted by the cupidity of their predecessors. Truly might the Hispano-Americans have exclaimed, 'That which the palmer-worm hath left hath the locust eaten, that which the locust hath left hath the canker-worm eaten, and that which the canker-worm hath left hath the caterpillar eaten.'"

5. The same writer thus forcibly describes the condition of Mexico immediately previous to the events which led to the Revolution. "The condition of Mexico at the beginning of the present century was stamped with the repulsive features of an anarchical and semi-barbarous society, of which the elements were—an aboriginal population, satisfied with existing in unmolested indigence; a chaos of parti-colored castes, equally passive, superstitious, and ignorant; a numerous creole class, wealthy, mortified, and discontented; and a compact phalanx of European officials,—the pampered Mamelukes of the crown—who contended for and profited by every act of administrative iniquity. Public opinion was unrepresented; there were no popularly chosen authorities, no deliberative assemblies of the people, no independent publications,—for the miserably meagre press was but a shadow,—a light-abhorring phantom, evoked

to stifle free discussion by suppressing its cause, and bound to do the evil bidding of a blind, disastrous, and suicidal tyranny."

III. MEXICO DURING THE FIRST REVOLUTION.—1. When in the year 1808, Charles IV, the king of Spain, was dethroned by the emperor Napoleon, the viceroy of Mexico exhorted the people to preserve their fidelity to their dethroned monarch, and, for the purpose of conciliating the good will, and gaining the assistance of the Creoles, proposed to admit them to a share in the government; but the court of the *Audiencia*, the highest judicial tribunal in Mexico, declaring the illegality of this measure, and taking part with the European Spaniards against the Creole population, seized and imprisoned the viceroy and his adherents.

2. The arbitrary measures of the Audiencia increased the feeling of hostility against the Europeans; a general impatience to shake off the yoke of foreign domination was manifested throughout the province; and on the 16th of September 1810, Hidalgo, a priest in the little town of Dolores, raised the standard of revolt, by seizing and imprisoning seven Europeans, whose property he distributed amongst his followers.

3. The news of this insurrectionary movement spread rapidly, and was everywhere received with enthusiasm. On the 29th of the same month, Hidalgo entered the city of Guanaxuato at the head of a force of 20,000 men, chiefly Indians poorly armed, overpowered the garrison, put the Spaniards to death, gave up their property to his troops, and recruited his military chest with public funds amounting to five millions of dollars.

4. After having entered Valladolid without resistance, he advanced, at the head of his motley force, within a few miles of the Mexican capital; but after remaining two or three days within sight of the city, he made a sudden and unaccountable retreat. His subsequent career was a series of disasters. On the 7th of November, his undisciplined and poorly armed troops were met and routed with great loss, in the plains of Acúlco, by the royalist general Calleja. Calleja soon after entered the city of Guanaxuato, where he took ample revenge for the excesses which the insurgent populace had previously committed against the Europeans. To avoid the waste of powder and ball, it is said that he cut the throats of the defenceless inhabitants, until the principal fountain of the city literally overflowed with gore.

5. Hidalgo retreated to Valladolid, where he caused eighty

Europeans to be beheaded; and thence proceeding to Guadalaxara, he caused between seven and eight hundred of the population to be taken to the neighboring mountains and butchered in secret, without any form of trial or examination; thus imitating, on American soil, the horrors of the French Revolution. On the 17th of January 1811, his forces were routed at the Bridge of Calderon; and soon after Hidalgo himself, while proceeding with several of his officers to the frontiers of the United States to purchase arms and military stores, was surprised and made prisoner through the treachery of a former associate. Being brought to trial by orders of the government, he was deprived of his clerical orders and sentenced to be shot. His companions shared his fate.

6. After the fall of Hidalgo, the warlike priest Morelos assumed the general command of the insurgent forces. During the year 1811, by a series of brilliant victories which were never tarnished by wanton cruelties, he overcame the several detachments sent against him, and in February 1812, his advanced forces had arrived within twenty miles of the gates of Mexico; but soon after he was shut up in the town of Cúaútla by the forces of Calleja. Morelos sustained the siege with great spirit, until famine and disease commenced their frightful ravages in the town, when the place was evacuated, with but little loss, on the night of the second of May. It was during the siege of Cúaútla that Victoria and Bravo, both young men, first distinguished themselves. At the same time Guerrero, in the successful defence of a neighboring town, began his long and perilous career.

7. During nearly two years the troops of Morelos were almost uniformly successful in their numerous encounters with the enemy; but on the 23d of December 1813, and on the 6th of January following, they were twice defeated with great loss at Valladolid. Morelos never recovered from these reverses, and although he continued to display all his wonted resolution and activity, he lost action after action; all his strong posts were taken; several of his best generals died upon the scaffold, or perished on the field of battle; and finally, Morelos himself, being taken prisoner, was condemned to death. On arriving at the place of execution, he uttered the following simple but affecting prayer: "Lord, if I have done well, thou knowest it: if ill, to thy infinite mercy I commend my soul." He then bound a handkerchief over his eyes, gave the signal to the sol-

diers to fire, and met death with as much composure as he had ever shown when facing it on the field of battle.

8. After the death of Morelos, the cause of the insurgents languished; the jarring interests of the different leaders broke out into open discord; and although the war was continued in various quarters, yet after a struggle of nine years from the first outbreak in the little town of Dolores, the First Revolution terminated in 1819, in the total defeat and dispersion of the Independent party. But although open hostilities were quelled, the spirit of independence was daily gaining ground among the Creole population. Spain had entirely lost all those moral influences by which she had so long governed her colonies in the New World.

IV. Mexico, from the close of the first Revolution in 1819, to the adoption of the Federal Constitution of 1824. —1. In the year 1820, the arbitrary government of Spain gave place to the establishment of a constitutional monarchy. As the Spanish constitution provided for a more liberal administration of government in Mexico than had prevailed since 1812, the increased freedom of the elections again threw the minds of the people into a ferment; and the spirit of independence, which had been only smothered, broke forth anew.

2. Moreover, divisions arose among the Mexican Spaniards themselves, some, among whom was the viceroy of Apadaca, being in favor of a return to the old system of arbitrary rule, while others were sincerely attached to the liberties guaranteed by the new constitution.

3. In this state of affairs the viceroy planned a scheme for overturning the existing government, and proclaiming the re-establishment of the absolute authority of the king. Selecting as his instrument Don Augustin Iturbide, he sent him to the western coast at the head of a body of troops to begin the insurrection: but Iturbide, instead of acting in obedience to his instructions, took the bold stand of proclaiming Mexico wholly independent of the Spanish nation. Thus began the second Revolution—the war of Mexican Independence.

4. On the 24th of February 1821, Iturbide proclaimed his project, known as the "Plan of Iguala," which declared that Mexico should be an independent nation, its religion Catholic, and its government a constitutional monarchy. All distinctions of caste were to be abolished; all inhabitants, whether Spaniards, Creoles, Africans, or Indians, who should adhere to the

cause of independence, were to be citizens; and the door of preferment was declared to be opened to virtue and merit alone

5. The progress of Iturbide was rapid; and before the month of July, the whole country, with the exception of the capital, recognized his authority; and on the 27th of September, the capital itself submitted, and all opposition ceased. A national congress was then called for the formation of a constitution; and in the meantime Iturbide, who was eulogized as the savior of the country, was made temporary president, with a yearly salary of one hundred and twenty thousand dollars.

6. When the National Congress assembled, three distinct parties were found among its members:—1st, the *Bourbonists*, who wished a constitutional monarchy, with a prince of the house of Bourbon at its head: 2d, the *Republicans*, who desired a federal republic; and 3d, the *Iturbidists*, who wished to place Iturbide himself upon the throne.

7. By much artifice the soldiers of the garrison of Mexico, and a large crowd of the leperos or beggars of the city, were induced to proclaim Iturbide emperor. The latter, pretending to yield with reluctance to what he was pleased to consider the "will of the people," brought the subject before Congress, which, overawed by the soldiery and the rabble, gave their sanction to a measure which they had not the power to oppose; and Iturbide was proclaimed, and everywhere acknowledged, emperor.

8. On the accession of Iturbide, a struggle for power began between him and the Congress, and, after five months of contention, Iturbide terminated the dispute as Cromwell and Bonaparte had done on similar occasions before him, by proclaiming the dissolution of the national assembly, and substituting in its stead a junta of his own nomination.

9. The popularity of Iturbide did not long survive his assumption of arbitrary power. In less than a month an insurrection broke out in the northern provinces; and soon after, the youthful general, Santa Anna, a former supporter of Iturbide, declared against him, at the head of the garrison of Vera Cruz. The old revolutionary leaders, Generals Bravo, Guerrero, and Victoria, joined Santa Anna, when Iturbide, terrified by the storm which was arising against him, formally resigned the imperial crown on the 19th of March 1823, and on the 11th of May following sailed for Europe.

10. The Congress which assembled in August immediately

entered on the duties of forming a new constitution, which was submitted on the 31st of January 1824, and definitively sanctioned in October following. By this instrument, modelled somewhat after the constitution of the United States, the Mexican provinces were united in one Independent Republic. With many excellent provisions, the constitution was liable to some serious objections. The trial by jury was not introduced, nor was the requisite publicity given to the administration of justice: and as if to bind down the consciences of posterity to all future generations, the third article in the constitution declared that, "The religion of the Mexican nation is, and will be perpetually, the Roman Catholic Apostolic."

11. The fate of the ex-emperor remains to be noticed. In consequence of his supposed intention of returning to Mexico, a circumstance which might endanger the peace of the country, in April 1824 the Congress passed a decree of outlawry against him. In July, however, he landed in disguise, but was soon afterwards arrested, and shot by order of the provincial Congress of Tamaulipas.

V. Mexico from the adoption of the Federal Constitution of 1824 to the commencement of the Texan Revolution in 1835.—1. On the first of January 1825, the first Congress under the federal constitution assembled in the city of Mexico; and at the same time General Guadalupe Victoria was installed as president of the republic, and General Nicholas Bravo as vice-president. The years 1825 and 1826 passed with but few disturbances; the administration of Victoria was generally popular; and the country enjoyed a greater degree of prosperity than at any former or subsequent period.

2. The country was divided, however, between two political parties, at the head of which were two opposing Masonic societies, known as the Scotch and the York lodges;—the former aristocratic in sentiment, in favor of the establishment of a strong central government, and supposed to be secretly inclined to a constitutional monarchy, with a king chosen from the Bourbon family:—the latter, opposed to a royal or central government, of strong democratic tendencies, and generally in favor of the expulsion of the Spanish residents.

3. In the elections which took place in the autumn of 1826, bribery, corruption, and calumnies of all kinds, were resorted to by both parties, and some of the elections were declared null in consequence of the illegality of the proceedings by which

they had been effected. At length, in the beginning of 1828, the dissensions of the two parties broke out in open hostilities by an insurrectionary movement of the Scotch party, which, however, was soon suppressed.

4. In the presidential election of 1828, General Pedraza, a member of the Scotch party, was elected president, by a majority of only two votes over his competitor, General Guerrero; but the Yorkinos, declaring that the election had been carried by fraud, determined to obtain redress by an appeal to arms. At this moment Santa Anna, whose name had figured in the most turbulent periods of the Revolution since 1821, appeared on the political stage,—at the head of 500 men he took possession of the castle of Peroté, and proclaimed Guerrero, the chief of the Yorkino party, president.

5. On the last day of November, the government guard in the city of Mexico was surprised by the Yorkinos, and a contest began in the streets of the city, which, after continuing four days, ended in the dissolution of the Congress, the flight of the president Pedraza, and a partial pillage of the capital. On the first of January, 1829, a new Congress assembled, when Guerrero was made president, and Santa Anna was declared to have deserved well of his country.

6. Thus terminated the first struggle for the presidential succession in Mexico—in scenes of violence and bloodshed, and in the triumph of revolutionary force over the constitution and laws of the land. The appeal then made to arms was afterwards deeply regretted by the prominent actors themselves, many of whom perished in subsequent revolutions, victims of their own blood-stained policy. The country long mourned the consequences of their rash and guilty measures.

7. In July 1829, a Spanish expedition of 4000 men landed at Tampico, for the invasion of the Mexican Republic; but after an occupation of two months, the invading army surrendered to Santa Anna on the 10th of September. At this time General Bustamente, then in command of a body of troops, thinking a favorable opportunity had arrived for striking a blow at supremacy, denounced the ambitious designs of Guerrero, and marched upon the capital. The government was easily overthrown, Guerrero fled, and Bustamente was proclaimed his successor. In an attempt to recover his authority in the following year, Guerrero fell into the hands of his enemies, when he was condemned as a traitor, and executed in February 1831.

8. After this, tranquillity prevailed until 1832, when Santa Anna, one of the early adherents of Guerrero, but afterwards the principal supporter of the revolution by which he was overthrown, declared against the really arbitrary encroachments of Bustamente. After a struggle of nearly a year, an armistice was agreed upon, and Pedraza was recalled to serve out the remaining three months of his unexpired term. In the early part of 1833, Santa Anna himself was chosen president, and Gomez Farias vice-president.

9. Scarcely a fortnight had elapsed after Santa Anna had entered on the duties of his office, when an insurrection, supposed to have been instigated by him, and in favor of the church and the army, and "Santa Anna for dictator," broke out within twenty miles of the capital. The movement, however, was unsuccessful, and soon after Santa Anna retired to his estate in the country, leaving the executive authority in the hands of the vice-president.

10. In the early part of 1834, Santa Anna, deeming the occasion favorable for the success of his ambitious designs, placed himself at the head of the military chiefs and the army, dissolved the congress, and summoned another. In the meantime he took into his own hands all the powers of government, while he used his power and influence to subvert the constitution he had sworn to defend.

11. The several Mexican states were all more or less agitated by these arbitrary proceedings; but the party in power, at the head of which was Santa Anna, after much opposition, succeeded in abolishing the federal system of 1824, and in establishing a strong "Central Republic." The legislatures of the states were declared to be abolished, and the states were changed into departments under the control of military commandants, who were to be responsible to the chief authorities of the nation,—the latter to be concentrated in the hands of one individual, whose authority was law. At the head of the new government was Santa Anna.

12. Several of the Mexican states took up arms in support of the constitution of 1824, but all, with the exception of Texas, hitherto the least important of the Mexican provinces, were speedily reduced by the arms of Santa Anna.

VI. TEXAN REVOLUTION.—1. At the time of the outbreak of the first Mexican Revolution in 1810, the settlements in Texas consisted of only a few feeble Spanish garrisons, connected with

a few missions of the Roman church. When Mexico had established her independence, the Mexican government adopted a liberal system of colonization; and emigrants in large numbers, mostly from the United States, began to flow to Texas, the most fertile of the Mexican provinces.

2. With the exception of a transient outbreak in 1826, Texas remained faithful to Mexico, until the arbitrary proceedings of Santa Anna and his adherents overthrew the federal constitution. In opposition to a force sent by Santa Anna to reduce them to subjection, the Texans declared that they took up arms "in defence of their rights and liberties, which were threatened by the encroachments of military despots, and in defence of the republican principles of the Federal Constitution of Mexico."

3. The war commenced by the successful attack of several Mexican garrisons, while the Mexican troops were advancing into the country under the command of General Cos, the brother-in-law of Santa Anna. General Cos, marching into the interior, took post at Bexar, which he garrisoned with a thousand regular troops. This place was soon besieged by about 500 Texans, and after a vigorous assault was compelled to surrender, Dec. 11th, 1835. General Cos and his followers, after pledging themselves not to oppose in any manner the re-establishment of the Federal Constitution of 1824, were allowed to retire to Mexico.

4. The fall of Bexar occasioned but a brief truce to the war, for in less than three months from the capitulation of General Cos, Santa Anna himself entered Texas at the head of 8000 of the best troops of Mexico, accompanied by an unusually large train of artillery. His avowed object was "to exterminate the rebels, and drive the Americans out of Texas."

5. Sending a division of his forces, under General Urrea, to South-eastern Texas, Santa Anna, at the head of 4000 of his troops, advanced to Bexar, where was a Texan force of 150 men, afterwards increased to 182, under the command of William Barrett Travis. Travis retired to the fortified enclosure of the Alamo, where were a few pieces of artillery, and there defended himself during eleven days against the whole force of the enemy.

6. This was humiliating in the extreme to the Mexican generals; and soon after midnight, on the 6th of March, their entire army, commanded by Santa Anna in person, surrounded the fort for the purpose of taking it by storm, cost what it might.

7. The cavalry formed a circle around the infantry for the double object of urging them on, and preventing the escape of the Texans; and amidst the discharge of musketry and cannon the enemy advanced towards the Alamo. Twice repulsed in their attempts to scale the walls, they were again impelled to the assault by the exertions of their officers; and borne onward by the pressure from the rear, they mounted the walls, and, in the expressive language of an eye-witness, "tumbled over like sheep."

8. Then commenced the last struggle of the garrison. Travis received a shot as he stood on the walls cheering on his men; and as he fell, a Mexican officer rushed forward to dispatch him. Summoning up his powers for a final effort, Travis met his assailant with a thrust of his sword, and both expired together. The brave defenders of the fort, overborne by multitudes, and unable in the throng to load their fire-arms, continued the combat with the butt-ends of their rifles, until only seven were left, and these were refused quarter. Of all the persons in the place, only two were spared—a Mrs. Dickerson, and a negro servant of the commandant.

9. Major Evans, of the artillery, was shot while in the act of firing the magazine by order of Travis. Colonel James Bowie, who had been confined several days by sickness, was butchered in his bed, and his remains were savagely mutilated. Among the slain, surrounded by a heap of the enemy who had fallen under his powerful arm, was the eccentric David Crockett, of Tennessee. The obstinate resistance of the garrison, and the heavy price which they exacted for the surrender of their lives, had exasperated the Mexicans to a pitch of rancorous fury, at which all considerations of decency and humanity were forgotten. The bodies of the dead were stripped, thrown into a heap and buried, after being subjected to brutal indignities. No authenticated statement of the loss of the Mexicans has been published, although it has been variously estimated at from a thousand to fifteen hundred men.

10. On the 3d of March, during the siege of Bexar, a convention of Texan delegates which was in session at Washington, on the Brazos river, agreed unanimously to a Declaration of Independence. On the 17th of the same month a constitution for the Republic was adopted, and David G. Burnett, of New Jersey, the son of an officer of the American Revolution, was appointed provisional president.

11. During the sitting of the convention, General Urrea was proceeding along the line of the coast, where he met with but feeble opposition from small volunteer parties sent out to protect the retreat of the colonists. Those who were taken prisoners by him were mercilessly put to death, even though they had surrendered upon written guarantees of safety. Among these was the brave Colonel Fannin and 250 men, who, having capitulated upon honorable terms, were afterwards shot by the orders of Santa Anna.

12. After the fall of the Alamo, on the 31st of March, Santa Anna left Bexar, and proceeded north in search of the enemy, who still showed a disposition to harass his movements. In the meantime General Houston, the commander-in-chief of the Texan forces, was making what preparations his limited means would allow to arrest the progress of the invaders.

13. On the 16th of April Santa Anna reached New Washington, at the head of the west branch of Galveston Bay, and soon after encamped on the banks of the San Jacinto. On the morning of the 20th, General Houston, descending the right bank of Buffalo Bayou, took post within three quarters of a mile of the enemy. The effective Mexican force on the San Jacinto now numbered 1600 men, while the Texans numbered only 783.

14. The opposing forces remained in their respective positions until the afternoon of the 21st, when Houston ordered his offi-

cers to parade their respective commands, having previously taken measures for the destruction of all the bridges in the vicinity; thus cutting off all possibility of escape for the enemy, should they be defeated.

15. The troops paraded with alacrity and spirit; the disparity in numbers seeming to increase their enthusiasm, and to heighten their anxiety for the conflict. The order of battle being formed, the cavalry, sixty-one in number, commanded by Colonel Mirabeau B. Lamar, were despatched to the front of the enemy's left for the purpose of attracting their notice, when the main body advanced rapidly in line, the artillery, consisting of two six pounders, taking a station within two hundred yards of the enemy's breastwork. With the exception of the cannon, which commenced a vigorous discharge of grape and canister, not a gun was fired by the Texans until they were within point blank shot of the enemy's lines, when the war cry, *Remember the Alamo!* was raised.

16. The thrilling recollections suddenly revived by that well-known name, together with the knowledge that the cowardly assassins of Fannin and his comrades were before them, gave new excitement to the Texans, and, in the frenzy of revenge, they threw themselves in one desperate charge on the enemy's works, and, after a conflict of fifteen minutes, gained entire possession of the encampment; taking one piece of cannon loaded, four stands of colors, and a large quantity of camp equipage, stores, and baggage. The whole Mexican army was annihilated —scarcely a single soldier escaping. Of nearly 1600 men who commenced the action, 630 were killed, 208 were wounded, and 730 were made prisoners; while, of the Texan force, only eight were killed, and seventeen wounded. On the day following the battle, Santa Anna was captured on the banks of Buffalo Bayou, while wandering alone, unarmed, and disguised in common apparel. It was only by the exercise of extraordinary firmness on the part of General Houston and his officers, that his life was spared from the fury of his Texan captors. An armistice was soon after agreed upon, and the several divisions of the Mexican forces, in obedience to the orders of Santa Anna, retired beyond the Colorado.

17. On the 14th of May a convention was concluded between the Texan government and Santa Anna, by the terms of which hostilities were immediately to cease between the Mexican and Texan troops; the Mexican army was to retire beyond the Rio

Grande; prisoners were to be exchanged, and Santa Anna was to be sent to Vera Cruz as soon as circumstances would permit it. On the same day Santa Anna stipulated, by a secret treaty signed by him, that Mexico should enter into an amicable treaty with Texas as an independent nation.

18. Owing to divisions in the Texan congress, Santa Anna did not obtain his release until December, and on his reaching Mexico he publicly disavowed all treaties and stipulations whatever, as conditional to his release; but even this disavowal was not effectual in restoring him to the favor of his countrymen, whose want of confidence in him was increased by his duplicity; and he was obliged to go into retirement until another revolution in his unhappy country enabled him to regain the power he had lost.

19. The battle of San Jacinto gave peace to Texas, and the rank of an independent republic among the nations of the earth, although Mexico still claimed her territory, and continued to maintain a hostile attitude towards her. A large majority of the Texan people, however, had long cherished the hope of admission into the American confederacy; and although the measure encountered much opposition on the part of a portion of the states, yet on the 28th of February 1845, the joint resolution of the two houses of Congress in favor of the proposed annexation passed the Senate, and on the 1st of March received the signature of the president. In the following winter the senators of the *State of Texas* took their seats, for the first time, in the national council of the American Union.

VII. MEXICO FROM THE CLOSE OF THE TEXAN REVOLUTION IN 1836, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR WITH THE UNITED STATES IN 1846.—1. Mexican history, from the commencement of the Texan Revolution down to the opening of the war with the United States in 1846, is but a series of civil wars and domestic revolutions, under which the country enjoyed neither repose nor prosperity. In 1838 a rebellion against the central government was planned by General Mexia, who lost his life in the brief struggle that followed. In the winter of the same year the harbor of Vera Cruz was blockaded, and the city attacked by a French fleet.

2. In July 1840, an insurrection broke out in the city of Mexico, but after a conflict of twelve days a general amnesty was agreed upon by the contending factions. At the same time Yucatan withdrew from the general government, but after a

struggle of three years against the forces of Mexico, and contending factions at home, she again entered the Mexican confederacy.

3. In the month of August 1841, General Paredes, seconded by Santa Anna, placed himself at the head of a successful revolution, which overthrew the existing constitution of Mexico, and proclaimed the establishment of an intricate representative system, under which Santa Anna arose to the presidency in 1843 —or, as might with more propriety be said, to the supreme dictatorship of the Mexican nation. In the following year, however, Paredes, who had hitherto acted with Santa Anna, openly declared against the dictator: after a civil war of some months, Santa Anna was taken prisoner, when Congress passed a decree of perpetual banishment against him.

4. It was at this time that Texas, having maintained her independence of Mexico during nine years, applied for and obtained admission into the American confederacy as one of the states of the Union. On the arrival in Mexico of the news of the passage of the act of annexation, the provisional president, General Herrera, issued a proclamation calling upon the citizens to rally in support of the national independence, which was represented as being seriously threatened by the aggressions of the United States.

5. An account of the war which followed has already been given in its connection with the history of the United States. Even in the midst of that war Mexico was not exempt from serious domestic dissensions. When at length Herrera, convinced of the utter inability of Mexico to carry on a successful war for the recovery of Texas, showed a disposition to conclude a peaceable arrangement with the United States, Paredes proclaimed against him, and after a short struggle drove him from power. But the triumph of Paredes was short, for while he was engaged in preparations to meet the foreign enemy, Santa Anna was recalled by the revolutionary party, and, entering Mexico in triumph, was again placed at the head of government. But henceforth the good fortune of the Dictator deserted him. He lost one battle after another, until, finally, being driven from the capital, he was compelled to witness the dismemberment of his unhappy country. Texas, New Mexico, and California, the fairest portions of the public domain, were forever wrested from Mexican rule.

THE CONSTITUTION* OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

PREAMBLE.[a]

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

OF THE LEGISLATURE.

SECTION I.

All legislative[b] powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress[c] of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

EXPLANATORY NOTES.

* *Constitution*, in a political sense, is the constituted or established form of government. It is the *fundamental law* of a nation;—the regulation that determines the manner in which the authority vested in the government is to be exercised Our constitution is found in a written document. The English constitution is not found in any one written article, but consists of acts of Parliament, decisions of courts of law, and long established customs and usages.

[a] *A preamble* is a preface or introduction, the object of which is to announce the character and design of the work to which it is prefixed.

[b] *Legislative power* is the law-making power.

[c] *Congress* is a meeting for the settlement of national affairs, whether relating to one or more nations.

The questions in Italics refer to the Explanatory Notes: those in Roman letters to the Constitution.

* *What is a Constitution?* [a] *What is a preamble?* What are the objects of the Constitution, as expressed in the preamble?

ARTICLE I.

Section I.—In what is the legislative power vested? [b] *What is legislative power* [c] *What is a Congress?*

SECTION II.

First Clause.—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year[a] by the people of the several States, and the electors[b] in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

Second Clause.—No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant[c] of that state in which he shall be chosen.

Third Clause.—Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and, excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons.[d]

---

[a] In England, members of the House of Commons, corresponding to our House of Representatives, are chosen for seven years. The object in having frequent elections is to make the representatives more directly responsible to the people. The period for which a representative is chosen embraces what is called one Congress.

[b] An *elector* is one who has a vote in the choice of an officer. "The electors in each State," here spoken of, are those who are entitled, by the laws of the State in which they reside, to vote for members of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature; consequently, those who are entitled to vote for this branch of the State Legislature, may vote for members of the House of Representatives. And as the right of suffrage in the several States is now almost universal to all American citizens of twenty-one years of age, nearly all have a vote in the choice of their representatives.

[c] It has been decided that a man residing at the seat of government in an official capacity, holding an office under the United States, does not cease to be a legal inhabitant of the State of which he was a citizen.

[d] The *representative population* is not the whole population of the United States; for, after including all free persons, excluding Indians not taxed, it includes only "three fifths of all other persons." The "other persons" here alluded to are slaves; consequently the slaveholding States have a representation for three fifths of their slaves; and their citizens, individually, hold greater political power, than the citizens of non-slaveholding States. As an offset to this, direct

---

SECTION II.—1st. Of whom is the House of Representatives composed? [a] *For how long a period are members of the English House of Commons chosen? What is the object in having frequent elections? What period is embraced in each Congress?* [b] *What is an elector? How extensive is the privilege of voting for representatives?*

2d. What are the legal qualifications of representatives? [c] *Must the representative be a resident of the State in which he shall be chosen?*

3d. How are representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the States? How are the respective numbers of the people determined? How often is the enumeration to be made? [d] *What then is understood by the representative population? Who are the "other persons" here alluded to? How is the political power of the South affected by this clause? What offset to this? What is the ratio of representation?*

The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such a manner as they shall by law direct.

The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative, and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

Fourth Clause.—When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill up such vacancies.

Fifth Clause.—The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker, and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.[a]

SECTION III.

First Clause.—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.[b]

---

taxes (if such should be imposed by the government) are to be apportioned by the same rule as representatives. The ratio of representation is a common divisor of the number of inhabitants in each State, and not in the whole Union. In 1790, the ratio, or the number of citizens entitled to a representative, was 33,000, and the whole number of representatives was 106. In 1850 the ratio was 93,420, and the number of representatives 235. By act of Congress, each organized *territory* of the United States is entitled to a delegate to Congress. Such delegate is entitled to a seat in the House, and has the right of debating, but is not allowed to vote.

[a] *Impeachment* is an accusation against a public officer for misconduct in the discharge of his official duties. The power of impeachment, as vested in the House of Representatives, extends only to officers of the general government. State officers may be impeached in a similar way by the Legislatures of the several States. The *mode* of impeachment and trial, which is similar to the ordinary forms of judicial proceedings, is derived from the British Parliament, in which the Commons have the sole power of impeachment, and the House of Lords the power of trial.

[b] The Senators being chosen by the State Legislatures, it is settled by the

---

The ratio and the number of representatives, in 1790? *In* 1850? *What is said of delegates from the territories?*

4th. How are vacancies filled?

5th. How are officers of the House chosen? What sole power has the House? [a] *What is impeachment? Who may be impeached by the House? How may State officers be impeached? What is said of the mode of impeachment?*

SECTION III.—1st. Of whom is the Senate composed? Who choose the Senators, and for what time? [b] *In what manner are they chosen?*

Second Clause.—Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes.

The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year; so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.[a]

Third Clause.—No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

Fourth Clause.—The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate; but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

Fifth Clause.—The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a President pro tempore,[b] in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

Sixth Clause.—The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath, or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

---

practice of most of the States that they may be chosen by *joint ballot of both houses*, and not, necessarily, by the Legislature in its official capacity—each house having a negative on the other.

[a] Care is taken that but one vacancy shall occur at the same time, in the representation of any one State. The Governor of a State can make no appointment of a Senator in *anticipation* of a vacancy The vacancy must exist when the appointment is made.

[b] *Pro tempore* is a Latin phrase, signifying, *for the time.*

2d. How were the Senators at first divided? In what order were their offices to be vacated? How are vacancies to be filled? [a] *What care is taken in regard to vacancies? By what rule is the governor restrained in filling vacancies?*

3d. What legal qualifications are required of a Senator?

4th. Who is president of the Senate? When only can he vote?

5th. What is said of the other officers of the Senate? [b] *What is the meaning of "pro tempore?"*

6th. What sole power has the Senate? When does the Chief Justice preside? What number can convict a person?

Seventh Clause.—Judgment, in case of impeachment, shall not extend farther than to a removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the the party convicted shall nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.[a]

SECTION IV.

First Clause.—The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed, in each State, by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.[b]

Second Clause.—The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day

SECTION V.

First Clause.—Each house shall be the judge of the election returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum[c] to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members in such manner and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Second Clause.—Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

Third Clause.—Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and, from time to time, publish the same, excepting

---

[a] In England, the judgment upon impeachment extends not only to removal from office, but to the whole penalty attached by law to the offence. The House of Lords may, therefore, inflict capital punishment, banishment, &c., according to its discretion.

[b] Although Congress has the power to appoint the *times* and *modes* of choosing Senators and Representatives, this power has not been exercised by it The *times* and *modes* of election are now various in the several States.

[c] A *quorum* means a *sufficient number* to transact business.

7th. How far may judgment extend, in case of impeachment? To what is the party convicted further liable? [a] *What is the law on this subject in England?*

SECTION IV.—1st. Who prescribe the time, place, and manner, of holding elections for senators and representatives? What power has Congress over this subject? [b] *Has Congress ever exercised this power? The consequence?*

2d. How often, and when, does Congress assemble?

SECTION V.—1st. Of what is each house made the judge? What constitutes a quorum? What may a smaller number do? [c] *What is meant by "a quorum?"*

2d. What other powers has each house?

3d. What is required of each house relative to a journal?

such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Fourth Clause.—Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.

First Clause.—The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States.[a]

They shall, in all cases, except treason,[b] felony,[c] and breach of the peace,[d] be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and, for any speech or debate, in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.[e]

Second Clause.—No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office, under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person, holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house, during his continuance in office.

---

[a] Members of Congress receive eight dollars for every day's attendance; and eight dollars for every twenty miles travel, by the most usual route, from their place of residence to the seat of Congress, both in going to and returning from the session.

[b] *Treason* consists in one or more of these three things—levying war against the United States—adhering to their enemies—giving them aid and comfort. The war must be actually levied, to constitute treason. A conspiracy to levy war is not treason.

[c] *Felony*, in common speech, signifies *any offence punishable with death.*

[d] The term "Breach of the peace," includes all *indictable* offences—that is, such serious offences as a person may be charged with by a grand jury under oath.

[e] For a speech delivered in Congress a member cannot be held legally accountable; but, if he *publish* the speech, and it contain a *libel*, he is liable to an action for t as in any other case.

4th. What are the rules respecting adjournments?

SECTION VI.—1st. What is said of the compensation of senators and representatives? When privileged from arrest? For what are they not to be questioned? [a] *What compensation do members receive?* [b] *In what does treason consist?* [c] *What is felony?* [d] *Breach of the peace?* [e] *What if a member publish a libelous speech?*

2d. To what offices cannot members be appointed? What if a person hold an office under the United States?

SECTION VII.

First Clause.—All bills for raising revenue, shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.[a]

Second Clause.—Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it.

If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered; and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law.

But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays; and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill, shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively.

If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.[b]

---

[a] "Bills for raising revenue" do not include all bills which bring money into the treasury. Thus, bills for the sale of public lands, for regulating the Post-office, and Mint, &c., although they may increase the revenue, may originate in either house. The meaning of the phrase is confined to bills to levy taxes. This provision in our Constitution is borrowed from the British Constitution, by which, bills for raising revenue must originate in the House of Commons, whose members are the exclusive representatives of the people. So tenacious of this privilege are the Commons, that the Peers are not even allowed to amend a money bill: they must reject it, or adopt it, as it has been framed by the Commons.

[b] The power given to the President, of *objecting* to bills, or placing his *veto* upon laws passed by Congress, was adopted after much discussion, and great opposition. It was designed as an additional security against the enactment of improper laws, and as a defence of the Executive against the encroachments of the Legislature. Should the President abuse the veto power, it is presumed that Congress would pass the bill in question, by the constitutional majority, of

---

SECTION VII.—1st. Where must bills for raising revenue originate? What may the Senate do in relation to them? [a] *What do not these bills include? How illustrated? From what is this provision in our Constitution borrowed? What are the rules of the British Constitution on this subject?*

2d. What are the rules, in full, relative to the passage of bills? [b] *What is said of this veto power thus given to the president? For what was it designed? What if the president should abuse it?*

Third Clause.—Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary, (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him; or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.

OF THE POWERS OF CONGRESS.

First Clause.—The Congress shall have power—to lay and collect taxes,[a] duties,[b] imposts,[c] and excises;[d] to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States: but all duties, imposts, and excises, shall be uniform throughout the United States.

Second Clause.—To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

Third Clause.—To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes.[e]

---

two thirds. The king of England has an *absolute* negative upon all bills passed by Parliament.

[a] *Taxes* are all contributions, whether of money or of commodities, imposed by the government upon individuals for the service of the State. But *revenue* is the *money* raised for the uses of government, and may be derived from various sources, as by the sale of the public lands, &c., or by taxation.

[b] *Duties* are taxes required by government to be paid on the importation, exportation, or consumption of goods.

[c] *Imposts* are taxes required by government to be paid on goods *imported.*

[d] *Excise* is a tax on commodities, wherever found; as, a tax on the wares of the merchant, on the produce of the farmer, &c. The term excise has been exclusively applied, in this country, to a tax on domestic distilled liquors; because this was the only excise tax ever imposed by the general government, and was of short duration. This was in 1793, and the law was so odious as to excite to acts of open insurrection in the neighborhood of Pittsburg, Pennsylvania.

[e] The power "to regulate commerce" extends to every species of commercial intercourse carried on between citizens of the United States and citizens of foreign countries, and also between citizens of the different States in our Union. It does not, however, embrace the *internal* trade between man and man in different parts of the same State.

What power has the King of England in similar cases?

3d. When orders, resolutions, &c., require the concurrence of both houses, what is necessary in order for them to take effect? What if they be disapproved by the president?

SECTION VIII.—1st. Of what does the eighth section treat? What power has Congress in relation to taxes, duties, imposts, and excises? [a] *What are taxes? What is revenue?* [b] *What are duties?* [c] *Imposts?* [d] *Excises? To what has the latter term been exclusively applied in this country?*

2d. What power has Congress in regard to borrowing money? 3d. In regard to regulating commerce? [e] *How far does this power extend? What implied power has Congress exercised under this clause?*

Fourth Clause.—To establish a uniform rule of naturalization,[a] and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies,[b] throughout the United States.

Fifth Clause.—To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

Sixth Clause.—To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

Seventh Clause.—To establish post-offices and post-roads.[c]

Eighth Clause.—To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.[d]

Under this clause in the Constitution Congress has exercised the implied power of imposing duties upon foreign goods, for the two purposes, of obtaining revenue, and protecting our own manufactures.

[a] *Naturalization* is the act by which a foreigner becomes a citizen. The States have no authority to pass laws of naturalization. This is an *exclusive* power of the United States. By acts of Congress on this subject, an *alien of full age* may become a citizen of the United States after a residence of five years in the country, upon complying with certain requisitions, among which are, a renunciation of all allegiance to every foreign prince and power, and a declaration, on oath or affirmation, that he will support the Constitution of the United States. The children of naturalized persons, if residing within the United States, are considered citizens.

[b] *Bankruptcy* signifies a particular kind of insolvency, or failure to pay one's debts. In common speech, one who cannot pay his debts is a *bankrupt.*

[c] Congress has passed laws for the safety and the speedy transportation of the mail. Of so great importance is the speedy transmission of the mail considered, that even a stolen horse, attached to a mail stage, cannot be seized, nor the driver arrested on *civil process*, such as for debt, &c., in such way as to obstruct the mail: but the driver may be arrested for a *breach of the peace.*

[d] By acts of Congress, "patents may be obtained for any new and useful art, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter not known before the application." The term for which a patent may be obtained is fourteen years. Copyrights may be secured for twenty-eight years, and at the expiration of that time the patentee, or (if he be dead) his wife and children, may renew it for fourteen years longer. The term for copyrights was formerly fourteen years, the same as for patents.

The acts of Congress upon this subject give to an author or his assignee the sole right and liberty of publishing and selling his work, and to a patentee the full and exclusive right and liberty of constructing, using, and selling to others, his invention, or discovery, within the time limited for the enjoyment of their respective privileges. For the violation of a patent the trespasser must pay to the patentee three times the actual damage proved to have been sustained. The penalty for infringing a copyright is the forfeiture of every volume so printed to the author, and the forfeiture of every sheet printed, one half to the author, and one half to the United States; and furthermore, to pay the author all the damages which he may prove to have sustained.

4th. In regard to naturalization and bankruptcies? [a] *What is meant by naturalization? What are the laws and regulations on this subject?* [b] *What is bankruptcy?* 5th. In regard to coining money? 6th. Counterfeiting? 7th. Post-offices, &c.? [c] *What is said of the speedy transportation of the mail?* 8th. Science and useful arts? [d] *What acts of Congress have been passed in relation to patents and copyrights?*

Ninth Clause.—To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court.

Tenth Clause.—To define and punish piracies[a] and felonies committed on the high seas,[b] and offences against the law of nations.

Eleventh Clause.—To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal,[c] and make rules concerning captures on land and water.

Twelfth Clause.—To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money for that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

Thirteenth Clause.—To provide and maintain a navy.

Fourteenth Clause.—To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

Fifteenth Clause.—To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

Sixteenth Clause.—To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress.

Seventeenth Clause.—To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in

---

[a] *Piracy* is robbery on the high seas. Piracy is punished by all nations. But if a foreigner acts under the sanction of his government, his acts are not denominated piracy. In this case the government which sanctions his acts is alone responsible for the wrong.

[b] The term "high seas" means all the waters of the ocean beyond the boundaries of low water mark, where the tide ebbs and flows, although in a roadstead or bay, within the limits of one of the states or of a foreign government. Between high water mark and low water mark the courts of common law and of admiralty hold alternate jurisdiction.

[c] "Letters of marque and reprisal" are commissions to seize the persons and property of the members of a nation which has committed some injury, and refuses to make satisfaction.

9th. Judicial tribunals? 10th. Piracies, felonies, &c.? [a] *What is piracy—the laws on this subject, &c.?* [b] *What is said of the term "high seas?"* 11th. Declaring war? [c] *What are "letters of marque and reprisal?"* 12th. Of armies? 13th. The navy? 14th. Government of land and naval forces? 15th. Calling forth the militia, &c.? 16th. Organizing the militia, &c? 17th. Legislation over ceded places, &c.?

which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings.[a] And,

Eighteenth Clause.—To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.

OF RESTRICTIONS UPON THE POWER OF CONGRESS.

First Clause.—The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.[b]

Second Clause.—The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.[c]

---

[a] Over all places ceded to the general government for the purposes herein mentioned, Congress has exclusive legislative control. The inhabitants of such places cease to be inhabitants of the States, and cannot exercise any political rights under the laws of the States. But the States have commonly reserved the right of *criminal jurisdiction* within the limits of ceded places, as this right may be exercised consistently with the jurisdiction of the general government.

[b] The *persons* here spoken of were *slaves*, and by this clause their introduction was admitted until 1808. In 1815 the slave-trade was prohibited under severe penalties. Congress has since declared the slave-trade to be piracy, and that if a citizen of the United States be engaged in it he shall be adjudged a pirate, and on conviction suffer death. The Supreme Court of the United States, however, has decided that the slave-trade is not piracy by the universal law of nations, nor except so far as it has been made so by the treaties or statutes of the nation to which the party belonged. The slave-trade has been abolished by the United States, and by all European nations. Vessels, of whatever nation, engaged in the slave-trade, are now liable to seizure and confiscation.

[c] The *writ of habeas corpus* is a written command, grantable by any court of record, or judge thereof, and directs the sheriff, or other officer named in the writ, to take the body of some particular person, and bring it before said judge or court. The object of the writ is, by bringing a person, confined for any cause whatever, before a competent authority, to have the cause of his confinement investigated, and, if he be not legally confined, to discharge him.

---

[a] *What are the general regulations on this subject?* 18th. What general powers are conferred by the 18th clause?

SECTION IX.—1st. Of what does the ninth section treat? What restriction was there relative to the migration or importation of certain persons? [b] *Who were the "persons" here spoken of? What is said of the slave-trade?*

2d. Relative to the writ of "habeas corpus?" [c] *What is this writ? The object of it?*

Third Clause.—No bill of attainder,[a] or *ex post facto law*,[b] shall be passed.

Fourth Clause.—No capitation,[c] or other direct tax, shall be laid, unless in proportion to the *census* or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

Fifth Clause.—No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

Sixth Clause.—No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Seventh Clause.—No money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money, shall be published from time to time.

Eighth Clause.—No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person, holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.

OF RESTRICTIONS UPON THE POWER OF THE STATES.

First Clause.—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin

---

[a] A *bill of attainder* is a special act of the Legislature, inflicting capital punishment upon persons supposed to be guilty of high crimes, such as treason and felony, without any conviction in the ordinary course of judicial proceedings. If it inflict a milder punishment, it is called a bill of pains and penalties.

[b] An *ex post facto law* is a *retrospective criminal law*,—a law that looks back upon past actions, and makes that criminal which was not criminal when done.

[c] The term *capitation* here signifies a direct tax upon individuals. Such tax cannot be levied by Congress upon one portion of the people and not upon another; but all taxes levied by Congress must be uniform among the States. A direct tax has never been levied by our government, but if one were to be levied, Congress would apportion it among the several States according to the *number* of representatives which each is allowed to send to Congress; and each State would apportion its tax among its citizens according to the *property* possessed by each. The general government is supported by the revenue derived from the sale of public lands, and by duties on imported goods, &c. The direct taxes that the people pay are state, county, and town taxes.

3d. Relative to "bill of attainder" and "ex post facto" law? [a] *What is a "bill of attainder?"* [b] *An "ex post facto" law?* 4th. Relative to capitation or direct taxes? [c] *What is a capitation tax; and how only could any direct tax be levied?* 5th. Duties on exports? 6th. Commercial preferences and regulations? 7th. Drawing money from the treasury? 8th. Titles of nobility—presents, &c.?

SECTION X.—Of what does the tenth section treat? 1st. What restrictions are imposed by the first clause of this section?

money; emit bills of credit;[a] make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts;[b] or grant any title of nobility.

Second Clause.—No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the nett produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be sub ject to the revision and control of the Congress.

Third Clause.—No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any duty of tonnage,[c] keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

OF THE EXECUTIVE.

SECTION I.

First Clause.—The Executive[d] power, shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years; and, together with the

[a] *Bills of credit*, within the meaning of the Constitution, which prohibits their emission by the States, are promissory notes, or bills, issued exclusively on the credit of the State, and designed to circulate as money, and for the payment of which the faith of the State only is pledged. The prohibition does not, therefore, apply to the notes of a State bank drawn on the credit of a particular fund set apart for the purpose of their redemption.

[b] A *contract* is an agreement to do or not to do a certain thing. If two individuals have formed a contract which is sanctioned by the laws of the State, and the fulfilment of which could be legally exacted by either of the contracting parties, then the State cannot declare such contract void, nor release either party from his obligation.

Tonnage duties are taxes laid on vessels at a certain rate per ton.

[d] *Executive* is that which relates to the execution of the laws. Thus, the chief officer of the government, whether he be called king, president, or gov-

[a] *What are "bills of credit," and what is the extent of the prohibition?* [b] *What is a contract? Explanation of the clause?* 2d. What are the restrictions relative to taxing imports and exports? 3d. Relative to tonnage duties, war, compacts, &c.? [c] *What are tonnage duties?*

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I.—1st. In whom is the executive power vested, and what is his term of office? [d] *What is meant by executive?*

Vice-President, chosen for the same time, be elected as follows:—

Second Clause.—Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors,[a] equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit, under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.*

(12*th Amendment to the Constitution.*)—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot, for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves.

They shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots, the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each; which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate.

The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then, from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose, immediately, by ballot, the President.

But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice.

---

ernor, is denominated the *Executive*, for on him is devolved the duty of *executing the laws.*

[a] As the electors are to be appointed in such manner as the Legislature may direct, different states have adopted different modes. In some states the electors are chosen by the Legislature itself,—but in most, by the people.

---

* (The next clause in the Constitution was abrogated in the year 1801, and the above amendment introduced.)

2d. Describe the manner of choosing the president and the vice-president. [a] *In what manner are the electors chosen by the state legislatures?*

And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

Third Clause.—The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.[a]

Fourth Clause.—No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Fifth Clause.—In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then

---

[a] As regards the time of choosing electors, Congress has only enacted that they shall be chosen within the thirty-four days preceding the first Wednesday in December. The consequence is, that, within that time, the elections are still held at different periods. The electors meet in their respective states, at a place appointed by the Legislature thereof, on the first Wednesday in December, in every fourth year succeeding the last election, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President.

3d. What power has Congress over the time of choosing electors, &c.? [a] *What has Congress enacted on this subject? The consequence? When do the electors meet in the several States?* 4th. What are the legal qualifications of a president? 5th. What provisions are made by the Constitution for cases of removal or inability of the president, &c.?

act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.[a]

Sixth Clause.—The President shall, at stated times, receive, for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.[b]

Seventh Clause.—Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

"I do solemnly swear, (or affirm,) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION II.

First Clause.—The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States.

He may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the Executive Departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

Second Clause.—He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur: and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall

---

[a] Congress has provided that, in case of the removal, death, resignation, or inability of both the President and Vice-President, the President *pro tem.* of the Senate, and in case there shall be no such President of the Senate, then the Speaker of the House of Representatives shall act as President, until the disability be removed, or the vacancy filled. In case of a non-election of both President and Vice-President at the proper period, Congress has declared that there shall immediately be held a new election.

[b] The salary of the President is twenty-five thousand dollars per annum, and that of the Vice-President five thousand dollars.

---

[a] *What has Congress provided for these emergencies?* 6th. Relative to compensation of president? [b] *What is the salary of the president?* 7th. What oath is the president required to take?

SECTION II.—1st. What power has the president relative to the army, navy, and militia? What may he require of the heads of the Departments? What power has he relative to reprieves and pardons? 2d. Relative to treaties?

appoint ambassadors, other public ministers,[a] and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, and in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

Third Clause.—The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III.

He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient: he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper.

He shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

---

[a] A *public minister* is one who is charged with the care of the public affairs of his nation at a foreign court. Of these there are several orders:—

1st. An *ambassador* is one who represents the government, and is authorized to act for it on all occasions.

2d. An *envoy* is a minister who is sent for a particular purpose—as, to make a special treaty, or arrange disputed boundaries. There are envoys *ordinary*, and envoys *extraordinary* or *plenipotentiary*. The former, as the term signifies, are invested with merely the ordinary powers of an envoy; the latter have *full power* to act as they deem expedient.

3d. *Ministers resident*, or charge d'affaires, are those who are charged with the ordinary affairs of a nation at a foreign court

To each of these offices is attached a *secretary of legation*, who performs the duties of a secretary, and is frequently left in *charge of affairs* when a minister is recalled.

[b] *Consuls* are *commercial agents*, appointed to reside in the seaports of foreign countries for the purpose of watching over the commercial rights of the nation sending them.

Relative to appointment of certain officers? [a] *What is a "public minister?" An ambassador? An envoy? Minister resident? Secretary of legation?* [b] *What are consuls?* 3d. What power has the president relative to vacancies?

SECTION III.—What are the duties of the president in respect to Congress—ambassadors—execution of the laws, &c.?

SECTION IV.

The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

OF THE JUDICIARY.

SECTION I.

The Judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish.[a]

The Judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II.

First Clause.—The Judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity,[b] arising under this Constitution, the laws of

[a] Congress has organized a Supreme Court by creating a Chief Justice and eight Associate Justices, any five of whom make a quorum. The Supreme Court holds one term annually at the seat of government. The inferior courts organized by Congress are the Circuit and the District Courts. The United States are divided into nine Circuits, in each of which two Circuit Courts are held annually by one judge of the Supreme Court and such judge of the United States District Court as resides in the district in which the Circuit Court is held. The District Court is composed of a single judge, who holds annually four stated terms, and special courts at his discretion. Each State constitutes at least one district, and the larger states two.

[b] *Equity*, considered as a legal term, is the correction of that wherein the law (by reason of its universality) is deficient. Courts of law are those in which decisions are regulated by the known laws of the land. Courts of equity take cognizance of those cases which either the law does not reach, or in which a strict adherence to the law would be attended by manifest injustice.

SECTION IV.—1st. For what crimes, and in what manner, may government officers be removed from office?

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I.—1st. Of what does Article III. treat? In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? What is said of the term of office and compensation of Judges? [a] *Of the organization of the Supreme Court? Of the inferior courts?*

SECTION II.—1st. To what several cases does the judicial power of the United States Courts extend? [b] *What is here understood by "equity?" What are courts of law and courts of equity?*

the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;[a] to controversies to which the United States shall be a party:[b]—

To controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State, claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

Second Clause.—In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction.[c] In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction,[d] both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Third Clause.—The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may, by law, have directed.

SECTION III.

First Clause.—Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

---

[a] The admiralty and maritime jurisdiction of the United States courts embraces all civil and criminal cases in which the crime was committed at sea, or on the coasts, out of the body of a county.

[b] To enforce the rights of the United States, the general government has power to sue in its own courts; but neither can an individual nor a state bring a suit *against* the United States. A sovereign power cannot be held amenable to any other power.

[c] *Original jurisdiction* is that in which a suit commences, or *originates*, in this court.

[d] *Appellate jurisdiction* is the power of re-examining, and reversing or re affirming the decisions of inferior courts. The usual modes of exercising appellate jurisdiction, are: by Writ of Error—which removes nothing for re-examination but the law of the case; and by Appeal—which removes a cause entirely, and subjects the facts as well as the law to a review and retrial.

---

[a] *What does "admiralty and maritime jurisdiction" embrace?* [b] *Can the United States be a party to a legal controversy—and how?* 2d. In what cases has the Supreme Court "original jurisdiction," and in what "appellate jurisdiction?" [c] *What is original jurisdiction?* [d] *What is appellate jurisdiction? The usual modes of exercising appellate jurisdiction?* 3. What is the fundamental law relative to "the trial of all crimes?"

SECTION III.—1st. In what does treason consist?

Second Clause.—No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

Third Clause.—The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.[a]

ARTICLE IV.

MISCELLANEOUS.

SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State, to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II.

First Clause.—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

Second Clause.—A person charged, in any State, with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the Executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

Third Clause.—No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged

[a] Death by hanging is the punishment of treason in this country. By "corruption of blood" is meant the destruction of all inheritable qualities, so that no one can claim any property, or any right to the same, from a person attainted, or through him. In England the children of a person attainted cannot inherit his property if they are obliged to trace their title through him. But these relics of feudal barbarism are prohibited by our Constitution.

2d. What is necessary to a conviction? 3d. The power of Congress relative to the punishment? [a] *What is the penalty of treason? What is meant by "corruption of blood?" What is the law in England on this subject?*

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I.—1st. What credit must be given to public acts, &c., of other States? How are they to be proved?

SECTION II.—1st. What is said of the privileges of citizens in the several States? 2d. Of persons charged with crimes in one State, and fleeing into another? 3d. Of persons escaping from service or labor?

from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up, on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.[a]

SECTION III.

First Clause.—New States may be admitted, by the Congress, into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

Second Clause.—The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive, (when the Legislature cannot be convened,) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

OF AMENDMENTS.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which in either case shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three

---

[a] The clause relative to persons held to service or labor refers to the slaves of the Southern States who may take refuge in other States.

---

[a] *To what persons does this clause refer?*

SECTION III.—1st. What is said of the formation and the admission of new States? 2d. Of territorial rules and regulations?

SECTION IV.—1st. What does the United States guarantee to the several States?

ARTICLE V.

Of what does Article V. treat? What two ways of originating amendments? What two ways of ratifying them?

fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

First Clause.—All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States, under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

Second Clause.—This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

Third Clause.—The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the Several States, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

What restrictions upon this power of making amendments?

ARTICLE VI.

1st. What debts and engagements does the Constitution recognize? 2d. What constitutes the supreme law of the land? How are judges bound? 3d. By what oath are national and state officers and representatives bound? What is said of religious tests?

ARTICLE VII.

What was necessary for the establishment of the Constitution?

AMENDMENTS.[a]

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech,[b] or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ART. II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ART. III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ART. IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ART. V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the

[a] When the Constitution was submitted to conventions of the people, called for that purpose, it met with violent opposition from many, and numerous objections were urged against it. The most important objections were those against the great power with which it invested the general government; and the fear that the influence of the States would be greatly impaired, if not altogether destroyed, by the supremacy of the Union.

The Constitution was, however, ratified by the requisite number of States; and Congress, during its first session, proposed ten distinct articles, selected from those which had been suggested in the State Conventions, which, having been ratified in the manner provided, are now a part of the Constitution. Two other amendments have since been added.

The general design of the amendments was to secure certain rights to the States and people, beyond the possibility of encroachment by Congress; and to set a more definite limit to the powers of the general government.

[b] The terms "freedom of speech and of the press," only give liberty to speak and publish *whatever is not in derogation of private rights.*

AMENDMENTS.

ARTICLE I.—What amendment has been made respecting religion—freedom of speech—of the press—and the right of petition? [a] *What is said of the origin and the design of the Amendments?* [b] *How far does "freedom of speech and of the press" extend?* ART. II.—What is said of the right of the people to keep and bear arms? ART. III.—Of quartering soldiers? ART. IV.—Of searches and seizures? Of the issuing of warrants? ART. V.—Of holding persons to answer for crimes?

same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb;[a] nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law: nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ART. VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

AT. VII.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ART. VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ART. IX.—The enumeration, in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ART. X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ART. XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

(Article twelfth, of the Amendments, relating to the choosing of President and Vice-President, will be found under the head of "Executive.")

---

[a] The meaning of this clause is, that no person shall be a second time tried for the same offence, *where there has been an actual verdict and judgment rendered in a former trial.* But the accused may be tried a second time, where the jury have been dismissed for want of agreement, or where a new trial has been granted on account of some illegal proceedings, or for want of evidence.

Of twice putting persons in jeopardy of life or limb? [a] *Meaning of this provision?* Of witnessing against oneself? Of protection of life, liberty, and property? ART. VI.—What rights are guaranteed in all criminal prosecutions? ART. VII.—Of the right of trial by jury? ART. VIII.—Of bail, fines, and punishments? ART. IX.—Of rights retained by the people? ART. X.—Of the powers reserved to the States? ART. XI.—Of restrictions upon the judicial power of the United States?

What is said of Article twelfth, of the Amendments?

PUBLISHED BY IVISON AND PHINNEY, NEW YORK.

Sanders' New Series of Readers.

I. SANDERS' NEW SPELLER, DEFINER AND Analyzer. 15 cents.

II. SANDERS' PICTORIAL PRIMER. Bound. (Green Covers.) 10 cents.

III. SANDERS' NEW FIRST READER; containing easy progressive lessons in Reading and Spelling. 12 1-2 cents.

IV. SANDERS' NEW SECOND READER. 25 cents.

V. SANDERS' NEW THIRD READER; containing progressive lessons in Reading, Exercises in Articulation and Inflection, Definitions, &c. 38 cents.

VI. SANDERS' NEW FOURTH READER; embracing a comprehensive system of Instruction in the Principles of Elocution, with a choice collection of Reading Lessons in Prose and Poetry, from the most approved Authors. 62 cents.

VII SANDERS' FIFTH READER; for the more advanced Classes in Schools and Academies. (Same as in First Series; having been but a short time published). 75 cents.

VIII. SANDERS' YOUNG LADIES' READER. Price $1.

IX SANDERS' SCHOOL SPEAKER In press.

X. SANDERS' ELOCUTIONARY CHART; designed as an accompaniment to Sanders' Series of Reading Books, for the use of Primary Schools, Academies, Institutes, Seminaries, Colleges, &c. By C. W. Sanders, A.M and Prof. E. W. Merrill, A.M. $3

PUBLISHED BY IVISON AND PHINNEY, NEW YORK.

SANDERS' NEW SERIES OF READERS.

These books are, in matter, engravings, and typography, *entirely new.* Simple in style, without being puerile—highly moral in tone, without being dull or cynical—carefully graduated to the *known wants* of the Schools—adapted to the convenience of the teacher, without attempting to reduce him to the condition of a mere machine—and, withal, unsurpassed in mechanical execution; they are confidently offered to the public as absolutely superior to all other works in this department of education.

These works contain, in the aggregate, nearly *three thousand pages of the choicest reading matter*, original and selected. The selections are from the best writers. Every desirable variety of style is introduced, and care has been taken so to blend instruction with entertainment, as most effectually to aid the teacher and secure the attention of the pupil. These works are amply illustrated by appropriate cuts; so that the eye is everywhere the means of conveying gratifying instruction to the mind. A few pages of music, adapted to school-singing, have also been added to the first, second, third and fourth Readers—a feature well calculated to elicit interest in school books.

That the merits of the NEW SERIES are not here exaggerated, may be justly inferred from the fact, that in the city of New York, where they come into competition with all similar works, Sanders' Reading Books are used in almost every school, and the Teachers have testified to their merits with a unanimity hitherto unparalleled. [See "Recommendations" in last edition, New Fourth Reader, signed by more than *one hundred and fifty Principals of Schools*, under the care of the Board of Education in the city of New York.] Let it be borne in mind that these teachers have the most favorable opportunity for examining and comparing the various Reading Books in the market, and that, *being perfectly free to choose, they have selected this Series.*

I. SANDERS' NEW SPELLER, DEFINER AND

Analyzer; containing a complete and thorough course of instruction in Orthography and Orthœpy on the principles of Dr. Webster; in which, also, words of all classes, simple, derivative and compound, are so *arranged, compared, contrasted, defined and analyzed*, as best to bring out and inculcate their true MEANING and APPLICATION—forming altogether a *full* and *progressive* course of lessons, precisely adapted to the known wants of pupils of all grades, and answering the double purpose of Spelling-Book and Dictionary in Schools. 15 cents.

Round these woods we wandered
And plucked the green leaves from the
Chasing the hours with merry feet
Hearing the birds that warble sweet
Ere the noonday hours are past
Softly flowing from us fast

Hark! the bells are ringing far
Onward onward to your task
Young will our study soon
Losing for its given power.
In the deepest founts of learning
Sigh and dip no deep draught spurn
Give to give it all thy power
Keep not back one hidden flower
With thy life to fade and crumble

On the altar of thy true heart
Lob one little moth for me.
This the boon I do give to thee
Hence dear Rachel give it me

Amanda

Round thine head the leaves are twined
And plaited the green
Encircling the brow exclaiming
Hearing the birds chant
Ere the moon my powers are
Lightly moving from the
Touch the heath
Onward
Sweep swiftly
Sweep
In the
High and
Ere O
Have not
To the
On the
And
To the
Hence
Amen

Every few shall [illegible]
the snow shall be their winding sheet
And every turf beneath their feet
Shall be a soldiers sepulchre

R. H.

Rachael Hastings